THE LATINUM INSTITUTE CLASSICAL LATIN READING COURSE

FIRST EDITION 2025

Lesson 1 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: "et" (and)

Introduction

Today we learn the conjunction "et" (and), one of the most frequently used words in Latin. This simple but essential word allows us to connect ideas, actions, and descriptions.

Part A (Interleaved Latin-English Text)

1.1 **Puer** *the boy* **et** *and* **puella** *the girl* **currunt** *are running*

1.2 **Mare** *the sea* **et** *and* **terra** *the land* **magna** *are great* **sunt** *are*

1.3 **Rex** *the king* **et** *and* **regina** *the queen* **sedent** *sit*

1.4 **Caelum** *the sky* **et** *and* **stellae** *the stars* **pulchra** *beautiful* **sunt** *are*

1.5 **Aqua** *water* **et** *and* **panis** *bread* **vitam** *life* **dant** *give*

1.6 **Mater** *mother* **et** *and* **pater** *father* **laudant** *praise* **filium** *their son*

1.7 **Poeta** *the poet* **et** *and* **nauta** *the sailor* **cantant** *sing*

1.8 **Sol** *the sun* **et** *and* **luna** *the moon* **lucent** *shine*

1.9 **Miles** *the soldier* **et** *and* **dux** *the leader* **pugnant** *fight*

1.10 **Liber** *the book* **et** *and* **sapientia** *wisdom* **docent** *teach*

1.11 **Flos** *the flower* **et** *and* **arbor** *the tree* **crescunt** *grow*

1.12 **Magister** *the teacher* **et** *and* **discipulus** *the student* **legunt** *read*

1.13 **Vinum** *wine* **et** *and* **cibus** *food* **mensam** *the table* **ornant** *decorate*

1.31 **Ignis** *fire* **et** *and* **aer** *air* **vitalia** *vital* **sunt** *are*

1.15 **Via** *the road* **et** *and* **porta** *the gate* **patent** *are open*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

1.1 Puer et puella currunt. *The boy and girl are running.*

1.2 Mare et terra magna sunt. *The sea and land are great.*

1.3 Rex et regina sedent. *The king and queen sit.*

1.4 Caelum et stellae pulchra sunt. *The sky and stars are beautiful.*

1.5 Aqua et panis vitam dant. *Water and bread give life.*

1.6 Mater et pater filium laudant. *Mother and father praise their son.*

1.7 Poeta et nauta cantant. *The poet and sailor sing.*

1.8 Sol et luna lucent. *The sun and moon shine.*

1.9 Miles et dux pugnant. *The soldier and leader fight.*

1.10 Liber et sapientia docent. *The book and wisdom teach.*

1.11 Flos et arbor crescunt. *The flower and tree grow.*

1.12 Magister et discipulus legunt. *The teacher and student read.*

1.13 Vinum et cibus mensam ornant. *Wine and food decorate the table.*

1.31 Ignis et aer vitalia sunt. *Fire and air are vital.*

1.15 Via et porta patent. *The road and gate are open.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

1.1 Puer et puella currunt.

1.2 Mare et terra magna sunt.

1.3 Rex et regina sedent.

1.4 Caelum et stellae pulchra sunt.

1.5 Aqua et panis vitam dant.

1.6 Mater et pater filium laudant.

1.7 Poeta et nauta cantant.

1.8 Sol et luna lucent.

1.9 Miles et dux pugnant.

1.10 Liber et sapientia docent.

1.11 Flos et arbor crescunt.

1.12 Magister et discipulus legunt.

1.13 Vinum et cibus mensam ornant.

1.31 Ignis et aer vitalia sunt.

1.15 Via et porta patent.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Et" is a coordinating conjunction in Latin, equivalent to English "and". Key points for English speakers:

1. Position:
    - Usually placed between the words it connects
    - Can connect individual words, phrases, or entire clauses
    - Never changes form (indeclinable)
2. Agreement with Verbs:
    - When "et" connects two singular subjects, the verb is usually plural
    - Example: "Rex et regina sedent" (The king and queen sit)
3. Important Uses:
    - Joining nouns: "puer et puella" (boy and girl)
    - Joining adjectives: "magnus et altus" (great and tall)
    - Joining verbs: "currit et cantat" (runs and sings)
4. Special Features:
    - Cannot be used at the start of a sentence
    - Can be repeated for emphasis: "et...et..." (both...and...)
    - Does not require commas in Latin as English might
5. Common Patterns:
    - Noun + et + Noun
    - Adjective + et + Adjective
    - Verb + et + Verb

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "et" in Roman Culture:

1. Written Style:
    - Romans often used "et" in formal inscriptions
    - Abbreviated as "&" in medieval manuscripts
    - Essential in legal and religious formulae
2. Public Speaking:
    - Key element in rhetorical devices
    - Used in famous speeches for emphasis
    - Important in political slogans
3. Literary Usage:
    - Common in poetry and prose
    - Used in famous phrases like "Senatus Populusque Romanus"
    - Essential in religious rituals and prayers
4. Modern Influence:
    - Source of English "&" symbol
    - Used in modern Latin mottoes

- Still used in academic and legal Latin

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Virgil's "Aeneid" (Book I, line 1):

Arma *arms* **virumque** *and the man* **cano** *I sing of*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Arma virumque cano" *I sing of arms and the man*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous opening line demonstrates how "et" can be replaced by the enclitic "-que" (meaning "and"), attached to the second word. This is a common poetic variation.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "-que" is an enclitic form meaning "and"
- Attaches to the second element being joined
- Creates a more poetic effect than "et"
- Common in epic poetry

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Historical Narrative Genre Section

Part A (Interleaved Latin-English Text)

1.16 **Caesar** *Caesar* **et** *and* **exercitus** *the army* **Galliam** *Gaul* **petunt** *seek*

1.17 **Roma** *Rome* **et** *and* **Carthago** *Carthage* **bellum** *war* **gerunt** *wage*

1.18 **Senatus** *the Senate* **et** *and* **populus** *the people* **leges** *laws* **scribunt** *write*

1.19 **Consules** *the consuls* **et** *and* **senatores** *senators* **in forum** *into the forum* **veniunt** *come*

1.20 **Milites** *the soldiers* **et** *and* **duces** *leaders* **victoriam** *victory* **celebrant** *celebrate*

1.21 **Templa** *temples* **et** *and* **arae** *altars* **deorum** *of the gods* **sancta** *holy* **sunt** *are*

1.22 **Imperator** *the emperor* **et** *and* **legati** *ambassadors* **pacem** *peace* **quaerunt** *seek*

1.23 **Philosophi** *philosophers* **et** *and* **poetae** *poets* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **docent** *teach*

1.24 **Agricolae** *farmers* **et** *and* **mercatores** *merchants* **urbem** *the city* **intrant** *enter*

1.25 **Romulus** *Romulus* **et** *and* **Remus** *Remus* **urbem** *a city* **condunt** *found*

1.26 **Plebs** *the common people* **et** *and* **patricii** *patricians* **in foro** *in the forum* **disputant** *argue*

1.27 **Flamma** *flame* **et** *and* **fumus** *smoke* **templum** *the temple* **implent** *fill*

1.28 **Equites** *knights* **et** *and* **pedites** *foot soldiers* **hostem** *the enemy* **vincunt** *conquer*

1.29 **Sacerdotes** *priests* **et** *and* **vestales** *Vestal Virgins* **sacra** *sacred rites* **faciunt** *perform*

1.30 **Consules** *consuls* **et** *and* **tribuni** *tribunes* **rem publicam** *the republic* **regunt** *rule*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

1.16 Caesar et exercitus Galliam petunt. *Caesar and the army seek Gaul.*

1.17 Roma et Carthago bellum gerunt. *Rome and Carthage wage war.*

1.18 Senatus et populus leges scribunt. *The Senate and people write laws.*

1.19 Consules et senatores in forum veniunt. *The consuls and senators come into the forum.*

1.20 Milites et duces victoriam celebrant. *The soldiers and leaders celebrate victory.*

1.21 Templa et arae deorum sancta sunt. *The temples and altars of the gods are holy.*

1.22 Imperator et legati pacem quaerunt. *The emperor and ambassadors seek peace.*

1.23 Philosophi et poetae sapientiam docent. *Philosophers and poets teach wisdom.*

1.24 Agricolae et mercatores urbem intrant. *Farmers and merchants enter the city.*

1.25 Romulus et Remus urbem condunt. *Romulus and Remus found a city.*

1.26 Plebs et patricii in foro disputant. *The common people and patricians argue in the forum.*

1.27 Flamma et fumus templum implent. *Flame and smoke fill the temple.*

1.28 Equites et pedites hostem vincunt. *Knights and foot soldiers conquer the enemy.*

1.29 Sacerdotes et vestales sacra faciunt. *Priests and Vestal Virgins perform sacred rites.*

1.30 Consules et tribuni rem publicam regunt. *Consuls and tribunes rule the republic.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

1.16 Caesar et exercitus Galliam petunt.

1.17 Roma et Carthago bellum gerunt.

1.18 Senatus et populus leges scribunt.

1.19 Consules et senatores in forum veniunt.

1.20 Milites et duces victoriam celebrant.

1.21 Templa et arae deorum sancta sunt.

1.22 Imperator et legati pacem quaerunt.

1.23 Philosophi et poetae sapientiam docent.

1.24 Agricolae et mercatores urbem intrant.

1.25 Romulus et Remus urbem condunt.

1.26 Plebs et patricii in foro disputant.

1.27 Flamma et fumus templum implent.

1.28 Equites et pedites hostem vincunt.

1.29 Sacerdotes et vestales sacra faciunt.

1.30 Consules et tribuni rem publicam regunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Historical Genre)

In historical narrative, "et" serves several special functions:

1. Linking Historical Figures:
    - Joins names of important historical figures
    - Connects groups of people in historical events
    - Links institutions and political bodies
2. Action Sequences:
    - Connects sequential historical events
    - Links cause and effect relationships
    - Joins military movements and battles
3. Historical Institutions:
    - Used in formal titles (e.g., "Senatus Populusque Romanus")
    - Connects official positions and roles
    - Links governmental bodies and functions
4. Historical Documentation:
    - Common in historical inscriptions
    - Used in official records and chronicles
    - Essential in historical treaties and laws
5. Style in Historical Writing:
    - Creates parallel structures in historical narrative
    - Builds dramatic tension in battle descriptions
    - Helps establish chronological sequence
6. Special Historical Uses:
    - Links peoples and nations (Roma et Carthago)
    - Connects social classes (plebs et patricii)
    - Joins religious and secular authority
7. Historical Context:
    - Often pairs complementary concepts
    - Links traditional opposing forces
    - Connects related historical institutions
8. Common Historical Phrases:
    - Military terms: "equites et pedites"

- Political terms: "consules et tribuni"
- Religious terms: "sacerdotes et vestales"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 2 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: sum esse fuī futūrum (to be)

Introduction

This lesson covers the fundamental verb "sum" (to be), one of the most important and frequently used verbs in Latin. This irregular verb is essential for forming basic sentences and many grammatical constructions.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

2.1 **Puer** *the boy* **bonus** *good* **est** *is*

2.2 **Puella** *the girl* **laeta** *happy* **est** *is*

2.3 **Magistra** *the teacher* **sapiens** *wise* **est** *is*

2.4 **Discipuli** *the students* **in scholā** *in school* **sunt** *are*

2.5 **Ego** *I* **sum** *am* **fessus** *tired*

2.6 **Tu** *you* **es** *are* **fortis** *brave*

2.7 **Caelum** *the sky* **hodie** *today* **clarum** *bright* **est** *is*

2.8 **Nos** *we* **eramus** *were* **parati** *ready*

2.9 **Vos** *you all* **eritis** *will be* **beati** *happy*

2.10 **Libri** *the books* **in mensā** *on the table* **sunt** *are*

2.11 **Marcus** *Marcus* **erit** *will be* **consul** *consul*

2.12 **Templum** *the temple* **antiquum** *ancient* **erat** *was*

2.13 **Ego** *I* **ero** *will be* **miles** *a soldier*

2.31 **Villa** *the villa* **magna** *large* **est** *is*

2.15 **Amici** *friends* **fideles** *faithful* **erunt** *will be*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

2.1 Puer bonus est. *The boy is good.*

2.2 Puella laeta est. *The girl is happy.*

2.3 Magistra sapiens est. *The teacher is wise.*

2.4 Discipuli in scholā sunt. *The students are in school.*

2.5 Ego sum fessus. *I am tired.*

2.6 Tu es fortis. *You are brave.*

2.7 Caelum hodie clarum est. *The sky today is bright.*

2.8 Nos eramus parati. *We were ready.*

2.9 Vos eritis beati. *You all will be happy.*

2.10 Libri in mensā sunt. *The books are on the table.*

2.11 Marcus erit consul. *Marcus will be consul.*

2.12 Templum antiquum erat. *The temple was ancient.*

2.13 Ego ero miles. *I will be a soldier.*

2.31 Villa magna est. *The villa is large.*

2.15 Amici fideles erunt. *Friends will be faithful.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

2.1 Puer bonus est.

2.2 Puella laeta est.

2.3 Magistra sapiens est.

2.4 Discipuli in scholā sunt.

2.5 Ego sum fessus.

2.6 Tu es fortis.

2.7 Caelum hodie clarum est.

2.8 Nos eramus parati.

2.9 Vos eritis beati.

2.10 Libri in mensā sunt.

2.11 Marcus erit consul.

2.12 Templum antiquum erat.

2.13 Ego ero miles.

2.31 Villa magna est.

2.15 Amici fideles erunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammatical Explanation)

The verb "sum" (to be) is fundamental to Latin grammar and is irregular, meaning it doesn't follow standard conjugation patterns. Here are its key features:

1. Principal Parts:
    - sum (present)
    - esse (infinitive)
    - fuī (perfect)
    - futūrum (future participle)
2. Present Tense Forms:
    - sum (I am)
    - es (you are)
    - est (he/she/it is)
    - sumus (we are)
    - estis (you all are)
    - sunt (they are)
3. Imperfect Tense Forms:
    - eram (I was)
    - eras (you were)
    - erat (he/she/it was)
    - eramus (we were)
    - eratis (you all were)
    - erant (they were)
4. Future Tense Forms:
    - ero (I will be)
    - eris (you will be)
    - erit (he/she/it will be)
    - erimus (we will be)
    - eritis (you all will be)
    - erunt (they will be)
5. Key Uses:
    - Linking subject and predicate adjective (Puer bonus est)
    - Expressing location (in + ablative: in scholā sunt)
    - Indicating possession (with dative)
    - Essential for passive periphrastic constructions
6. Special Notes for English Speakers:
    - Unlike English, Latin often omits forms of "to be" when they can be understood from context
    - Word order is flexible; the verb "sum" often comes at the end of the clause

- Predicate nouns and adjectives must agree in case with the subject

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "sum" in Roman culture:

1. Philosophical Importance:
    - The concept of "being" was central to Roman philosophy
    - Famous quote "Cogito, ergo sum" (I think, therefore I am) shows lasting influence
    - Romans used forms of "sum" to discuss existence and essence
2. Social Status:
    - Romans used "sum" to express social position: "Senator est" (He is a senator)
    - Status indicators were crucial in Roman society
    - Different forms marked temporal vs. permanent states
3. Educational Context:
    - Learning "sum" was the first step in Roman education
    - Students memorized forms through repetition and dialogue
    - Used in basic introduction phrases: "Marcus sum" (I am Marcus)
4. Legal Language:
    - Forms of "sum" were crucial in Roman law
    - Used in formal declarations and contracts
    - Important for establishing status and citizenship
5. Literary Use:
    - Poetry often played with word order of "sum"
    - Omission of "sum" for dramatic effect
    - Different tenses created temporal shifts in narrative

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Officiis" (On Duties):

"**Sunt** *there are* **enim** *for* **qui** *those who* **philosophi** *philosophers* **sunt** *are* **re** *in deed* **non** *not* **verbis**" *in words*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Sunt enim qui philosophi sunt re non verbis." *"For there are those who are philosophers in deed, not in words."*

Part F-C (Analysis)

This quote from Cicero's philosophical work demonstrates two uses of "sum" in the same sentence - one existential ("there are") and one linking ("are philosophers"). It showcases how versatile this verb is in Latin philosophical discourse.

Part F-D (Grammar Notes)

- First **sunt**: existential use
- Second **sunt**: linking verb with predicate nominative
- **re** and **verbis**: ablative case showing manner
- Note the typical word order with **sunt** in different positions

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

2.16 **Socrates** *Socrates* **sapiens** *wise* **est** *is*

2.17 **Virtus** *virtue* **semper** *always* **pulchra** *beautiful* **est** *is*

2.18 **Veritas** *truth* **aeterna** *eternal* **erit** *will be*

2.19 **Ego** *I* **philosophus** *a philosopher* **sum** *am*

2.20 **Multi** *many* **discipuli** *students* **in horto** *in the garden* **erant** *were*

2.21 **Sapientia** *wisdom* **magna** *great* **divitia** *wealth* **est** *is*

2.22 **Vita** *life* **brevis** *short* **est** *is*

2.23 **Nos** *we* **felices** *happy* **erimus** *will be* **cum sapientia** *with wisdom*

2.24 **Tempus** *time* **magister** *teacher* **vitae** *of life* **est** *is*

2.25 **Amor** *love* **veritatis** *of truth* **in animo** *in the soul* **est** *is*

2.26 **Mors** *death* **omnibus** *for all* **communis** *common* **est** *is*

2.27 **Tu** *you* **bonus** *good* **magister** *teacher* **eris** *will be*

2.28 **Philosophia** *philosophy* **dux** *guide* **vitae** *of life* **est** *is*

2.29 **Virtutes** *virtues* **in animo** *in the soul* **sunt** *are*

2.30 **Ratio** *reason* **lux** *light* **vitae** *of life* **est** *is*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

2.16 Socrates sapiens est. *Socrates is wise.*

2.17 Virtus semper pulchra est. *Virtue is always beautiful.*

2.18 Veritas aeterna erit. *Truth will be eternal.*

2.19 Ego philosophus sum. *I am a philosopher.*

2.20 Multi discipuli in horto erant. *Many students were in the garden.*

2.21 Sapientia magna divitia est. *Wisdom is great wealth.*

2.22 Vita brevis est. *Life is short.*

2.23 Nos felices erimus cum sapientia. *We will be happy with wisdom.*

2.24 Tempus magister vitae est. *Time is the teacher of life.*

2.25 Amor veritatis in animo est. *Love of truth is in the soul.*

2.26 Mors omnibus communis est. *Death is common to all.*

2.27 Tu bonus magister eris. *You will be a good teacher.*

2.28 Philosophia dux vitae est. *Philosophy is the guide of life.*

2.29 Virtutes in animo sunt. *Virtues are in the soul.*

2.30 Ratio lux vitae est. *Reason is the light of life.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

2.16 Socrates sapiens est.

2.17 Virtus semper pulchra est.

2.18 Veritas aeterna erit.

2.19 Ego philosophus sum.

2.20 Multi discipuli in horto erant.

2.21 Sapientia magna divitia est.

2.22 Vita brevis est.

2.23 Nos felices erimus cum sapientia.

2.24 Tempus magister vitae est.

2.25 Amor veritatis in animo est.

2.26 Mors omnibus communis est.

2.27 Tu bonus magister eris.

2.28 Philosophia dux vitae est.

2.29 Virtutes in animo sunt.

2.30 Ratio lux vitae est.

Part D (Grammar Notes for Genre Section)

1. Forms of "sum" Used:
    - Present: est, sunt, sum
    - Future: erit, erimus, eris
    - Imperfect: erant
2. Grammatical Features:
    - Predicate nominatives: philosophus, magister, dux
    - Abstract subjects: virtus, veritas, sapientia
    - Dative of possession: omnibus
    - Prepositional phrases: in horto, in animo
    - Genitive constructions: magister vitae, amor veritatis

3. Word Order Patterns:
    - Subject + Predicate + est (most common)
    - Subject + est + Prepositional Phrase
    - Emphasis variations showing flexibility
4. Philosophical Vocabulary:
    - Abstract nouns: virtus, veritas, sapientia
    - Philosophical concepts: ratio, animus, vita
    - Ethical terms: bonus, sapiens, felix

Corderius Style Dialogue: A Conversation About Being

Part A (Interleaved Text)

Magister: *Teacher:* **Salvē,** *Hello,* **puer!** *boy!* **Quis** *who* **es?** *are you?*

Discipulus: *Student:* **Ego** *I* **Marcus** *Marcus* **sum.** *am.*

Magister: *Teacher:* **Estne** *Is* **frāter** *brother* **tuus** *your* **in scholā** *in school* **hodiē?** *today?*

Discipulus: *Student:* **Nōn** *Not* **est** *is* **in scholā.** *in school.* **Aeger** *Sick* **est.** *he is.*

Magister: *Teacher:* **Ubi** *Where* **sunt** *are* **librī** *books* **tuī?** *your?*

Discipulus: *Student:* **In mensā** *On the table* **meā** *my* **sunt.** *they are.*

Magister: *Teacher:* **Erisne** *Will you be* **attentus** *attentive* **hodiē?** *today?*

Discipulus: *Student:* **Ita,** *Yes,* **magister.** *teacher.* **Semper** *Always* **attentus** *attentive* **sum.** *I am.*

Magister: *Teacher:* **Nōn** *Not* **semper** *always* **attentus** *attentive* **es,** *you are,* **sed** *but* **hodiē** *today* **bonus** *good* **discipulus** *student* **eris!** *you will be!*

Part B (Complete Translations)

Magister: Salvē, puer! Quis es? *Teacher: Hello, boy! Who are you?*

Discipulus: Ego Marcus sum. *Student: I am Marcus.*

Magister: Estne frāter tuus in scholā hodiē? *Teacher: Is your brother in school today?*

Discipulus: Nōn est in scholā. Aeger est. *Student: He is not in school. He is sick.*

Magister: Ubi sunt librī tuī? *Teacher: Where are your books?*

Discipulus: In mensā meā sunt. *Student: They are on my table.*

Magister: Erisne attentus hodiē? *Teacher: Will you be attentive today?*

Discipulus: Ita, magister. Semper attentus sum. *Student: Yes, teacher. I am always attentive.*

Magister: Nōn semper attentus es, sed hodiē bonus discipulus eris! *Teacher: You are not always attentive, but today you will be a good student!*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

Magister: Salvē, puer! Quis es?

Discipulus: Ego Marcus sum.

Magister: Estne frāter tuus in scholā hodiē?

Discipulus: Nōn est in scholā. Aeger est.

Magister: Ubi sunt librī tuī?

Discipulus: In mensā meā sunt.

Magister: Erisne attentus hodiē?

Discipulus: Ita, magister. Semper attentus sum.

Magister: Nōn semper attentus es, sed hodiē bonus discipulus eris!

Part D (Grammar and Style Notes)

1. Question Forms with "sum":
    - Direct questions: Quis es? (Who are you?)
    - -ne questions: Estne? (Is he?)
    - Ubi + sunt (Where are?)
2. Dialogue Features:
    - Clear speaker identification (Magister/Discipulus)
    - Short, natural exchanges
    - Mix of statements and questions
    - Use of common classroom vocabulary
3. Forms of "sum" Used:
    - Present: sum, es, est, sunt
    - Future: eris
    - Negative constructions: nōn est, nōn es
4. Educational Context:
    - Typical school setting
    - Teacher-student relationship
    - Focus on attention and good behavior
    - Common school objects (librī, mēnsa)
5. Cultural Notes for Modern Students:
    - Roman education emphasized direct dialogue
    - Teachers expected formal responses
    - Students addressed teachers respectfully
    - Physical objects (books, tables) were important learning tools

Lesson 3 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: quī quae quod (who, which, what)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

3.1 **Puer** *The boy* **quī** *who* **librum** *the book* **legit** *reads* **doctus est** *is learned*

3.2 **Puella** *The girl* **quae** *who* **cantat** *sings* **laeta est** *is happy*

3.3 **Verbum** *The word* **quod** *which* **scrībis** *you write* **pulchrum est** *is beautiful*

3.4 **Vir** *The man* **quī** *who* **docet** *teaches* **sapiens est** *is wise*

3.5 **Fēmina** *The woman* **quae** *who* **ambulat** *walks* **alta est** *is tall*

3.6 **Templum** *The temple* **quod** *which* **vidēmus** *we see* **antīquum est** *is ancient*

3.7 **Servus** *The slave* **quī** *who* **labōrat** *works* **fortis est** *is strong*

3.8 **Māter** *The mother* **quae** *who* **amat** *loves* **bona est** *is good*

3.9 **Dōnum** *The gift* **quod** *which* **das** *you give* **parvum est** *is small*

3.10 **Magister** *The teacher* **quī** *who* **intellegit** *understands* **clārus est** *is famous*

3.11 **Rosa** *The rose* **quae** *which* **flōret** *blooms* **rubra est** *is red*

3.12 **Corpus** *The body* **quod** *which* **moveō** *I move* **validum est** *is strong*

3.13 **Pater** *The father* **quī** *who* **venit** *comes* **laetus est** *is happy*

3.31 **Stella** *The star* **quae** *which* **lūcet** *shines* **clara est** *is bright*

3.15 **Bellum** *The war* **quod** *which* **timent** *they fear* **longum est** *is long*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

3.1 Puer quī librum legit doctus est. *The boy who reads the book is learned.*

3.2 Puella quae cantat laeta est. *The girl who sings is happy.*

3.3 Verbum quod scrībis pulchrum est. *The word which you write is beautiful.*

3.4 Vir quī docet sapiens est. *The man who teaches is wise.*

3.5 Fēmina quae ambulat alta est. *The woman who walks is tall.*

3.6 Templum quod vidēmus antīquum est. *The temple which we see is ancient.*

3.7 Servus quī labōrat fortis est. *The slave who works is strong.*

3.8 Māter quae amat bona est. *The mother who loves is good.*

3.9 Dōnum quod das parvum est. *The gift which you give is small.*

3.10 Magister quī intellegit clārus est. *The teacher who understands is famous.*

3.11 Rosa quae flōret rubra est. *The rose which blooms is red.*

3.12 Corpus quod moveō validum est. *The body which I move is strong.*

3.13 Pater quī venit laetus est. *The father who comes is happy.*

3.31 Stella quae lūcet clara est. *The star which shines is bright.*

3.15 Bellum quod timent longum est. *The war which they fear is long.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

3.1 Puer quī librum legit doctus est.

3.2 Puella quae cantat laeta est.

3.3 Verbum quod scrībis pulchrum est.

3.4 Vir quī docet sapiens est.

3.5 Fēmina quae ambulat alta est.

3.6 Templum quod vidēmus antīquum est.

3.7 Servus quī labōrat fortis est.

3.8 Māter quae amat bona est.

3.9 Dōnum quod das parvum est.

3.10 Magister quī intellegit clārus est.

3.11 Rosa quae flōret rubra est.

3.12 Corpus quod moveō validum est.

3.13 Pater quī venit laetus est.

3.31 Stella quae lūcet clara est.

3.15 Bellum quod timent longum est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, the relative pronoun "quī quae quod" is similar to our "who, which, what" but with important differences:

1. Gender Agreement:
    - quī (masculine) - used for male persons or masculine nouns
    - quae (feminine) - used for female persons or feminine nouns
    - quod (neuter) - used for things or neuter nouns
2. Case Usage: The forms shown are nominative case, used when the relative pronoun is the subject of its clause.
3. Key Differences from English:
    - Latin requires gender agreement (English doesn't)
    - Latin has case endings (English relies on word order)
    - Latin relative pronouns introduce subordinate clauses
4. Pattern Recognition: Notice how each sentence follows this pattern:
    - Main noun + relative pronoun (matching gender) + verb + adjective
5. Common Mistakes to Avoid:
    - Using wrong gender agreement
    - Confusing word order
    - Forgetting that the relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding the cultural context of relative pronouns in Latin helps with their usage:

1. Roman Precision:
    - Romans valued precise description in their language
    - Relative pronouns helped create complex, detailed sentences
    - This precision reflected Roman legal and philosophical thinking
2. Literary Impact:
    - Latin relative pronouns influenced English writing style
    - Many formal English constructions mirror Latin patterns
    - Understanding Latin relative clauses helps with English formal writing
3. Modern Applications:
    - Legal terminology still uses Latin relative constructions
    - Scientific naming conventions follow Latin patterns
    - Academic writing often reflects Latin sentence structure
4. Educational Value:
    - Learning Latin relative pronouns improves English grammar understanding
    - Helps with technical and professional writing
    - Develops logical thinking skills

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Officiis" (On Duties):

Homo *The man* **quī** *who* **parēt** *obeys* **philosophiae** *philosophy* **līber est** *is free*

Part F-B (Complete Text)

Homo quī parēt philosophiae līber est. *The man who obeys philosophy is free.*

Part F-C (Analysis)

This quote demonstrates the elegant use of the relative pronoun quī in classical Latin literature. Cicero uses it to define the relationship between philosophical study and personal freedom.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- quī: masculine relative pronoun agreeing with homo
- parēt: present tense, "obeys/follows"
- philosophiae: dative case showing the indirect object
- līber: predicate adjective describing the subject

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Mystery Genre Section

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

3.16 **Vestīgium** *The clue* **quod** *which* **invēnimus** *we find* **obscūrum est** *is mysterious*

3.17 **Testis** *The witness* **quī** *who* **videt** *sees* **fūrem** *the thief* **senex est** *is old*

3.18 **Culpa** *The guilt* **quae** *which* **appāret** *appears* **manifesta est** *is clear*

3.19 **Index** *The informer* **quī** *who* **scit** *knows* **vēritātem** *the truth* **timet** *is afraid*

3.20 **Signum** *The sign* **quod** *which* **mōnstrat** *shows* **viam** *the way* **parvum est** *is small*

3.21 **Iūdex** *The judge* **quī** *who* **audit** *hears* **causam** *the case* **sevērus est** *is strict*

3.22 **Custōs** *The guard* **quī** *who* **vigilat** *watches* **nocte** *at night* **fessus est** *is tired*

3.23 **Carcer** *The prison* **quod** *which* **tenet** *holds* **sontem** *the guilty one* **fortis est** *is strong*

3.24 **Ancilla** *The maid* **quae** *who* **tacet** *keeps silent* **sapiens est** *is wise*

3.25 **Nūntius** *The message* **quod** *which* **latet** *lies hidden* **perīculōsum est** *is dangerous*

3.26 **Dux** *The leader* **quī** *who* **quaerit** *searches for* **fūrem** *the thief* **callidus est** *is clever*

3.27 **Littera** *The letter* **quae** *which* **docet** *reveals* **scelus** *the crime* **secreta est** *is secret*

3.28 **Templum** *The temple* **quod** *which* **celat** *conceals* **thēsaurum** *the treasure* **vetus est** *is old*

3.29 **Miles** *The soldier* **quī** *who* **custōdit** *guards* **portam** *the gate* **validus est** *is strong*

3.30 **Umbra** *The shadow* **quae** *which* **movet** *moves* **suspitiōsa est** *is suspicious*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

3.16 Vestīgium quod invēnimus obscūrum est. *The clue which we find is mysterious.*

3.17 Testis quī videt fūrem senex est. *The witness who sees the thief is old.*

3.18 Culpa quae appāret manifesta est. *The guilt which appears is clear.*

3.19 Index quī scit vēritātem timet. *The informer who knows the truth is afraid.*

3.20 Signum quod mōnstrat viam parvum est. *The sign which shows the way is small.*

3.21 Iūdex quī audit causam sevērus est. *The judge who hears the case is strict.*

3.22 Custōs quī vigilat nocte fessus est. *The guard who watches at night is tired.*

3.23 Carcer quod tenet sontem fortis est. *The prison which holds the guilty one is strong.*

3.24 Ancilla quae tacet sapiens est. *The maid who keeps silent is wise.*

3.25 Nūntius quod latet perīculōsum est. *The message which lies hidden is dangerous.*

3.26 Dux quī quaerit fūrem callidus est. *The leader who searches for the thief is clever.*

3.27 Littera quae docet scelus secreta est. *The letter which reveals the crime is secret.*

3.28 Templum quod celat thēsaurum vetus est. *The temple which conceals the treasure is old.*

3.29 Miles quī custōdit portam validus est. *The soldier who guards the gate is strong.*

3.30 Umbra quae movet suspitiōsa est. *The shadow which moves is suspicious.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

3.16 Vestīgium quod invēnimus obscūrum est.

3.17 Testis quī videt fūrem senex est.

3.18 Culpa quae appāret manifesta est.

3.19 Index quī scit vēritātem timet.

3.20 Signum quod mōnstrat viam parvum est.

3.21 Iūdex quī audit causam sevērus est.

3.22 Custōs quī vigilat nocte fessus est.

3.23 Carcer quod tenet sontem fortis est.

3.24 Ancilla quae tacet sapiens est.

3.25 Nūntius quod latet perīculōsum est.

3.26 Dux quī quaerit fūrem callidus est.

3.27 Littera quae docet scelus secreta est.

3.28 Templum quod celat thēsaurum vetus est.

3.29 Miles quī custōdit portam validus est.

3.30 Umbra quae movet suspitiōsa est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Mystery Genre Section)

The mystery genre section demonstrates advanced uses of quī quae quod in a detective story context. For English speakers, here's how the grammar works specifically in these examples:

1. Subject-Verb Relationships:
    - In mystery writing, the relative pronoun often connects:
        - The evidence (quod) with its revelation
        - The witness (quī/quae) with their observation
        - The suspect (quī/quae) with their action
2. Specialized Vocabulary Patterns:
    - Legal terms: testis (witness), iūdex (judge), culpa (guilt)
    - Investigation terms: vestīgium (clue), signum (sign)
    - These nouns commonly pair with specific verbs:
        - testis videt (witness sees)
        - iūdex audit (judge hears)
        - custōs vigilat (guard watches)
3. Tense Usage in Mystery Context:
    - Present tense for:
        - Ongoing investigations: quaerit (searches)
        - Standing conditions: latet (lies hidden)
        - Character descriptions: timet (is afraid)
4. Advanced Relative Clause Structure: Examples show three key patterns: a) Simple Description:
    - Vestīgium quod invēnimus (The clue which we find) b) Action and Object:
    - Testis quī videt fūrem (The witness who sees the thief) c) State or Condition:
    - Culpa quae appāret (The guilt which appears)
5. Word Order in Mystery Writing:
    - Latin's flexible word order allows emphasis:
        - Important clues can be placed first
        - Suspicious actions can be emphasized by position
        - Revelations can be dramatically delayed
6. Cultural Notes for Mystery Genre:
    - Roman legal vocabulary influences modern mystery writing
    - Many English detective story terms come from Latin
    - Understanding Latin helps with legal and mystery terminology
7. Common Patterns in Examples:
    - Description of Evidence:
        - Object (neuter quod) + revealing verb
    - Witness Statements:
        - Person (quī/quae) + verb of perception
    - Crime Scene Elements:

        - Location (quod) + verb of concealment
8. Tips for English Speakers:
    - Remember gender matches the described noun:
        - Male suspects/witnesses use quī
        - Female suspects/witnesses use quae
        - Evidence/objects use quod
    - The relative pronoun comes immediately after its antecedent
    - The verb in the relative clause typically comes last
9. Advanced Usage Notes:
    - Mystery genre often combines:
        - Physical description
        - Action
        - State of mind Each requiring different relative clause constructions
10. Building Complex Descriptions:
    - Start with basic pattern:
        - Subject + relative pronoun + verb + adjective
    - Add details:
        - Direct objects
        - Time phrases
        - Location markers

This grammar explanation specifically focuses on how relative pronouns function in mystery-themed Latin, helping English speakers understand both the language and the genre conventions simultaneously.

Lesson 4 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Reading Lesson 4: "que" (and)

Introduction

This lesson focuses on the postpositive enclitic "que" meaning "and". As an enclitic, "que" attaches to the end of words and cannot stand alone.

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

4.1 **Puer** *the boy* **puella**que *and the girl* **currunt** *run*

4.2 **Caelum** *the sky* **terra**que *and the earth* **magna** *are great* **sunt** *are*

4.3 **Deus** *god* **dea**que *and goddess* **templa** *temples* **habent** *have*

4.4 **Vir** *the man* **femina**que *and the woman* **ambulant** *walk*

4.5 **Roma** *Rome* **Italia**que *and Italy* **pulchrae** *beautiful* **sunt** *are*

4.6 **Aqua** *water* **ignis**que *and fire* **vitam** *life* **dant** *give*

4.7 **Pater** *father* **mater**que *and mother* **liberos** *children* **amant** *love*

4.8 **Luna** *the moon* **stella**que *and the star* **lucent** *shine*

4.9 **Rex** *the king* **regina**que *and the queen* **sedent** *sit*

4.10 **Equus** *the horse* **canis**que *and the dog* **currunt** *run*

4.11 **Poeta** *the poet* **musa**que *and the muse* **cantant** *sing*

4.12 **Agricola** *the farmer* **nauta**que *and the sailor* **laborant** *work*

4.13 **Vita** *life* **mors**que *and death* **aeternae** *eternal* **sunt** *are*

4.31 **Bellum** *war* **pax**que *and peace* **mutantur** *change*

4.15 **Sol** *the sun* **luna**que *and the moon* **fulgent** *shine*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences with Translations)

4.1 Puer puellaque currunt. *The boy and the girl run.*

4.2 Caelum terraque magna sunt. *The sky and the earth are great.*

4.3 Deus deaque templa habent. *The god and goddess have temples.*

4.4 Vir feminaque ambulant. *The man and woman walk.*

4.5 Roma Italiaque pulchrae sunt. *Rome and Italy are beautiful.*

4.6 Aqua ignisque vitam dant. *Water and fire give life.*

4.7 Pater materque liberos amant. *Father and mother love the children.*

4.8 Luna stellaque lucent. *The moon and star shine.*

4.9 Rex reginaque sedent. *The king and queen sit.*

4.10 Equus canisque currunt. *The horse and dog run.*

4.11 Poeta musaque cantant. *The poet and muse sing.*

4.12 Agricola nautaque laborant. *The farmer and sailor work.*

4.13 Vita morsque aeternae sunt. *Life and death are eternal.*

4.31 Bellum paxque mutantur. *War and peace change.*

4.15 Sol lunaque fulgent. *The sun and moon shine.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

4.1 Puer puellaque currunt.

4.2 Caelum terraque magna sunt.

4.3 Deus deaque templa habent.

4.4 Vir feminaque ambulant.

4.5 Roma Italiaque pulchrae sunt.

4.6 Aqua ignisque vitam dant.

4.7 Pater materque liberos amant.

4.8 Luna stellaque lucent.

4.9 Rex reginaque sedent.

4.10 Equus canisque currunt.

4.11 Poeta musaque cantant.

4.12 Agricola nautaque laborant.

4.13 Vita morsque aeternae sunt.

4.31 Bellum paxque mutantur.

4.15 Sol lunaque fulgent.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation for English Speakers)

The enclitic "que" is a special type of conjunction in Latin that differs from English "and" in several important ways:

1. Position:
    - Unlike English "and" which stands between words, "que" attaches to the end of the second word
    - Example: "puer puellaque" = "boy and girl" (NOT "puer et puella")
2. Pronunciation:
    - "que" forms part of the word it's attached to
    - The stress pattern of the word changes to accommodate "que"
    - Example: pu-EL-la-que (stress moves to syllable before "que")
3. Usage Rules:
    - Always joins the last two items in a series
    - Cannot be used alone like English "and"
    - Makes the word it attaches to the second element of the pair
4. Grammar Effects:
    - Words joined by "que" typically share the same grammatical function
    - Verbs agree with multiple subjects joined by "que" in plural
    - Example: "puer puellaque currunt" (plural verb with two singular subjects)

5. Common Patterns:
    - Often joins natural pairs: "pater materque" (father and mother)
    - Frequently used in poetry and formal prose
    - Can join phrases as well as single words

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context for English Speakers)

The use of "que" in Latin reflects important aspects of Roman culture and thought:

1. Literary Style:
    - Romans valued elegant variation in expression
    - "Que" offered a more sophisticated alternative to "et"
    - Particularly common in poetry and formal writing
2. Paired Concepts:
    - Romans often thought in terms of complementary pairs
    - Heaven and earth (caelum terraque)
    - Life and death (vita morsque)
    - These pairings reflected Roman worldview
3. Social Relationships:
    - Paired terms often reflected social structures
    - Husband and wife (vir feminaque)
    - Master and servant (dominus servusque)
    - Gods and goddesses (di deaeque)
4. Historical Usage:
    - Found in earliest Latin inscriptions
    - Preserved in legal and religious formulas
    - Part of Rome's most formal and ancient language
5. Modern Impact:
    - Still used in scientific Latin
    - Influences English terms like "etcetera" (et cetera)
    - Important for understanding Latin literature

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (Book 1, line 1):

Arma *arms* **virum**que *and the man* **cano** *I sing*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Arma virumque cano" *I sing of arms and the man*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous opening line of the Aeneid demonstrates how "que" can join two central themes of an epic: warfare (arma) and the hero (virum). The compact phrase became one of the most famous in Latin literature.

Part F-D (Grammar Notes)

- **Arma**: neuter plural accusative, direct object
- **virum**: masculine singular accusative, joined to arma by -que
- **cano**: first person singular present indicative
- The -que smoothly connects the two objects of the verb

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Epic Poetry

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

4.16 **Dux** *the leader* **militesque** *and the soldiers* **proelia** *battles* **magna** *great* **pugnant** *fight*

4.17 **Mars** *Mars* **Bellonaque** *and Bellona* **bella** *wars* **ferunt** *bring*

4.18 **Hasta** *spear* **gladiusque** *and sword* **hostes** *enemies* **terrent** *frighten*

4.19 **Gloria** *glory* **famaque** *and fame* **herois** *of the hero* **crescunt** *grow*

4.20 **Virtus** *virtue* **honorque** *and honor* **militem** *the soldier* **servant** *serve*

4.21 **Scutum** *shield* **galeaque** *and helmet* **corpus** *body* **tegunt** *protect*

4.22 **Victoria** *victory* **laudesque** *and praises* **populum** *the people* **movent** *move*

4.23 **Fortuna** *fortune* **fatumque** *and fate* **viros** *men* **ducunt** *lead*

4.24 **Castra** *camp* **vallumque** *and rampart* **exercitum** *the army* **defendunt** *defend*

4.25 **Vulnus** *wound* **morsque** *and death* **milites** *soldiers* **sequuntur** *follow*

4.26 **Tubae** *trumpets* **cornuaque** *and horns* **proelium** *battle* **nuntiant** *announce*

4.27 **Arma** *arms* **thoraxque** *and breastplate* **fulgent** *shine* **sole** *in the sun*

4.28 **Deus** *god* **deaque** *and goddess* **proelia** *battles* **spectant** *watch*

4.29 **Pax** *peace* **victoriaque** *and victory* **tandem** *finally* **veniunt** *come*

4.30 **Poeta** *poet* **carmineque** *and song* **facta** *deeds* **narrant** *tell*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences with Translations)

4.16 Dux militesque proelia magna pugnant. *The leader and soldiers fight great battles.*

4.17 Mars Bellonaque bella ferunt. *Mars and Bellona bring wars.*

4.18 Hasta gladiusque hostes terrent. *The spear and sword frighten the enemies.*

4.19 Gloria famaque herois crescunt. *The glory and fame of the hero grow.*

4.20 Virtus honorque militem servant. *Virtue and honor serve the soldier.*

4.21 Scutum galeaque corpus tegunt. *The shield and helmet protect the body.*

4.22 Victoria laudesque populum movent. *Victory and praises move the people.*

4.23 Fortuna fatumque viros ducunt. *Fortune and fate lead men.*

4.24 Castra vallumque exercitum defendunt. *The camp and rampart defend the army.*

4.25 Vulnus morsque milites sequuntur. *Wound and death follow the soldiers.*

4.26 Tubae cornuaque proelium nuntiant. *Trumpets and horns announce the battle.*

4.27 Arma thoraxque fulgent sole. *Arms and breastplate shine in the sun.*

4.28 Deus deaque proelia spectant. *God and goddess watch the battles.*

4.29 Pax victoriaque tandem veniunt. *Peace and victory finally come.*

4.30 Poeta carmineque facta narrant. *Poet and song tell the deeds.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

4.16 Dux militesque proelia magna pugnant.

4.17 Mars Bellonaque bella ferunt.

4.18 Hasta gladiusque hostes terrent.

4.19 Gloria famaque herois crescunt.

4.20 Virtus honorque militem servant.

4.21 Scutum galeaque corpus tegunt.

4.22 Victoria laudesque populum movent.

4.23 Fortuna fatumque viros ducunt.

4.24 Castra vallumque exercitum defendunt.

4.25 Vulnus morsque milites sequuntur.

4.26 Tubae cornuaque proelium nuntiant.

4.27 Arma thoraxque fulgent sole.

4.28 Deus deaque proelia spectant.

4.29 Pax victoriaque tandem veniunt.

4.30 Poeta carmineque facta narrant.

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Genre Section)

The epic poetry examples demonstrate advanced uses of "que" in military and heroic contexts:

1. Military Vocabulary:
    - Terms for weapons and armor
    - Military units and fortifications
    - Battle terminology
2. Poetic Devices:
    - Elevated language
    - Parallel structure with "que"
    - Dramatic pairings
3. Complex Constructions:
    - Abstract concepts as subjects
    - Multiple objects
    - Varied verb forms
4. Theme-specific Patterns:
    - Military equipment pairs
    - Abstract virtue pairs
    - Divine pairs

Genre Section: Romance

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

4.31 **Amor** *love* **desiderium**que *and longing* **iuvenem** *the young man* **consumunt** *consume*

4.32 **Pulchra** *beautiful* **puella** *girl* **flores** *flowers* **coronam**que *and a garland* **portat** *carries*

4.33 **Cor** *heart* **anima**que *and soul* **amore** *with love* **ardent** *burn*

4.34 **Lacrimae** *tears* **suspiria**que *and sighs* **amantis** *of the lover* **narrant** *tell*

4.35 **Venus** *Venus* **Cupido**que *and Cupid* **amantes** *lovers* **iuvant** *help*

4.36 **Luna** *the moon* **stella**que *and stars* **amorem** *love* **aspiciunt** *watch over*

4.37 **Spes** *hope* **fides**que *and faith* **in** *in* **corde** *the heart* **manent** *remain*

4.38 **Oscula** *kisses* **amplexus**que *and embraces* **dulcia** *sweet* **sunt** *are*

4.39 **Carmen** *song* **lyra**que *and lyre* **amorem** *love* **celebrant** *celebrate*

4.40 **Rosa** *rose* **myrtus**que *and myrtle* **amantes** *lovers* **coronant** *crown*

4.41 **Promissa** *promises* **vota**que *and vows* **aeterna** *eternal* **sunt** *are*

4.42 **Amica** *girlfriend* **amicus**que *and boyfriend* **sub** *under* **luna** *the moon* **ambulant** *walk*

4.43 **Verba** *words* **carmina**que *and songs* **amorem** *love* **declarant** *declare*

4.44 **Pulchritudo** *beauty* **gratia**que *and grace* **puellam** *the girl* **ornant** *adorn*

4.45 **Amor** *love* **felicitas**que *and happiness* **vitam** *life* **complent** *complete*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences with Translations)

4.31 Amor desideriumque iuvenem consumunt. *Love and longing consume the young man.*

4.32 Pulchra puella flores coronamque portat. *The beautiful girl carries flowers and a garland.*

4.33 Cor animaque amore ardent. *Heart and soul burn with love.*

4.34 Lacrimae suspiriaque amantis narrant. *Tears and sighs tell of the lover.*

4.35 Venus Cupidoque amantes iuvant. *Venus and Cupid help the lovers.*

4.36 Luna stellaque amorem aspiciunt. *The moon and stars watch over love.*

4.37 Spes fidesque in corde manent. *Hope and faith remain in the heart.*

4.38 Oscula amplexusque dulcia sunt. *Kisses and embraces are sweet.*

4.39 Carmen lyraque amorem celebrant. *Song and lyre celebrate love.*

4.40 Rosa myrtusque amantes coronant. *Rose and myrtle crown the lovers.*

4.41 Promissa votaque aeterna sunt. *Promises and vows are eternal.*

4.42 Amica amicusque sub luna ambulant. *Girlfriend and boyfriend walk under the moon.*

4.43 Verba carminaque amorem declarant. *Words and songs declare love.*

4.44 Pulchritudo gratiaque puellam ornant. *Beauty and grace adorn the girl.*

4.45 Amor felicitasque vitam complent. *Love and happiness complete life.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

4.31 Amor desideriumque iuvenem consumunt.

4.32 Pulchra puella flores coronamque portat.

4.33 Cor animaque amore ardent.

4.34 Lacrimae suspiriaque amantis narrant.

4.35 Venus Cupidoque amantes iuvant.

4.36 Luna stellaque amorem aspiciunt.

4.37 Spes fidesque in corde manent.

4.38 Oscula amplexusque dulcia sunt.

4.39 Carmen lyraque amorem celebrant.

4.40 Rosa myrtusque amantes coronant.

4.41 Promissa votaque aeterna sunt.

4.42 Amica amicusque sub luna ambulant.

4.43 Verba carminaque amorem declarant.

4.44 Pulchritudo gratiaque puellam ornant.

4.45 Amor felicitasque vitam complent.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Genre Section)

The romance genre examples showcase specific uses of "que" in romantic contexts:

1. Emotional Vocabulary:
    - Abstract feelings paired with "que"
    - Physical manifestations of love
    - Romantic actions and states
2. Poetic Elements:
    - Metaphorical pairs
    - Natural imagery combined with emotions
    - Traditional love poetry vocabulary
3. Grammatical Features:
    - Abstract nouns as subjects
    - Use of the dative of reference
    - Ablative of means/instrument
4. Thematic Patterns:
    - Pairing of lovers
    - Coupling of emotions
    - Joining of romantic symbols
5. Cultural References:
    - Traditional Roman love poetry elements
    - Mythological figures (Venus, Cupid)
    - Symbolic plants and objects

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 5 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 5: The Preposition "in"

Introduction

Today we study "in", one of Latin's most frequently used prepositions. It can mean both "in/on" (with ablative case) and "into/onto" (with accusative case).

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

5.1 **Puer** *the boy* **in scholā** *in school* **est** *is*

5.2 **Puella** *the girl* **in hortum** *into the garden* **currit** *runs*

5.3 **Liber** *the book* **in mensā** *on the table* **iacet** *lies*

5.4 **Agricola** *the farmer* **in agrum** *into the field* **ambulat** *walks*

5.5 **Aqua** *water* **in flūmine** *in the river* **fluit** *flows*

5.6 **Servus** *the slave* **in vīllam** *into the house* **intrat** *enters*

5.7 **Magister** *the teacher* **in templō** *in the temple* **stat** *stands*

5.8 **Nauta** *the sailor* **in mare** *into the sea* **spectat** *looks*

5.9 **Fēmina** *the woman* **in forō** *in the forum* **sedet** *sits*

5.10 **Puer** *the boy* **pilam** *the ball* **in āērem** *into the air* **iacit** *throws*

5.11 **Mīles** *the soldier* **in castrīs** *in the camp* **manet** *remains*

5.12 **Poēta** *the poet* **in silvam** *into the forest* **fugit** *flees*

5.13 **Rex** *the king* **in urbe** *in the city* **habitat** *lives*

5.31 **Pastor** *the shepherd* **ovēs** *the sheep* **in agrōs** *into the fields* **dūcit** *leads*

5.15 **Sacerdōs** *the priest* **in ārā** *at the altar* **stat** *stands*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences with Translations)

5.1 Puer in scholā est. *The boy is in school.*

5.2 Puella in hortum currit. *The girl runs into the garden.*

5.3 Liber in mensā iacet. *The book lies on the table.*

5.4 Agricola in agrum ambulat. *The farmer walks into the field.*

5.5 Aqua in flūmine fluit. *Water flows in the river.*

5.6 Servus in vīllam intrat. *The slave enters into the house.*

5.7 Magister in templō stat. *The teacher stands in the temple.*

5.8 Nauta in mare spectat. *The sailor looks into the sea.*

5.9 Fēmina in forō sedet. *The woman sits in the forum.*

5.10 Puer pilam in āērem iacit. *The boy throws the ball into the air.*

5.11 Mīles in castrīs manet. *The soldier remains in the camp.*

5.12 Poēta in silvam fugit. *The poet flees into the forest.*

5.13 Rex in urbe habitat. *The king lives in the city.*

5.31 Pastor ovēs in agrōs dūcit. *The shepherd leads the sheep into the fields.*

5.15 Sacerdōs in ārā stat. *The priest stands at the altar.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

5.1 Puer in scholā est.

5.2 Puella in hortum currit.

5.3 Liber in mensā iacet.

5.4 Agricola in agrum ambulat.

5.5 Aqua in flūmine fluit.

5.6 Servus in vīllam intrat.

5.7 Magister in templō stat.

5.8 Nauta in mare spectat.

5.9 Fēmina in forō sedet.

5.10 Puer pilam in āērem iacit.

5.11 Mīles in castrīs manet.

5.12 Poēta in silvam fugit.

5.13 Rex in urbe habitat.

5.31 Pastor ovēs in agrōs dūcit.

5.15 Sacerdōs in ārā stat.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammatical Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "in" requires attention to these key points:

1. The Two Uses of "in":
    - With ablative case: location ("in, on")
    - With accusative case: motion ("into, onto")
2. Case Recognition:
    - Ablative endings: -ā, -ō, -ī, -e, -ibus
    - Accusative endings: -am, -um, -em, -ōs, -ās
3. Motion vs. Location:
    - Motion (accusative): shows movement toward
    - Location (ablative): shows position/place where
4. Common Patterns:
    - in + ablative with verbs like est, stat, sedet, manet
    - in + accusative with verbs like currit, intrat, fugit

5. Word Order:
    - "in" typically comes before its noun
    - Sometimes separated by other words in poetry

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans conceived of space and movement helps master "in":

1. Roman Spatial Concepts:
    - Romans were precise about location vs. movement
    - Public spaces (forum, temple) were central to life
    - Different prepositions for different spatial relations
2. Cultural Significance:
    - Sacred spaces required specific prepositions
    - Military terms had precise spatial meanings
    - Urban vs. rural distinctions mattered
3. Modern Comparisons:
    - English "in" is broader than Latin "in"
    - Romans more specific about motion direction
    - Spatial precision reflects Roman engineering

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (Book II, line 19):

In *into* **latus** *the side* **in** *into* **aluum** *the belly* **ingentēs** *huge* **cavernās** *cavities*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Into the side and into the belly's huge cavities" (Describing the Trojan Horse)

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Vergil uses "in" twice here to emphasize the enormous size of the Trojan Horse, with both instances showing motion (accusative case).

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Both uses of "in" take accusative case
- Shows motion/direction into the horse
- Parallel structure emphasizes size
- Multiple prepositional phrases typical of epic style

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Historical Narrative Genre Section

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

5.16 **Caesar** *Caesar* **in Galliam** *into Gaul* **cum exercitū** *with the army* **vēnit** *came*

5.17 **Mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **in castrīs** *in the camp* **novīs** *new* **manēbant** *were remaining*

5.18 **Dux** *the leader* **in montibus** *in the mountains* **hostēs** *the enemies* **vidēbat** *was seeing*

5.19 **Lēgātī** *the ambassadors* **in urbem** *into the city* **Rōmam** *Rome* **festīnābant** *were hurrying*

5.20 **Senātōrēs** *the senators* **in cūriā** *in the senate house* **sedēbant** *were sitting*

5.21 **Imperātor** *the emperor* **in forō** *in the forum* **populum** *the people* **salūtābat** *was greeting*

5.22 **Cōnsul** *the consul* **in prōvinciam** *into the province* **novam** *new* **properābat** *was hastening*

5.23 **Barbarī** *the barbarians* **in castra** *into the camp* **Rōmāna** *Roman* **inrumpēbant** *were breaking*

5.24 **Explorātōrēs** *the scouts* **in silvīs** *in the woods* **latēbant** *were hiding*

5.25 **Equitēs** *the cavalry* **in vallem** *into the valley* **dēscendēbant** *were descending*

5.26 **Cīvēs** *the citizens* **in templō** *in the temple* **deōs** *the gods* **ōrābant** *were praying to*

5.27 **Hostēs** *the enemies* **in fugam** *into flight* **sē** *themselves* **vertēbant** *were turning*

5.28 **Mercātōrēs** *the merchants* **in portū** *in the harbor* **nāvēs** *ships* **parābant** *were preparing*

5.29 **Agricolae** *the farmers* **in agrīs** *in the fields* **labōrābant** *were working*

5.30 **Victōrēs** *the victors* **in triumphō** *in triumph* **urbem** *the city* **intrābant** *were entering*

Part B (Complete Sentences with Translations)

5.16 Caesar in Galliam cum exercitū vēnit. *Caesar came into Gaul with the army.*

5.17 Mīlitēs in castrīs novīs manēbant. *The soldiers were remaining in the new camp.*

5.18 Dux in montibus hostēs vidēbat. *The leader was seeing the enemies in the mountains.*

5.19 Lēgātī in urbem Rōmam festīnābant. *The ambassadors were hurrying into the city of Rome.*

5.20 Senātōrēs in cūriā sedēbant. *The senators were sitting in the senate house.*

5.21 Imperātor in forō populum salūtābat. *The emperor was greeting the people in the forum.*

5.22 Cōnsul in prōvinciam novam properābat. *The consul was hastening into the new province.*

5.23 Barbarī in castra Rōmāna inrumpēbant. *The barbarians were breaking into the Roman camp.*

5.24 Explorātōrēs in silvīs latēbant. *The scouts were hiding in the woods.*

5.25 Equitēs in vallem dēscendēbant. *The cavalry were descending into the valley.*

5.26 Cīvēs in templō deōs ōrābant. *The citizens were praying to the gods in the temple.*

5.27 Hostēs in fugam sē vertēbant. *The enemies were turning themselves into flight.*

5.28 Mercātōrēs in portū nāvēs parābant. *The merchants were preparing ships in the harbor.*

5.29 Agricolae in agrīs labōrābant. *The farmers were working in the fields.*

5.30 Victōrēs in triumphō urbem intrābant. *The victors were entering the city in triumph.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

5.16 Caesar in Galliam cum exercitū vēnit.

5.17 Mīlitēs in castrīs novīs manēbant.

5.18 Dux in montibus hostēs vidēbat.

5.19 Lēgātī in urbem Rōmam festīnābant.

5.20 Senātōrēs in cūriā sedēbant.

5.21 Imperātor in forō populum salūtābat.

5.22 Cōnsul in prōvinciam novam properābat.

5.23 Barbarī in castra Rōmāna inrumpēbant.

5.24 Explorātōrēs in silvīs latēbant.

5.25 Equitēs in vallem dēscendēbant.

5.26 Cīvēs in templō deōs ōrābant.

5.27 Hostēs in fugam sē vertēbant.

5.28 Mercātōrēs in portū nāvēs parābant.

5.29 Agricolae in agrīs labōrābant.

5.30 Victōrēs in triumphō urbem intrābant.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammatical Explanation for Historical Genre)

The historical narrative genre shows specific patterns with "in":

1. Military Context:
    - in + accusative for military movements (in Galliam, in castra)
    - in + ablative for military positions (in castrīs, in montibus)
    - Common with verbs of motion like vēnit, inrumpēbant
2. Time and Aspect:
    - Imperfect tense common for ongoing situations (manēbant, sedēbant)
    - Perfect tense for completed actions (vēnit)
    - "in" helps establish setting and movement
3. Political and Social Spaces:

    - in + ablative for institutional locations (in cūriā, in forō)
    - in + accusative for ceremonial movement (in triumphō)
    - Formal vs informal spaces distinguished
4. Special Uses:
    - Idiomatic phrases (in fugam sē vertēbant - "turned to flight")
    - Ceremonial expressions (in triumphō)
    - Geographic designations (in Galliam)
5. Historical Style Features:
    - Multiple prepositional phrases common
    - Clear distinction between motion and location
    - Precise military and political vocabulary
    - Formal register appropriate to historical narrative

Lesson 6 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: nōn (not)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

6.1 **Puer** *the boy* **nōn** *not* **dormit** *sleeps*

6.2 **Magister** *the teacher* **nōn** *not* **venit** *comes*

6.3 **Canis** *the dog* **nōn** *not* **currit** *runs*

6.4 **Puella** *the girl* **nōn** *not* **cantat** *sings*

6.5 **Servus** *the slave* **nōn** *not* **laborat** *works*

6.6 **Miles** *the soldier* **nōn** *not* **pugnat** *fights*

6.7 **Agricola** *the farmer* **nōn** *not* **arat** *plows*

6.8 **Regina** *the queen* **nōn** *not* **imperat** *commands*

6.9 **Nauta** *the sailor* **nōn** *not* **navigat** *sails*

6.10 **Poeta** *the poet* **nōn** *not* **scribit** *writes*

6.11 **Femina** *the woman* **nōn** *not* **ridet** *laughs*

6.12 **Senex** *the old man* **nōn** *not* **ambulat** *walks*

6.13 **Pater** *the father* **nōn** *not* **clamat** *shouts*

6.31 **Mater** *the mother* **nōn** *not* **coquit** *cooks*

6.15 **Mercator** *the merchant* **nōn** *not* **vendit** *sells*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences with Translations)

6.1 Puer nōn dormit. *The boy does not sleep.*

6.2 Magister nōn venit. *The teacher does not come.*

6.3 Canis nōn currit. *The dog does not run.*

6.4 Puella nōn cantat. *The girl does not sing.*

6.5 Servus nōn laborat. *The slave does not work.*

6.6 Miles nōn pugnat. *The soldier does not fight.*

6.7 Agricola nōn arat. *The farmer does not plow.*

6.8 Regina nōn imperat. *The queen does not command.*

6.9 Nauta nōn navigat. *The sailor does not sail.*

6.10 Poeta nōn scribit. *The poet does not write.*

6.11 Femina nōn ridet. *The woman does not laugh.*

6.12 Senex nōn ambulat. *The old man does not walk.*

6.13 Pater nōn clamat. *The father does not shout.*

6.31 Mater nōn coquit. *The mother does not cook.*

6.15 Mercator nōn vendit. *The merchant does not sell.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

6.1 Puer nōn dormit.

6.2 Magister nōn venit.

6.3 Canis nōn currit.

6.4 Puella nōn cantat.

6.5 Servus nōn laborat.

6.6 Miles nōn pugnat.

6.7 Agricola nōn arat.

6.8 Regina nōn imperat.

6.9 Nauta nōn navigat.

6.10 Poeta nōn scribit.

6.11 Femina nōn ridet.

6.12 Senex nōn ambulat.

6.13 Pater nōn clamat.

6.31 Mater nōn coquit.

6.15 Mercator nōn vendit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "nōn" is straightforward as it corresponds directly to English "not". Here are the key points:

1. Position in the Sentence:
    - "Nōn" typically comes directly before the word it negates
    - Most commonly placed before the verb
    - Creates a simple negative statement
2. Usage with Verbs:
    - Works with any tense
    - Does not require auxiliary verbs like English "do/does not"
    - Latin: "Puer nōn dormit"
    - English: "The boy does not sleep"
3. Pronunciation Note:
    - The macron (ō) indicates a long vowel
    - Pronounced like "known" without the 'k' sound
4. Important Differences from English:
    - No double negatives in classical Latin
    - No need for helping verbs (do, does, did)
    - Direct and economical negation

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used negation helps connect to the language:

1. Roman Directness:
    - Latin negation reflects Roman cultural value of directness
    - Simple "nōn" shows straightforward communication style
    - Contrasts with English's more complex negative constructions
2. Historical Context:
    - Used in everything from legal documents to graffiti
    - Found in famous phrases like "nōn scholae sed vitae discimus" (We learn not for school but for life)
3. Modern Relevance:
    - Still used in scientific and legal terminology
    - Found in modern mottos and phrases
    - Helps understand English words with negative prefixes

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Caesar's "Gallic War":

"Gallia *Gaul* **est** *is* **omnis** *all* **divisa** *divided* **in** *into* **partes** *parts* **tres,** *three,* **quarum** *of which* **unam** *one* **incolunt** *inhabit* **Belgae,** *the Belgae,* **aliam** *another* **Aquitani,** *the Aquitani,* **tertiam** *the third* **qui** *who* **ipsorum** *their own* **lingua** *in language* **Celtae,** *Celts,* **nostra** *our* **Galli** *Gauls* **appellantur.** *are called.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur."

"All Gaul is divided into three parts, of which the Belgae inhabit one, the Aquitani another, and those who in their own language are called Celts, in ours Gauls, the third."

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This opening line from Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" is one of the most famous in Latin literature. While it doesn't use "nōn", it demonstrates how Latin word order differs from English and how concise Latin can be.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Word order shows flexibility of Latin syntax
- Present tense verbs (est, incolunt, appellantur)
- Demonstrates noun cases (nominative, accusative)
- Shows how Latin can express complex ideas clearly

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Mystery Genre Section

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

6.16 **Testis** *the witness* **veritatem** *the truth* **nōn** *not* **dicit** *tells*

6.17 **Fur** *the thief* **pecuniam** *the money* **nōn** *not* **invenit** *finds*

6.18 **Iudex** *the judge* **scelus** *the crime* **nōn** *not* **credit** *believes*

6.19 **Custōs** *the guard* **sonitum** *the sound* **nōn** *not* **audit** *hears*

6.20 **Reus** *the accused* **culpam** *guilt* **nōn** *not* **confitetur** *confesses*

6.21 **Investigator** *the investigator* **vestigia** *the traces* **nōn** *not* **reperit** *finds*

6.22 **Ancilla** *the maid* **furtum** *the theft* **nōn** *not* **videt** *sees*

6.23 **Dominus** *the master* **servum** *the slave* **nōn** *not* **accusat** *accuses*

6.24 **Sacerdos** *the priest* **templum** *the temple* **nōn** *not* **defendit** *defends*

6.25 **Miles** *the soldier* **periculum** *the danger* **nōn** *not* **timet** *fears*

6.26 **Scriba** *the scribe* **litteras** *the letters* **nōn** *not* **legit** *reads*

6.27 **Senex** *the old man* **mysterium** *the mystery* **nōn** *not* **intellegit** *understands*

6.28 **Femina** *the woman* **clamorem** *the shout* **nōn** *not* **audit** *hears*

6.29 **Puer** *the boy* **latronem** *the robber* **nōn** *not* **videt** *sees*

6.30 **Iudex** *the judge* **mendacium** *the lie* **nōn** *not* **cognoscit** *recognizes*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences with Translations)

6.16 Testis veritatem nōn dicit. *The witness does not tell the truth.*

6.17 Fur pecuniam nōn invenit. *The thief does not find the money.*

6.18 Iudex scelus nōn credit. *The judge does not believe the crime.*

6.19 Custōs sonitum nōn audit. *The guard does not hear the sound.*

6.20 Reus culpam nōn confitetur. *The accused does not confess guilt.*

6.21 Investigator vestigia nōn reperit. *The investigator does not find the traces.*

6.22 Ancilla furtum nōn videt. *The maid does not see the theft.*

6.23 Dominus servum nōn accusat. *The master does not accuse the slave.*

6.24 Sacerdos templum nōn defendit. *The priest does not defend the temple.*

6.25 Miles periculum nōn timet. *The soldier does not fear the danger.*

6.26 Scriba litteras nōn legit. *The scribe does not read the letters.*

6.27 Senex mysterium nōn intellegit. *The old man does not understand the mystery.*

6.28 Femina clamorem nōn audit. *The woman does not hear the shout.*

6.29 Puer latronem nōn videt. *The boy does not see the robber.*

6.30 Iudex mendacium nōn cognoscit. *The judge does not recognize the lie.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

6.16 Testis veritatem nōn dicit.

6.17 Fur pecuniam nōn invenit.

6.18 Iudex scelus nōn credit.

6.19 Custōs sonitum nōn audit.

6.20 Reus culpam nōn confitetur.

6.21 Investigator vestigia nōn reperit.

6.22 Ancilla furtum nōn videt.

6.23 Dominus servum nōn accusat.

6.24 Sacerdos templum nōn defendit.

6.25 Miles periculum nōn timet.

6.26 Scriba litteras nōn legit.

6.27 Senex mysterium nōn intellegit.

6.28 Femina clamorem nōn audit.

6.29 Puer latronem nōn videt.

6.30 Iudex mendacium nōn cognoscit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Genre Section)

The mystery genre section demonstrates more complex uses of "nōn":

1. Object-Verb Relationships:
    - Most sentences include direct objects in accusative case
    - "Nōn" negates actions involving these objects
    - Example: "vestigia nōn reperit" (does not find the traces)
2. Vocabulary Fields:
    - Legal terms: iudex, reus, testis
    - Crime-related words: fur, latro, scelus
    - Investigation terms: investigator, vestigia
3. Sentence Patterns:
    - Subject + Object + nōn + Verb
    - Shows how Latin word order can vary while maintaining meaning
    - Demonstrates flexibility of Latin syntax in narrative context
4. Verb Types:
    - **Verbs of understanding: intellegit, cognoscit**
    - Verbs of speech: dicit, confitetur
    - Verbs of action: reperit, defendit
5. Case Usage:
    - Accusative for direct objects (veritatem, pecuniam, scelus)
    - Nominative for subjects (testis, fur, iudex)
    - Shows how negation works with different grammatical roles
6. Literary Devices:
    - Builds suspense through negation
    - Creates mystery through what is not seen, heard, or known
    - Demonstrates how Latin can be used for narrative effect
7. Teaching Notes for English Speakers:

- These sentences are more complex than the main lesson
- Show how "nōn" works in real narrative contexts
- Introduce vocabulary related to law and investigation
- Demonstrate how Latin expresses concepts relevant to modern detective stories

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Colloquium: Dē Studiīs (About Studies)

Part A (Interleaved Text)

Marcus: *Marcus:* **Salvē,** *Hello,* **Luci!** *Lucius!* **Cūr** *Why* **hodiē** *today* **in** *in* **scholam** *to school* **nōn** *not* **vēnistī?** *did you come?*

Lucius: *Lucius:* **Salvē,** *Hello,* **Marce!** *Marcus!* **Librōs** *books* **meōs** *my* **nōn** *not* **invēnī.** *I found.*

Marcus: *Marcus:* **Num** *Really?* **omnēs** *all* **librōs** *books* **nōn** *not* **habēs?** *do you have?*

Lucius: *Lucius:* **Ita,** *Yes,* **sed** *but* **grammaticam** *grammar book* **nōn** *not* **habeō.** *I have.*

Marcus: *Marcus:* **Ego** *I* **quoque** *also* **grammaticam** *grammar book* **meam** *my* **nōn** *not* **habeō.** *have.* **Magister** *The teacher* **nōn** *not* **erit** *will be* **laetus!** *happy!*

Lucius: *Lucius:* **Quid** *What* **nunc** *now* **faciēmus?** *shall we do?*

Marcus: *Marcus:* **Nōn** *Not* **sciō,** *I know,* **sed** *but* **domum** *home* **nōn** *not* **redeō.** *I return.*

Lucius: *Lucius:* **Rēctē** *Rightly* **dīcis.** *you speak.* **Magister** *The teacher* **nōs** *us* **nōn** *not* **culpābit** *will blame* **sī** *if* **simul** *together* **explicāmus.** *we explain.*

Part B (Complete Translations)

Marcus: Salvē, Luci! Cūr hodiē in scholam nōn vēnistī? *Hello, Lucius! Why didn't you come to school today?*

Lucius: Salvē, Marce! Librōs meōs nōn invēnī. *Hello, Marcus! I didn't find my books.*

Marcus: Num omnēs librōs nōn habēs? *Really? You don't have all your books?*

Lucius: Ita, sed grammaticam nōn habeō. *Yes, but I don't have my grammar book.*

Marcus: Ego quoque grammaticam meam nōn habeō. Magister nōn erit laetus! *I also don't have my grammar book. The teacher won't be happy!*

Lucius: Quid nunc faciēmus? *What shall we do now?*

Marcus: Nōn sciō, sed domum nōn redeō. *I don't know, but I'm not going home.*

Lucius: Rēctē dīcis. Magister nōs nōn culpābit sī simul explicāmus. *You speak correctly. The teacher won't blame us if we explain together.*

Part C (Latin Only)

Marcus: Salvē, Luci! Cūr hodiē in scholam nōn vēnistī?

Lucius: Salvē, Marce! Librōs meōs nōn invēnī.

Marcus: Num omnēs librōs nōn habēs?

Lucius: Ita, sed grammaticam nōn habeō.

Marcus: Ego quoque grammaticam meam nōn habeō. Magister nōn erit laetus!

Lucius: Quid nunc faciēmus?

Marcus: Nōn sciō, sed domum nōn redeō.

Lucius: Rēctē dīcis. Magister nōs nōn culpābit sī simul explicāmus.

Part D (Grammar Notes)

1. Dialogue Structure:
    - Uses vocative case for direct address (Luci, Marce)
    - Short, natural exchanges typical of student conversation
    - Mix of questions and statements showing different uses of nōn
2. Forms of Negation:
    - Simple present: nōn habeō (I don't have)
    - Future: nōn erit (won't be), nōn culpābit (won't blame)
    - Perfect: nōn invēnī (I didn't find)
    - With questions: cūr...nōn (why...not)
3. Word Order:
    - Nōn typically precedes the verb it negates
    - Flexible positioning for emphasis
    - Natural conversational word order
4. Cultural Context:
    - Reflects typical school situation
    - Shows relationship between students and teacher
    - Demonstrates Roman educational concerns
5. Educational Value:
    - Practical vocabulary for school situations
    - Common verb forms in context
    - Natural use of cases and pronouns
    - Authentic-style student dialogue

Lesson 7 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson on "hic haec hoc" (this, these)

Introduction

Today we will learn the demonstrative pronoun "hic haec hoc" meaning "this" or "these". This is a crucial word for pointing out people, things, or ideas that are near to the speaker.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

7.1 **Hic puer** *this boy* **in scholā** *in school* **est** *is*

7.2 **Haec puella** *this girl* **librum** *a book* **legit** *reads*

7.3 **Hoc templum** *this temple* **magnum** *large* **est** *is*

7.4 **Hic vir** *this man* **bonus** *good* **est** *is*

7.5 **Haec femina** *this woman* **sapiens** *wise* **est** *is*

7.6 **Hoc verbum** *this word* **difficile** *difficult* **est** *is*

7.7 **Hi pueri** *these boys* **in viā** *in the street* **sunt** *are*

7.8 **Hae puellae** *these girls* **cantant** *sing*

7.9 **Haec templa** *these temples* **antiqua** *ancient* **sunt** *are*

7.10 **Hic liber** *this book* **meus** *my* **est** *is*

7.11 **Haec terra** *this land* **pulchra** *beautiful* **est** *is*

7.12 **Hoc bellum** *this war* **longum** *long* **est** *is*

7.13 **Hi viri** *these men* **fortes** *brave* **sunt** *are*

7.31 **Hae feminae** *these women* **doctae** *learned* **sunt** *are*

7.15 **Haec verba** *these words* **vera** *true* **sunt** *are*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

7.1 Hic puer in scholā est. *This boy is in school.*

7.2 Haec puella librum legit. *This girl reads a book.*

7.3 Hoc templum magnum est. *This temple is large.*

7.4 Hic vir bonus est. *This man is good.*

7.5 Haec femina sapiens est. *This woman is wise.*

7.6 Hoc verbum difficile est. *This word is difficult.*

7.7 Hi pueri in viā sunt. *These boys are in the street.*

7.8 Hae puellae cantant. *These girls sing.*

7.9 Haec templa antiqua sunt. *These temples are ancient.*

7.10 Hic liber meus est. *This book is mine.*

7.11 Haec terra pulchra est. *This land is beautiful.*

7.12 Hoc bellum longum est. *This war is long.*

7.13 Hi viri fortes sunt. *These men are brave.*

7.31 Hae feminae doctae sunt. *These women are learned.*

7.15 Haec verba vera sunt. *These words are true.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

7.1 Hic puer in scholā est.

7.2 Haec puella librum legit.

7.3 Hoc templum magnum est.

7.4 Hic vir bonus est.

7.5 Haec femina sapiens est.

7.6 Hoc verbum difficile est.

7.7 Hi pueri in viā sunt.

7.8 Hae puellae cantant.

7.9 Haec templa antiqua sunt.

7.10 Hic liber meus est.

7.11 Haec terra pulchra est.

7.12 Hoc bellum longum est.

7.13 Hi viri fortes sunt.

7.31 Hae feminae doctae sunt.

7.15 Haec verba vera sunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammatical Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, "hic haec hoc" is a demonstrative pronoun meaning "this" (singular) or "these" (plural). Here's how it works:

Singular:

- Masculine: hic (this)
- Feminine: haec (this)
- Neuter: hoc (this)

Plural:

- Masculine: hi (these)
- Feminine: hae (these)
- Neuter: haec (these)

Key points for English speakers:

1. Unlike English "this/these", Latin changes form based on gender and number
2. Must agree with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case
3. Used for things near to the speaker (contrast with "ille" for "that")

Common patterns seen in our examples:

- With esse (to be): "Hic puer bonus est" (This boy is good)
- As subject: "Haec puella legit" (This girl reads)
- With adjectives: "Hoc templum magnum" (This large temple)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "hic haec hoc" connects to Roman cultural practices of pointing and referring to nearby objects. In Roman courts, lawyers would use "hic" to refer to their client (present) versus "ille" for the opposition. In literature, authors use these demonstratives to create vivid scenes, bringing objects and people close to the reader.

The precision of Latin demonstratives reflects the Roman love of order and clarity. While English makes do with "this" and "that", Latin's detailed system shows how Romans viewed their world with greater grammatical precision.

In Roman education, students learned these pronouns through repetitive exercises, often writing them on wax tablets - a practice that helped cement the gender and number distinctions we still study today.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved text)

From Cicero's First Catilinarian Oration: **Hic** *this* **tamen** *nevertheless* **vivit** *lives*. **Vivit?** *Lives?* **immo vero** *indeed* **etiam** *even* **in senatum** *into the senate* **venit** *comes*.

Part F-B (Complete translation)

"This man nevertheless lives. Lives? Indeed, he even comes into the senate."

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "hic" dramatically to point at Catiline, who is present in the Senate. The demonstrative creates immediacy and tension, showing how Latin demonstratives can build dramatic effect.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Hic" is nominative masculine singular
- Functions as subject of "vivit"
- Demonstrates typical use pointing to someone present
- Shows emotional force of demonstrative pronouns

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Mystery Genre Section

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

7.16 **Hic homo** *this man* **suspectus** *suspicious* **est** *is*

7.17 **Haec epistula** *this letter* **secreta** *secret* **continet** *contains* **verba** *words*

7.18 **Hoc signum** *this sign* **in parietē** *on the wall* **scriptum est** *was written*

7.19 **Hi testēs** *these witnesses* **vērum** *the truth* **dīcunt** *tell*

7.20 **Hae clāvēs** *these keys* **mystērium** *the mystery* **aperiunt** *unlock*

7.21 **Haec vestigia** *these tracks* **in hortō** *in the garden* **sunt** *are*

7.22 **Hic gladius** *this sword* **cruentus** *bloody* **est** *is*

7.23 **Haec femina** *this woman* **omnēs** *all* **rēs** *things* **vidit** *saw*

7.24 **Hoc cubiculum** *this room* **clausum** *locked* **erat** *was*

7.25 **Hi servī** *these slaves* **dominum** *the master* **quaerunt** *seek*

7.26 **Hae fenestrae** *these windows* **fractae** *broken* **sunt** *are*

7.27 **Haec indicia** *these clues* **culpam** *guilt* **demonstrant** *show*

7.28 **Hic index** *this informer* **vēritātem** *the truth* **scit** *knows*

7.29 **Haec nox** *this night* **perīculōsa** *dangerous* **est** *is*

7.30 **Hoc documentum** *this document* **fūrtum** *the theft* **explicat** *explains*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

7.16 Hic homo suspectus est. *This man is suspicious.*

7.17 Haec epistula secreta continet verba. *This letter contains secret words.*

7.18 Hoc signum in parietē scriptum est. *This sign was written on the wall.*

7.19 Hi testēs vērum dīcunt. *These witnesses tell the truth.*

7.20 Hae clāvēs mystērium aperiunt. *These keys unlock the mystery.*

7.21 Haec vestigia in hortō sunt. *These tracks are in the garden.*

7.22 Hic gladius cruentus est. *This sword is bloody.*

7.23 Haec femina omnēs rēs vidit. *This woman saw all things.*

7.24 Hoc cubiculum clausum erat. *This room was locked.*

7.25 Hi servī dominum quaerunt. *These slaves seek the master.*

7.26 Hae fenestrae fractae sunt. *These windows are broken.*

7.27 Haec indicia culpam demonstrant. *These clues show guilt.*

7.28 Hic index vēritātem scit. *This informer knows the truth.*

7.29 Haec nox perīculōsa est. *This night is dangerous.*

7.30 Hoc documentum fūrtum explicat. *This document explains the theft.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

7.16 Hic homo suspectus est.

7.17 Haec epistula secreta continet verba.

7.18 Hoc signum in parietē scriptum est.

7.19 Hi testēs vērum dīcunt.

7.20 Hae clāvēs mystērium aperiunt.

7.21 Haec vestigia in hortō sunt.

7.22 Hic gladius cruentus est.

7.23 Haec femina omnēs rēs vidit.

7.24 Hoc cubiculum clausum erat.

7.25 Hi servī dominum quaerunt.

7.26 Hae fenestrae fractae sunt.

7.27 Haec indicia culpam demonstrant.

7.28 Hic index vēritātem scit.

7.29 Haec nox perīculōsa est.

7.30 Hoc documentum fūrtum explicat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammatical Explanation for Mystery Genre)

In mystery narratives, demonstrative pronouns like "hic haec hoc" play a crucial role in pointing out evidence and suspects. Note how they're used in this section:

1. Physical Evidence:
    - With objects: "hic gladius" (this sword)
    - With locations: "hoc cubiculum" (this room)
    - With clues: "haec vestigia" (these tracks)
2. Witness Statements:
    - People: "hi testēs" (these witnesses)
    - Observations: "haec femina vidit" (this woman saw)
3. Documents:
    - Written evidence: "haec epistula" (this letter)
    - Official records: "hoc documentum" (this document)

The demonstrative pronouns help create immediacy and draw attention to key elements in the mystery narrative, making them essential tools for building suspense and revealing clues.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Corderius Dialogue: A Conversation About New Books

Part A (Interleaved Latin and English)

Characters:

Mārcus *Marcus* et **Lūcius** *and Lucius*

M: Quid *what* **est** *is* **hic** *this* **liber** *book* **novus** *new*?

L: Hic *this* **liber** *book* **est** *is* **de bellō** *about war.*

M: Estne *is* **hic** *this* **liber** *book* **bonus** *good*?

L: Ita *yes*, **hic** *this* **liber** *book* **bonus** *good* **est** *is*. **Et** *and* **haec** *these* **verba** *words* **pulchra** *beautiful* **sunt** *are*.

M: Ubi *where* **hunc** *this* **librum** *book* **invenīstī** *did you find*?

L: In *in* **illā** *that* **bibliothēcā** *library.* **Haec** *this* **bibliothēca** *library* **multa** *many* **nova** *new* **volumina** *volumes* **habet** *has.*

M: Hoc *this* **est** *is* **optimum** *excellent*! **Visne** *do you want* **mihi** *to me* **hunc** *this* **librum** *book* **dare** *to give*?

L: Nōn *not* **hodiē** *today.* **Hoc** *this* **tempore** *time* **librum** *book* **legō** *I am reading*. **Crās** *tomorrow* **tibi** *to you* **dabō** *I will give*.

M: Grātiās *thanks* **tibi** *to you* **agō** *I give*. **Hi** *these* **librī** *books* **novī** *new* **mē** *me* **dēlectant** *delight*.

L: Hae *these* **litterae** *letters* **omnēs** *all* **studiōsōs** *studious people* **dēlectant** *delight*.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Latin and English)

M: Quid est hic liber novus? *What is this new book?*

L: Hic liber est de bellō. *This book is about war.*

M: Estne hic liber bonus? *Is this book good?*

L: Ita, hic liber bonus est. Et haec verba pulchra sunt. *Yes, this book is good. And these words are beautiful.*

M: Ubi hunc librum invenīstī? *Where did you find this book?*

L: In illā bibliothēcā. Haec bibliothēca multa nova volumina habet. *In that library. This library has many new volumes.*

M: Hoc est optimum! Visne mihi hunc librum dare? *This is excellent! Do you want to give this book to me?*

L: Nōn hodiē. Hoc tempore librum legō. Crās tibi dabō. *Not today. At this time I am reading the book. Tomorrow I will give it to you.*

M: Grātiās tibi agō. Hi librī novī mē dēlectant. *I give thanks to you. These new books delight me.*

L: Hae litterae omnēs studiōsōs dēlectant. *These writings delight all studious people.*

Part C (Latin Only)

M: Quid est hic liber novus?

L: Hic liber est de bellō.

M: Estne hic liber bonus?

L: Ita, hic liber bonus est. Et haec verba pulchra sunt.

M: Ubi hunc librum invenīstī?

L: In illā bibliothēcā. Haec bibliothēca multa nova volumina habet.

M: Hoc est optimum! Visne mihi hunc librum dare?

L: Nōn hodiē. Hoc tempore librum legō. Crās tibi dabō.

M: Grātiās tibi agō. Hi librī novī mē dēlectant.

L: Hae litterae omnēs studiōsōs dēlectant.

Part D (Grammatical Analysis)

This Corderius dialogue demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Uses of "hic, haec, hoc":
    - Nominative singular masculine: "hic liber" (this book)

    - Accusative singular masculine: "hunc librum" (this book)
    - Nominative plural masculine: "hi librī" (these books)
    - Nominative plural feminine: "hae litterae" (these writings)
2. Case Usage:
    - Dative of indirect object: "mihi" (to me), "tibi" (to you)
    - Accusative of direct object: "librum" (book)
    - Ablative of time: "hoc tempore" (at this time)
3. Verb Forms:
    - Present tense: "est" (is), "legō" (I read)
    - Future tense: "dabō" (I will give)
    - Perfect tense: "invenīstī" (you found)
4. Question Formation:
    - "-ne" questions: "Estne" (is it?)
    - Question word: "Quid" (what)
    - Indirect questions with "vis" + infinitive

The dialogue follows typical Corderius style with:

- Short, clear exchanges
- Natural progression of thought
- Practical vocabulary
- Common everyday situations
- Educational content

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 8 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: ille illa illud (that)

Introduction

Today we will learn the demonstrative adjective/pronoun "ille illa illud" meaning "that". This is an essential word in Latin, used both as an adjective ("that book") and as a pronoun ("that one").

Part A (Interleaved Latin-English text)

8.1 **Ille vir** *that man* **ambulat** *walks* **in viā** *in the street*

8.2 **Illa puella** *that girl* **cantat** *sings* **bellē** *beautifully*

8.3 **Illud templum** *that temple* **est** *is* **magnum** *large*

8.4 **Illī virī** *those men* **sunt** *are* **fortēs** *brave*

8.5 **Illae fēminae** *those women* **sedent** *sit* **sub arboribus** *under the trees*

8.6 **Illa** *that woman* **mē** *me* **vocat** *calls*

8.7 **Ille** *that man* **est** *is* **bonus** *good*

8.8 **Illud** *that thing* **videō** *I see* **in agrō** *in the field*

8.9 **Cum illō** *with that man* **ambulō** *I walk* **ad forum** *to the forum*

8.10 **Ab illā** *from that woman* **epistulam** *a letter* **accipiō** *I receive*

8.11 **Illī** *to that man* **librum** *the book* **dō** *I give*

8.12 **Ad illam** *to that woman* **currō** *I run* **celeriter** *quickly*

8.13 **Illa tempora** *those times* **erant** *were* **difficilia** *difficult*

8.31 **Illōs virōs** *those men* **timēmus** *we fear*

8.15 **Per illās viās** *through those streets* **ambulāmus** *we walk*

Part B (Complete sentences)

8.1 Ille vir ambulat in viā. *That man walks in the street.*

8.2 Illa puella cantat bellē. *That girl sings beautifully.*

8.3 Illud templum est magnum. *That temple is large.*

8.4 Illī virī sunt fortēs. *Those men are brave.*

8.5 Illae fēminae sedent sub arboribus. *Those women sit under the trees.*

8.6 Illa mē vocat. *That woman calls me.*

8.7 Ille est bonus. *That man is good.*

8.8 Illud videō in agrō. *I see that thing in the field.*

8.9 Cum illō ambulō ad forum. *I walk with that man to the forum.*

8.10 Ab illā epistulam accipiō. *I receive a letter from that woman.*

8.11 Illī librum dō. *I give the book to that man.*

8.12 Ad illam currō celeriter. *I run quickly to that woman.*

8.13 Illa tempora erant difficilia. *Those times were difficult.*

8.31 Illōs virōs timēmus. *We fear those men.*

8.15 Per illās viās ambulāmus. *We walk through those streets.*

Part C (Latin Only)

8.1 Ille vir ambulat in viā.

8.2 Illa puella cantat bellē.

8.3 Illud templum est magnum.

8.4 Illī virī sunt fortēs.

8.5 Illae fēminae sedent sub arboribus.

8.6 Illa mē vocat.

8.7 Ille est bonus.

8.8 Illud videō in agrō.

8.9 Cum illō ambulō ad forum.

8.10 Ab illā epistulam accipiō.

8.11 Illī librum dō.

8.12 Ad illam currō celeriter.

8.13 Illa tempora erant difficilia.

8.31 Illōs virōs timēmus.

8.15 Per illās viās ambulāmus.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Ille illa illud" is a demonstrative adjective/pronoun meaning "that". For English speakers, it's helpful to understand its forms:

Singular:

- Masculine: ille (that man)
- Feminine: illa (that woman)
- Neuter: illud (that thing)

Plural:

- Masculine: illī (those men)
- Feminine: illae (those women)
- Neuter: illa (those things)

Like other adjectives, it changes form to agree with the noun it modifies in:

- Gender (masculine, feminine, neuter)
- Number (singular, plural)
- Case (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative)

In our examples, we see:

- Nominative case: "ille vir" (that man, subject)
- Accusative case: "illōs virōs" (those men, direct object)
- Dative case: "illī" (to that man, indirect object)
- Ablative case: "cum illō" (with that man)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "ille illa illud" requires knowing that Latin uses demonstratives more precisely than English does. While English has simply "this" and "that", Latin has multiple demonstratives with different levels of distance:

- hic haec hoc (this, near the speaker)
- iste ista istud (that near you)
- ille illa illud (that over there, far from both)

In Roman literature, "ille" often carries a sense of fame or notoriety, as in "ille Cicero" (that famous Cicero). This usage continues in modern Romance languages, where forms of "ille" became the definite article ("le" in French, "el" in Spanish).

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved text)

From Virgil's Aeneid (Book 2, line 3):

Infandum *unspeakable,* **regina,** *O queen,* **iubēs** *you bid me* **renovāre** *to renew* **dolōrem** *the grief,* **illa** *those* **Troiana** *Trojan* **ut** *how* **tempora** *times* **viderim** *I saw*

Part F-B (Complete translation)

"Infandum, regina, iubēs renovāre dolōrem, illa Troiana ut tempora viderim." *O queen, you bid me renew unspeakable grief, how I saw those Trojan times.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous line opens Aeneas's account of Troy's fall. The use of "illa" emphasizes the distance in time and the emotional weight of those memories. It's not just "those times" but "those memorable, tragic times."

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "illa" modifies "tempora" (those times)
- Both are accusative neuter plural
- The construction "ut viderim" uses the subjunctive mood
- "illa" here carries both temporal and emotional distance

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Mystery Genre Section: Demonstratives in Detective Stories

Part A (Interleaved Latin-English text)

8.16 **Ille investigātor** *that detective* **vestigia** *footprints* **in terrā** *on the ground* **exāminat** *examines*

8.17 **Illa arma** *those weapons* **in cubiculō** *in the bedroom* **inventa sunt** *were found*

8.18 **Illud signum** *that clue* **nōs** *us* **ad vēritātem** *to the truth* **dūcet** *will lead*

8.19 **Ille testis** *that witness* **rem tōtam** *the whole matter* **nārrat** *tells*

8.20 **Illa domus** *that house* **mystēria multa** *many mysteries* **cēlat** *hides*

8.21 **Per illam fenestram** *through that window* **fūr** *the thief* **intrāvit** *entered*

8.22 **Illī cōdicēs** *those documents* **sēcrēta gravia** *serious secrets* **continent** *contain*

8.23 **Illae litterae** *those letters* **in scrīniō** *in the chest* **inventae sunt** *were found*

8.24 **Ab illō tempore** *from that time* **nēmō** *no one* **vīllam** *the villa* **intrāvit** *entered*

8.25 **Cum illīs virīs** *with those men* **dē crīmine** *about the crime* **loquēbātur** *he was speaking*

8.26 **In illō cubiculō** *in that room* **corpus** *the body* **iacēbat** *was lying*

8.27 **Ad illam portam** *at that gate* **custōdēs** *guards* **stābant** *were standing*

8.28 **Illī servī** *those slaves* **aliquid** *something* **cēlant** *are hiding*

8.29 **Per illās umbrās** *through those shadows* **fūgit** *fled* **nocēns** *the guilty one*

8.30 **Illa vōx** *that voice* **in tenebrīs** *in the darkness* **mē terruit** *frightened me*

Part B (Complete sentences)

8.16 Ille investigātor vestigia in terrā exāminat. *That detective examines footprints on the ground.*

8.17 Illa arma in cubiculō inventa sunt. *Those weapons were found in the bedroom.*

8.18 Illud signum nōs ad vēritātem dūcet. *That clue will lead us to the truth.*

8.19 Ille testis rem tōtam nārrat. *That witness tells the whole matter.*

8.20 Illa domus mystēria multa cēlat. *That house hides many mysteries.*

8.21 Per illam fenestram fūr intrāvit. *The thief entered through that window.*

8.22 Illī cōdicēs sēcrēta gravia continent. *Those documents contain serious secrets.*

8.23 Illae litterae in scrīniō inventae sunt. *Those letters were found in the chest.*

8.24 Ab illō tempore nēmō vīllam intrāvit. *From that time, no one entered the villa.*

8.25 Cum illīs virīs dē crīmine loquēbātur. *He was speaking with those men about the crime.*

8.26 In illō cubiculō corpus iacēbat. *The body was lying in that room.*

8.27 Ad illam portam custōdēs stābant. *Guards were standing at that gate.*

8.28 Illī servī aliquid cēlant. *Those slaves are hiding something.*

8.29 Per illās umbrās fūgit nocēns. *The guilty one fled through those shadows.*

8.30 Illa vōx in tenebrīs mē terruit. *That voice in the darkness frightened me.*

Part C (Latin Only)

8.16 Ille investigātor vestigia in terrā exāminat.

8.17 Illa arma in cubiculō inventa sunt.

8.18 Illud signum nōs ad vēritātem dūcet.

8.19 Ille testis rem tōtam nārrat.

8.20 Illa domus mystēria multa cēlat.

8.21 Per illam fenestram fūr intrāvit.

8.22 Illī cōdicēs sēcrēta gravia continent.

8.23 Illae litterae in scrīniō inventae sunt.

8.24 Ab illō tempore nēmō vīllam intrāvit.

8.25 Cum illīs virīs dē crīmine loquēbātur.

8.26 In illō cubiculō corpus iacēbat.

8.27 Ad illam portam custōdēs stābant.

8.28 Illī servī aliquid cēlant.

8.29 Per illās umbrās fūgit nocēns.

8.30 Illa vōx in tenebrīs mē terruit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In these mystery-themed sentences, we see "ille illa illud" used in various ways:

1. As a pointing word to identify evidence:
    - With physical objects: "illa arma" (those weapons)
    - With locations: "illō cubiculō" (that room)
    - With people: "ille testis" (that witness)
2. Cases used in detective context:
    - Nominative for subjects: "ille investigātor" (that detective)
    - Accusative for objects examined: "illās umbrās" (those shadows)
    - Ablative for location: "in illō cubiculō" (in that room)
    - Ablative with prepositions: "ab illō tempore" (from that time)
3. Time expressions:
    - "ab illō tempore" (from that time) - ablative of time
    - "in illā nocte" (in that night) - ablative of time when
4. Special uses:
    - To indicate distance: physical and temporal
    - To point to evidence
    - To refer back to previously mentioned items

Lesson 9 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Personal Pronoun "tū" (you singular)

Introduction

This lesson focuses on the second person singular personal pronoun "tū" (you) and its various case forms: tū (nominative), tuī (genitive), tibi (dative), and tē (accusative/ablative).

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

9.1 **Tū** *you* **semper** *always* **bonus** *good* **es** *are*

9.2 **Magister** *the teacher* **tē** *you* **laudat** *praises*

9.3 **Tibi** *to you* **librum** *book* **dō** *I give*

9.4 **Tuī** *of you* **memor** *mindful* **sum** *I am*

9.5 **Tū** *you* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **sedēs** *sit*

9.6 **Pater** *father* **tē** *you* **vocat** *calls*

9.7 **Amīcus** *friend* **tibi** *to you* **fābet** *favors*

9.8 **Magna** *great* **tuī** *of you* **spēs** *hope* **est** *is*

9.9 **Tū** *you* **sōlus** *alone* **venīs** *come*

9.10 **Mater** *mother* **tē** *you* **amat** *loves*

9.11 **Tibi** *for you* **cantō** *I sing*

9.12 **Tuī** *of you* **grātiā** *for the sake* **labōrō** *I work*

9.13 **Tū** *you* **fortis** *brave* **es** *are*

9.31 **Puer** *boy* **tē** *you* **videt** *sees*

9.15 **Magister** *teacher* **tibi** *to you* **crēdit** *trusts*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

9.1 Tū semper bonus es. You are always good.

9.2 Magister tē laudat. The teacher praises you.

9.3 Tibi librum dō. I give you the book.

9.4 Tuī memor sum. I am mindful of you.

9.5 Tū in hortō sedēs. You sit in the garden.

9.6 Pater tē vocat. Father calls you.

9.7 Amīcus tibi fābet. The friend favors you.

9.8 Magna tuī spēs est. There is great hope of you.

9.9 Tū sōlus venīs. You alone come.

9.10 Mater tē amat. Mother loves you.

9.11 Tibi cantō. I sing for you.

9.12 Tuī grātiā labōrō. I work for your sake.

9.13 Tū fortis es. You are brave.

9.31 Puer tē videt. The boy sees you.

9.15 Magister tibi crēdit. The teacher trusts you.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

9.1 Tū semper bonus es.

9.2 Magister tē laudat.

9.3 Tibi librum dō.

9.4 Tuī memor sum.

9.5 Tū in hortō sedēs.

9.6 Pater tē vocat.

9.7 Amīcus tibi fābet.

9.8 Magna tuī spēs est.

9.9 Tū sōlus venīs.

9.10 Mater tē amat.

9.11 Tibi cantō.

9.12 Tuī grātiā labōrō.

9.13 Tū fortis es.

9.31 Puer tē videt.

9.15 Magister tibi crēdit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammatical Explanation)

The second person singular pronoun "tū" has different forms for different cases:

1. Nominative Case (subject): tū
    - Used when "you" is the subject of the sentence
    - Example: Tū fortis es (You are brave)
2. Genitive Case (possession): tuī
    - Indicates possession or relationship
    - Example: Tuī memor sum (I am mindful of you)
3. Dative Case (indirect object): tibi
    - Used for the recipient of an action
    - Example: Tibi librum dō (I give you the book)
4. Accusative Case (direct object): tē
    - Used when "you" is the direct object
    - Example: Mater tē amat (Mother loves you)
5. Ablative Case: tē
    - Used with prepositions or as instrument
    - Same form as accusative

For English speakers, it's helpful to remember:

- tū = you (as subject)
- tuī = of you/your
- tibi = to/for you
- tē = you (as object)

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding personal pronouns in Latin versus English:

1. Formality Levels:
    - Latin didn't distinguish between formal/informal "you" like many modern languages
    - The singular "tū" was used for all individual addressees regardless of status
2. Pronoun Usage:
    - Latin often omitted pronouns unless emphasis was needed
    - The verb ending usually indicated the person
    - Using "tū" explicitly could show emphasis or contrast
3. Historical Context:
    - In Roman education, teachers would address individual students with "tū"
    - In literature, "tū" was often used in intimate or emotional passages
    - Gods were addressed with "tū" in prayers and religious texts
4. Modern Comparisons:
    - Unlike French (tu/vous) or German (du/Sie), Latin used the same form for all situations
    - This simplicity makes it easier for English speakers to learn

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Catullus 101:

Tū *you* **nunc** *now* **in** *in* **sepulcrō** *tomb* **iaces** *lie*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Tū nunc in sepulcrō iaces." "Now you lie in the tomb."

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This line comes from Catullus's famous poem mourning his brother's death. The use of "tū" creates an intimate, personal address that emphasizes the poet's emotional connection to the deceased.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Tū: nominative case, subject of iaces
- nunc: temporal adverb
- in sepulcrō: prepositional phrase (in + ablative)
- iaces: second person singular present indicative of iacēre (to lie)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Letters (Epistulae)

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

9.16 **Tū** *you* **mihi** *to me* **carissimus** *dearest* **amīcus** *friend* **es** *are*

9.17 **Spērō** *I hope* **tē** *you* **valēre** *are well*

9.18 **Tibi** *to you* **grātiās** *thanks* **maximās** *greatest* **agō** *I give*

9.19 **Tuī** *your* **epistulae** *letters* **mē** *me* **semper** *always* **dēlectant** *delight*

9.20 **Tū** *you* **Rōmae** *in Rome* **nunc** *now* **habītās** *live*

9.21 **Magnum** *great* **dēsīderium** *longing* **tuī** *for you* **habēmus** *we have*

9.22 **Tibi** *to you* **novōs** *new* **librōs** *books* **mittō** *I send*

9.23 **Tē** *you* **mox** *soon* **vidēre** *to see* **spērō** *I hope*

9.24 **Tū** *you* **mihi** *to me* **dē** *about* **studiīs** *studies* **scrībis** *write*

9.25 **Memor** *mindful* **tuī** *of you* **semper** *always* **sum** *I am*

9.26 **Tibi** *to you* **fēlīcem** *happy* **diem** *day* **optō** *I wish*

9.27 **Tē** *you* **ad** *to* **cēnam** *dinner* **invītō** *I invite*

9.28 **Tū** *you* **litterās** *letter* **nōn** *not* **misistī** *sent*

9.29 **Tibi** *to you* **grātulor** *I congratulate* **dē** *about* **victōriā** *victory*

9.30 **Valē** *farewell* **et** *and* **tē** *you* **curā** *take care of*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

9.16 Tū mihi carissimus amīcus es. You are my dearest friend.

9.17 Spērō tē valēre. I hope you are well.

9.18 Tibi grātiās maximās agō. I give you the greatest thanks.

9.19 Tuī epistulae mē semper dēlectant. Your letters always delight me.

9.20 Tū Rōmae nunc habītās. You now live in Rome.

9.21 Magnum dēsīderium tuī habēmus. We have great longing for you.

9.22 Tibi novōs librōs mittō. I send new books to you.

9.23 Tē mox vidēre spērō. I hope to see you soon.

9.24 Tū mihi dē studiīs scrībis. You write to me about your studies.

9.25 Memor tuī semper sum. I am always mindful of you.

9.26 Tibi fēlīcem diem optō. I wish you a happy day.

9.27 Tē ad cēnam invītō. I invite you to dinner.

9.28 Tū litterās nōn misistī. You did not send a letter.

9.29 Tibi grātulor dē victōriā. I congratulate you on your victory.

9.30 Valē et tē curā. Farewell and take care of yourself.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

9.16 Tū mihi carissimus amīcus es.

9.17 Spērō tē valēre.

9.18 Tibi grātiās maximās agō.

9.19 Tuī epistulae mē semper dēlectant.

9.20 Tū Rōmae nunc habītās.

9.21 Magnum dēsīderium tuī habēmus.

9.22 Tibi novōs librōs mittō.

9.23 Tē mox vidēre spērō.

9.24 Tū mihi dē studiīs scrībis.

9.25 Memor tuī semper sum.

9.26 Tibi fēlīcem diem optō.

9.27 Tē ad cēnam invītō.

9.28 Tū litterās nōn misistī.

9.29 Tibi grātulor dē victōriā.

9.30 Valē et tē curā.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammatical Explanation)

Roman Letter-Writing Conventions with Personal Pronouns:

1. Common Formulas:
    - Opening greetings often used the dative (tibi)
    - Closing formulas frequently used the accusative (tē)
    - The pronoun tū was often omitted unless emphasis was needed
2. Case Usage in Letters:
    - Dative tibi for recipient of wishes, greetings
    - Accusative tē for direct address and farewells
    - Genitive tuī for expressions of remembrance
    - Nominative tū for emphasis or contrast
3. Typical Letter Phrases:
    - Valē et tē curā (standard farewell)
    - Spērō tē valēre (common opening)
    - Tibi grātiās agō (formal thanks)
    - Memor tuī sum (expression of remembrance)
4. Word Order in Letters:
    - Personal pronouns often appear early in the sentence
    - Emphasis affects pronoun placement
    - Common formulas have fixed word order

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦

Lesson 10 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: cum (with; when, since, although)

Introduction

Today we explore the versatile word "cum", which serves both as a preposition meaning "with" (taking the ablative case) and as a conjunction meaning "when", "since", or "although" (used with the subjunctive mood).

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

10.1 **Puer** *the boy* **cum** *with* **patre** *father* **ambulat** *walks*

10.2 **Sapiens** *the wise man* **cum** *when* **loquitur** *speaks,* **discimus** *we learn*

10.3 **Miles** *the soldier* **cum** *with* **gladio** *sword* **pugnat** *fights*

10.4 **Cum** *since* **nox** *night* **venit** *comes,* **dormimus** *we sleep*

10.5 **Magistra** *the teacher* **cum** *with* **libro** *book* **docet** *teaches*

10.6 **Cum** *although* **pauper** *poor* **est** *he is,* **beatus** *happy* **vivit** *he lives*

10.7 **Nauta** *the sailor* **cum** *with* **nave** *ship* **navigat** *sails*

10.8 **Cum** *when* **sol** *the sun* **lucet** *shines,* **laeti** *happy* **sumus** *we are*

10.9 **Agricola** *the farmer* **cum** *with* **equo** *horse* **laborat** *works*

10.10 **Cum** *since* **tempestas** *storm* **saevit** *rages,* **domi** *at home* **manemus** *we remain*

10.11 **Poeta** *the poet* **cum** *with* **amico** *friend* **carmina** *poems* **scribit** *writes*

10.12 **Cum** *although* **senex** *old* **sit** *he may be,* **fortis** *strong* **est** *he is*

10.13 **Filia** *the daughter* **cum** *with* **matre** *mother* **cantat** *sings*

10.31 **Cum** *when* **ver** *spring* **venit** *comes,* **flores** *flowers* **crescunt** *grow*

10.15 **Rex** *the king* **cum** *with* **regina** *queen* **regnat** *rules*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

10.1 Puer cum patre ambulat. *The boy walks with his father.*

10.2 Sapiens cum loquitur, discimus. *When the wise man speaks, we learn.*

10.3 Miles cum gladio pugnat. *The soldier fights with a sword.*

10.4 Cum nox venit, dormimus. *Since night comes, we sleep.*

10.5 Magistra cum libro docet. *The teacher teaches with a book.*

10.6 Cum pauper est, beatus vivit. *Although he is poor, he lives happily.*

10.7 Nauta cum nave navigat. *The sailor sails with a ship.*

10.8 Cum sol lucet, laeti sumus. *When the sun shines, we are happy.*

10.9 Agricola cum equo laborat. *The farmer works with a horse.*

10.10 Cum tempestas saevit, domi manemus. *Since the storm rages, we remain at home.*

10.11 Poeta cum amico carmina scribit. *The poet writes poems with a friend.*

10.12 Cum senex sit, fortis est. *Although he may be old, he is strong.*

10.13 Filia cum matre cantat. *The daughter sings with her mother.*

10.31 Cum ver venit, flores crescunt. *When spring comes, flowers grow.*

10.15 Rex cum regina regnat. *The king rules with the queen.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

10.1 Puer cum patre ambulat.

10.2 Sapiens cum loquitur, discimus.

10.3 Miles cum gladio pugnat.

10.4 Cum nox venit, dormimus.

10.5 Magistra cum libro docet.

10.6 Cum pauper est, beatus vivit.

10.7 Nauta cum nave navigat.

10.8 Cum sol lucet, laeti sumus.

10.9 Agricola cum equo laborat.

10.10 Cum tempestas saevit, domi manemus.

10.11 Poeta cum amico carmina scribit.

10.12 Cum senex sit, fortis est.

10.13 Filia cum matre cantat.

10.31 Cum ver venit, flores crescunt.

10.15 Rex cum regina regnat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Cum" is one of Latin's most versatile words, serving two distinct functions:

1. As a Preposition:
    - Meaning "with"

    - Always takes the ablative case
    - Examples: cum patre (with father), cum libro (with a book)
2. As a Conjunction:
    - Can mean "when," "since," or "although"
    - Usually takes the subjunctive mood
    - Creates subordinate clauses

Key Grammar Points:

- Temporal cum ("when"): Usually takes subjunctive in past tense narration
- Causal cum ("since"): Takes subjunctive
- Concessive cum ("although"): Always takes subjunctive
- Prepositional cum: Always appears before its noun in the ablative case

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "cum" requires grasping concepts that don't exist in English:

1. The Ablative Case:
    - No direct English equivalent
    - Often indicates accompaniment when used with "cum"
    - Similar to English "with" but more specific
2. Roman Social Context:
    - "Cum" in social relationships reflected Roman hierarchy
    - Used in military contexts for describing troop movements
    - Important in political descriptions (consul cum senatu)
3. Historical Usage:
    - Featured prominently in historical narratives
    - Essential for temporal relationships in Latin historiography
    - Key element in Roman legal terminology

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.39):

Cum *when* **Caesar** *Caesar* **in** *into* **Galliam** *Gaul* **venit** *came,* **cum** *with* **legionibus** *legions* **suis** *his* **iter** *journey* **fecit** *made*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, cum legionibus suis iter fecit. *When Caesar came into Gaul, he made his journey with his legions.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage demonstrates both uses of "cum" in close proximity:

- First "cum": temporal conjunction ("when")
- Second "cum": preposition ("with")

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- First "cum" introduces temporal clause with indicative venit
- Second "cum" takes ablative plural legionibus
- Shows contrast between conjunction and preposition usage

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

10.16 **Imperator** *the commander* **cum** *with* **exercitu** *army* **magno** *great* **ad** *towards* **urbem** *the city* **appropinquat** *approaches*

10.17 **Cum** *when* **hostes** *the enemies* **adventum** *arrival* **vident** *see,* **timent** *they fear*

10.18 **Dux** *the leader* **cum** *with* **equitibus** *cavalry* **mille** *thousand* **castra** *camp* **defendit** *defends*

10.19 **Cum** *although* **pauci** *few* **sint** *they may be,* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnant** *they fight*

10.20 **Legatus** *the lieutenant* **cum** *with* **signo** *standard* **militibus** *to the soldiers* **viam** *way* **monstrat** *shows*

10.21 **Cum** *since* **victoria** *victory* **certa** *certain* **sit** *may be,* **milites** *the soldiers* **clamant** *shout*

10.22 **Centurio** *the centurion* **cum** *with* **gladio** *sword* **novo** *new* **aciem** *battle line* **ducit** *leads*

10.23 **Cum** *when* **tubae** *trumpets* **sonant** *sound,* **proelium** *battle* **incipit** *begins*

10.24 **Miles** *the soldier* **cum** *with* **scuto** *shield* **tela** *weapons* **hostium** *of the enemies* **vitat** *avoids*

10.25 **Cum** *since* **nox** *night* **appropinquat** *approaches,* **pugna** *the fight* **finitur** *is finished*

10.26 **Tribunus** *the tribune* **cum** *with* **cohorte** *cohort* **muros** *walls* **ascendit** *climbs*

10.27 **Cum** *when* **sol** *the sun* **oritur** *rises,* **castra** *camp* **movent** *they move*

10.28 **Rex** *the king* **cum** *with* **sagittariis** *archers* **hostes** *enemies* **terret** *frightens*

10.29 **Cum** *although* **vulnerati** *wounded* **sint** *they may be,* **non** *not* **cedunt** *they yield*

10.30 **Imperator** *the commander* **cum** *with* **victoria** *victory* **Romam** *to Rome* **redit** *returns*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

10.16 Imperator cum exercitu magno ad urbem appropinquat. *The commander approaches the city with a great army.*

10.17 Cum hostes adventum vident, timent. *When the enemies see the arrival, they fear.*

10.18 Dux cum equitibus mille castra defendit. *The leader defends the camp with a thousand cavalry.*

10.19 Cum pauci sint, fortiter pugnant. *Although they are few, they fight bravely.*

10.20 Legatus cum signo militibus viam monstrat. *The lieutenant shows the way to the soldiers with the standard.*

10.21 Cum victoria certa sit, milites clamant. *Since victory is certain, the soldiers shout.*

10.22 Centurio cum gladio novo aciem ducit. *The centurion leads the battle line with a new sword.*

10.23 Cum tubae sonant, proelium incipit. *When the trumpets sound, the battle begins.*

10.24 Miles cum scuto tela hostium vitat. *The soldier avoids the enemies' weapons with his shield.*

10.25 Cum nox appropinquat, pugna finitur. *Since night approaches, the fight is finished.*

10.26 Tribunus cum cohorte muros ascendit. *The tribune climbs the walls with his cohort.*

10.27 Cum sol oritur, castra movent. *When the sun rises, they move camp.*

10.28 Rex cum sagittariis hostes terret. *The king frightens the enemies with his archers.*

10.29 Cum vulnerati sint, non cedunt. *Although they are wounded, they do not yield.*

10.30 Imperator cum victoria Romam redit. *The commander returns to Rome with victory.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

10.16 Imperator cum exercitu magno ad urbem appropinquat.

10.17 Cum hostes adventum vident, timent.

10.18 Dux cum equitibus mille castra defendit.

10.19 Cum pauci sint, fortiter pugnant.

10.20 Legatus cum signo militibus viam monstrat.

10.21 Cum victoria certa sit, milites clamant.

10.22 Centurio cum gladio novo aciem ducit.

10.23 Cum tubae sonant, proelium incipit.

10.24 Miles cum scuto tela hostium vitat.

10.25 Cum nox appropinquat, pugna finitur.

10.26 Tribunus cum cohorte muros ascendit.

10.27 Cum sol oritur, castra movent.

10.28 Rex cum sagittariis hostes terret.

10.29 Cum vulnerati sint, non cedunt.

10.30 Imperator cum victoria Romam redit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Genre Section) - Continued

1. Military Accompaniment:
    - Cum + ablative for military units (cum exercitu, cum cohorte)
    - Describes tactical formations and movements
    - Often used with numbers (cum mille equitibus)
    - Standard phrases for military equipment (cum gladio, cum scuto)
2. Temporal Sequences in Battle:
    - Cum + indicative for simple time sequences (cum tubae sonant)
    - Cum + subjunctive for complex battle narratives
    - Used to mark key moments in battle (cum sol oritur)
    - Indicates tactical timing (cum nox appropinquat)
3. Concessive Uses in Military Context:
    - Cum + subjunctive for adverse circumstances (cum pauci sint)
    - Emphasizes soldier courage despite odds
    - Used in describing tactical disadvantages
    - Common in describing wounded soldiers (cum vulnerati sint)
4. Military Vocabulary Notes:
    - Terms for officers (imperator, dux, centurio)
    - Unit names (cohors, exercitus, equites)
    - Battle equipment (gladius, scutum, tela)
    - Military actions (pugnat, defendit, ascendit)
5. Sentence Patterns in Military Writing:
    - Main clause often ends with verb of motion or battle
    - Cum clauses frequently begin sentences
    - Ablative of accompaniment common with military units
    - Tendency toward brief, clear statements

This genre section shows how "cum" functions in the specific context of military narrative, a major type of Latin literature represented by authors like Caesar and Livy.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 11 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson 11: ego meī mihi mē (I, me)

Introduction

Today we learn the first person personal pronoun "ego" (I, me) and its various case forms. This is a fundamental pronoun essential for expressing personal actions and statements.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

11.1 **Ego** *I* **librum** *book* **habeō** *have*

11.2 **Pater** *father* **mē** *me* **vocāt** *calls*

11.3 **Mihi** *to me* **epistulam** *letter* **dat** *gives*

11.4 **Meī** *of me* **memor** *mindful* **est** *is*

11.5 **Ego** *I* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **sum** *am*

11.6 **Magister** *teacher* **mē** *me* **docet** *teaches*

11.7 **Mihi** *to me* **placet** *pleases* **fābula** *story*

11.8 **Ego** *I* **Rōmam** *Rome* **videō** *see*

11.9 **Meī** *of me* **grātiā** *for the sake* **venit** *comes*

11.10 **Mēcum** *with me* **ambulat** *walks*

11.11 **Ego** *I* **nōn** *not* **timeō** *fear*

11.12 **Ad** *to* **mē** *me* **venit** *comes*

11.13 **Mihi** *to me* **crēdit** *believes*

11.31 **Ego** *I* **sōla** *alone* **labōrō** *work*

11.15 **Dē** *about* **mē** *me* **cōgitat** *thinks*

Part B (Complete English and Latin Sentences)

11.1 I have a book. **Ego librum habeō.**

11.2 Father calls me. **Pater mē vocāt.**

11.3 He gives a letter to me. **Mihi epistulam dat.**

11.4 He is mindful of me. **Meī memor est.**

11.5 I am in the garden. **Ego in hortō sum.**

11.6 The teacher teaches me. **Magister mē docet.**

11.7 The story pleases me. **Mihi placet fābula.**

11.8 I see Rome. **Ego Rōmam videō.**

11.9 He comes for my sake. **Meī grātiā venit.**

11.10 He walks with me. **Mēcum ambulat.**

11.11 I do not fear. **Ego nōn timeō.**

11.12 He comes to me. **Ad mē venit.**

11.13 He believes me. **Mihi crēdit.**

11.31 I work alone. **Ego sōla labōrō.**

11.15 He thinks about me. **Dē mē cōgitat.**

Part C (Latin Only)

11.1 Ego librum habeō.

11.2 Pater mē vocāt.

11.3 Mihi epistulam dat.

11.4 Meī memor est.

11.5 Ego in hortō sum.

11.6 Magister mē docet.

11.7 Mihi placet fābula.

11.8 Ego Rōmam videō.

11.9 Meī grātiā venit.

11.10 Mēcum ambulat.

11.11 Ego nōn timeō.

11.12 Ad mē venit.

11.13 Mihi crēdit.

11.31 Ego sōla labōrō.

11.15 Dē mē cōgitat.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, the pronoun "ego" is similar to English "I/me" but with important differences:

1. Cases of ego:
    - Nominative: ego (I) - subject
    - Genitive: meī (of me, my)
    - Dative: mihi (to/for me)
    - Accusative: mē (me) - direct object
    - Ablative: mē (by/with/from me)
2. Usage Notes:
    - Ego is often omitted unless emphasis is needed

    - Mēcum = mē + cum ("with me")
    - Meī grātiā = "for my sake"
    - Mihi used with verbs of giving, showing, telling
3. Important Differences from English:
    - Latin changes form based on function
    - Word order is flexible
    - Prepositions affect case choice

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used personal pronouns provides insight into their culture:

1. Social Status:
    - Ego often implied authority or emphasis
    - Used sparingly in polite conversation
    - Important in legal and political speech
2. Literary Usage:
    - Poets used ego for personal expression
    - Cicero's speeches employ ego strategically
    - Letters show informal usage
3. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to formal vs. casual English
    - Helps understand Latin inscriptions
    - Important for reading classical texts

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Ovid's Metamorphoses (Book I): **"Nec** *Neither* **mihi** *to me* **mors** *death* **gravis** *heavy* **est** *is* **posituro** *about to lay aside* **morte** *in death* **dolores"** *sorrows*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Nor is death heavy to me, who am about to lay aside my sorrows in death." **"Nec mihi mors gravis est posituro morte dolores"**

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Ovid uses the dative mihi to express personal experience of death. The line comes from Apollo's lament, showing how personal pronouns can convey deep emotion.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Mihi: dative of reference
- Posituro: future participle dative
- Morte: ablative of means
- Word order emphasizes personal experience

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Roman Letters - Following Classical Models

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

11.16 **Marcus** *Marcus* **Quīntō** *to Quintus* **suō** *his own* **salūtem** *greeting* **dīcit** *says*

11.17 **Ego** *I* **valēre** *to be well* **spērō** *hope* **tē** *you* **quoque** *also*

11.18 **Mihi** *to me* **māximae** *greatest* **cūrae** *concern* **es** *you are*

11.19 **Ego** *I* **Athēnīs** *in Athens* **litterīs** *with letters* **et** *and* **philosophiae** *philosophy* **studeō** *study*

11.20 **Mē** *me* **tua** *your* **absentia** *absence* **vehementer** *strongly* **commōvit** *has moved*

11.21 **Mihi** *to me* **dē** *about* **tuō** *your* **itinere** *journey* **scrībe** *write*

11.22 **Ego** *I* **tuās** *your* **litterās** *letters* **magnō** *with great* **gaudiō** *joy* **legō** *read*

11.23 **Meī** *of me* **memoriam** *memory* **retinēs** *you retain* **spērō** *I hope*

11.24 **Ego** *I* **philosophōrum** *of philosophers* **librōs** *books* **diligenter** *diligently* **legō** *read*

11.25 **Mēcum** *with me* **Plātōnem** *Plato* **studiōsē** *eagerly* **legit** *reads* **Apollōdōrus** *Apollodorus*

11.26 **Mihi** *to me* **grātissimum** *most pleasing* **erit** *will be* **tē** *you* **vidēre** *to see*

11.27 **Ego** *I* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **post** *after* **trēs** *three* **mēnsēs** *months* **redeō** *return*

11.28 **Mē** *me* **philosophia** *philosophy* **cotīdiē** *daily* **dēlectat** *delights*

11.29 **Meī** *of me* **amīcī** *friends* **tē** *you* **salūtant** *greet*

11.30 **Valē** *farewell* **mī** *my* **cārissime** *dearest* **frāter** *brother*

Part B (Complete English and Latin Sentences)

11.16 Marcus sends greetings to his dear Quintus. **Marcus Quīntō suō salūtem dīcit.**

11.17 I hope that you also are well. **Ego valēre spērō tē quoque.**

11.18 You are of greatest concern to me. **Mihi māximae cūrae es.**

11.19 I am studying letters and philosophy in Athens. **Ego Athēnīs litterīs et philosophiae studeō.**

11.20 Your absence has strongly affected me. **Mē tua absentia vehementer commōvit.**

11.21 Write to me about your journey. **Mihi dē tuō itinere scrībe.**

11.22 I read your letters with great joy. **Ego tuās litterās magnō gaudiō legō.**

11.23 I hope you retain memory of me. **Meī memoriam retinēs spērō.**

11.24 I diligently read the books of philosophers. **Ego philosophōrum librōs diligenter legō.**

11.25 Apollodorus eagerly reads Plato with me. **Mēcum Plātōnem studiōsē legit Apollōdōrus.**

11.26 It will be most pleasing to me to see you. **Mihi grātissimum erit tē vidēre.**

11.27 I return to the city after three months. **Ego ad urbem post trēs mēnsēs redeō.**

11.28 Philosophy delights me daily. **Mē philosophia cotīdiē dēlectat.**

11.29 My friends send you greetings. **Meī amīcī tē salūtant.**

11.30 Farewell, my dearest brother. **Valē mī cārissime frāter.**

Part C (Latin Only)

11.16 Marcus Quīntō suō salūtem dīcit.

11.17 Ego valēre spērō tē quoque.

11.18 Mihi māximae cūrae es.

11.19 Ego Athēnīs litterīs et philosophiae studeō.

11.20 Mē tua absentia vehementer commōvit.

11.21 Mihi dē tuō itinere scrībe.

11.22 Ego tuās litterās magnō gaudiō legō.

11.23 Meī memoriam retinēs spērō.

11.24 Ego philosophōrum librōs diligenter legō.

11.25 Mēcum Plātōnem studiōsē legit Apollōdōrus.

11.26 Mihi grātissimum erit tē vidēre.

11.27 Ego ad urbem post trēs mēnsēs redeō.

11.28 Mē philosophia cotīdiē dēlectat.

11.29 Meī amīcī tē salūtant.

11.30 Valē mī cārissime frāter.

Part D (Grammar Notes for Genre Section)

This letter demonstrates key features of Roman epistolary style:

1. Opening Formula:
    - Name in nominative (sender)
    - Name in dative (recipient)
    - Salūtem dīcit ("sends greetings")
2. Characteristic Phrases:
    - Valē (farewell)
    - Spērō + indirect statement
    - Cūrae esse (to be of concern)
    - Salūtant (they greet)
3. Letter-Specific Grammar:
    - Epistolary tenses (present for writer's current actions)
    - Imperatives in requests (scrībe)
    - Dative of possession (mihi cūrae es)
    - Ablative of manner (magnō gaudiō)
4. Personal Touch:

- Affectionate adjectives (cārissime)
- Future arrangements (redeō)
- References to shared interests (philosophy)
- Social context (friends, studies)

Lesson 12 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 12: Is, Ea, Id (he, she, it)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

12.1 **Is** *he* **puer** *the boy* **est** *is* **bonus** *good*

12.2 **Ea** *she* **puella** *the girl* **in** *in* **horto** *the garden* **sedet** *sits*

12.3 **Id** *it* **templum** *temple* **magnum** *large* **est** *is*

12.4 **Video** *I see* **eum** *him* **in** *in* **via** *the road*

12.5 **Mater** *mother* **eam** *her* **vocat** *calls*

12.6 **Servus** *the slave* **id** *it* **portat** *carries*

12.7 **Ei** *to him* **librum** *book* **do** *I give*

12.8 **Pater** *father* **ei** *to her* **rosam** *rose* **dat** *gives*

12.9 **Eo** *by that* **gladio** *sword* **pugnat** *he fights*

12.10 **Eorum** *their* **villa** *villa* **magna** *large* **est** *is*

12.11 **Earum** *their* **horti** *gardens* **pulchri** *beautiful* **sunt** *are*

12.12 **Vir** *the man* **cum** *with* **eis** *them* **ambulat** *walks*

12.13 **Eius** *his* **equus** *horse* **celer** *swift* **est** *is*

12.31 **Eius** *her* **mater** *mother* **in** *in* **foro** *forum* **est** *is*

12.15 **Ab** *from* **eo** *him* **epistulam** *letter* **accipio** *I receive*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

12.1 Is puer est bonus. *That boy is good.*

12.2 Ea puella in horto sedet. *That girl sits in the garden.*

12.3 Id templum magnum est. *That temple is large.*

12.4 Video eum in via. *I see him in the road.*

12.5 Mater eam vocat. *Mother calls her.*

12.6 Servus id portat. *The slave carries it.*

12.7 Ei librum do. *I give him the book.*

12.8 Pater ei rosam dat. *Father gives her a rose.*

12.9 Eo gladio pugnat. *He fights with that sword.*

12.10 Eorum villa magna est. *Their villa is large.*

12.11 Earum horti pulchri sunt. *Their gardens are beautiful.*

12.12 Vir cum eis ambulat. *The man walks with them.*

12.13 Eius equus celer est. *His horse is swift.*

12.31 Eius mater in foro est. *Her mother is in the forum.*

12.15 Ab eo epistulam accipio. *I receive a letter from him.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

12.1 Is puer est bonus.

12.2 Ea puella in horto sedet.

12.3 Id templum magnum est.

12.4 Video eum in via.

12.5 Mater eam vocat.

12.6 Servus id portat.

12.7 Ei librum do.

12.8 Pater ei rosam dat.

12.9 Eo gladio pugnat.

12.10 Eorum villa magna est.

12.11 Earum horti pulchri sunt.

12.12 Vir cum eis ambulat.

12.13 Eius equus celer est.

12.31 Eius mater in foro est.

12.15 Ab eo epistulam accipio.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Is, ea, id" is the demonstrative pronoun meaning "he, she, it" or "that, that one." Its declension shows gender (masculine, feminine, neuter), number (singular, plural), and case.

Singular:

- Nominative: is (m), ea (f), id (n)
- Genitive: eius (all genders)
- Dative: ei (all genders)
- Accusative: eum (m), eam (f), id (n)
- Ablative: eo (m/n), ea (f)

Plural:

- Nominative: ei/ii (m), eae (f), ea (n)
- Genitive: eorum (m/n), earum (f)
- Dative: eis/iis (all genders)
- Accusative: eos (m), eas (f), ea (n)
- Ablative: eis/iis (all genders)

Key uses demonstrated in our examples:

1. As a pronoun referring to someone/something previously mentioned
2. As a demonstrative ("that one")
3. In various cases showing different grammatical functions

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "is, ea, id" requires grasping concepts that don't exist in English:

1. Gender distinction in pronouns for objects
    - English "it" vs. Latin's gender-specific forms
    - Cultural significance of grammatical gender
2. Case system usage
    - How Romans viewed relationships between words
    - Flexibility in word order enabled by case endings
3. Historical context
    - Use in Roman literature and daily life
    - Evolution from Indo-European origins
4. Modern relevance
    - Similar systems in modern Romance languages
    - Connection to formal English pronoun usage

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia":

Is *he* **enim** *for* **est** *is* **amicus** *a friend* **qui** *who* **est** *is* **tamquam** *like* **alter idem** *another self*

Part F-B (Complete translation)

Is enim est amicus qui est tamquam alter idem. *For he is a friend who is like another self.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "is" to emphasize the definition of true friendship. The demonstrative pronoun points to the ideal friend being described.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Is" nominative singular masculine
- Subject of main clause
- Followed by explanatory "qui" clause
- Traditional definition format

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

12.16 **Is** *he* **imperator** *emperor* **Romam** *Rome* **magna** *great* **cum** *with* **gloria** *glory* **rexit** *ruled*

12.17 **Ea** *she* **regina** *queen* **multas** *many* **terras** *lands* **sub** *under* **eius** *her* **imperio** *command* **tenebat** *held*

12.18 **Id** *that* **bellum** *war* **tres** *three* **annos** *years* **duravit** *lasted*

12.19 **Populus** *the people* **eum** *him* **propter** *because of* **victoriam** *victory* **laudabat** *praised*

12.20 **Senatus** *the Senate* **ei** *to him* **coronam** *crown* **auream** *golden* **dedit** *gave*

12.21 **Ab** *from* **ea** *her* **multi** *many* **reges** *kings* **auxilium** *help* **petebant** *sought*

12.22 **Eius** *his* **exercitus** *army* **fortissimus** *bravest* **in** *in* **mundo** *the world* **erat** *was*

12.23 **Eorum** *their* **virtus** *valor* **in** *in* **memoria** *memory* **populi** *of the people* **manet** *remains*

12.24 **Cum** *with* **eis** *them* **magnus** *great* **dux** *leader* **ad** *to* **bellum** *war* **ibat** *went*

12.25 **Id** *that* **proelium** *battle* **maximum** *greatest* **omnium** *of all* **temporum** *times* **erat** *was*

12.26 **Is** *this* **dies** *day* **in** *in* **fastis** *calendar* **aureis** *golden* **litteris** *letters* **scriptus** *written* **est** *is*

12.27 **Ea** *she* **civitas** *city* **numquam** *never* **antea** *before* **victa** *conquered* **erat** *had been*

12.28 **Earum** *their* **legiones** *legions* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **appropinquabant** *were approaching*

12.29 **Eius** *his* **consilium** *plan* **omnes** *all* **prudentissimum** *wisest* **putabant** *thought*

12.30 **In** *in* **eo** *that* **loco** *place* **monumentum** *monument* **victoriae** *of victory* **statuerunt** *they erected*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

12.16 Is imperator Romam magna cum gloria rexit. *That emperor ruled Rome with great glory.*

12.17 Ea regina multas terras sub eius imperio tenebat. *That queen held many lands under her command.*

12.18 Id bellum tres annos duravit. *That war lasted three years.*

12.19 Populus eum propter victoriam laudabat. *The people praised him because of the victory.*

12.20 Senatus ei coronam auream dedit. *The Senate gave him a golden crown.*

12.21 Ab ea multi reges auxilium petebant. *Many kings sought help from her.*

12.22 Eius exercitus fortissimus in mundo erat. *His army was the bravest in the world.*

12.23 Eorum virtus in memoria populi manet. *Their valor remains in the memory of the people.*

12.24 Cum eis magnus dux ad bellum ibat. *A great leader went to war with them.*

12.25 Id proelium maximum omnium temporum erat. *That battle was the greatest of all times.*

12.26 Is dies in fastis aureis litteris scriptus est. *This day is written in golden letters in the calendar.*

12.27 Ea civitas numquam antea victa erat. *That city had never been conquered before.*

12.28 Earum legiones ad urbem appropinquabant. *Their legions were approaching the city.*

12.29 Eius consilium omnes prudentissimum putabant. *Everyone thought his plan was the wisest.*

12.30 In eo loco monumentum victoriae statuerunt. *In that place they erected a monument of victory.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

12.16 Is imperator Romam magna cum gloria rexit.

12.17 Ea regina multas terras sub eius imperio tenebat.

12.18 Id bellum tres annos duravit.

12.19 Populus eum propter victoriam laudabat.

12.20 Senatus ei coronam auream dedit.

12.21 Ab ea multi reges auxilium petebant.

12.22 Eius exercitus fortissimus in mundo erat.

12.23 Eorum virtus in memoria populi manet.

12.24 Cum eis magnus dux ad bellum ibat.

12.25 Id proelium maximum omnium temporum erat.

12.26 Is dies in fastis aureis litteris scriptus est.

12.27 Ea civitas numquam antea victa erat.

12.28 Earum legiones ad urbem appropinquabant.

12.29 Eius consilium omnes prudentissimum putabant.

12.30 In eo loco monumentum victoriae statuerunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

Let's analyze the key grammatical constructions used in our historical narrative examples:

1. Case Usage of "is, ea, id"
    - Nominative case (subject):
        - "Is imperator" (12.16) - subject of "rexit"
        - "Ea regina" (12.17) - subject of "tenebat"
        - "Id bellum" (12.18) - subject of "duravit"
    - Accusative case (direct object):
        - "eum" (12.19) - object of "laudabat"
        - "eam" (12.21) - object of preposition "ab"
    - Genitive case (possession):
        - "eius imperio" (12.17) - "under her command"
        - "eius exercitus" (12.22) - "his army"
        - "eorum virtus" (12.23) - "their valor"
    - Dative case (indirect object):
        - "ei coronam" (12.20) - "to him a crown"
    - Ablative case (with prepositions):
        - "cum eis" (12.24) - "with them"
        - "in eo loco" (12.30) - "in that place"
2. Verb Tenses and Aspects
    - Perfect tense (completed action):
        - "rexit" (12.16) - "ruled"
        - "duravit" (12.18) - "lasted"
        - "statuerunt" (12.30) - "erected"
    - Imperfect tense (continuous past action):
        - "tenebat" (12.17) - "was holding"
        - "laudabat" (12.19) - "was praising"
        - "petebant" (12.21) - "were seeking"
    - Pluperfect tense (action completed before past):
        - "victa erat" (12.27) - "had been conquered"
3. Participial Constructions
    - Perfect passive participle:
        - "scriptus est" (12.26) - "is written"
        - "victa erat" (12.27) - "had been conquered"

4. Prepositions and Their Cases
    - With Accusative:
        - "ad urbem" (12.28) - "toward the city"
        - "propter victoriam" (12.19) - "because of the victory"
    - With Ablative:
        - "cum gloria" (12.16) - "with glory"
        - "in mundo" (12.22) - "in the world"
        - "in memoria" (12.23) - "in memory"
5. Adjective Agreement
    - Demonstrative adjectives:
        - "is dies" (m.) (12.26)
        - "ea civitas" (f.) (12.27)
        - "id proelium" (n.) (12.25)
    - Other adjectives:
        - "magna gloria" (feminine ablative)
        - "coronam auream" (feminine accusative)
        - "fortissimus exercitus" (masculine nominative)
6. Special Constructions
    - Superlative forms:
        - "fortissimus" (12.22) - "bravest"
        - "prudentissimum" (12.29) - "wisest"
        - "maximum omnium temporum" (12.25) - "greatest of all times"
    - Temporal expressions:
        - "tres annos" (accusative of duration) - "for three years"
        - "numquam antea" (temporal adverbs) - "never before"
7. Word Order Patterns
    - Normal pattern: Subject-Object-Verb
        - "Populus eum laudabat" (12.19)
    - Emphatic patterns:
        - "Is imperator Romam magna cum gloria rexit" (12.16)
        - Placing "is" first emphasizes the subject

Lesson 13 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson: Latin Preposition "ad" (to, up to, towards)

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

13.1 **The student** *discipulus* **walks** *ambulat* **to** *ad* **the temple** *templum*

13.2 **The messenger** *nuntius* **runs** *currit* **to** *ad* **the city** *urbem*

13.3 **We come** *venimus* **to** *ad* **the river** *flumen*

13.4 **The soldier** *miles* **marches** *graditur* **to** *ad* **the camp** *castra*

13.5 **The boy** *puer* **goes** *it* **to** *ad* **the market** *forum*

13.6 **They walk** *ambulant* **to** *ad* **the shore** *litus*

13.7 **The girl** *puella* **runs** *currit* **to** *ad* **the house** *domum*

13.8 **The farmer** *agricola* **walks** *ambulat* **to** *ad* **the field** *agrum*

13.9 **The sailors** *nautae* **sail** *navigant* **to** *ad* **the port** *portum*

13.10 **The women** *feminae* **hurry** *properant* **to** *ad* **the temple** *templum*

13.11 **The children** *pueri* **run** *currunt* **to** *ad* **the school** *ludum*

13.12 **The priest** *sacerdos* **walks** *ambulat* **to** *ad* **the altar** *aram*

13.13 **The teacher** *magister* **goes** *it* **to** *ad* **the forum** *forum*

13.31 **The shepherd** *pastor* **walks** *ambulat* **to** *ad* **the hills** *colles*

13.15 **The merchants** *mercatores* **travel** *iter faciunt* **to** *ad* **the city** *urbem*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

13.1 Discipulus ad templum ambulat. *The student walks to the temple.*

13.2 Nuntius ad urbem currit. *The messenger runs to the city.*

13.3 Ad flumen venimus. *We come to the river.*

13.4 Miles ad castra graditur. *The soldier marches to the camp.*

13.5 Puer ad forum it. *The boy goes to the market.*

13.6 Ad litus ambulant. *They walk to the shore.*

13.7 Puella ad domum currit. *The girl runs to the house.*

13.8 Agricola ad agrum ambulat. *The farmer walks to the field.*

13.9 Nautae ad portum navigant. *The sailors sail to the port.*

13.10 Feminae ad templum properant. *The women hurry to the temple.*

13.11 Pueri ad ludum currunt. *The children run to the school.*

13.12 Sacerdos ad aram ambulat. *The priest walks to the altar.*

13.13 Magister ad forum it. *The teacher goes to the forum.*

13.31 Pastor ad colles ambulat. *The shepherd walks to the hills.*

13.15 Mercatores ad urbem iter faciunt. *The merchants travel to the city.*

Part C (Latin Only)

13.1 Discipulus ad templum ambulat.

13.2 Nuntius ad urbem currit.

13.3 Ad flumen venimus.

13.4 Miles ad castra graditur.

13.5 Puer ad forum it.

13.6 Ad litus ambulant.

13.7 Puella ad domum currit.

13.8 Agricola ad agrum ambulat.

13.9 Nautae ad portum navigant.

13.10 Feminae ad templum properant.

13.11 Pueri ad ludum currunt.

13.12 Sacerdos ad aram ambulat.

13.13 Magister ad forum it.

13.31 Pastor ad colles ambulat.

13.15 Mercatores ad urbem iter faciunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The preposition "ad" is one of the most common prepositions in Latin. Key points for English speakers:

1. Usage:
    - Always takes the accusative case

- Indicates motion towards something
- Can indicate purpose or intention
- Used with verbs of motion (like ambulare, currere, ire)

2. Case Requirements:
    - The noun following "ad" must be in the accusative case
    - Examples:
        - templum → ad templum
        - urbs → ad urbem
        - portus → ad portum
3. Common Combinations:
    - With verbs of motion
    - With nouns indicating places
    - With time expressions (to indicate "up to" a point in time)
4. Important Notes for English Speakers:
    - Unlike English "to," "ad" is never used for indirect objects
    - Cannot be used for possession (use dative case instead)
    - Always appears directly before its object (unlike English prepositions)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "ad" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Urban Life:
    - Cities were centers of activity
    - Regular movement between important locations (temple, forum, market)
    - Fixed routes and destinations were important in Roman life
2. Social Context:
    - Different social classes moved to different locations
    - Priests to temples
    - Merchants to markets
    - Students to schools or teachers
3. Historical Perspective:
    - Romans were great builders of roads
    - Movement and direction were precisely described
    - Destinations were important in Roman writing and record-keeping
4. Modern Parallels:
    - Similar to English "to" in physical movement
    - Different from English in abstract uses
    - Important in understanding Roman spatial concepts

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (Book 1.7):

Caesar *Caesar* **hurries** *contendit* **to** *ad* **the largest city** *maximam urbem* **of the Sequani** *Sequanorum*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Caesar ad maximam urbem Sequanorum contendit. *Caesar hurries to the largest city of the Sequani.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage demonstrates Caesar's typical style: direct, clear movement descriptions using "ad" with military precision. The preposition shows purposeful movement toward a strategic location.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "ad" takes accusative "urbem"
- "maximam" modifies "urbem" (accusative feminine singular)
- "Sequanorum" is genitive plural showing possession
- "contendit" is present tense showing immediate action

Genre Section: Military Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

13.16 **The general** *dux* **marches** *ducit* **the army** *exercitum* **to** *ad* **battle** *proelium*

13.17 **The soldiers** *milites* **advance** *procedunt* **to** *ad* **the walls** *muros*

13.18 **The commander** *imperator* **sends** *mittit* **troops** *copias* **to** *ad* **the camp** *castra*

13.19 **The legion** *legio* **moves** *movetur* **to** *ad* **the river** *flumen*

13.20 **The cavalry** *equites* **ride** *equitant* **to** *ad* **the hill** *collem*

13.21 **The messenger** *nuntius* **runs** *currit* **to** *ad* **headquarters** *praetorium*

13.22 **The scouts** *exploratores* **return** *redeunt* **to** *ad* **the fortifications** *munitiones*

13.23 **The centurion** *centurio* **leads** *ducit* **his men** *suos* **to** *ad* **the gate** *portam*

13.24 **The allies** *socii* **march** *gradiuntur* **to** *ad* **the battlefield** *campum proelii*

13.25 **The officers** *duces* **advance** *procedunt* **to** *ad* **the front line** *primam aciem*

13.26 **The archers** *sagittarii* **move** *se movent* **to** *ad* **the towers** *turres*

13.27 **The auxiliaries** *auxilia* **rush** *properant* **to** *ad* **the defense** *defensionem*

13.28 **The tribune** *tribunus* **hurries** *festinat* **to** *ad* **the rampart** *vallum*

13.29 **The veterans** *veterani* **march** *gradiuntur* **to** *ad* **their positions** *stationes suas*

13.30 **The reinforcements** *subsidia* **advance** *procedunt* **to** *ad* **the battle line** *aciem*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

13.16 Dux exercitum ad proelium ducit. *The general leads the army to battle.*

13.17 Milites ad muros procedunt. *The soldiers advance to the walls.*

13.18 Imperator copias ad castra mittit. *The commander sends troops to the camp.*

13.19 Legio ad flumen movetur. *The legion moves to the river.*

13.20 Equites ad collem equitant. *The cavalry ride to the hill.*

13.21 Nuntius ad praetorium currit. *The messenger runs to headquarters.*

13.22 Exploratores ad munitiones redeunt. *The scouts return to the fortifications.*

13.23 Centurio suos ad portam ducit. *The centurion leads his men to the gate.*

13.24 Socii ad campum proelii gradiuntur. *The allies march to the battlefield.*

13.25 Duces ad primam aciem procedunt. *The officers advance to the front line.*

13.26 Sagittarii ad turres se movent. *The archers move to the towers.*

13.27 Auxilia ad defensionem properant. *The auxiliaries rush to the defense.*

13.28 Tribunus ad vallum festinat. *The tribune hurries to the rampart.*

13.29 Veterani ad stationes suas gradiuntur. *The veterans march to their positions.*

13.30 Subsidia ad aciem procedunt. *The reinforcements advance to the battle line.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

13.16 Dux exercitum ad proelium ducit.

13.17 Milites ad muros procedunt.

13.18 Imperator copias ad castra mittit.

13.19 Legio ad flumen movetur.

13.20 Equites ad collem equitant.

13.21 Nuntius ad praetorium currit.

13.22 Exploratores ad munitiones redeunt.

13.23 Centurio suos ad portam ducit.

13.24 Socii ad campum proelii gradiuntur.

13.25 Duces ad primam aciem procedunt.

13.26 Sagittarii ad turres se movent.

13.27 Auxilia ad defensionem properant.

13.28 Tribunus ad vallum festinat.

13.29 Veterani ad stationes suas gradiuntur.

13.30 Subsidia ad aciem procedunt.

Part D (Detailed Grammar Lesson)

I. Basic Sentence Structure in Military Commands

1. The Standard Pattern: When the verb takes a direct object: Subject (Nominative) plus Direct Object (Accusative) plus ad plus Destination (Accusative) plus Verb Example: Dux (Nom.) exercitum (Acc.) ad proelium (Acc.) ducit Translation: "The general leads the army to battle"
2. Alternative Pattern with Intransitive Verbs: When the verb doesn't take a direct object: Subject (Nominative) plus ad plus Destination (Accusative) plus Verb Example: Milites (Nom.) ad muros (Acc.) procedunt Translation: "The soldiers advance to the walls"

II. Case Usage

1. The Accusative Case: Everything following "ad" must be in accusative case Showing endings:
    - First declension: munitiones becomes ad munitiones
    - Second declension: vallum becomes ad vallum
    - Third declension: aciem becomes ad aciem
2. Common Military Noun Endings in Accusative: First declension: -am (singular), -as (plural) Second declension: -um (singular), -os (plural) Third declension: -em (singular), -es (plural)

III. Verb Forms in Military Context

1. Present Tense Patterns: First conjugation: properant ("they hurry") Second conjugation: movent ("they move") Third conjugation: ducunt ("they lead") Fourth conjugation: veniunt ("they come")
2. Movement Verbs with "ad":
    - procedere (to advance): procedunt (they advance)
    - ducere (to lead): ducit/ducunt (he leads/they lead)
    - movere (to move): movet/movent (he moves/they move)
    - currere (to run): currit/currunt (he runs/they run)
    - festinare (to hurry): festinat/festinant (he hurries/they hurry)

IV. Modifiers and Their Agreement

1. Adjective Agreement: Example: "primam aciem" (the first battle line) prima (feminine nominative) becomes primam (feminine accusative) acies (feminine nominative) becomes aciem (feminine accusative)
2. Demonstrative Adjectives: Example: "has munitiones" (these fortifications) hae (feminine nominative plural) becomes has (feminine accusative plural) munitiones (feminine accusative plural)

V. Military-Specific Grammar Points

1. Collective Nouns:
    - legio (feminine) takes a singular verb but means multiple people
    - exercitus (masculine) follows the same principle Example: "Legio ad flumen movetur" (The legion moves to the river)
2. Commands vs. Statements: Present Indicative: "Milites procedunt" (The soldiers advance) Imperative: "Procedite!" (Advance!)

VI. Practice Exercises

1. Convert to Plural: Singular: "Miles ad murum procedit" Plural: "Milites ad muros procedunt"
2. Change the Destination: Original: "Dux ad castra venit" New: "Dux ad proelium venit"
3. Add an Adjective: Basic: "ad aciem" With Adjective: "ad primam aciem"

VII. Common Mistakes to Avoid

1. Word Order: Incorrect: "Ad exercitum dux ducit" Correct: "Dux exercitum ducit" or "Dux ad exercitum ducit"
2. Case Errors: Incorrect: "ad castra" (where castra is nominative) Correct: "ad castra" (where castra is accusative)
3. Verb Agreement: Incorrect: "Legio procedunt" Correct: "Legio procedit"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 14 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 14: ut/utī (as; so that; how)

Introduction

This lesson introduces one of Latin's most versatile words: ut/utī. As a conjunction and adverb, it has multiple important uses that English speakers need to master.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

14.1 **The boy** *puer* **runs** *currit* **as** *ut* **a deer** *cervus*

14.2 **He works** *laborat* **so that** *ut* **he may learn** *discat*

14.3 **I ask** *rogō* **how** *ut* **you are** *valeās*

14.4 **They fight** *pugnant* **as** *ut* **lions** *leōnēs*

14.5 **We study** *studēmus* **so that** *ut* **we may become wise** *sapiēntēs fīāmus*

14.6 **The girl sings** *puella cantat* **as** *ut* **a bird** *avis*

14.7 **He speaks** *loquitur* **so that** *ut* **all may understand** *omnēs intellegant*

14.8 **She asks** *rogat* **how** *ut* **I feel** *sentiam*

14.9 **The soldiers march** *mīlitēs gradiuntur* **as** *ut* **heroes** *heroēs*

14.10 **They read** *legunt* **so that** *ut* **they may learn** *discant*

14.11 **How** *ut* **beautiful** *pulchra* **the stars are!** *stellae sunt!*

14.12 **He lives** *vīvit* **as** *ut* **a king** *rēx*

14.13 **We write** *scrībimus* **so that** *ut* **we may remember** *meminerīmus*

14.14 **She teaches** *docet* **as** *ut* **a wise woman** *sapiēns fēmina*

14.15 **They practice** *exercent* **so that** *ut* **they may excel** *excellant*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

14.1 Puer ut cervus currit. *The boy runs like a deer.*

14.2 Laborat ut discat. *He works so that he may learn.*

14.3 Rogō ut valeās. *I ask how you are.*

14.4 Pugnant ut leōnēs. *They fight like lions.*

14.5 Studēmus ut sapiēntēs fīāmus. *We study so that we may become wise.*

14.6 Puella ut avis cantat. *The girl sings like a bird.*

14.7 Loquitur ut omnēs intellegant. *He speaks so that all may understand.*

14.8 Rogat ut sentiam. *She asks how I feel.*

14.9 Mīlitēs ut heroēs gradiuntur. *The soldiers march like heroes.*

14.10 Legunt ut discant. *They read so that they may learn.*

14.11 Ut pulchrae stellae sunt! *How beautiful the stars are!*

14.12 Vīvit ut rēx. *He lives like a king.*

14.13 Scrībimus ut meminerīmus. *We write so that we may remember.*

14.14 Docet ut sapiēns fēmina. *She teaches like a wise woman.*

14.15 Exercent ut excellant. *They practice so that they may excel.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

14.1 Puer ut cervus currit.

14.2 Laborat ut discat.

14.3 Rogō ut valeās.

14.4 Pugnant ut leōnēs.

14.5 Studēmus ut sapiēntēs fīāmus.

14.6 Puella ut avis cantat.

14.7 Loquitur ut omnēs intellegant.

14.8 Rogat ut sentiam.

14.9 Mīlitēs ut heroēs gradiuntur.

14.10 Legunt ut discant.

14.11 Ut pulchrae stellae sunt!

14.12 Vīvit ut rēx.

14.13 Scrībimus ut meminerīmus.

14.31 Docet ut sapiēns fēmina.

14.15 Exercent ut excellant.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, ut/utī is challenging because it serves multiple functions that require different constructions:

1. As a Comparative Conjunction ("as, like"):
    - Takes indicative mood
    - Compares two things directly
    - Example: "Puer ut cervus currit" (The boy runs like a deer)
2. As a Purpose Conjunction ("so that"):
    - Takes subjunctive mood
    - Shows why an action is done
    - Example: "Laborat ut discat" (He works so that he may learn)
3. As an Interrogative Adverb ("how"):
    - In questions about manner
    - Example: "Rogō ut valeās" (I ask how you are)
4. As an Exclamatory Adverb ("how"):
    - Shows strong feeling
    - Example: "Ut pulchrae stellae sunt!" (How beautiful the stars are!)

Key Points for English Speakers:

- Unlike English "as," ut never means "while" or "because"
- Purpose clauses always use subjunctive
- Word order is more flexible than English

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English-speaking students, understanding ut requires grasping Roman cultural concepts:

1. Roman Education:
    - Purpose clauses with ut were essential in rhetoric
    - Students learned through comparison (ut as "like")
    - Questions with ut showed intellectual curiosity
2. Social Context:
    - Comparisons to animals/heroes showed Roman values
    - Purpose clauses revealed Roman goal-oriented thinking
    - Exclamations showed emotional expression
3. Literary Significance:
    - Ut was crucial in poetry and prose
    - Different uses created varied effects
    - Understanding ut opens Roman literature
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English constructions but more precise
    - Important in legal and scientific Latin
    - Key to understanding Western cultural heritage

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (On Friendship):

True friends *vērī amīcī* **love** *amant* **as** *ut* **themselves** *sē ipsōs*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

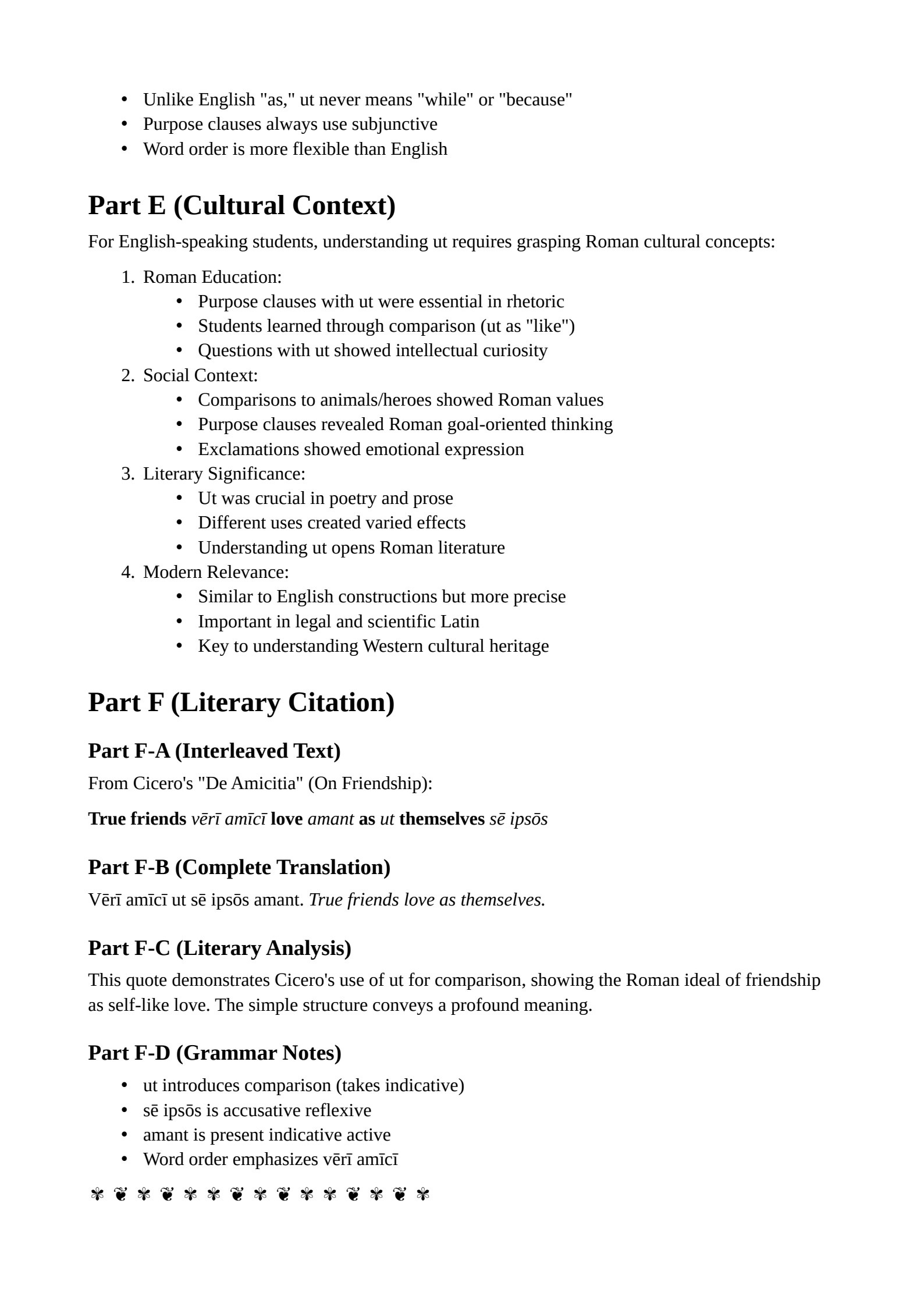
Vērī amīcī ut sē ipsōs amant. *True friends love as themselves.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This quote demonstrates Cicero's use of ut for comparison, showing the Roman ideal of friendship as self-like love. The simple structure conveys a profound meaning.

Part F-D (Grammar Notes)

- ut introduces comparison (takes indicative)
- sē ipsōs is accusative reflexive
- amant is present indicative active
- Word order emphasizes vērī amīcī



Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

14.16 **The teacher** *magister* **speaks** *dīcit* **so that** *ut* **the students** *discipulī* **may understand** *intellegant* **wisdom** *sapientiam*

14.17 **How** *ut* **can we** *possimus* **know** *scīre* **truth?** *vēritātem?* **asks** *rogat* **the student** *discipulus*

14.18 **We must think** *cōgitāre dēbēmus* **as** *ut* **philosophers** *philosophī* **the teacher replies** *magister respondet*

14.19 **The wise man** *sapiēns* **lives** *vīvit* **so that** *ut* **others** *aliī* **may learn** *discant* **from his example** *exemplō suō*

14.20 **Just as** *ut* **the sun** *sōl* **illuminates** *illūstrat* **the world** *mundum* **so** *sīc* **wisdom** *sapientia* **enlightens** *illūminat* **the mind** *mentem*

14.21 **We study** *studēmus* **philosophy** *philosophiam* **so that** *ut* **we may understand** *intellegāmus* **life** *vītam*

14.22 **How** *ut* **wonderful** *mīrābilis* **wisdom is!** *sapientia est!* **exclaims** *exclāmat* **the youth** *juvenis*

14.23 **The master** *magister* **teaches** *docet* **so that** *ut* **truth** *vēritās* **may be revealed** *revēlētur*

14.24 **As** *ut* **light** *lūx* **dispels** *fugat* **darkness** *tenebrās* **so** *sīc* **knowledge** *scientia* **removes** *removet* **ignorance** *īgnōrantiam*

14.25 **We must search** *quaerere dēbēmus* **so that** *ut* **we may find** *inveniāmus* **wisdom** *sapientiam*

14.26 **The students** *discipulī* **listen** *audiunt* **carefully** *dīligenter* **so that** *ut* **they may learn** *discant* **the truth** *vēritātem*

14.27 **How** *ut* **deep** *profunda* **are** *sunt* **the mysteries** *mystēria* **of philosophy!** *philosophiae!*

14.28 **We discuss** *disputāmus* **as** *ut* **seekers** *quaesītōrēs* **of truth** *vēritātis*

14.29 **The wise woman** *sapiēns fēmina* **speaks** *loquitur* **so that** *ut* **all** *omnēs* **may understand** *intellegant*

14.30 **Knowledge** *scientia* **grows** *crēscit* **as** *ut* **a tree** *arbor* **from small beginnings** *ab initiīs parvīs*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

14.16 Magister dīcit ut discipulī sapientiam intellegant. *The teacher speaks so that the students may understand wisdom.*

14.17 "Ut possimus scīre vēritātem?" rogat discipulus. *"How can we know truth?" asks the student.*

14.18 "Cōgitāre dēbēmus ut philosophī," magister respondet. *"We must think as philosophers," the teacher replies.*

14.19 Sapiēns vīvit ut aliī exemplō suō discant. *The wise man lives so that others may learn from his example.*

14.20 Ut sōl mundum illūstrat, sīc sapientia mentem illūminat. *Just as the sun illuminates the world, so wisdom enlightens the mind.*

14.21 Studēmus philosophiam ut intellegāmus vītam. *We study philosophy so that we may understand life.*

14.22 "Ut mīrābilis sapientia est!" exclāmat juvenis. *"How wonderful wisdom is!" exclaims the youth.*

14.23 Magister docet ut vēritās revēlētur. *The master teaches so that truth may be revealed.*

14.24 Ut lūx fugat tenebrās, sīc scientia removet īgnōrantiam. *As light dispels darkness, so knowledge removes ignorance.*

14.25 Quaerere dēbēmus ut inveniāmus sapientiam. *We must search so that we may find wisdom.*

14.26 Discipulī dīligenter audiunt ut discant vēritātem. *The students listen carefully so that they may learn the truth.*

14.27 "Ut profunda sunt mystēria philosophiae!" *"How deep are the mysteries of philosophy!"*

14.28 Disputāmus ut quaesītōrēs vēritātis. *We discuss as seekers of truth.*

14.29 Sapiēns fēmina loquitur ut omnēs intellegant. *The wise woman speaks so that all may understand.*

14.30 Scientia crēscit ut arbor ab initiīs parvīs. *Knowledge grows as a tree from small beginnings.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

14.16 Magister dīcit ut discipulī sapientiam intellegant.

14.17 "Ut possimus scīre vēritātem?" rogat discipulus.

14.18 "Cōgitāre dēbēmus ut philosophī," magister respondet.

14.19 Sapiēns vīvit ut aliī exemplō suō discant.

14.20 Ut sōl mundum illūstrat, sīc sapientia mentem illūminat.

14.21 Studēmus philosophiam ut intellegāmus vītam.

14.22 "Ut mīrābilis sapientia est!" exclāmat juvenis.

14.23 Magister docet ut vēritās revēlētur.

14.24 Ut lūx fugat tenebrās, sīc scientia removet īgnōrantiam.

14.25 Quaerere dēbēmus ut inveniāmus sapientiam.

14.26 Discipulī dīligenter audiunt ut discant vēritātem.

14.27 "Ut profunda sunt mystēria philosophiae!"

14.28 Disputāmus ut quaesītōrēs vēritātis.

14.29 Sapiēns fēmina loquitur ut omnēs intellegant.

14.30 Scientia crēscit ut arbor ab initiīs parvīs.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Complete Detailed Grammar Analysis)

I. Analysis of Each Sentence

14.16 Magister dīcit ut discipulī sapientiam intellegant

- Main clause: Magister dīcit (present indicative)
- Purpose clause: ut discipulī sapientiam intellegant
- sapientiam: direct object, accusative
- intellegant: present subjunctive showing purpose

14.17 "Ut possimus scīre vēritātem?" rogat discipulus

- Direct question with ut
- possimus: present subjunctive showing possibility
- scīre: complementary infinitive
- vēritātem: accusative direct object
- Framing clause: rogat discipulus (present indicative)

14.18 "Cōgitāre dēbēmus ut philosophī," magister respondet

- Main clause: Cōgitāre dēbēmus
- Comparative ut with philosophī (nominative plural)
- dēbēmus + infinitive: modal construction
- respondet: historical present for vivid narration

14.19 Sapiēns vīvit ut aliī exemplō suō discant

- Main clause: Sapiēns vīvit
- Purpose clause: ut aliī discant
- exemplō suō: ablative of means
- discant: present subjunctive

14.20 Ut sōl mundum illūstrat, sīc sapientia mentem illūminat

- Comparative construction with ut...sīc
- Two parallel clauses with present indicative
- Direct objects: mundum, mentem (accusative)
- Subject-Object-Verb pattern in both clauses

14.21 Studēmus philosophiam ut intellegāmus vītam

- Main clause: Studēmus philosophiam
- Purpose clause: ut intellegāmus vītam
- Double accusative objects: philosophiam, vītam
- intellegāmus: present subjunctive

14.22 "Ut mīrābilis sapientia est!" exclāmat juvenis

- Exclamatory ut construction
- mīrābilis: nominative adjective modifying sapientia
- Framing clause with historical present exclāmat

14.23 Magister docet ut vēritās revēlētur

- Main clause: Magister docet
- Purpose clause with passive subjunctive revēlētur
- vēritās: nominative subject of passive verb

14.24 Ut lūx fugat tenebrās, sīc scientia removet īgnōrantiam

- Double clause comparison with ut...sīc
- Parallel structure with active verbs
- Direct objects: tenebrās, īgnōrantiam (accusative)

14.25 Quaerere dēbēmus ut inveniāmus sapientiam

- Modal verb dēbēmus with infinitive quaerere
- Purpose clause: ut inveniāmus sapientiam
- sapientiam: accusative direct object

14.26 Discipulī dīligenter audiunt ut discant vēritātem

- Main clause with adverb dīligenter
- Purpose clause: ut discant vēritātem
- discant: present subjunctive
- vēritātem: accusative direct object

14.27 "Ut profunda sunt mystēria philosophiae!"

- Exclamatory ut construction
- profunda: nominative plural adjective
- philosophiae: genitive of possession

14.28 Disputāmus ut quaesītōrēs vēritātis

- Comparative ut with noun phrase
- quaesītōrēs: nominative plural
- vēritātis: objective genitive

14.29 Sapiēns fēmina loquitur ut omnēs intellegant

- Main clause with deponent verb loquitur
- Purpose clause: ut omnēs intellegant
- omnēs: nominative plural subject

14.30 Scientia crēscit ut arbor ab initiīs parvīs

- Comparative ut with single noun arbor
- Prepositional phrase: ab initiīs parvīs
- parvīs: ablative plural adjective

II. Key Grammatical Patterns

1. Uses of ut in Philosophical Discourse
    - Purpose clauses (31.16, 31.19, 31.21, 31.23, 31.26, 31.29)
    - Comparisons (31.18, 31.20, 31.24, 31.28, 31.30)
    - Questions (31.17)
    - Exclamations (31.22, 31.27)
2. Verb Moods
    - Subjunctive in purpose clauses
    - Indicative in comparative clauses
    - Mixed moods in complex sentences
3. Complex Constructions
    - Parallel clauses with ut...sīc
    - Modal verbs with purpose clauses
    - Passive constructions
    - Deponent verbs

III. Word Order Patterns

1. In Purpose Clauses
    - Ut typically begins clause
    - Verb often final
    - Object before verb
2. In Comparative Constructions
    - Balanced parallel structures
    - Similar word order in both clauses
    - Subject-Object-Verb pattern common

IV. Philosophical Vocabulary

1. Abstract Nouns
    - sapientia, vēritās, scientia
    - Often as subjects or objects
    - Important conceptual terms
2. Technical Terms
    - philosophī, mystēria, quaesītōrēs
    - Specialized philosophical vocabulary
    - Greek-derived terms

V. Common Constructions in Philosophical Latin

1. Teaching/Learning Expressions
    - docēre ut + subjunctive
    - discere ut + subjunctive
    - studēre ut + subjunctive
2. Rhetorical Devices
    - Parallel structures
    - Metaphorical comparisons

- Abstract personification

VI. Practice Exercises

1. Convert Purpose to Comparison From: Studēmus ut intellegāmus To: Studēmus ut philosophī
2. Change Active to Passive From: Magister docet ut discant To: Docētur ut discant
3. Create Parallel Structures Model: Ut lūx..., sīc scientia... Practice with new vocabulary

VII. Common Errors to Avoid

1. Mood Selection
    - Purpose requires subjunctive
    - Comparison uses indicative
    - Questions may use either
2. Word Order
    - Keep ut with its clause
    - Maintain proper verb position
    - Respect Latin flexibility
3. Vocabulary Usage
    - Abstract vs. concrete nouns
    - Technical terms
    - Proper philosophical context

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 15 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 15: "omnis -e" (all, every, as a whole)

Section A (Detailed Latin-English Interlinear Text)

15.1 **All** *omnis* **winter** *hiems* **brings** *fert* **snow** *nivem* **to** *ad* **the** - **mountains** *montēs*

15.2 **The** - **commander** *imperātor* **praises** *laudat* **all** *omnēs* **soldiers** *mīlitēs* **for** *ob* **their courage** *virtūtem*

15.3 **All** *omnēs* **citizens** *cīvēs* **must obey** *pārēre dēbent* **the** - **laws** *lēgibus*

15.4 **Wisdom** *sapientia* **guides** *regit* **all** *omnēs* **decisions** *cōnsilia*

15.5 **All** *omnia* **stars** *sīdera* **shine** *lūcent* **in** *in* **the** - **night sky** *caelō nocturnō*

15.6 **The** - **priest** *sacerdōs* **offers** *dedicat* **all** *omnia* **gifts** *dōna* **to** - **Jupiter** *Iovī*

15.7 **Every** *omnis* **student** *discipulus* **reads** *legit* **Virgil** *Vergilium*

15.8 **All** *omnia* **animals** *animālia* **fear** *timent* **fire** *ignem*

15.9 **Rome** *Rōma* **rules** *regit* **all** *omnēs* **lands** *terrās*

15.10 **All** *omnēs* **roads** *viae* **lead** *dūcunt* **to** *ad* **Rome** *Rōmam*

15.11 **Every** *omnis* **day** *diēs* **brings** *affert* **new** *novās* **joys** *laetitiās*

15.12 **All** *omnēs* **seasons** *tempestātēs* **please** *placent* **the - farmer** *agricolae*

15.13 **The - poet** *vātēs* **remembers** *meminit* **all** *omnium* **things** *rērum*

15.31 **All** *omnia* **words** *verba* **have** *habent* **power** *vim*

15.15 **Every** *omnis* **victory** *victōria* **brings** *affert* **glory** *glōriam*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

15.1 All winter brings snow to the mountains. *Omnis hiems nivem ad montēs fert.*

15.2 The commander praises all soldiers for their courage. *Imperātor omnēs mīlitēs ob virtūtem laudat.*

15.3 All citizens must obey the laws. *Omnēs cīvēs lēgibus pārēre dēbent.*

15.4 Wisdom guides all decisions. *Sapientia omnēs cōnsilia regit.*

15.5 All stars shine in the night sky. *Omnia sīdera in caelō nocturnō lūcent.*

15.6 The priest offers all gifts to Jupiter. *Sacerdōs omnia dōna Iovī dedicat.*

15.7 Every student reads Virgil. *Omnis discipulus Vergilium legit.*

15.8 All animals fear fire. *Omnia animālia ignem timent.*

15.9 Rome rules all lands. *Rōma omnēs terrās regit.*

15.10 All roads lead to Rome. *Omnēs viae ad Rōmam dūcunt.*

15.11 Every day brings new joys. *Omnis diēs novās laetitiās affert.*

15.12 All seasons please the farmer. *Omnēs tempestātēs agricolae placent.*

15.13 The poet remembers all things. *Vātēs omnium rērum meminit.*

15.31 All words have power. *Omnia verba vim habent.*

15.15 Every victory brings glory. *Omnis victōria glōriam affert.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section C (Latin Text Only)

15.1 Omnis hiems nivem ad montēs fert.

15.2 Imperātor omnēs mīlitēs ob virtūtem laudat.

15.3 Omnēs cīvēs lēgibus pārēre dēbent.

15.4 Sapientia omnēs cōnsilia regit.

15.5 Omnia sīdera in caelō nocturnō lūcent.

15.6 Sacerdōs omnia dōna Iovī dedicat.

15.7 Omnis discipulus Vergilium legit.

15.8 Omnia animālia ignem timent.

15.9 Rōma omnēs terrās regit.

15.10 Omnēs viae ad Rōmam dūcunt.

15.11 Omnis diēs novās laetitiās affert.

15.12 Omnēs tempestātēs agricolae placent.

15.13 Vātēs omnium rērum meminit.

15.31 Omnia verba vim habent.

15.15 Omnis victōria glōriam affert.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section D (Grammar Explanation for English Speakers)

Understanding omnis -e is crucial for English speakers learning Latin. Here are the key points:

1. Basic Meaning:
    - Translates as "all," "every," or "the whole"
    - Can refer to both singular and plural concepts
    - Different from quisque (each individual)
2. Forms:
    - Singular: omnis (m/f), omne (n)
    - Plural: omnēs (m/f), omnia (n)
    - Follows 3rd declension i-stem patterns
    - Regular adjective-noun agreement required
3. Usage Differences from English:
    - No separate words for "all" vs "every" in Latin
    - Position is flexible in the sentence
    - Can be used substantively (omnēs = "everyone")
4. Common Patterns:
    - omnis + singular = "every" (omnis diēs = every day)
    - omnēs + plural = "all" (omnēs homines = all people)
    - omnia = "all things" (when used alone)
5. Case Usage:
    - Changes endings to match the case role
    - Common in genitive phrases (omnium rērum = of all things)
    - Frequently used in accusative with verbs of total effect

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section E (Cultural Context for English Speakers)

Understanding omnis in Roman culture adds depth to its usage:

1. In Roman Philosophy:
    - Stoics used omnia to discuss universal truths
    - Cicero's writings often use omnis for comprehensive arguments
    - Concept of "all things" crucial in natural philosophy
2. In Roman Religion:
    - Jupiter often described as pater omnium (father of all)
    - Ritual formulas often included "all" to ensure completeness
    - Prayers often addressed deities' power over "all things"
3. In Roman Law:
    - Legal texts used omnis for comprehensive coverage
    - Phrase omnes cīvēs important in citizenship rights
    - Contracts often included omnia to prevent loopholes
4. In Daily Life:
    - Romans viewed "all" differently than modern English speakers
    - Collective thinking more common than individualistic
    - Universal statements more acceptable in formal rhetoric
5. In Literature:
    - Epic poetry uses omnis for grand, sweeping statements
    - Historical works employ it for universal truths
    - Important in proverbs and wisdom sayings

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interlinear Analysis)

All *Omnia* **conquers** *vincit* **love** *amor,* **and** *et* **let us** *nōs* **yield** *cēdāmus* **to - love** *amōrī*

- Virgil, Eclogue X.69

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Love conquers all things, and let us yield to love" *Omnia vincit amor, et nōs cēdāmus amōrī*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous line from Virgil's Eclogues demonstrates the power of omnia in Latin poetry. The placement of omnia at the start emphasizes its importance, while the verb vincit shows complete dominion. The phrase became proverbial in Roman culture.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- omnia is accusative plural neuter, direct object

- vincit is present indicative active
- amor is nominative singular, subject
- Perfect example of omnia used substantively
- Shows typical Latin word order flexibility

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section A (Detailed Latin-English Interlinear Text)

15.16 **The** - **general** *imperātor* **inspects** *īnspicit* **all** *omnēs* **weapons** *armā* **before** *ante* **battle** *proelium*

15.17 **All** *omnēs* **soldiers** *mīlitēs* **must maintain** *cūrāre dēbent* **their** *sua* **shields** *scūta*

15.18 **The** - **commander** *dux* **orders** *iubet* **all** *omnēs* **troops** *cōpiās* **to advance** *prōgredī*

15.19 **All** *omnēs* **scouts** *explōrātōrēs* **report** *nūntiant* **enemy** *hostium* **movements** *mōtūs*

15.20 **The** - **signal** *signum* **calls** *vocat* **all** *omnēs* **guards** *custōdēs* **to** *ad* **their posts** *statiōnēs*

15.21 **All** *omnia* **camps** *castra* **must be fortified** *mūnienda sunt* **by** - **nightfall** *noctem*

15.22 **Every** *omnis* **legion** *legiō* **defends** *dēfendit* **its** *suōs* **borders** *fīnēs*

15.23 **All** *omnēs* **centurions** *centuriōnēs* **must report** *referre dēbent* **to** *ad* **headquarters** *praetōrium*

15.24 **The** - **cavalry** *equitātus* **protects** *prōtegit* **all** *omnia* **supply lines** *commeātuum itinera*

15.25 **All** *omnēs* **soldiers** *mīlitēs* **observe** *observant* **the** - **night watch** *vigilās*

15.26 **Every** *omnis* **cohort** *cohors* **must maintain** *servāre dēbet* **its position** *locum*

15.27 **All** *omnia* **signals** *signa* **must be obeyed** *sequenda sunt* **immediately** *statim*

15.28 **The** - **tribune** *tribūnus* **inspects** *lūstrat* **all** *omnēs* **fortifications** *mūnītiōnēs*

15.29 **All** *omnēs* **messengers** *nūntiī* **await** *exspectant* **orders** *imperium*

15.30 **Every** *omnis* **soldier** *mīles* **must know** *scīre dēbet* **the** - **watchwords** *tesseram*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

15.16 The general inspects all weapons before battle. *Imperātor omnēs armā ante proelium īnspicit.*

15.17 All soldiers must maintain their shields. *Omnēs mīlitēs scūta sua cūrāre dēbent.*

15.18 The commander orders all troops to advance. *Dux omnēs cōpiās prōgredī iubet.*

15.19 All scouts report enemy movements. *Omnēs explōrātōrēs hostium mōtūs nūntiant.*

15.20 The signal calls all guards to their posts. *Signum omnēs custōdēs ad statiōnēs vocat.*

15.21 All camps must be fortified by nightfall. *Omnia castra ante noctem mūnienda sunt.*

15.22 Every legion defends its borders. *Omnis legiō suōs fīnēs dēfendit.*

15.23 All centurions must report to headquarters. *Omnēs centuriōnēs ad praetōrium referre dēbent.*

15.24 The cavalry protects all supply lines. *Equitātus omnia commeātuum itinera prōtegit.*

15.25 All soldiers observe the night watch. *Omnēs mīlitēs vigilās observant.*

15.26 Every cohort must maintain its position. *Omnis cohors locum servāre dēbet.*

15.27 All signals must be obeyed immediately. *Omnia signa statim sequenda sunt.*

15.28 The tribune inspects all fortifications. *Tribūnus omnēs mūnītiōnēs lūstrat.*

15.29 All messengers await orders. *Omnēs nūntiī imperium exspectant.*

15.30 Every soldier must know the watchwords. *Omnis mīles tesseram scīre dēbet.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section C (Latin Text Only)

15.16 Imperātor omnēs armā ante proelium īnspicit.

15.17 Omnēs mīlitēs scūta sua cūrāre dēbent.

15.18 Dux omnēs cōpiās prōgredī iubet.

15.19 Omnēs explōrātōrēs hostium mōtūs nūntiant.

15.20 Signum omnēs custōdēs ad statiōnēs vocat.

15.21 Omnia castra ante noctem mūnienda sunt.

15.22 Omnis legiō suōs fīnēs dēfendit.

15.23 Omnēs centuriōnēs ad praetōrium referre dēbent.

15.24 Equitātus omnia commeātuum itinera prōtegit.

15.25 Omnēs mīlitēs vigilās observant.

15.26 Omnis cohors locum servāre dēbet.

15.27 Omnia signa statim sequenda sunt.

15.28 Tribūnus omnēs mūnītiōnēs lūstrat.

15.29 Omnēs nūntiī imperium exspectant.

15.30 Omnis mīles tesseram scīre dēbet.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section D (Grammar Notes for Military Genre)

For English speakers studying Latin military texts, the use of omnis in commands requires special attention:

1. Command Structure:

    - Often uses dēbēre (must) + infinitive
    - Gerundives common for necessity (mūnienda sunt)
    - Universal application emphasized by omnis
2. Military Vocabulary:
    - Collective nouns often take omnis (legiō, cohors)
    - Terms for equipment often plural (armā, signa)
    - Military positions usually masculine (mīles, centuriō)
3. Special Uses in Military Context:
    - omnēs for personnel (all soldiers, all guards)
    - omnia for equipment or facilities (all camps, all signals)
    - omnis for individual units (every legion, every cohort)
4. Word Order in Commands:
    - omnis often begins the sentence for emphasis
    - Position can indicate urgency or importance
    - Flexible placement possible for rhetorical effect
5. Grammatical Patterns in Orders:
    - Frequent use of passive periphrastic
    - Purpose clauses common with commands
    - Heavy use of present tense for standing orders

Lesson 16 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson 16: "sui sibi sē/sēsē" (Reflexive Pronouns)

Section A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

16.1 **The wise philosopher** *sapiens philosophus* **taught** *docuit* **himself** *sē* **new ideas** *novas sententias* **every day** *cotidiē*

16.2 **The brave soldier** *fortis miles* **prepared** *parāvit* **himself** *sē* **for** *ad* **battle** *proelium*

16.3 **The young girl** *puella* **sees** *videt* **herself** *sē* **in** *in* **the mirror** *speculō*

16.4 **The students** *discipulī* **teach** *docent* **themselves** *sē* **Latin** *Latīnam* **grammar** *grammaticam*

16.5 **The senator** *senātor* **convinced** *persuāsit* **himself** *sibi* **to speak** *dīcere* **the truth** *vērum*

16.6 **The general** *dux* **saved** *servāvit* **himself** *sē* **from** *ā* **danger** *perīculō*

16.7 **The poet** *poēta* **writes** *scrībit* **to himself** *sibi* **beautiful verses** *pulchrōs versūs*

16.8 **The children** *puerī* **taught** *docuērunt* **themselves** *sē* **to swim** *natāre*

16.9 **The old man** *senex* **talks** *loquitur* **to himself** *sēcum* **in** *in* **the garden** *hortō*

16.10 **The queen** *rēgīna* **built** *aedificāvit* **herself** *sibi* **a new palace** *novam rēgiam*

16.11 **The master** *dominus* **gave** *dedit* **himself** *sibi* **time** *tempus* **to think** *cōgitandī*

16.12 **The sailors** *nautae* **saved** *servāvērunt* **themselves** *sē* **from** *ē* **the storm** *tempestāte*

16.13 **The orator** *ōrātor* **prepared** *parāvit* **himself** *sē* **for** *ad* **the speech** *ōrātiōnem*

16.31 **The farmer** *agricola* **works** *labōrat* **for himself** *sibi* **in** *in* **the fields** *agrīs*

16.15 **The wise men** *sapientēs* **teach** *docent* **themselves** *sē* **patience** *patientiam*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

16.1 The wise philosopher taught himself new ideas every day. *Sapiens philosophus sē novas sententias cotidiē docuit.*

16.2 The brave soldier prepared himself for battle. *Fortis miles sē ad proelium parāvit.*

16.3 The young girl sees herself in the mirror. *Puella sē in speculō videt.*

16.4 The students teach themselves Latin grammar. *Discipulī sē Latīnam grammaticam docent.*

16.5 The senator convinced himself to speak the truth. *Senātor sibi persuāsit vērum dīcere.*

16.6 The general saved himself from danger. *Dux sē ā perīculō servāvit.*

16.7 The poet writes beautiful verses to himself. *Poēta sibi pulchrōs versūs scrībit.*

16.8 The children taught themselves to swim. *Puerī sē natāre docuērunt.*

16.9 The old man talks to himself in the garden. *Senex sēcum in hortō loquitur.*

16.10 The queen built herself a new palace. *Rēgīna sibi novam rēgiam aedificāvit.*

16.11 The master gave himself time to think. *Dominus sibi tempus cōgitandī dedit.*

16.12 The sailors saved themselves from the storm. *Nautae sē ē tempestāte servāvērunt.*

16.13 The orator prepared himself for the speech. *Ōrātor sē ad ōrātiōnem parāvit.*

16.31 The farmer works for himself in the fields. *Agricola sibi in agrīs labōrat.*

16.15 The wise men teach themselves patience. *Sapientēs sē patientiam docent.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section C (Latin Text Only)

16.1 Sapiens philosophus sē novas sententias cotidiē docuit.

16.2 Fortis miles sē ad proelium parāvit.

16.3 Puella sē in speculō videt.

16.4 Discipulī sē Latīnam grammaticam docent.

16.5 Senātor sibi persuāsit vērum dīcere.

16.6 Dux sē ā perīculō servāvit.

16.7 Poēta sibi pulchrōs versūs scrībit.

16.8 Puerī sē natāre docuērunt.

16.9 Senex sēcum in hortō loquitur.

16.10 Rēgīna sibi novam rēgiam aedificāvit.

16.11 Dominus sibi tempus cōgitandī dedit.

16.12 Nautae sē ē tempestāte servāvērunt.

16.13 Ōrātor sē ad ōrātiōnem parāvit.

16.31 Agricola sibi in agrīs labōrat.

16.15 Sapientēs sē patientiam docent.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section D (Grammatical Explanation for English Speakers)

The Latin reflexive pronouns "sui sibi sē/sēsē" are essential for expressing actions that reflect back on the subject. Here's what English speakers need to know:

1. Basic Forms:
    - sē/sēsē = himself, herself, itself, themselves (direct object)
    - sibi = to/for himself, herself, itself, themselves (indirect object)
    - suī = of himself, herself, itself, themselves (possessive)
2. Key Differences from English:
    - Latin uses the same form regardless of gender
    - The form changes based on the pronoun's function in the sentence
    - The intensive form sēsē has the same meaning as sē
3. Common Uses:
    - Direct object (sē): "The soldier prepared himself"
    - Indirect object (sibi): "The poet writes to himself"
    - With prepositions: "sēcum" = "with himself/herself"
    - In purpose clauses: "to save himself"
4. Important Rules:
    - Always refers back to the subject of the clause
    - Used in both singular and plural contexts
    - Cannot be used as a subject (that's what personal pronouns are for)
5. Common Mistakes for English Speakers:
    - Using it when not referring to the subject
    - Confusing it with is, ea, id (demonstrative pronouns)
    - Forgetting to match the case with its function

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section E (Cultural Context for English Speakers)

Understanding reflexive pronouns in Latin requires appreciating several cultural aspects:

1. Roman Emphasis on Self-Reflection:
    - Stoic philosophy emphasized self-examination
    - Many Latin authors wrote personal meditations
    - The concept of "knowing thyself" was central to Roman thought
2. Legal and Political Context:
    - Romans used reflexive pronouns in legal documents
    - Political speeches often employed reflexive constructions
    - Self-reference was important in public life
3. Literary Usage:
    - Latin authors used reflexives for dramatic effect
    - Personal narratives employed these pronouns extensively
    - Poetry often played with reflexive meanings
4. Modern Parallels:
    - Similar to English "self-" compounds
    - Comparable to French "se" or German "sich"
    - Helps understand modern Romance languages
5. Educational Context:
    - Central to Roman rhetorical training
    - Used in philosophical discussions
    - Important in letter-writing conventions

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section F (Literary Quote)

Part F-A (Detailed Translation)

"Nōsce **tē** *yourself* **ipsum** *itself*" - Ancient Greek maxim adopted by Romans

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Know thyself" (Nōsce tē ipsum) *The famous Delphic maxim translated into Latin*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous maxim, originally from the Temple of Apollo at Delphi, was adopted by Romans and became central to Roman philosophical thought. The use of tē (accusative of tū) with ipsum emphasizes the reflexive nature of self-knowledge.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Nōsce: imperative singular of nōscō ("know")
- tē: accusative singular of personal pronoun
- ipsum: intensive adjective agreeing with tē

- Note how Latin can express "yourself" either with tē or sē depending on context

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Philosophical Genre Section

Section A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

16.16 **The philosopher** *philosophus* **examines** *exāminat* **himself** *sē* **through** *per* **daily** *cotidiāna* **meditation** *meditātiōnem*

16.17 **The wise man** *sapiens* **knows** *cognōscit* **himself** *sē* **through** *per* **reason** *ratiōnem*

16.18 **The student** *discipulus* **questions** *interrogat* **himself** *sē* **about** *dē* **the nature of wisdom** *sapientiā*

16.19 **The master** *magister* **teaches** *docet* **himself** *sē* **new truths** *nova vēra* **every day** *cotidiē*

16.20 **The scholars** *doctī* **challenge** *prōvocant* **themselves** *sē* **with** *cum* **difficult questions** *difficilibus quaestiōnibus*

16.21 **The thinker** *cogitātor* **gives** *dat* **himself** *sibi* **time** *tempus* **for contemplation** *contemplātiōnī*

16.22 **The seeker of truth** *vēritātis quaesītor* **dedicates** *dēdicat* **himself** *sē* **to study** *studiō*

16.23 **The disciples** *discipulī* **prepare** *parant* **themselves** *sē* **for** *ad* **deeper understanding** *altiōrem intellegentiam*

16.24 **The sage** *sapiens* **finds** *invenit* **within himself** *in sē* **the answers** *respōnsa* **he seeks** *quae quaerit*

16.25 **The teacher** *magister* **reminds** *admonet* **himself** *sē* **of ancient wisdom** *antīquae sapientiae*

16.26 **The seekers** *quaesītōrēs* **devote** *dēvōvent* **themselves** *sē* **to** *ad* **the pursuit of knowledge** *scientiae studium*

16.27 **The reader** *lectōr* **asks** *rogat* **himself** *sē* **profound questions** *gravēs quaestiōnēs*

16.28 **The student of wisdom** *sapientiae studiōsus* **improves** *melior fit* **himself** *sē* **through study** *per studium*

16.29 **The learned men** *doctī* **dedicate** *dēdicant* **themselves** *sē* **to teaching others** *aliīs docendīs*

16.30 **The philosopher** *philosophus* **finds** *invenit* **peace** *pācem* **within himself** *in sē*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

16.16 The philosopher examines himself through daily meditation. *Philosophus sē per cotidiānam meditātiōnem exāminat.*

16.17 The wise man knows himself through reason. *Sapiens sē per ratiōnem cognōscit.*

16.18 The student questions himself about the nature of wisdom. *Discipulus sē dē sapientiā interrogat.*

16.19 The master teaches himself new truths every day. *Magister sē nova vēra cotidiē docet.*

16.20 The scholars challenge themselves with difficult questions. *Doctī sē difficilibus quaestiōnibus prōvocant.*

16.21 The thinker gives himself time for contemplation. *Cogitātor sibi tempus contemplātiōnī dat.*

16.22 The seeker of truth dedicates himself to study. *Vēritātis quaesītor sē studiō dēdicat.*

16.23 The disciples prepare themselves for deeper understanding. *Discipulī sē ad altiōrem intellegentiam parant.*

16.24 The sage finds within himself the answers he seeks. *Sapiens in sē respōnsa quae quaerit invenit.*

16.25 The teacher reminds himself of ancient wisdom. *Magister sē antīquae sapientiae admonet.*

16.26 The seekers devote themselves to the pursuit of knowledge. *Quaesītōrēs sē ad scientiae studium dēvōvent.*

16.27 The reader asks himself profound questions. *Lectōr sē gravēs quaestiōnēs rogat.*

16.28 The student of wisdom improves himself through study. *Sapientiae studiōsus sē per studium melior fit.*

16.29 The learned men dedicate themselves to teaching others. *Doctī sē aliīs docendīs dēdicant.*

16.30 The philosopher finds peace within himself. *Philosophus pācem in sē invenit.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section C (Latin Text Only)

16.16 Philosophus sē per cotidiānam meditātiōnem exāminat.

16.17 Sapiens sē per ratiōnem cognōscit.

16.18 Discipulus sē dē sapientiā interrogat.

16.19 Magister sē nova vēra cotidiē docet.

16.20 Doctī sē difficilibus quaestiōnibus prōvocant.

16.21 Cogitātor sibi tempus contemplātiōnī dat.

16.22 Vēritātis quaesītor sē studiō dēdicat.

16.23 Discipulī sē ad altiōrem intellegentiam parant.

16.24 Sapiens in sē respōnsa quae quaerit invenit.

16.25 Magister sē antīquae sapientiae admonet.

16.26 Quaesītōrēs sē ad scientiae studium dēvōvent.

16.27 Lectōr sē gravēs quaestiōnēs rogat.

16.28 Sapientiae studiōsus sē per studium melior fit.

16.29 Doctī sē aliīs docendīs dēdicant.

16.30 Philosophus pācem in sē invenit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section D (Grammatical Notes for Philosophical Genre)

The philosophical genre demonstrates specific uses of reflexive pronouns that English speakers should note:

1. Abstract Concepts:
    - Used with verbs of knowing and understanding
    - Often appears with prepositional phrases indicating means or method
    - Frequently combined with abstract nouns (wisdom, truth, knowledge)
2. Special Philosophical Constructions:
    - "in sē" for internal discovery or realization
    - "sibi" with verbs of giving or allowing
    - "sē" with verbs of improvement or development
3. Common Patterns in Philosophical Writing:
    - Reflexive + gerundive constructions
    - Purpose clauses with reflexive objects
    - Meditation and self-examination vocabulary
4. Stylistic Features:
    - More frequent use of abstract nouns
    - Complex prepositional phrases
    - Emphasis on internal actions and states
5. Tips for English Speakers:
    - Watch for metaphorical uses
    - Note the difference between physical and mental reflexive actions
    - Pay attention to the various ways of expressing self-improvement

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 17 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 17: "sed" (but)

Section A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

17.1 **The sky** *caelum* **was** *erat* **cloudy** *nubilum* **but** *sed* **no rain** *nulla pluvia* **fell** *cecidit*

17.2 **Cicero** *Cicero* **was** *erat* **old** *senex* **but** *sed* **his mind** *mens eius* **remained** *manebat* **sharp** *acuta*

17.3 **The soldiers** *milites* **were** *erant* **tired** *fessi* **but** *sed* **they marched** *iter fecerunt* **onward** *porro*

17.4 **The book** *liber* **is** *est* **small** *parvus* **but** *sed* **contains** *continet* **great wisdom** *magnam sapientiam*

17.5 **I studied** *studui* **hard** *diligenter* **but** *sed* **the test** *examen* **was difficult** *erat difficile*

17.6 **The wine** *vinum* **was** *erat* **old** *vetus* **but** *sed* **tasted** *sapiebat* **sweet** *dulce*

17.7 **The road** *via* **was** *erat* **long** *longa* **but** *sed* **pleasant** *iucunda*

17.8 **They spoke** *locuti sunt* **quietly** *quiete* **but** *sed* **I heard** *audivi* **everything** *omnia*

17.9 **The day** *dies* **began** *coepit* **badly** *male* **but** *sed* **ended** *finivit* **well** *bene*

17.10 **The house** *domus* **is** *est* **simple** *simplex* **but** *sed* **beautiful** *pulchra*

17.11 **Caesar** *Caesar* **came** *venit* **but** *sed* **did not conquer** *non vicit*

17.12 **The night** *nox* **was** *erat* **dark** *obscura* **but** *sed* **the stars** *stellae* **shone** *fulgebant*

17.13 **Many** *multi* **were called** *vocati sunt* **but** *sed* **few** *pauci* **were chosen** *electi sunt*

17.31 **The task** *opus* **seems** *videtur* **impossible** *impossibile* **but** *sed* **we must try** *conari debemus*

17.15 **The winter** *hiems* **was** *erat* **harsh** *dura* **but** *sed* **spring** *ver* **has come** *venit*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

17.1 The sky was cloudy but no rain fell. *Caelum erat nubilum sed nulla pluvia cecidit.*

17.2 Cicero was old but his mind remained sharp. *Cicero erat senex sed mens eius manebat acuta.*

17.3 The soldiers were tired but they marched onward. *Milites erant fessi sed porro iter fecerunt.*

17.4 The book is small but contains great wisdom. *Liber est parvus sed magnam sapientiam continet.*

17.5 I studied hard but the test was difficult. *Diligenter studui sed examen erat difficile.*

17.6 The wine was old but tasted sweet. *Vinum erat vetus sed dulce sapiebat.*

17.7 The road was long but pleasant. *Via erat longa sed iucunda.*

17.8 They spoke quietly but I heard everything. *Quiete locuti sunt sed omnia audivi.*

17.9 The day began badly but ended well. *Dies male coepit sed bene finivit.*

17.10 The house is simple but beautiful. *Domus est simplex sed pulchra.*

17.11 Caesar came but did not conquer. *Caesar venit sed non vicit.*

17.12 The night was dark but the stars shone. *Nox erat obscura sed stellae fulgebant.*

17.13 Many were called but few were chosen. *Multi vocati sunt sed pauci electi sunt.*

17.31 The task seems impossible but we must try. *Opus impossibile videtur sed conari debemus.*

17.15 The winter was harsh but spring has come. *Hiems erat dura sed ver venit.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section C (Latin Text Only)

17.1 Caelum erat nubilum sed nulla pluvia cecidit.

17.2 Cicero erat senex sed mens eius manebat acuta.

17.3 Milites erant fessi sed porro iter fecerunt.

17.4 Liber est parvus sed magnam sapientiam continet.

17.5 Diligenter studui sed examen erat difficile.

17.6 Vinum erat vetus sed dulce sapiebat.

17.7 Via erat longa sed iucunda.

17.8 Quiete locuti sunt sed omnia audivi.

17.9 Dies male coepit sed bene finivit.

17.10 Domus est simplex sed pulchra.

17.11 Caesar venit sed non vicit.

17.12 Nox erat obscura sed stellae fulgebant.

17.13 Multi vocati sunt sed pauci electi sunt.

17.31 Opus impossibile videtur sed conari debemus.

17.15 Hiems erat dura sed ver venit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section D (Grammatical Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "sed" is straightforward in basic usage but requires attention to certain details:

1. Basic Usage:
    - "Sed" directly corresponds to English "but"
    - Always joins contrasting elements
    - Cannot be used as an adjective like English "but" can
    - Never changes form (unlike many Latin words)
2. Position in Sentence:
    - Usually comes between the contrasting elements
    - Often appears at the start of its clause
    - Never appears at the very end of a sentence
    - Can follow a comma in written Latin

3. Common Patterns:
    - non/nec... sed: "not... but"
    - non solum... sed etiam: "not only... but also"
    - non modo... sed: "not merely... but"
4. Important Distinctions:
    - "Sed" vs. "autem" (but, however):
        - "Sed" introduces a direct contrast
        - "Autem" introduces a separate thought
    - "Sed" vs. "at" (but):
        - "Sed" negates or contrasts previous statement
        - "At" introduces a strong objection
5. Key Rules for English Speakers:
    - Never add endings to "sed"
    - Don't confuse with "et" (and)
    - Remember it always indicates contrast
    - Can't be used as in "all but one" (use "praeter" instead)

Section E (Cultural Note)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "sed" reveals interesting cultural aspects:

1. Roman Rhetoric:
    - "Sed" was crucial in Roman oratory
    - Used effectively by Cicero in arguments
    - Essential in philosophical discussions
    - Key part of Roman legal language
2. Literary Usage:
    - Common in Roman poetry for dramatic effect
    - Used in historical writings to show turning points
    - Important in epistolary writing (letters)
    - Frequent in political speeches
3. Modern Relevance:
    - Still used in scientific Latin
    - Common in legal phrases
    - Found in academic writing
    - Used in Catholic Church Latin
4. Cultural Context:
    - Romans valued precise expression
    - Contrast was important in Roman thought
    - Clear argumentation was highly prized
    - Precision in language reflected social status

Section F (Literary Quote)

Part F-A (Detailed Translation)

"Errare *To err* **humanum est,** *is human,* **sed** *but* **in errore** *in error* **perseverare** *to persevere* **diabolicum"** *is diabolical* - Seneca the Younger

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"To err is human, but to persevere in error is diabolical." *Errare humanum est, sed in errore perseverare diabolicum.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous quote by Seneca the Younger (c. 4 BC - 65 AD) exemplifies the Roman use of "sed" to create a powerful contrast. The first part acknowledges human fallibility, while the second part, introduced by "sed," emphasizes the moral choice involved in continuing mistakes.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Errare" and "perseverare" are infinitives
- "Sed" introduces the contrasting second clause
- "Humanum" and "diabolicum" are neuter adjectives used as predicates
- The structure is balanced on either side of "sed"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Section A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

17.16 **The body** *corpus* **is mortal** *mortale est* **but** *sed* **the soul** *anima* **lives forever** *semper vivit*

17.17 **Pleasure** *voluptas* **seems** *videtur* **good** *bona* **but** *sed* **virtue** *virtus* **is better** *melior est*

17.18 **We see** *videmus* **with our eyes** *oculis* **but** *sed* **understand** *intellegimus* **with our mind** *mente*

17.19 **Some seek** *alii quaerunt* **wealth** *divitias* **but** *sed* **wisdom** *sapientiam* **is more precious** *pretiosior est*

17.20 **Death** *mors* **frightens** *terret* **many** *multos* **but** *sed* **the wise** *sapientes* **accept it** *eam accipiunt*

17.21 **Knowledge** *scientia* **can be taught** *doceri potest* **but** *sed* **wisdom** *sapientia* **must be earned** *acquirenda est*

17.22 **The body** *corpus* **grows weak** *infirmum fit* **but** *sed* **the mind** *mens* **grows stronger** *fortior fit*

17.23 **Nature** *natura* **gives life** *vitam dat* **but** *sed* **philosophy** *philosophia* **teaches living** *vivere docet*

17.24 **Words** *verba* **can deceive** *fallere possunt* **but** *sed* **truth** *veritas* **endures** *manet*

17.25 **Time** *tempus* **passes** *transit* **but** *sed* **memory** *memoria* **remains** *permanet*

17.26 **The path** *via* **is difficult** *difficilis est* **but** *sed* **the reward** *praemium* **is great** *magnum est*

17.27 **Many things** *multa* **change** *mutantur* **but** *sed* **virtue** *virtus* **remains constant** *constans manet*

17.28 **The body** *corpus* **ages** *senescit* **but** *sed* **wisdom** *sapientia* **grows** *crescit*

17.29 **Fame** *fama* **is fleeting** *fugax est* **but** *sed* **glory** *gloria* **endures** *permanet*

17.30 **Life** *vita* **is short** *brevis est* **but** *sed* **art** *ars* **is long** *longa est*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

17.16 The body is mortal but the soul lives forever. *Corpus mortale est sed anima semper vivit.*

17.17 Pleasure seems good but virtue is better. *Voluptas bona videtur sed virtus melior est.*

17.18 We see with our eyes but understand with our mind. *Oculis videmus sed mente intellegimus.*

17.19 Some seek wealth but wisdom is more precious. *Alii divitias quaerunt sed sapientia pretiosior est.*

17.20 Death frightens many but the wise accept it. *Mors multos terret sed sapientes eam accipiunt.*

17.21 Knowledge can be taught but wisdom must be earned. *Scientia doceri potest sed sapientia acquirenda est.*

17.22 The body grows weak but the mind grows stronger. *Corpus infirmum fit sed mens fortior fit.*

17.23 Nature gives life but philosophy teaches living. *Natura vitam dat sed philosophia vivere docet.*

17.24 Words can deceive but truth endures. *Verba fallere possunt sed veritas manet.*

17.25 Time passes but memory remains. *Tempus transit sed memoria permanet.*

17.26 The path is difficult but the reward is great. *Via difficilis est sed praemium magnum est.*

17.27 Many things change but virtue remains constant. *Multa mutantur sed virtus constans manet.*

17.28 The body ages but wisdom grows. *Corpus senescit sed sapientia crescit.*

17.29 Fame is fleeting but glory endures. *Fama fugax est sed gloria permanet.*

17.30 Life is short but art is long. *Vita brevis est sed ars longa est.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section C (Latin Text Only)

17.16 Corpus mortale est sed anima semper vivit.

17.17 Voluptas bona videtur sed virtus melior est.

17.18 Oculis videmus sed mente intellegimus.

17.19 Alii divitias quaerunt sed sapientia pretiosior est.

17.20 Mors multos terret sed sapientes eam accipiunt.

17.21 Scientia doceri potest sed sapientia acquirenda est.

17.22 Corpus infirmum fit sed mens fortior fit.

17.23 Natura vitam dat sed philosophia vivere docet.

17.24 Verba fallere possunt sed veritas manet.

17.25 Tempus transit sed memoria permanet.

17.26 Via difficilis est sed praemium magnum est.

17.27 Multa mutantur sed virtus constans manet.

17.28 Corpus senescit sed sapientia crescit.

17.29 Fama fugax est sed gloria permanet.

17.30 Vita brevis est sed ars longa est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section D (Grammatical Notes for Philosophical Genre)

For English speakers studying Latin philosophical texts, understanding how "sed" functions in philosophical arguments is crucial:

1. Common Philosophical Structures:
    - Abstract noun + est... sed + abstract noun + est (e.g., "Vita brevis est sed ars longa est")
    - Plural subject + verb... sed + singular abstract concept (e.g., "Multa mutantur sed virtus constans manet")
    - Comparative constructions with sed (e.g., "Voluptas bona videtur sed virtus melior est")
2. Philosophical Vocabulary Patterns:
    - Contrasting physical and spiritual concepts
    - Pairing concrete and abstract nouns
    - Using gerundives with sed
    - Balancing active and passive voices
3. Special Features in Philosophical Usage:
    - Chiastic structures (ABBA pattern) around sed
    - Parallel grammatical constructions
    - Use with gnomic (universal truth) present tense
    - Paired with characteristic philosophical vocabulary
4. Key Points for Translation:
    - Watch for implied verbs after sed
    - Notice philosophical technical terms
    - Pay attention to word order for emphasis
    - Recognize common philosophical oppositions

5. Stylistic Considerations:
    - Balanced clause lengths
    - Rhetorical effects
    - Didactic tone markers
    - Formal philosophical vocabulary

This genre section demonstrates how "sed" serves as a crucial tool in Latin philosophical argumentation, often used to:

- Contrast apparent truth with deeper reality
- Present philosophical paradoxes
- Build logical arguments
- Express moral teachings

Lesson 18 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson 18: "nec" - A Reading Guide for English Speakers Learning Latin

Section A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

18.1 **The wolf** *lupus* **prowls** *vagatur* **and not** *nec* **the sheep** *ovis* **fears** *timet*

18.2 **Neither** *nec* **gold** *aurum* **nor** *nec* **silver** *argentum* **brings** *affert* **happiness** *felicitatem*

18.3 **He speaks** *loquitur* **and not** *nec* **listens** *audit* **to others** *alios*

18.4 **They conquered** *vicerunt* **and did not** *nec* **show mercy** *pepercerunt*

18.5 **The sun** *sol* **sets** *occidit* **and does not** *nec* **rise** *oritur* **for many hours** *multas horas*

18.6 **She reads** *legit* **poetry** *carmina* **and not** *nec* **prose** *prosam*

18.7 **Neither** *nec* **winter** *hiems* **nor** *nec* **summer** *aestas* **pleases** *placet* **him** *ei*

18.8 **The bird** *avis* **flies** *volat* **and does not** *nec* **rest** *quiescit*

18.9 **Neither** *nec* **the master** *dominus* **nor** *nec* **the slave** *servus* **sleeps** *dormit*

18.10 **The river** *flumen* **flows** *fluit* **and does not** *nec* **stop** *cessat*

18.11 **Neither** *nec* **by day** *die* **nor** *nec* **by night** *nocte* **does he rest** *requiescit*

18.12 **The storm** *tempestas* **comes** *venit* **and does not** *nec* **pass quickly** *cito transit*

18.13 **Neither** *nec* **wealth** *divitiae* **nor** *nec* **poverty** *paupertas* **changes** *mutat* **his character** *ingenium eius*

18.31 **The soldier** *miles* **fights** *pugnat* **and does not** *nec* **retreat** *recedit*

18.15 **Neither** *nec* **prayers** *preces* **nor** *nec* **tears** *lacrimae* **move** *movent* **the gods** *deos*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

18.1 The wolf prowls and not the sheep fears. *Lupus vagatur nec ovis timet.*

18.2 Neither gold nor silver brings happiness. *Nec aurum nec argentum felicitatem affert.*

18.3 He speaks and not listens to others. *Loquitur nec alios audit.*

18.4 They conquered and did not show mercy. *Vicerunt nec pepercerunt.*

18.5 The sun sets and does not rise for many hours. *Sol occidit nec multas horas oritur.*

18.6 She reads poetry and not prose. *Legit carmina nec prosam.*

18.7 Neither winter nor summer pleases him. *Nec hiems nec aestas ei placet.*

18.8 The bird flies and does not rest. *Avis volat nec quiescit.*

18.9 Neither the master nor the slave sleeps. *Nec dominus nec servus dormit.*

18.10 The river flows and does not stop. *Flumen fluit nec cessat.*

18.11 Neither by day nor by night does he rest. *Nec die nec nocte requiescit.*

18.12 The storm comes and does not pass quickly. *Tempestas venit nec cito transit.*

18.13 Neither wealth nor poverty changes his character. *Nec divitiae nec paupertas ingenium eius mutat.*

18.31 The soldier fights and does not retreat. *Miles pugnat nec recedit.*

18.15 Neither prayers nor tears move the gods. *Nec preces nec lacrimae deos movent.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section C (Latin Text Only)

18.1 Lupus vagatur nec ovis timet.

18.2 Nec aurum nec argentum felicitatem affert.

18.3 Loquitur nec alios audit.

18.4 Vicerunt nec pepercerunt.

18.5 Sol occidit nec multas horas oritur.

18.6 Legit carmina nec prosam.

18.7 Nec hiems nec aestas ei placet.

18.8 Avis volat nec quiescit.

18.9 Nec dominus nec servus dormit.

18.10 Flumen fluit nec cessat.

18.11 Nec die nec nocte requiescit.

18.12 Tempestas venit nec cito transit.

18.13 Nec divitiae nec paupertas ingenium eius mutat.

18.31 Miles pugnat nec recedit.

18.15 Nec preces nec lacrimae deos movent.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section D (Grammatical Explanation for English Speakers)

Understanding "nec" in Latin is crucial for English speakers. Here's what you need to know:

1. Basic Usage:
    - "Nec" combines "ne" (not) + "que" (and)
    - Functions like English "and not" or "nor"
    - Can be used singly or in pairs
2. Key Patterns:
    - Single use: "X nec Y" = "X and not Y"
    - Paired use: "nec X nec Y" = "neither X nor Y"
    - Often appears with verbs in present or perfect tense
3. Word Order:
    - "Nec" typically precedes the word it negates
    - In paired usage, both "nec" phrases are usually balanced
    - More flexible than English "neither...nor" construction
4. Common Mistakes for English Speakers:
    - Don't add extra negatives
    - Don't confuse with "et non" (and not)
    - Remember verb stays positive after "nec"
5. Special Uses:
    - Can begin sentences for emphasis
    - Often used in poetry and elevated prose
    - Creates powerful rhetorical effects in pairs

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section E (Cultural Note for English Speakers)

The use of "nec" in Latin reveals important aspects of Roman thought and expression:

1. Roman Rhetoric:
    - Paired negatives were a powerful rhetorical device

- Often used in political speeches and legal arguments
- Created memorable, balanced phrases

2. Literary Style:
    - "Nec...nec" constructions common in poetry
    - Used for emphasis in historical writing
    - Part of elevated literary style
3. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to formal English "neither...nor"
    - Reflects precise Roman logical thinking
    - Important in legal and scientific Latin
4. Historical Context:
    - Found in important historical documents
    - Used in religious texts and ceremonies
    - Part of Roman educational system

Section F (Literary Quote)

Part F-A (Detailed Translation)

Neither *nec* **day** *dies* **nor** *nec* **night** *nox* **has seen** *vidit* **him** *illum* **resting** *quiescentem* - Ovid, *Metamorphoses*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Neither day nor night has seen him resting" *Nec dies nec nox illum vidit quiescentem*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This quote from Ovid's Metamorphoses demonstrates the powerful use of "nec...nec" to emphasize ceaseless activity. The balanced structure mirrors the endless cycle of day and night.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Paired "nec" creates strong emphasis
- Perfect tense "vidit" shows completed action
- Accusative participle "quiescentem" describes state
- Word order emphasizes the temporal extremes

Military Genre Section

Section A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

18.16 **The legion** *legio* **marches** *procedit* **and not** *nec* **one soldier** *unus miles* **complains** *queritur*

18.17 **Neither** *nec* **the cavalry** *equites* **nor** *nec* **the infantry** *pedites* **feared** *timuerunt* **the enemy** *hostes*

18.18 **The commander** *dux* **advances** *progreditur* **and does not** *nec* **look back** *respicit*

18.19 **Neither** *nec* **sword** *gladius* **nor** *nec* **spear** *hasta* **pierced** *perforavit* **his armor** *loricam eius*

18.20 **The fort** *castellum* **stands** *stat* **and does not** *nec* **surrender** *deditur*

18.21 **Neither** *nec* **rain** *imber* **nor** *nec* **snow** *nix* **stops** *impedit* **the siege** *obsidionem*

18.22 **The signal** *signum* **sounds** *sonat* **and not** *nec* **one man** *unus vir* **hesitates** *dubitat*

18.23 **Neither** *nec* **hunger** *fames* **nor** *nec* **thirst** *sitis* **weakens** *debilitat* **their resolve** *constantiam eorum*

18.24 **The eagle-bearer** *aquilifer* **advances** *procedit* **and does not** *nec* **yield** *cedit*

18.25 **Neither** *nec* **threats** *minae* **nor** *nec* **promises** *promissa* **move** *movent* **the centurion** *centurionem*

18.26 **The battle line** *acies* **holds** *stat* **and does not** *nec* **break** *frangitur*

18.27 **Neither** *nec* **glory** *gloria* **nor** *nec* **gold** *aurum* **tempts** *temptat* **the loyal guard** *fidelem custodiam*

18.28 **The trumpet** *tuba* **calls** *vocat* **and not** *nec* **one warrior** *unus bellator* **remains behind** *remanet*

18.29 **Neither** *nec* **victory** *victoria* **nor** *nec* **defeat** *clades* **changes** *mutat* **their discipline** *disciplinam eorum*

18.30 **The army** *exercitus* **marches forward** *progreditur* **and does not** *nec* **retreat** *recedit*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

18.16 The legion marches and not one soldier complains. *Legio procedit nec unus miles queritur.*

18.17 Neither the cavalry nor the infantry feared the enemy. *Nec equites nec pedites hostes timuerunt.*

18.18 The commander advances and does not look back. *Dux progreditur nec respicit.*

18.19 Neither sword nor spear pierced his armor. *Nec gladius nec hasta loricam eius perforavit.*

18.20 The fort stands and does not surrender. *Castellum stat nec deditur.*

18.21 Neither rain nor snow stops the siege. *Nec imber nec nix obsidionem impedit.*

18.22 The signal sounds and not one man hesitates. *Signum sonat nec unus vir dubitat.*

18.23 Neither hunger nor thirst weakens their resolve. *Nec fames nec sitis constantiam eorum debilitat.*

18.24 The eagle-bearer advances and does not yield. *Aquilifer procedit nec cedit.*

18.25 Neither threats nor promises move the centurion. *Nec minae nec promissa centurionem movent.*

18.26 The battle line holds and does not break. *Acies stat nec frangitur.*

18.27 Neither glory nor gold tempts the loyal guard. *Nec gloria nec aurum fidelem custodiam temptat.*

18.28 The trumpet calls and not one warrior remains behind. *Tuba vocat nec unus bellator remanet.*

18.29 Neither victory nor defeat changes their discipline. *Nec victoria nec clades disciplinam eorum mutat.*

18.30 The army marches forward and does not retreat. *Exercitus progreditur nec recedit.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section C (Latin Text Only)

18.16 Legio procedit nec unus miles queritur.

18.17 Nec equites nec pedites hostes timuerunt.

18.18 Dux progreditur nec respicit.

18.19 Nec gladius nec hasta loricam eius perforavit.

18.20 Castellum stat nec deditur.

18.21 Nec imber nec nix obsidionem impedit.

18.22 Signum sonat nec unus vir dubitat.

18.23 Nec fames nec sitis constantiam eorum debilitat.

18.24 Aquilifer procedit nec cedit.

18.25 Nec minae nec promissa centurionem movent.

18.26 Acies stat nec frangitur.

18.27 Nec gloria nec aurum fidelem custodiam temptat.

18.28 Tuba vocat nec unus bellator remanet.

18.29 Nec victoria nec clades disciplinam eorum mutat.

18.30 Exercitus progreditur nec recedit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Section D (Military Genre Grammar Notes for English Speakers)

1. Military Vocabulary Context:
    - Many military terms are cognates with English:
        - "legio" → legion

        - "centurio" → centurion
        - "castellum" → castle (fort)
    - Understanding these connections helps memorization
2. Command Structure in Military Latin:
    - Short, sharp phrases common in military context
    - "Nec" often emphasizes discipline and resolve
    - Verbs often come at end of phrase for emphasis
3. Special Military Uses of "nec":
    - Emphasizes absolute statements ("not one soldier" = "nec unus miles")
    - Creates powerful contrasts ("neither glory nor gold" = "nec gloria nec aurum")
    - Shows unwavering determination ("and does not retreat" = "nec recedit")
4. Verb Tenses in Military Context:
    - Present tense for immediate action
    - Perfect for completed actions
    - Historical present common in battle narratives
5. Common Patterns:
    - "Stat nec" (stands and does not) - common military phrase
    - "Nec unus" (not even one) - emphasis on unity
    - "Procedit nec" (advances and does not) - showing determination
6. Word Order in Military Phrases:
    - Often more rigid than regular Latin
    - Emphasis on verb placement for command clarity
    - "Nec" placement shows strategic importance
7. Military Style Features:
    - Brief, clear phrases
    - Regular use of present tense
    - Emphasis on collective action
    - Strong negatives for emphasis
8. Key Military Phrase Structures:
    - Action + nec + reaction
    - Nec + option A + nec + option B
    - Command verb + nec + weakness verb
9. Cultural Context:
    - Reflects Roman military precision
    - Emphasizes discipline and order
    - Shows chain of command structure
10. Common Combinations:
    - With military equipment (gladius, hasta)
    - With military units (legio, equites)
    - With military virtues (fides, constantia)

Lesson 19 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 19: ā ab abs (from, by)

Part A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

19.1 **The messenger** *nūntius* **came** *vēnit* **from** *ā* **the temple** *templō*

19.2 **From** *ab* **ancient times** *antīquīs temporibus*, **Romans** *Rōmānī* **valued** *colēbant* **education** *doctrinam*

19.3 **The ship** *nāvis* **sailed** *nāvigāvit* **from** *ā* **the harbor** *portū* **at dawn** *prīmā lūce*

19.4 **The letter** *epistula* **was written** *scrīpta est* **by** *ā* **the poet** *poētā*

19.5 **From** *ab* **the highest peak** *summō montē* **we saw** *vīdimus* **the sea** *mare*

19.6 **The army** *exercitus* **marched** *iter fēcit* **from** *ab* **Rome** *Rōmā* **to** *ad* **Athens** *Athēnās*

19.7 **Away from** *abs* **danger** *perīculō*, **the children** *līberī* **played safely** *tūtō lūdēbant*

19.8 **From** *ā* **the river** *flūmine* **to** *ad* **the hills** *collēs*, **fields stretch** *agrī patent*

19.9 **By** *ā* **the wise teacher** *sapiēnte magistrō* **we learn** *discimus* **philosophy** *philosophiam*

19.10 **The wolf** *lupus* **fled** *fūgit* **from** *ab* **the shepherd** *pāstōre* **swiftly** *celeriter*

19.11 **From** *ab* **the earliest dawn** *prīmā aurōrā* **until** *ad* **night** *noctem* **he worked** *labōrāvit*

19.12 **By** *ā* **the skilled doctor** *perītō medicō* **wounds** *vulnera* **are healed** *sānantur*

19.13 **The birds** *avēs* **flew** *volāvērunt* **away from** *abs* **the approaching storm** *tempestāte appropinquante*

19.31 **From** *ab* **the city walls** *moenibus urbis* **guards** *custōdēs* **watch** *spectant* **carefully** *dīligenter*

19.15 **The old man** *senex* **walked** *ambulāvit* **from** *ā* **his home** *domō suā* **slowly** *lentē*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

19.1 The messenger came from the temple. *Nūntius ā templō vēnit.*

19.2 From ancient times, Romans valued education. *Ab antīquīs temporibus Rōmānī doctrinam colēbant.*

19.3 The ship sailed from the harbor at dawn. *Nāvis ā portū prīmā lūce nāvigāvit.*

19.4 The letter was written by the poet. *Epistula ā poētā scrīpta est.*

19.5 From the highest peak we saw the sea. *Ab summō montē mare vīdimus.*

19.6 The army marched from Rome to Athens. *Exercitus ab Rōmā Athēnās iter fēcit.*

19.7 Away from danger, the children played safely. *Abs perīculō līberī tūtō lūdēbant.*

19.8 From the river to the hills, fields stretch. *Ā flūmine ad collēs agrī patent.*

19.9 By the wise teacher we learn philosophy. *Ā sapiēnte magistrō philosophiam discimus.*

19.10 The wolf fled from the shepherd swiftly. *Lupus ā pāstōre celeriter fūgit.*

19.11 From the earliest dawn until night he worked. *Ab prīmā aurōrā ad noctem labōrāvit.*

19.12 By the skilled doctor wounds are healed. *Ā perītō medicō vulnera sānantur.*

19.13 The birds flew away from the approaching storm. *Avēs abs tempestāte appropinquante volāvērunt.*

19.31 From the city walls guards watch carefully. *Ab moenibus urbis custōdēs dīligenter spectant.*

19.15 The old man walked from his home slowly. *Senex ā domō suā lentē ambulāvit.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

19.1 Nūntius ā templō vēnit.

19.2 Ab antīquīs temporibus Rōmānī doctrinam colēbant.

19.3 Nāvis ā portū prīmā lūce nāvigāvit.

19.4 Epistula ā poētā scrīpta est.

19.5 Ab summō montē mare vīdimus.

19.6 Exercitus ab Rōmā Athēnās iter fēcit.

19.7 Abs perīculō līberī tūtō lūdēbant.

19.8 Ā flūmine ad collēs agrī patent.

19.9 Ā sapiēnte magistrō philosophiam discimus.

19.10 Lupus ā pāstōre celeriter fūgit.

19.11 Ab prīmā aurōrā ad noctem labōrāvit.

19.12 Ā perītō medicō vulnera sānantur.

19.13 Avēs abs tempestāte appropinquante volāvērunt.

19.31 Ab moenibus urbis custōdēs dīligenter spectant.

19.15 Senex ā domō suā lentē ambulāvit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation for English Speakers)

Understanding ā/ab/abs in Latin requires attention to several key points that differ from English usage:

1. Form Variations:
    - ā: Used before consonants (ā templō)
    - ab: Used before vowels and some consonants (ab antīquīs)
    - abs: Rarer form, mainly before 't' and 'q' (abs tempestāte)
2. Case Usage:
    - Always takes the ablative case
    - Different from English "from" which doesn't affect noun form
    - Examples: ā templō (from the temple), ab urbe (from the city)
3. Key Functions:
    - Separation/Source: "from" (ā portū - from the harbor)
    - Agency with passive verbs: "by" (ā poētā - by the poet)
    - Starting point in time: "from" (ab antīquīs temporibus - from ancient times)
4. Common Patterns:
    - With motion verbs: veniō, fugiō, etc.
    - With passive verbs to show agent
    - In time expressions
    - With places and directions
5. Tips for English Speakers:
    - Remember: Unlike English "from," Latin requires ablative case
    - Think of "ab" as combining English "from" and "by"
    - Notice how position varies more freely than in English

Part E (Cultural Context for English Speakers)

Understanding ā/ab/abs in Roman cultural context:

1. In Roman Military Life:
    - Crucial for describing troop movements
    - Used in military reports and histories
    - Common in Caesar's writings about campaigns
    - Essential for understanding Roman military texts
2. In Daily Roman Life:
    - Used for describing travel between cities
    - Important in business transactions
    - Common in letters describing journeys
    - Essential in legal documents showing origin
3. In Roman Literature:
    - Frequently used in poetry for emotional distance
    - Important in historical narratives
    - Common in philosophical texts
    - Used in religious contexts for divine origin
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Still used in scientific terminology
    - Important in legal Latin phrases
    - Common in academic writing

- Preserved in many English derivatives

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Detailed Translation)

From *Ab* **the founding** *urbe* **of the city** *conditā*

- Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* (From the Founding of the City)

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"From the founding of the city" *Ab urbe conditā*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous phrase begins Livy's monumental history of Rome. The use of "ab" here is particularly significant as it marks both a temporal and conceptual starting point for Roman history. This became the standard reference point for Roman chronology, often abbreviated as AUC.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Ab: Shows starting point in time
- Urbe: Ablative singular of urbs
- Conditā: Perfect passive participle, ablative feminine singular
- The phrase demonstrates the standard construction: ab + ablative
- Shows how temporal and spatial meanings overlap in Latin

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Commands

Part A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

19.16 **The legion** *legiō* **withdrew** *recessit* **from** *ā* **the battlefield** *proeliō* **at night** *noctū*

19.17 **Orders** *mandāta* **came** *vēnērunt* **from** *ā* **the general** *imperātōre* **swiftly** *celeriter*

19.18 **The soldiers** *mīlitēs* **moved** *mōvērunt* **away from** *ab* **the enemy camp** *castrīs hostium* **quietly** *tacitē*

19.19 **From** *ab* **the watchtower** *speculā* **signals** *signa* **were given** *data sunt* **by** *ā* **the guards** *custōdibus*

19.20 **The cavalry** *equitēs* **charged** *impetum fēcērunt* **from** *ab* **the right wing** *dextrō cornū*

19.21 **Away from** *abs* **the danger zone** *locō perīculōsō* **the troops** *cōpiae* **retreated** *sē recēpērunt*

19.22 **From** *ā* **the hill** *colle* **archers** *sagittāriī* **shot** *sagittās mīsērunt* **continuously** *continuō*

19.23 **By** *ab* **the skilled commander** *perītō duce* **victory** *victōria* **was achieved** *parta est*

19.24 **The reinforcements** *auxilia* **advanced** *prōcessērunt* **from** *ā* **the rear** *tergō*

19.25 **From** *ab* **dawn** *prīmā lūce* **the siege** *obsidiō* **was maintained** *servāta est*

19.26 **The scouts** *explorātōrēs* **returned** *rediērunt* **from** *ab* **the forest** *silvā* **with news** *cum nūntiīs*

19.27 **By** *ā* **the brave centurion** *fortī centuriōne* **the cohort** *cohors* **was led** *ducta est*

19.28 **The supplies** *commeātūs* **were protected** *dēfēnsī sunt* **from** *ab* **raiders** *praedātōribus*

19.29 **From** *ab* **the ramparts** *vāllō* **defenders** *dēfēnsōrēs* **hurled** *iēcērunt* **spears** *pīla*

19.30 **The messengers** *nūntiī* **departed** *profectī sunt* **from** *ab* **the command tent** *praetōriō*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

19.16 The legion withdrew from the battlefield at night. *Legiō ā proeliō noctū recessit.*

19.17 Orders came from the general swiftly. *Mandāta ab imperātōre celeriter vēnērunt.*

19.18 The soldiers moved away from the enemy camp quietly. *Mīlitēs ab castrīs hostium tacitē mōvērunt.*

19.19 From the watchtower signals were given by the guards. *Ab speculā signa ā custōdibus data sunt.*

19.20 The cavalry charged from the right wing. *Equitēs ab dextrō cornū impetum fēcērunt.*

19.21 Away from the danger zone the troops retreated. *Abs locō perīculōsō cōpiae sē recēpērunt.*

19.22 From the hill archers shot continuously. *Ā colle sagittāriī sagittās continuō mīsērunt.*

19.23 By the skilled commander victory was achieved. *Ab perītō duce victōria parta est.*

19.24 The reinforcements advanced from the rear. *Auxilia ā tergō prōcessērunt.*

19.25 From dawn the siege was maintained. *Ab prīmā lūce obsidiō servāta est.*

Part B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation - Continued)

19.26 The scouts returned from the forest with news. *Explorātōrēs ab silvā cum nūntiīs rediērunt.*

19.27 By the brave centurion the cohort was led. *Ā fortī centuriōne cohors ducta est.*

19.28 The supplies were protected from raiders. *Commeātūs ab praedātōribus dēfēnsī sunt.*

19.29 From the ramparts defenders hurled spears. *Ab vāllō dēfēnsōrēs pīla iēcērunt.*

19.30 The messengers departed from the command tent. *Nūntiī ab praetōriō profectī sunt.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

19.16 Legiō ā proeliō noctū recessit.

19.17 Mandāta ab imperātōre celeriter vēnērunt.

19.18 Mīlitēs ab castrīs hostium tacitē mōvērunt.

19.19 Ab speculā signa ā custōdibus data sunt.

19.20 Equitēs ab dextrō cornū impetum fēcērunt.

19.21 Abs locō perīculōsō cōpiae sē recēpērunt.

19.22 Ā colle sagittāriī sagittās continuō mīsērunt.

19.23 Ab perītō duce victōria parta est.

19.24 Auxilia ā tergō prōcessērunt.

19.25 Ab prīmā lūce obsidiō servāta est.

19.26 Explorātōrēs ab silvā cum nūntiīs rediērunt.

19.27 Ā fortī centuriōne cohors ducta est.

19.28 Commeātūs ab praedātōribus dēfēnsī sunt.

19.29 Ab vāllō dēfēnsōrēs pīla iēcērunt.

19.30 Nūntiī ab praetōriō profectī sunt.

✤ ❦ ✤ ❦ ✤ ✤ ❦ ✤ ❦ ✤ ✤ ❦ ✤ ❦ ✤

Part D (Grammar Notes for Military Genre)

For English speakers studying military Latin, understanding ā/ab/abs in military contexts requires attention to specific patterns:

1. Military Movement Terms:
    - Used with verbs of motion: recedere (withdraw), prōcēdere (advance)
    - Shows starting point of military maneuvers
    - Indicates direction of attack
    - Examples: ā proeliō recedere (to withdraw from battle)
2. Command Structure Usage:
    - Shows source of orders: ab imperātōre (from the general)
    - Indicates chain of command
    - Used in passive constructions for military actions
    - Common in official reports
3. Tactical Positions:
    - Describes deployment points: ab dextrō cornū (from the right wing)
    - Shows defensive positions: ab vāllō (from the ramparts)
    - Indicates strategic locations: ā tergō (from the rear)
    - Used in battle formations
4. Time References in Military Context:
    - Starting point of operations: ab prīmā lūce (from dawn)
    - Duration of military actions
    - Timing of maneuvers

        - Battle sequence indicators
    5. Special Military Vocabulary:
        - Technical terms with ab:
            - ab speculā (from the watchtower)
            - ab praetōriō (from headquarters)
            - ab castrīs (from camp)
        - Standard military phrases
        - Common in battle descriptions
    6. Tips for Translation:
        - Notice military precision in use
        - Observe formal tone in commands
        - Pay attention to tactical implications
        - Remember military context affects meaning

Lesson 20 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 20: ipse, ipsa, ipsum (Intensive Pronoun)

Part A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

20.1 **The queen** *rēgīna* **herself** *ipsa* **led** *dūxit* **the army** *exercitum* **into battle** *in proelium*

20.2 **By itself** *ipsum* **the river** *flūmen* **carved** *excīdit* **the valley** *vallem* **over centuries** *per saecula*

20.3 **Jupiter** *Iuppiter* **himself** *ipse* **shook** *quassāvit* **Olympus** *Olympum* **with thunder** *tonītrū*

20.4 **Nature** *nātūra* **itself** *ipsa* **teaches** *docet* **the birds** *avēs* **to fly** *volāre*

20.5 **The wise man** *sapiēns* **finds truth** *vērum invenit* **within himself** *in sē ipsō*

20.6 **Time** *tempus* **itself** *ipsum* **heals** *sānat* **all wounds** *omnia vulnera*

20.7 **The temple** *templum* **itself** *ipsum* **stood** *stetit* **for a thousand years** *mīlle annōs*

20.8 **I saw** *vīdī* **the general** *ducem* **himself** *ipsum* **leading** *dūcentem* **the charge** *impetum*

20.9 **The mountain** *mōns* **itself** *ipse* **reaches** *tangit* **the clouds** *nūbēs*

20.10 **Truth** *vēritās* **itself** *ipsa* **shines** *fulget* **through darkness** *per tenebrās*

20.11 **Life** *vīta* **itself** *ipsa* **teaches** *docet* **wisdom** *sapientiam* **through experience** *per ūsum*

20.12 **The sun** *sōl* **itself** *ipse* **gives** *dat* **light** *lūcem* **to the world** *mundō*

20.13 **By herself** *ipsa* **Minerva** *Minerva* **wove** *texuit* **the tapestry** *tapēte*

20.31 **The earth** *terra* **itself** *ipsa* **provides** *praebet* **all necessities** *omnia necessāria*

20.15 **The law** *lēx* **itself** *ipsa* **protects** *dēfendit* **the innocent** *innocentēs*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

20.1 The queen herself led the army into battle. *Rēgīna ipsa exercitum in proelium dūxit.*

20.2 By itself the river carved the valley over centuries. *Ipsum flūmen vallem per saecula excīdit.*

20.3 Jupiter himself shook Olympus with thunder. *Iuppiter ipse Olympum tonītrū quassāvit.*

20.4 Nature itself teaches the birds to fly. *Nātūra ipsa avēs volāre docet.*

20.5 The wise man finds truth within himself. *Sapiēns in sē ipsō vērum invenit.*

20.6 Time itself heals all wounds. *Tempus ipsum omnia vulnera sānat.*

20.7 The temple itself stood for a thousand years. *Templum ipsum mīlle annōs stetit.*

20.8 I saw the general himself leading the charge. *Vīdī ducem ipsum impetum dūcentem.*

20.9 The mountain itself reaches the clouds. *Mōns ipse nūbēs tangit.*

20.10 Truth itself shines through darkness. *Vēritās ipsa per tenebrās fulget.*

20.11 Life itself teaches wisdom through experience. *Vīta ipsa sapientiam per ūsum docet.*

20.12 The sun itself gives light to the world. *Sōl ipse mundō lūcem dat.*

20.13 By herself Minerva wove the tapestry. *Ipsa Minerva tapēte texuit.*

20.31 The earth itself provides all necessities. *Terra ipsa omnia necessāria praebet.*

20.15 The law itself protects the innocent. *Lēx ipsa innocentēs dēfendit.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

20.1 Rēgīna ipsa exercitum in proelium dūxit.

20.2 Ipsum flūmen vallem per saecula excīdit.

20.3 Iuppiter ipse Olympum tonītrū quassāvit.

20.4 Nātūra ipsa avēs volāre docet.

20.5 Sapiēns in sē ipsō vērum invenit.

20.6 Tempus ipsum omnia vulnera sānat.

20.7 Templum ipsum mīlle annōs stetit.

20.8 Vīdī ducem ipsum impetum dūcentem.

20.9 Mōns ipse nūbēs tangit.

20.10 Vēritās ipsa per tenebrās fulget.

20.11 Vīta ipsa sapientiam per ūsum docet.

20.12 Sōl ipse mundō lūcem dat.

20.13 Ipsa Minerva tapēte texuit.

20.31 Terra ipsa omnia necessāria praebet.

20.15 Lēx ipsa innocentēs dēfendit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation for English Speakers)

The Latin intensive pronoun "ipse, ipsa, ipsum" is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, similar to adding "-self" or "-selves" in English. Here's what English speakers need to know:

1. Forms:
    - Masculine: ipse
    - Feminine: ipsa
    - Neuter: ipsum
2. Agreement:
    - Like adjectives, matches the noun it modifies in:
        - Gender (masculine, feminine, neuter)
        - Number (singular, plural)
        - Case (nominative, accusative, etc.)
3. Key differences from English:
    - Can be used with any person (I myself, you yourself, he himself)
    - More flexible word order than English
    - Often appears directly next to its noun
    - Can be used alone without a reflexive pronoun
4. Common patterns:
    - Emphasizing the subject: "rēgīna ipsa" (the queen herself)
    - With prepositions: "in sē ipsō" (in himself)
    - At sentence beginning for emphasis: "ipsa Minerva" (Minerva herself)
5. Usage tips for English speakers:
    - Think of it as adding emphasis
    - Usually translates as "(noun) + self"
    - Different from reflexive "sē" (himself, herself, itself)
    - Can combine with "sē" for extra emphasis

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context for English Speakers)

Understanding how Romans used "ipse" reveals important cultural aspects:

1. In Roman Rhetoric:
    - Used for emphasis in speeches

    - Showed personal authority
    - Marked important statements
    - Common in legal arguments
2. In Philosophy:
    - "ipsum esse" (being itself)
    - Used in abstract discussions
    - Important in Stoic texts
    - Marked universal truths
3. In Daily Life:
    - Showed social hierarchy
    - Marked personal presence
    - Used in formal situations
    - Indicated direct involvement
4. In Literature:
    - Created dramatic emphasis
    - Showed divine presence
    - Marked pivotal moments
    - Used in epic poetry
5. Modern Relevance:
    - Legal Latin still uses it
    - Scientific terms preserve it
    - Philosophy retains the concept
    - Shows emphasis in formal writing

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interlinear Analysis)

Nature *Nātūra* **itself** *ipsa* **is** *est* **the best** *optima* **teacher** *magistra* **of all** *omnium*

- Cicero, De Finibus III.22

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Nature itself is the best teacher of all" *Nātūra ipsa est optima magistra omnium*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "ipsa" to emphasize that nature, without human intervention, provides the most fundamental lessons. This reflects Stoic philosophy's emphasis on living according to nature.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Nātūra ipsa": nominative feminine singular, subject
- "ipsa" agrees with "nātūra" in gender, number, case
- Word order emphasizes "nātūra" by placing it first
- "omnium": partitive genitive, "of all things/people"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Philosophical Texts

Part A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

20.16 **Wisdom** *sapientia* **itself** *ipsa* **leads** *dūcit* **to happiness** *ad fēlīcitātem* **eternal** *aeternam*

20.17 **The mind** *mens* **itself** *ipsa* **creates** *creat* **its own** *suās* **thoughts** *cogitātiōnēs*

20.18 **Virtue** *virtūs* **itself** *ipsa* **is** *est* **its own** *sibi* **reward** *praemium*

20.19 **Truth** *vēritās* **by itself** *ipsa* **conquers** *vincit* **all things** *omnia*

20.20 **The soul** *anima* **itself** *ipsa* **seeks** *quaerit* **knowledge** *scientiam* **eternal** *aeternam*

20.21 **Reason** *ratiō* **itself** *ipsa* **guides** *dūcit* **the wise** *sapientēs* **to truth** *ad vērum*

20.22 **Justice** *iūstitia* **itself** *ipsa* **brings** *affert* **peace** *pācem* **to nations** *gentibus*

20.23 **The universe** *mundus* **itself** *ipse* **follows** *sequitur* **eternal** *aeternās* **laws** *lēgēs*

20.24 **Wisdom** *sapientia* **finds** *invenit* **truth** *vērum* **within itself** *in sē ipsā*

20.25 **By itself** *ipsa* **philosophy** *philosophia* **frees** *līberat* **the mind** *mentem*

20.26 **Understanding** *intellegentia* **itself** *ipsa* **brings** *affert* **joy** *gaudium* **to the soul** *animō*

20.27 **Time** *tempus* **itself** *ipsum* **reveals** *aperit* **all mysteries** *omnia mystēria*

20.28 **The good** *bonum* **itself** *ipsum* **attracts** *trahit* **noble** *nōbilēs* **minds** *mentēs*

20.29 **Knowledge** *scientia* **itself** *ipsa* **illuminates** *illūminat* **the path** *viam* **to wisdom** *ad sapientiam*

20.30 **Beauty** *pulchritūdō* **itself** *ipsa* **reflects** *refert* **divine** *dīvīnam* **truth** *vēritātem*

Part B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

20.16 Wisdom itself leads to eternal happiness. *Sapientia ipsa ad fēlīcitātem aeternam dūcit.*

20.17 The mind itself creates its own thoughts. *Mens ipsa cogitātiōnēs suās creat.*

20.18 Virtue itself is its own reward. *Virtūs ipsa sibi praemium est.*

20.19 Truth by itself conquers all things. *Vēritās ipsa omnia vincit.*

20.20 The soul itself seeks eternal knowledge. *Anima ipsa scientiam aeternam quaerit.*

20.21 Reason itself guides the wise to truth. *Ratiō ipsa sapientēs ad vērum dūcit.*

20.22 Justice itself brings peace to nations. *Iūstitia ipsa gentibus pācem affert.*

20.23 The universe itself follows eternal laws. *Mundus ipse lēgēs aeternās sequitur.*

20.24 Wisdom finds truth within itself. *Sapientia vērum in sē ipsā invenit.*

20.25 By itself philosophy frees the mind. *Ipsa philosophia mentem līberat.*

20.26 Understanding itself brings joy to the soul. *Intellegentia ipsa animō gaudium affert.*

20.27 Time itself reveals all mysteries. *Tempus ipsum omnia mystēria aperit.*

20.28 The good itself attracts noble minds. *Bonum ipsum mentēs nōbilēs trahit.*

20.29 Knowledge itself illuminates the path to wisdom. *Scientia ipsa viam ad sapientiam illūminat.*

20.30 Beauty itself reflects divine truth. *Pulchritūdō ipsa vēritātem dīvīnam refert.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

20.16 Sapientia ipsa ad fēlīcitātem aeternam dūcit.

20.17 Mens ipsa cogitātiōnēs suās creat.

20.18 Virtūs ipsa sibi praemium est.

20.19 Vēritās ipsa omnia vincit.

20.20 Anima ipsa scientiam aeternam quaerit.

20.21 Ratiō ipsa sapientēs ad vērum dūcit.

20.22 Iūstitia ipsa gentibus pācem affert.

20.23 Mundus ipse lēgēs aeternās sequitur.

20.24 Sapientia vērum in sē ipsā invenit.

20.25 Ipsa philosophia mentem līberat.

20.26 Intellegentia ipsa animō gaudium affert.

20.27 Tempus ipsum omnia mystēria aperit.

20.28 Bonum ipsum mentēs nōbilēs trahit.

20.29 Scientia ipsa viam ad sapientiam illūminat.

20.30 Pulchritūdō ipsa vēritātem dīvīnam refert.

Part D (Grammar Notes for Philosophical Genre)

The use of "ipse" in philosophical Latin requires special attention to these patterns:

1. Abstract Concepts:
    - Often paired with abstract nouns
    - Emphasizes universal truths
    - Marks philosophical principles
    - Shows inherent qualities
2. Special Philosophical Uses:
    - "in sē ipsō/ipsā" (within itself) - reflexive philosophy
    - "ipsum esse" (being itself) - ontological discussions
    - "ipsa ratiō" (reason itself) - epistemological emphasis
    - "ipsum bonum" (the good itself) - ethical concepts
3. Common Patterns in Philosophy:

- Beginning sentences for emphasis
- Pairing with abstract subjects
- Using with gerunds and gerundives
- Combining with demonstratives

4. Word Order in Philosophical Texts:
    - Often fronted for emphasis
    - Can separate from its noun for special focus
    - Follows logical progression
    - Creates rhetorical effect
5. Case Usage in Philosophy:
    - Nominative for definitions
    - Ablative for causation
    - Accusative for objects of contemplation
    - Dative for ethical concepts
6. Style Notes:
    - More formal than regular Latin
    - Often uses present tense for eternal truths
    - Favors abstract over concrete
    - Employs careful parallelism
7. Common Combinations:
    - With abstract nouns
    - With philosophical verbs
    - In definitions
    - In logical arguments
8. Tips for Translation:
    - Look for abstract concepts
    - Note logical connections
    - Watch for technical terms
    - Consider philosophical context

Lesson 21 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 21: possum, posse, potuī (to be able)

Part A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

21.1 **The young soldier** *mīles iuvenis* **was able** *poterat* **to lift** *tollere* **the heavy shield** *scūtum grave*

21.2 **No one** *nēmō* **is able** *potest* **to live** *vīvere* **forever** *in aeternum*

21.3 **If** *sī* **you are able** *potes*, **help** *iuvā* **your friends** *amīcōs tuōs*

21.4 **The wise doctor** *medicus sapiēns* **was not able** *nōn poterat* **to cure** *sānāre* **all diseases** *omnēs morbōs*

21.5 **We shall be able** *poterimus* **to see** *vidēre* **the stars** *stellās* **tonight** *hāc nocte*

21.6 **They were able** *potuērunt* **to build** *aedificāre* **the temple** *templum* **in one year** *ūnō annō*

21.7 **Would you be able** *possēsne* **to teach** *docēre* **me** *mē* **Greek** *Graecam*?

21.8 **The horses** *equī* **were not able** *nōn potuērunt* **to cross** *trānsīre* **the deep river** *flūmen altum*

21.9 **I hope** *spērō* **that I will be able** *mē posse* **to finish** *perficere* **this work** *hoc opus*

21.10 **You are able** *potes* **to understand** *intellegere* **these words** *haec verba* **now** *nunc*

21.11 **The old man** *senex* **was able** *potuit* **to remember** *meminisse* **his youth** *iuventūtis suae*

21.12 **Being able** *posse* **to read** *legere* **Latin** *Latīnē* **is useful** *ūtile est*

21.13 **Who** *quis* **would be able** *possit* **to climb** *ascendere* **such a high mountain** *tam altum montem*?

21.31 **The farmers** *agricolae* **were able** *potuērunt* **to harvest** *metere* **before** *ante* **the storm** *tempestātem*

21.15 **You will be able** *poteris* **to learn** *discere* **this** *hoc* **with practice** *exercitātiōne*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

21.1 The young soldier was able to lift the heavy shield. *Mīles iuvenis scūtum grave tollere poterat.*

21.2 No one is able to live forever. *Nēmō in aeternum vīvere potest.*

21.3 If you are able, help your friends. *Sī potes, amīcōs tuōs iuvā.*

21.4 The wise doctor was not able to cure all diseases. *Medicus sapiēns omnēs morbōs sānāre nōn poterat.*

21.5 We shall be able to see the stars tonight. *Stellās hāc nocte vidēre poterimus.*

21.6 They were able to build the temple in one year. *Templum ūnō annō aedificāre potuērunt.*

21.7 Would you be able to teach me Greek? *Possēsne mē Graecam docēre?*

21.8 The horses were not able to cross the deep river. *Equī flūmen altum trānsīre nōn potuērunt.*

21.9 I hope that I will be able to finish this work. *Spērō mē hoc opus perficere posse.*

21.10 You are able to understand these words now. *Haec verba nunc intellegere potes.*

21.11 The old man was able to remember his youth. *Senex iuventūtis suae meminisse potuit.*

21.12 Being able to read Latin is useful. *Latīnē legere posse ūtile est.*

21.13 Who would be able to climb such a high mountain? *Quis tam altum montem ascendere possit?*

21.31 The farmers were able to harvest before the storm. *Agricolae ante tempestātem metere potuērunt.*

21.15 You will be able to learn this with practice. *Hoc exercitātiōne discere poteris.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

21.1 Mīles iuvenis scūtum grave tollere poterat.

21.2 Nēmō in aeternum vīvere potest.

21.3 Sī potes, amīcōs tuōs iuvā.

21.4 Medicus sapiēns omnēs morbōs sānāre nōn poterat.

21.5 Stellās hāc nocte vidēre poterimus.

21.6 Templum ūnō annō aedificāre potuērunt.

21.7 Possēsne mē Graecam docēre?

21.8 Equī flūmen altum trānsīre nōn potuērunt.

21.9 Spērō mē hoc opus perficere posse.

21.10 Haec verba nunc intellegere potes.

21.11 Senex iuventūtis suae meminisse potuit.

21.12 Latīnē legere posse ūtile est.

21.13 Quis tam altum montem ascendere possit?

21.31 Agricolae ante tempestātem metere potuērunt.

21.15 Hoc exercitātiōne discere poteris.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation for English Speakers)

The verb "possum" (to be able) is one of Latin's most important irregular verbs. Here's how English speakers can master it:

1. Basic Forms:
    - Present infinitive: posse (to be able)
    - Perfect stem: potu-
    - No future participle or supine
2. Formation Pattern:
    - "possum" combines "pot-" (able) + "sum" (I am)
    - This explains why it's irregular: it follows "sum" patterns
    - pot- + sum = possum
    - pot- + es = potes
    - pot- + est = potest
3. Key Tenses for English Speakers: Present: possum, potes, potest, possumus, potestis, possunt Imperfect: poteram, poterās, poterat, etc. Future: poterō, poteris, poterit, etc. Perfect: potuī, potuistī, potuit, etc.
4. Important Usage Notes:
    - Always followed by an infinitive
    - Negative: nōn possum (not nē)
    - Often used with abstract concepts
    - Can express both ability and permission
5. Common Patterns for English Speakers:
    - "Can/am able to" = present possum
    - "Could/was able to" = imperfect poteram
    - "Will be able to" = future poterō
    - "Have been able to" = perfect potuī

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context for English Speakers)

Understanding "possum" in Roman culture provides valuable insights:

1. Philosophy and Ethics:
    - Romans valued potential and ability
    - "possum" often appears in discussions of duty
    - Cicero uses it to discuss moral capability
    - Stoics emphasized knowing what one "can" do
2. Educational Context:
    - Students learned "possum" early
    - Essential for expressing capability
    - Used in classroom exercises
    - Found in basic Latin texts
3. Literary Usage:

- Frequent in poetry and prose
- Often in dramatic moments
- Used for character development
- Shows personal growth or limitation

4. Social Implications:
    - Indicates social status and power
    - Shows personal and political ability
    - Reflects Roman value of capability
    - Important in legal contexts
5. Modern Relevance:
    - Found in scientific terminology
    - Used in medical Latin
    - Appears in legal phrases
    - Essential for reading classics

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interlinear Analysis)

I can *possum* **because** *quia* **I think** *putō* **I can** *mē posse*

- Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.117

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"I can because I think I can" *Possum quia putō mē posse*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous line from Vergil encapsulates Roman attitudes about willpower and ability. It shows the connection Romans saw between mental determination and physical capability, a theme that runs throughout Latin literature.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- possum: first person singular present
- quia: conjunction explaining reason
- putō: first person singular present
- mē: accusative subject of indirect statement
- posse: present infinitive depending on putō

Genre Section: Military Narratives

Part A (Detailed English-Latin Interlinear Text)

21.16 **The legion** *legiō* **was able** *potuit* **to defend** *dēfendere* **the walls** *mūrōs* **against** *contrā* **the enemy** *hostēs*

21.17 **No soldier** *nūllus mīles* **was able** *poterat* **to sleep** *dormīre* **before** *ante* **the battle** *proelium*

21.18 **The general** *dux* **will be able** *poterit* **to lead** *dūcere* **the army** *exercitum* **through** *per* **the mountains** *montēs*

21.19 **The archers** *sagittāriī* **were able** *potuērunt* **to protect** *protegere* **the gate** *portam* **from** *ā* **attackers** *oppugnātōribus*

21.20 **We shall be able** *poterimus* **to see** *vidēre* **the enemy camp** *castra hostium* **from** *ex* **this hill** *hōc colle*

21.21 **The cavalry** *equitēs* **was able** *potuērunt* **to arrive** *advenīre* **before** *ante* **dawn** *lūcem*

21.22 **Who** *quis* **would be able** *possit* **to breach** *perrumpere* **such strong defenses** *tam valida mūnīmenta*?

21.23 **The scouts** *explōrātōrēs* **were able** *potuērunt* **to warn** *monēre* **us** *nōs* **about** *dē* **the ambush** *īnsidiīs*

21.24 **The commander** *imperātor* **hopes** *spērat* **to be able** *sē posse* **to win** *vincere* **without** *sine* **bloodshed** *sanguine*

21.25 **No ship** *nūlla nāvis* **was able** *potuit* **to escape** *effugere* **from** *ex* **the harbor** *portū*

21.26 **The soldiers** *mīlitēs* **will be able** *poterunt* **to rest** *requiēscere* **after** *post* **the victory** *victōriam*

21.27 **Being able** *posse* **to fight** *pugnāre* **well** *bene* **requires** *requīrit* **constant training** *perpetuam exercitātiōnem*

21.28 **The messengers** *nūntiī* **were able** *potuērunt* **to reach** *pervenīre* **the allied cities** *ad urbēs sociās*

21.29 **You will be able** *poteris* **to understand** *intellegere* **the plan** *cōnsilium* **once explained** *cum explicātum erit*

21.30 **The veterans** *veterānī* **were able** *potuērunt* **to teach** *docēre* **the recruits** *tirōnēs* **battle tactics** *artēs pugnandī*

Part B (Complete English Sentences with Latin Translation)

21.16 The legion was able to defend the walls against the enemy. *Legiō mūrōs contrā hostēs dēfendere potuit.*

21.17 No soldier was able to sleep before the battle. *Nūllus mīles ante proelium dormīre poterat.*

21.18 The general will be able to lead the army through the mountains. *Dux exercitum per montēs dūcere poterit.*

21.19 The archers were able to protect the gate from attackers. *Sagittāriī portam ab oppugnātōribus protegere potuērunt.*

21.20 We shall be able to see the enemy camp from this hill. *Castra hostium ex hōc colle vidēre poterimus.*

21.21 The cavalry was able to arrive before dawn. *Equitēs ante lūcem advenīre potuērunt.21.22 Who would be able to breach such strong defenses? Quis tam valida mūnīmenta perrumpere possit?*

21.23 The scouts were able to warn us about the ambush. *Explōrātōrēs nōs dē īnsidiīs monēre potuērunt.*

21.24 The commander hopes to be able to win without bloodshed. *Imperātor sē sine sanguine vincere posse spērat.*

21.25 No ship was able to escape from the harbor. *Nūlla nāvis ex portū effugere potuit.*

21.26 The soldiers will be able to rest after the victory. *Mīlitēs post victōriam requiēscere poterunt.*

21.27 Being able to fight well requires constant training. *Bene pugnāre posse perpetuam exercitātiōnem requīrit.*

21.28 The messengers were able to reach the allied cities. *Nūntiī ad urbēs sociās pervenīre potuērunt.*

21.29 You will be able to understand the plan once explained. *Cōnsilium, cum explicātum erit, intellegere poteris.*

21.30 The veterans were able to teach the recruits battle tactics. *Veterānī tirōnēs artēs pugnandī docēre potuērunt.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

21.16 Legiō mūrōs contrā hostēs dēfendere potuit.

21.17 Nūllus mīles ante proelium dormīre poterat.

21.18 Dux exercitum per montēs dūcere poterit.

21.19 Sagittāriī portam ab oppugnātōribus protegere potuērunt.

21.20 Castra hostium ex hōc colle vidēre poterimus.

21.21 Equitēs ante lūcem advenīre potuērunt.

21.22 Quis tam valida mūnīmenta perrumpere possit?

21.23 Explōrātōrēs nōs dē īnsidiīs monēre potuērunt.

21.24 Imperātor sē sine sanguine vincere posse spērat.

21.25 Nūlla nāvis ex portū effugere potuit.

21.26 Mīlitēs post victōriam requiēscere poterunt.

21.27 Bene pugnāre posse perpetuam exercitātiōnem requīrit.

21.28 Nūntiī ad urbēs sociās pervenīre potuērunt.

21.29 Cōnsilium, cum explicātum erit, intellegere poteris.

21.30 Veterānī tirōnēs artēs pugnandī docēre potuērunt.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Notes for Military Genre)

Understanding "possum" in military contexts requires attention to specific patterns:

1. Military Command Structures:
    - Often uses potential subjunctive (possit)
    - Frequent in strategic planning
    - Common in reporting capabilities
    - Used in conditional military scenarios
2. Technical Military Terms with "possum":
    - dēfendere posse (to be able to defend)
    - pugnāre posse (to be able to fight)
    - perrumpere posse (to be able to breach)
    - effugere posse (to be able to escape)
3. Time Expressions in Military Context:
    - ante proelium (before battle)
    - post victōriam (after victory)
    - ante lūcem (before dawn)
    - Used with various tenses of possum
4. Strategic Applications:
    - Assessing military capabilities
    - Planning operations
    - Evaluating enemy strengths
    - Reporting mission success/failure
5. Common Military Constructions:
    - Indirect statements with posse
    - Purpose clauses
    - Result clauses
    - Conditional sentences in military planning
6. Special Military Vocabulary:
    - legiō (legion)
    - exercitus (army)
    - castra (camp)
    - mūnīmenta (defenses)
    - All commonly used with forms of possum

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 22 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 22: aut (or)

Introduction

This lesson focuses on the Latin conjunction "aut" meaning "or." This word is used to present alternatives that are mutually exclusive - when one option excludes the other.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

22.1 **Either** *aut* **the boy** *puer* **or** *aut* **the girl** *puella* **reads** *legit* **the book** *librum*

22.2 **You must** *debes* **either** *aut* **work** *laborare* **or** *aut* **study** *studere*

22.3 **Either** *aut* **today** *hodie* **or** *aut* **tomorrow** *cras* **I will go** *ibo* **to** *ad* **the forum** *forum*

22.4 **The soldier** *miles* **either** *aut* **fights** *pugnat* **or** *aut* **flees** *fugit*

22.5 **Either** *aut* **peace** *pax* **or** *aut* **war** *bellum* **awaits** *manet* **us** *nos*

22.6 **The ship** *navis* **will sail** *navigabit* **either** *aut* **east** *ad orientem* **or** *aut* **west** *ad occidentem*

22.7 **Either** *aut* **speak** *dic* **or** *aut* **be silent** *tace*

22.8 **The farmer** *agricola* **must sell** *vendere debet* **either** *aut* **grain** *frumentum* **or** *aut* **cattle** *pecus*

22.9 **You** *tu* **will be** *eris* **either** *aut* **friend** *amicus* **or** *aut* **enemy** *hostis*

22.10 **Either** *aut* **wisdom** *sapientia* **or** *aut* **strength** *vis* **will prevail** *vincet*

22.11 **The general** *dux* **must choose** *eligere debet* **either** *aut* **victory** *victoriam* **or** *aut* **death** *mortem*

22.12 **Either** *aut* **stay** *mane* **here** *hic* **or** *aut* **leave** *discede* **now** *nunc*

22.13 **The weather** *caelum* **will be** *erit* **either** *aut* **clear** *serenum* **or** *aut* **cloudy** *nubilum*

22.31 **We must travel** *iter facere debemus* **either** *aut* **by land** *terra* **or** *aut* **by sea** *mari*

22.15 **Either** *aut* **write** *scribe* **a letter** *epistulam* **or** *aut* **send** *mitte* **a messenger** *nuntium*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

22.1 Aut puer aut puella librum legit. *Either the boy or the girl reads the book.*

22.2 Aut laborare aut studere debes. *You must either work or study.*

22.3 Aut hodie aut cras ad forum ibo. *Either today or tomorrow I will go to the forum.*

22.4 Miles aut pugnat aut fugit. *The soldier either fights or flees.*

22.5 Aut pax aut bellum nos manet. *Either peace or war awaits us.*

22.6 Navis aut ad orientem aut ad occidentem navigabit. *The ship will sail either east or west.*

22.7 Aut dic aut tace. *Either speak or be silent.*

22.8 Agricola aut frumentum aut pecus vendere debet. *The farmer must sell either grain or cattle.*

22.9 Tu aut amicus aut hostis eris. *You will be either friend or enemy.*

22.10 Aut sapientia aut vis vincet. *Either wisdom or strength will prevail.*

22.11 Dux aut victoriam aut mortem eligere debet. *The general must choose either victory or death.*

22.12 Aut hic mane aut nunc discede. *Either stay here or leave now.*

22.13 Caelum aut serenum aut nubilum erit. *The weather will be either clear or cloudy.*

22.31 Aut terra aut mari iter facere debemus. *We must travel either by land or by sea.*

22.15 Aut epistulam scribe aut nuntium mitte. *Either write a letter or send a messenger.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

22.1 Aut puer aut puella librum legit.

22.2 Aut laborare aut studere debes.

22.3 Aut hodie aut cras ad forum ibo.

22.4 Miles aut pugnat aut fugit.

22.5 Aut pax aut bellum nos manet.

22.6 Navis aut ad orientem aut ad occidentem navigabit.

22.7 Aut dic aut tace.

22.8 Agricola aut frumentum aut pecus vendere debet.

22.9 Tu aut amicus aut hostis eris.

22.10 Aut sapientia aut vis vincet.

22.11 Dux aut victoriam aut mortem eligere debet.

22.12 Aut hic mane aut nunc discede.

22.13 Caelum aut serenum aut nubilum erit.

22.31 Aut terra aut mari iter facere debemus.

22.15 Aut epistulam scribe aut nuntium mitte.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, understanding "aut" involves several key points:

1. Basic Usage:
    - "Aut" is always used in pairs: "aut...aut..." = "either...or..."
    - It presents mutually exclusive alternatives
    - Unlike English "or," it cannot be used alone
2. Word Order:
    - "Aut" typically appears immediately before each alternative
    - The alternatives must be parallel grammatically
    - Example: "Aut puer aut puella" (both nouns in nominative)
3. Grammar Rules:
    - The verb agrees with the closer subject when alternatives are singular
    - With plural alternatives, the verb is plural
    - Can connect nouns, verbs, adjectives, or whole clauses
4. Comparison with English:
    - More restrictive than English "or"
    - Always implies mutual exclusivity
    - Must be paired ("aut...aut...")
5. Common Patterns:
    - With imperatives ("aut dic aut tace")
    - With future tense ("aut erit aut non erit")
    - With complementary infinitives ("debes aut laborare aut studere")

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "aut" in Roman culture:

1. Legal Context:
    - Used in Roman law to present clear alternatives
    - Important in contracts and legal decisions
    - Reflected Roman love of precise language
2. Military Usage:
    - Common in military commands
    - Used for clear tactical choices
    - Found in battle accounts and military histories
3. Philosophical Importance:
    - Used in logical arguments
    - Important in Stoic philosophy
    - Key to Roman decision-making processes
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Still used in formal logic
    - Important in legal language
    - Reflects clear either/or thinking

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Ovid's "Metamorphoses" (III.311):

Either *aut* **depart** *fuge* **or** *aut* **die** *moriere*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Aut fuge aut moriere." *Either flee or you will die.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This quote demonstrates the stark either/or nature of "aut" in dramatic context. Ovid uses it to present Diana's ultimatum to Actaeon.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Aut" used with both imperative (fuge) and future (moriere)
- Shows the versatility of "aut" with different verb forms
- Demonstrates typical brief, emphatic style

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Legal Language

Part A (Interleaved Text)

22.16 **The accused** *reus* **must** *debet* **either** *aut* **pay** *solvere* **a fine** *multam* **or** *aut* **face** *subire* **exile** *exsilium*

22.17 **The law** *lex* **prescribes** *praescribit* **either** *aut* **death** *mortem* **or** *aut* **servitude** *servitutem*

22.18 **The citizen** *civis* **must** *debet* **either** *aut* **obey** *parere* **the laws** *legibus* **or** *aut* **leave** *excedere* **the city** *urbe*

22.19 **Either** *aut* **the father** *pater* **or** *aut* **the guardian** *tutor* **must sign** *signare debet* **the contract** *tabellas*

22.20 **The judge** *iudex* **will determine** *constituet* **either** *aut* **guilt** *culpam* **or** *aut* **innocence** *innocentiam*

22.21 **The witness** *testis* **must speak** *dicere debet* **either** *aut* **truth** *verum* **or** *aut* **nothing** *nihil*

22.22 **Either** *aut* **restore** *restitue* **the property** *rem* **or** *aut* **pay** *solve* **compensation** *pretium*

22.23 **The senator** *senator* **must vote** *suffragium ferre debet* **either** *aut* **for** *pro* **or** *aut* **against** *contra* **the law** *legem*

22.24 **Either** *aut* **accept** *accipe* **the judgment** *iudicium* **or** *aut* **appeal** *provoca* **to** *ad* **the consul** *consulem*

22.25 **The heir** *heres* **must** *debet* **either** *aut* **accept** *accipere* **or** *aut* **reject** *repudiare* **the inheritance** *hereditatem*

22.26 **Either** *aut* **the plaintiff** *actor* **or** *aut* **the defendant** *reus* **must pay** *solvere debet* **the costs** *impensas*

22.27 **The magistrate** *magistratus* **will decide** *decernet* **either** *aut* **mercy** *clementiam* **or** *aut* **punishment** *poenam*

22.28 **Either** *aut* **fulfill** *imple* **the contract** *pactum* **or** *aut* **face** *subi* **penalties** *poenas*

22.29 **The debtor** *debitor* **must** *debet* **either** *aut* **pay** *solvere* **or** *aut* **forfeit** *cedere* **property** *bonis*

22.30 **Either** *aut* **the law** *lex* **or** *aut* **custom** *mos* **will determine** *definiet* **the case** *causam*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

22.16 Reus aut multam solvere aut exsilium subire debet. *The accused must either pay a fine or face exile.*

22.17 Lex aut mortem aut servitutem praescribit. *The law prescribes either death or servitude.*

22.18 Civis aut legibus parere aut urbe excedere debet. *The citizen must either obey the laws or leave the city.*

22.19 Aut pater aut tutor tabellas signare debet. *Either the father or the guardian must sign the contract.*

22.20 Iudex aut culpam aut innocentiam constituet. *The judge will determine either guilt or innocence.*

22.21 Testis aut verum aut nihil dicere debet. *The witness must speak either truth or nothing.*

22.22 Aut rem restitue aut pretium solve. *Either restore the property or pay compensation.*

22.23 Senator aut pro aut contra legem suffragium ferre debet. *The senator must vote either for or against the law.*

22.24 Aut iudicium accipe aut ad consulem provoca. *Either accept the judgment or appeal to the consul.*

22.25 Heres aut accipere aut repudiare hereditatem debet. *The heir must either accept or reject the inheritance.*

22.26 Aut actor aut reus impensas solvere debet. *Either the plaintiff or the defendant must pay the costs.*

22.27 Magistratus aut clementiam aut poenam decernet. *The magistrate will decide either mercy or punishment.*

22.28 Aut pactum imple aut poenas subi. *Either fulfill the contract or face penalties.*

22.29 Debitor aut solvere aut bonis cedere debet. *The debtor must either pay or forfeit property.*

22.30 Aut lex aut mos causam definiet. *Either the law or custom will determine the case.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

22.16 Reus aut multam solvere aut exsilium subire debet.

22.17 Lex aut mortem aut servitutem praescribit.

22.18 Civis aut legibus parere aut urbe excedere debet.

22.19 Aut pater aut tutor tabellas signare debet.

22.20 Iudex aut culpam aut innocentiam constituet.

22.21 Testis aut verum aut nihil dicere debet.

22.22 Aut rem restitue aut pretium solve.

22.23 Senator aut pro aut contra legem suffragium ferre debet.

22.24 Aut iudicium accipe aut ad consulem provoca.

22.25 Heres aut accipere aut repudiare hereditatem debet.

22.26 Aut actor aut reus impensas solvere debet.

22.27 Magistratus aut clementiam aut poenam decernet.

22.28 Aut pactum imple aut poenas subi.

22.29 Debitor aut solvere aut bonis cedere debet.

22.30 Aut lex aut mos causam definiet.

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Legal Usage)

1. Legal Formulaic Patterns:
    - "Aut...aut" in legal contexts often connects:
        - Two possible penalties (multam/exsilium)
        - Two possible actions (solvere/cedere)
        - Two legal authorities (lex/mos)
    - Frequently used with modal verbs:
        - debere (must)
        - posse (can/may)
2. Verb Forms in Legal Context:
    - Imperatives for direct commands (restitue, solve)
    - Future tense for legal consequences (definiet)
    - Present tense for stating laws (praescribit)
    - Infinitives with modal verbs (parere debet)
3. Case Usage in Legal Latin:
    - Accusative for direct objects (multam, hereditatem)
    - Dative for indirect objects and compliance (legibus)
    - Ablative for means and separation (bonis)
    - Genitive for possession and relation (causam)

4. Word Order in Legal Formulae:
    - "Aut...aut" pairs frame the alternatives clearly
    - Verb often comes at end of clause
    - Subject (when expressed) typically comes first
    - Legal terms take precedent positions
5. Special Legal Vocabulary with "aut":
    - Technical legal terms (reus, actor, iudex)
    - Legal actions (solvere, cedere, provocare)
    - Legal concepts (culpa, innocentia, hereditas)
    - Institutional terms (consul, magistratus, senator)
6. Syntax Patterns in Legal Language:
    - Gerundive constructions indicating necessity
    - Conditional constructions with alternatives
    - Purpose clauses stating legal intentions
    - Result clauses describing consequences
7. Legal Language Features:
    - Precision in terminology
    - Formal register
    - Clear alternatives
    - Unambiguous consequences
    - Standard formulaic expressions

Genre Section: Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

22.31 **Marcus** *Marcus* **had to decide** *decidere debebat* **either** *aut* **to study** *studere* **or** *aut* **to play** *ludere* **with** *cum* **his friends** *amicis*

22.32 **Julia** *Iulia* **either** *aut* **reads** *legit* **in** *in* **the garden** *horto* **or** *aut* **writes** *scribit* **letters** *epistulas* **in** *in* **her room** *cubiculo*

22.33 **Their father** *pater eorum* **will travel** *iter faciet* **either** *aut* **to Rome** *Romam* **or** *aut* **to Athens** *Athenas*

22.34 **Either** *aut* **Claudia** *Claudia* **or** *aut* **Lucia** *Lucia* **will help** *adiuvabit* **mother** *matrem* **in** *in* **the kitchen** *culina*

22.35 **The children** *pueri* **must choose** *eligere debent* **either** *aut* **to swim** *natare* **or** *aut* **to walk** *ambulare*

22.36 **Either** *aut* **the dog** *canis* **or** *aut* **the cat** *feles* **has eaten** *consumpsit* **the food** *cibum*

22.37 **Quintus** *Quintus* **will give** *dabit* **either** *aut* **a book** *librum* **or** *aut* **a game** *ludum* **to** *ad* **his brother** *fratrem*

22.38 **The teacher** *magister* **says** *dicit* **we must** *nos debere* **either** *aut* **practice** *exercere* **or** *aut* **rest** *quiescere*

22.39 **Either** *aut* **rain** *pluvia* **or** *aut* **sunshine** *sol* **will determine** *constituet* **our activities** *actiones nostras*

22.40 **Mother** *mater* **will prepare** *parabit* **either** *aut* **fish** *piscem* **or** *aut* **meat** *carnem* **for** *ad* **dinner** *cenam*

22.41 **The slave** *servus* **must fetch** *petere debet* **water** *aquam* **either** *aut* **from the well** *e puteo* **or** *aut* **from the river** *e flumine*

22.42 **Either** *aut* **the wind** *ventus* **or** *aut* **the rain** *pluvia* **has damaged** *nocuit* **the flowers** *floribus*

22.43 **Grandfather** *avus* **will tell** *narrabit* **either** *aut* **a story** *fabulam* **or** *aut* **a riddle** *aenigma*

22.44 **The boy** *puer* **must choose** *eligere debet* **either** *aut* **the red tunic** *tunicam rubram* **or** *aut* **the white one** *albam*

22.45 **Either** *aut* **the lamp** *lucerna* **or** *aut* **the candle** *candela* **will light** *illuminabit* **the room** *cubiculum*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

22.31 Marcus aut studere aut cum amicis ludere decidere debebat. *Marcus had to decide either to study or to play with his friends.*

22.32 Iulia aut in horto legit aut in cubiculo epistulas scribit. *Julia either reads in the garden or writes letters in her room.*

22.33 Pater eorum aut Romam aut Athenas iter faciet. *Their father will travel either to Rome or to Athens.*

22.34 Aut Claudia aut Lucia matrem in culina adiuvabit. *Either Claudia or Lucia will help mother in the kitchen.*

22.35 Pueri aut natare aut ambulare eligere debent. *The children must choose either to swim or to walk.*

22.36 Aut canis aut feles cibum consumpsit. *Either the dog or the cat has eaten the food.*

22.37 Quintus aut librum aut ludum fratri dabit. *Quintus will give either a book or a game to his brother.*

22.38 Magister nos aut exercere aut quiescere debere dicit. *The teacher says we must either practice or rest.*

22.39 Aut pluvia aut sol actiones nostras constituet. *Either rain or sunshine will determine our activities.*

22.40 Mater aut piscem aut carnem ad cenam parabit. *Mother will prepare either fish or meat for dinner.*

22.41 Servus aquam aut e puteo aut e flumine petere debet. *The slave must fetch water either from the well or from the river.*

22.42 Aut ventus aut pluvia floribus nocuit. *Either the wind or the rain has damaged the flowers.*

22.43 Avus aut fabulam aut aenigma narrabit. *Grandfather will tell either a story or a riddle.*

22.44 Puer aut tunicam rubram aut albam eligere debet. *The boy must choose either the red tunic or the white one.*

22.45 Aut lucerna aut candela cubiculum illuminabit. *Either the lamp or the candle will light the room.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

22.31 Marcus aut studere aut cum amicis ludere decidere debebat.

22.32 Iulia aut in horto legit aut in cubiculo epistulas scribit.

22.33 Pater eorum aut Romam aut Athenas iter faciet.

22.34 Aut Claudia aut Lucia matrem in culina adiuvabit.

22.35 Pueri aut natare aut ambulare eligere debent.

22.36 Aut canis aut feles cibum consumpsit.

22.37 Quintus aut librum aut ludum fratri dabit.

22.38 Magister nos aut exercere aut quiescere debere dicit.

22.39 Aut pluvia aut sol actiones nostras constituet.

22.40 Mater aut piscem aut carnem ad cenam parabit.

22.41 Servus aquam aut e puteo aut e flumine petere debet.

22.42 Aut ventus aut pluvia floribus nocuit.

22.43 Avus aut fabulam aut aenigma narrabit.

22.44 Puer aut tunicam rubram aut albam eligere debet.

22.45 Aut lucerna aut candela cubiculum illuminabit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Narrative Usage)

1. Narrative Tense Usage with "aut":
    - Present tense for ongoing actions (legit, scribit)
    - Future tense for planned actions (narrabit, illuminabit)
    - Perfect tense for completed actions (consumpsit, nocuit)
    - Imperfect tense for background actions (debebat)
2. Complex Constructions:
    - Indirect discourse with debere
    - Purpose clauses
    - Result expressions
    - Temporal sequences
3. Word Order in Narrative:
    - More flexible than legal or formal contexts

- Allows for dramatic emphasis
- Maintains clarity of alternatives
- Natural conversational flow

4. Stylistic Features:
    - Character-focused alternatives
    - Daily life choices
    - Family interactions
    - Domestic settings
    - Personal decisions
5. Special Uses in Dialogue:
    - Direct speech patterns
    - Reported speech
    - Questions and responses
    - Commands and suggestions

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 23 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: māgnus -a -um (great)

Part A (Interleaved Latin and English Text)

23.1 **māgnus** *great* **rēx** *king* **regit** *rules* **illam** *that* **urbem** *city*

23.2 **magna** *great* **turba** *crowd* **id** *the* **forum** *forum* **complet** *fills*

23.3 **vidēmus** *we see* **magnum** *great* **templum** *temple* **deōrum** *of the gods*

23.4 **magnus** *great* **dux** *general* **exercitum** *army* **dūcit** *leads*

23.5 **aedificant** *they build* **magnam** *great* **mūrum** *wall* **circum** *around* **urbem** *city*

23.6 **magna** *great* **rēgīna** *queen* **populō** *to the people* **dōna** *gifts* **dat** *gives*

23.7 **in** *in* **magnō** *great* **hortō** *garden* **multae** *many* **flōrēs** *flowers* **flōrent** *bloom*

23.8 **senātōrēs** *senators* **magna** *great* **facta** *deeds* **laudant** *praise*

23.9 **cum** *with* **magnā** *great* **glōriā** *glory* **domum** *home* **redit** *he returns*

23.10 **magna** *great* **pugna** *battle* **nunc** *now* **incipit** *begins*

23.11 **māgna** *great* **perīcula** *dangers* **ante** *ahead* **vident** *they see*

23.12 **magnus** *great* **poēta** *poet* **pulchra** *beautiful* **carmina** *verses* **scrībit** *writes*

23.13 **magna** *great* **tempestās** *storm* **urbī** *to the city* **appropinquat** *approaches*

23.31 **ā** *from* **magnō** *great* **monte** *mountain* **hostēs** *enemy* **spectant** *they watch*

23.15 **cīvēs** *citizens* **magnum** *great* **monumentum** *monument* **aedificant** *build*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

23.1 Māgnus rēx illam urbem regit. *The great king rules that city.*

23.2 Magna turba id forum complet. *The great crowd fills the forum.*

23.3 Vidēmus magnum templum deōrum. *We see the great temple of the gods.*

23.4 Magnus dux exercitum dūcit. *The great general leads the army.*

23.5 Aedificant magnam mūrum circum urbem. *They build a great wall around the city.*

23.6 Magna rēgīna populō dōna dat. *The great queen gives gifts to the people.*

23.7 In magnō hortō multae flōrēs flōrent. *In the great garden many flowers bloom.*

23.8 Senātōrēs magna facta laudant. *The senators praise the great deeds.*

23.9 Cum magnā glōriā domum redit. *With great glory he returns home.*

23.10 Magna pugna nunc incipit. *The great battle begins now.*

23.11 Māgna perīcula ante vident. *They see great dangers ahead.*

23.12 Magnus poēta pulchra carmina scrībit. *The great poet writes beautiful verses.*

23.13 Magna tempestās urbī appropinquat. *A great storm approaches the city.*

23.31 Ā magnō monte hostēs spectant. *From the great mountain they watch the enemy.*

23.15 Cīvēs magnum monumentum aedificant. *The citizens build a great monument.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

23.1 Māgnus rēx illam urbem regit.

23.2 Magna turba id forum complet.

23.3 Vidēmus magnum templum deōrum.

23.4 Magnus dux exercitum dūcit.

23.5 Aedificant magnam mūrum circum urbem.

23.6 Magna rēgīna populō dōna dat.

23.7 In magnō hortō multae flōrēs flōrent.

23.8 Senātōrēs magna facta laudant.

23.9 Cum magnā glōriā domum redit.

23.10 Magna pugna nunc incipit.

23.11 Māgna perīcula ante vident.

23.12 Magnus poēta pulchra carmina scrībit.

23.13 Magna tempestās urbī appropinquat.

23.31 Ā magnō monte hostēs spectant.

23.15 Cīvēs magnum monumentum aedificant.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation for English Speakers)

The adjective "māgnus" is one of the most common descriptive words in Latin. Here's how to understand and use it:

1. Basic Forms and Meaning:
    - In its basic form, māgnus means "big", "great", or "large"
    - It can describe physical size or metaphorical greatness
    - Like English "great", it can mean "important" or "significant"
2. Adjective Agreement:
    - Changes ending to match the noun it describes
    - Three gender forms:
        - Masculine: māgnus (māgnus rēx = great king)
        - Feminine: magna (magna rēgīna = great queen)
        - Neuter: magnum (magnum templum = great temple)
3. Case Forms: For English speakers, think of these as showing the adjective's role:
    - Subject form (Nominative): māgnus, magna, magnum
    - Object form (Accusative): magnum, magnam, magnum
    - Possessive form (Genitive): magnī, magnae, magnī
    - Indirect object form (Dative): magnō, magnae, magnō
    - With/by/from form (Ablative): magnō, magnā, magnō
4. Word Order:
    - Usually comes before its noun (magna urbs = great city)
    - Can come after for emphasis
    - More flexible than English word order
5. Common Combinations:
    - With people: māgnus rēx (great king)
    - With places: magna urbs (great city)
    - With abstract nouns: magna glōria (great glory)

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context for English Speakers)

Understanding how Romans used "māgnus" helps us grasp their culture:

1. In Politics:
    - Used in titles (like "Pompēius Magnus" = Pompey the Great)
    - Described powerful leaders and their achievements

    - Important in political speeches and propaganda
2. In Architecture:
    - Described impressive buildings and monuments
    - Showed Roman pride in engineering achievements
    - Indicated wealth and power of builders
3. In Religion:
    - Used for gods and their powers
    - Described religious buildings and ceremonies
    - Part of prayer and ritual language
4. In Daily Life:
    - Described practical sizes and distances
    - Used in business and trade
    - Part of everyday conversation
5. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English use of "great" in "Great Britain"
    - Used like "grand" in "Grand Canyon"
    - Comparable to modern titles like "the Great" in history

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia" (8.19):

magnus *great* **erat** *was* **in** *in* **eō** *him* **ingeniī** *of talent* **lūmen** *the light*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Magnus erat in eō ingeniī lūmen. *Great was the light of talent in him.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "māgnus" here to praise the poet Archias. The placement of "māgnus" at the start of the phrase emphasizes the greatness. This shows how Romans used the word to praise talent and achievement.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "māgnus" is nominative masculine singular, agreeing with "lūmen" (light)
- Word order is poetic, emphasizing "māgnus"
- Uses metaphorical meaning of "māgnus" for intellectual greatness
- Shows typical Roman praise formula

Genre Section: Epic Poetry

Part A (Interleaved Latin and English Text)

23.16 **magna** *great* **dea** *goddess* **ab** *from* **caelō** *sky* **dēscendit** *descends*

23.17 **in** *on* **magnō** *great* **scūtō** *shield* **antīquās** *ancient* **fābulās** *stories* **videt** *he sees*

23.18 **magna** *great* **unda** *wave* **nāvēs** *ships* **ad** *to* **lītus** *shore* **fert** *carries*

23.19 **hērōs** *hero* **magnum** *great* **gladium** *sword* **ā** *from* **vāgīnā** *sheath* **trahit** *draws*

23.20 **cum** *with* **magnā** *great* **vī** *strength* **portās** *gates* **frangit** *he breaks*

23.21 audiunt *they hear* magnum *great* sonum *sound* tubārum *of trumpets*

23.22 **magnus** *great* **rēx** *king* **suōs** *his men* **in** *into* **proelium** *battle* **dūcit** *leads*

23.23 **per** *through* **magnam** *great* **silvam** *forest* **incēdunt** *they march*

23.24 **ex** *from* **magnā** *great* **turrī** *tower* **hostēs** *enemies* **spectant** *they watch*

23.25 **magnus** *great* **ignis** *fire* **in** *in* **templō** *temple* **ardet** *burns*

23.26 **cum** *with* **magnō** *great* **timōre** *fear* **spēluncam** *cave* **appropinquant** *they approach*

23.27 **magna** *great* **vātēs** *prophetess* **dē** *about* **futūrīs** *future things* **canit** *sings*

23.28 **per** *through* **magna** *great* **perīcula** *dangers* **hērōs** *hero* **iter** *journey* **facit** *makes*

23.29 **magnum** *great* **rogum** *funeral pyre* **ducī** *for the leader* **exstruunt** *they build*

23.30 **magnus** *great* **triumphus** *triumph* **populō** *to the people* **gaudium** *joy* **affert** *brings*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

23.16 Magna dea ab caelō dēscendit. *The great goddess descends from the sky.*

23.17 In magnō scūtō antīquās fābulās videt. *On the great shield he sees ancient stories.*

23.18 Magna unda nāvēs ad lītus fert. *A great wave carries the ships to shore.*

23.19 Hērōs magnum gladium ā vāgīnā trahit. *The hero draws the great sword from its sheath.*

23.20 Cum magnā vī portās frangit. *With great strength he breaks the gates.*

23.21 Audiunt magnum sonum tubārum. *They hear the great sound of trumpets.*

23.22 Magnus rēx suōs in proelium dūcit. *The great king leads his men into battle.*

23.23 Per magnam silvam incēdunt. *They march through the great forest.*

23.24 Ex magnā turrī hostēs spectant. *From the great tower they watch the enemies.*

23.25 Magnus ignis in templō ardet. *A great fire burns in the temple.*

23.26 Cum magnō timōre spēluncam appropinquant. *With great fear they approach the cave.*

23.27 Magna vātēs dē futūrīs canit. *The great prophetess sings about future things.*

23.28 Per magna perīcula hērōs iter facit. *Through great dangers the hero makes his journey.*

23.29 Magnum rogum ducī exstruunt. *They build a great funeral pyre for the leader.*

23.30 Magnus triumphus populō gaudium affert. *The great triumph brings joy to the people.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

23.16 Magna dea ab caelō dēscendit.

23.17 In magnō scūtō antīquās fābulās videt.

23.18 Magna unda nāvēs ad lītus fert.

23.19 Hērōs magnum gladium ā vāgīnā trahit.

23.20 Cum magnā vī portās frangit.

23.21 Audiunt magnum sonum tubārum.

23.22 Magnus rēx suōs in proelium dūcit.

23.23 Per magnam silvam incēdunt.

23.24 Ex magnā turrī hostēs spectant.

23.25 Magnus ignis in templō ardet.

23.26 Cum magnō timōre spēluncam appropinquant.

23.27 Magna vātēs dē futūrīs canit.

23.28 Per magna perīcula hērōs iter facit.

23.29 Magnum rogum ducī exstruunt.

23.30 Magnus triumphus populō gaudium affert.

Part D (Grammar Analysis of Epic Style)

The epic genre uses "māgnus" in distinctive ways:

1. Formulaic Patterns:
    - Often begins phrases ("magna dea")
    - Frequently paired with epic nouns (dea, hērōs, rēx)
    - Used in repeated phrases (magna vī)
2. Poetic Word Order:
    - More flexible than prose
    - Often separated from its noun for emphasis
    - Can begin or end lines for dramatic effect
3. Epic Contexts:
    - Physical descriptions (magnus ignis)
    - Heroic attributes (magna vī)
    - Divine or supernatural elements (magna vātēs)
    - Battle scenes (magna proelia)
4. Special Uses in Epic:

- Heightened emotional effect
- Grander scale than normal usage
- Part of heroic epithets
- Enhanced by epic vocabulary

5. Common Epic Combinations:
    - With divine terms (magna dea)
    - With natural forces (magna unda)
    - With battle terms (magnus triumphus)
    - With supernatural elements (magna vātēs)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: School Life Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Latin and English Text)

23.31 **discipulus** *student* **magnum** *large* **librum** *book* **in** *in* **mēnsā** *table* **videt** *sees*

23.32 **magister** *teacher* **magnā** *loud* **vōce** *with voice* **fābulam** *story* **nārrat** *tells*

23.33 **in** *in* **magnō** *large* **lūdō** *school* **multī** *many* **puerī** *boys* **sedent** *sit*

23.34 **Mārcus** *Marcus* **cum** *with* **magnā** *great* **dīligentiā** *diligence* **studet** *studies*

23.35 **Iūlia** *Julia* **magnum** *great* **progressum** *progress* **in** *in* **studiīs** *studies* **facit** *makes*

23.36 **magnae** *great* **quaestiōnēs** *questions* **discipulōs** *students* **exercent** *exercise*

23.37 **magister** *teacher* **magnā** *great* **patientiā** *with patience* **respondēbat** *was responding*

23.38 **magna** *great* **laetitia** *joy* **in** *on* **puerōrum** *of boys* **faciēbus** *faces* **appāret** *appears*

23.39 **magnō** *great* **cum** *with* **studiō** *enthusiasm* **linguam** *language* **Latīnam** *Latin* **discunt** *they learn*

23.40 **puella** *girl* **magnam** *great* **scientiam** *knowledge* **grammaticae** *of grammar* **habet** *has*

23.41 **magnus** *large* **numerus** *number* **librōrum** *of books* **in** *in* **bibliothēcā** *library* **est** *is*

23.42 **magnum** *great* **gaudium** *joy* **post** *after* **exāmen** *test* **sentiunt** *they feel*

23.43 **ad** *for* **magnum** *great* **certāmen** *contest* **sē** *themselves* **parant** *they prepare*

23.44 **cum** *with* **magnā** *great* **spē** *hope* **novum** *new* **annum** *year* **incipiunt** *they begin*

23.45 **magister** *teacher* **magnā** *great* **cum** *with* **sapientiā** *wisdom* **exempla** *examples* **explicat** *explains*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

23.31 Discipulus magnum librum in mēnsā videt. *The student sees a large book on the table.*

23.32 Magister magnā vōce fābulam nārrat. *The teacher tells the story with a loud voice.*

23.33 In magnō lūdō multī puerī sedent. *Many boys sit in the large school.*

23.34 Mārcus cum magnā dīligentiā studet. *Marcus studies with great diligence.*

23.35 Iūlia magnum progressum in studiīs facit. *Julia makes great progress in her studies.*

23.36 Magnae quaestiōnēs discipulōs exercent. *Great questions exercise the students.*

23.37 Magister magnā patientiā respondēbat. *The teacher was responding with great patience.*

23.38 Magna laetitia in puerōrum faciēbus appāret. *Great joy appears on the boys' faces.*

23.39 Magnō cum studiō linguam Latīnam discunt. *They learn the Latin language with great enthusiasm.*

23.40 Puella magnam scientiam grammaticae habet. *The girl has great knowledge of grammar.*

23.41 Magnus numerus librōrum in bibliothēcā est. *A large number of books is in the library.*

23.42 Magnum gaudium post exāmen sentiunt. *They feel great joy after the test.*

23.43 Ad magnum certāmen sē parant. *They prepare themselves for the great contest.*

23.44 Cum magnā spē novum annum incipiunt. *They begin the new year with great hope.*

23.45 Magister magnā cum sapientiā exempla explicat. *The teacher explains examples with great wisdom.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

23.31 Discipulus magnum librum in mēnsā videt.

23.32 Magister magnā vōce fābulam nārrat.

23.33 In magnō lūdō multī puerī sedent.

23.34 Mārcus cum magnā dīligentiā studet.

23.35 Iūlia magnum progressum in studiīs facit.

23.36 Magnae quaestiōnēs discipulōs exercent.

23.37 Magister magnā patientiā respondēbat.

23.38 Magna laetitia in puerōrum faciēbus appāret.

23.39 Magnō cum studiō linguam Latīnam discunt.

23.40 Puella magnam scientiam grammaticae habet.

23.41 Magnus numerus librōrum in bibliothēcā est.

23.42 Magnum gaudium post exāmen sentiunt.

23.43 Ad magnum certāmen sē parant.

23.44 Cum magnā spē novum annum incipiunt.

23.45 Magister magnā cum sapientiā exempla explicat.

Part D (Grammar Analysis of School Narrative)

1. Common School Vocabulary with māgnus:
    - Physical objects: magnus liber (large book)
    - Abstract qualities: magna dīligentia (great diligence)
    - Educational concepts: magna scientia (great knowledge)
    - Emotions: magnum gaudium (great joy)
2. Ablative of Manner:
    - cum magnā dīligentiā (with great diligence)
    - magnā vōce (with a loud voice)
    - magnā patientiā (with great patience)
    - Often showing how actions are performed
3. Subject-Object Relationships:
    - māgnus governing direct objects
    - māgnus modifying subjects
    - māgnus in prepositional phrases
4. Word Order in School Context:
    - More regular than epic poetry
    - Usually māgnus before its noun
    - Standard prose word order
    - Clear for young readers
5. Special Uses in Educational Context:
    - Physical description (magnus liber)
    - Quality of work (magna dīligentia)
    - Achievement (magnus progressus)
    - Intellectual qualities (magna scientia)

Lesson 24 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: ex, ē (out of, from)

Part A (Interleaved Latin and English Text)

24.1 **Mīles** *the soldier* **ex** *out of* **castrīs** *the camp* **venit** *comes*

24.2 **Agricola** *the farmer* **ex** *from* **agrō** *the field* **redit** *returns*

24.3 **Sacerdōs** *the priest* **ex** *out of* **templō** *the temple* **ambulat** *walks*

24.4 **Puer** *the boy* **ex** *from* **domō** *the house* **currit** *runs*

24.5 **Nūntius** *the messenger* **ex** *out of* **urbe** *the city* **venit** *comes*

24.6 **Nautae** *the sailors* **ex** *from* **portū** *the harbor* **discēdunt** *depart*

24.7 **Fēmina** *the woman* **ē** *out of* **hortō** *the garden* **ambulat** *walks*

24.8 **Magister** *the teacher* **discipulōs** *students* **ex** *from* **lūdō** *school* **dūcit** *leads*

24.9 **Aqua** *water* **ex** *from* **fonte** *the fountain* **fluit** *flows*

24.10 **Servus** *the slave* **cibum** *food* **ex** *out of* **forō** *the market* **portat** *carries*

24.11 **Avēs** *birds* **ex** *from* **arbore** *the tree* **volant** *fly*

24.12 **Dux** *the general* **ex** *from* **proeliō** *battle* **redit** *returns*

24.13 **Puerī** *the children* **ex** *out of* **silvā** *the forest* **veniunt** *come*

24.31 **Mercātōrēs** *the merchants* **ex** *from* **urbe** *the city* **discēdunt** *depart*

24.15 **Ovēs** *the sheep* **ex** *from* **agrō** *the field* **currunt** *run*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

24.1 Mīles ex castrīs venit. *The soldier comes out of the camp.*

24.2 Agricola ex agrō redit. *The farmer returns from the field.*

24.3 Sacerdōs ex templō ambulat. *The priest walks out of the temple.*

24.4 Puer ex domō currit. *The boy runs from the house.*

24.5 Nūntius ex urbe venit. *The messenger comes out of the city.*

24.6 Nautae ex portū discēdunt. *The sailors depart from the harbor.*

24.7 Fēmina ē hortō ambulat. *The woman walks out of the garden.*

24.8 Magister discipulōs ex lūdō dūcit. *The teacher leads students from school.*

24.9 Aqua ex fonte fluit. *Water flows from the fountain.*

24.10 Servus cibum ex forō portat. *The slave carries food out of the market.*

24.11 Avēs ex arbore volant. *Birds fly from the tree.*

24.12 Dux ex proeliō redit. *The general returns from battle.*

24.13 Puerī ex silvā veniunt. *The children come out of the forest.*

24.31 Mercātōrēs ex urbe discēdunt. *The merchants depart from the city.*

24.15 Ovēs ex agrō currunt. *The sheep run from the field.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

24.1 Mīles ex castrīs venit.

24.2 Agricola ex agrō redit.

24.3 Sacerdōs ex templō ambulat.

24.4 Puer ex domō currit.

24.5 Nūntius ex urbe venit.

24.6 Nautae ex portū discēdunt.

24.7 Fēmina ē hortō ambulat.

24.8 Magister discipulōs ex lūdō dūcit.

24.9 Aqua ex fonte fluit.

24.10 Servus cibum ex forō portat.

24.11 Avēs ex arbore volant.

24.12 Dux ex proeliō redit.

24.13 Puerī ex silvā veniunt.

24.31 Mercātōrēs ex urbe discēdunt.

24.15 Ovēs ex agrō currunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The preposition "ex" (or "ē" before consonants) is one of the most common Latin prepositions. For English speakers, several key points are important:

1. Case Usage:
    - Always takes the ablative case
    - The noun following "ex" must be in the ablative
    - Examples: castra → ex castrīs, urbs → ex urbe
2. Forms:
    - "ex" is used before vowels and most consonants
    - "ē" is an alternative form used mainly before consonants
    - Both forms have the same meaning
3. Common Uses:
    - Physical movement out of or away from something
    - Origin or source
    - Starting point of action
    - Material something is made from
4. Word Order:
    - Usually appears directly before its object
    - Can be separated for emphasis
    - Forms a prepositional phrase with its object
5. Important for English Speakers:
    - Different from English "from" which can take many forms
    - More specific than English "out of"
    - Cannot be used for time expressions like English "from"

- Always indicates movement or origin

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "ex" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Spatial Concepts:
    - Romans were precise about movement and direction
    - Buildings and spaces had clear boundaries
    - Movement between spaces was important in daily life
2. Social Context:
    - Different social classes moved through different spaces
    - Some spaces were restricted by gender or status
    - Movement patterns reflected social hierarchy
3. Historical Perspective:
    - Romans were great builders and engineers
    - They created distinct spaces with clear boundaries
    - Movement between spaces was often ceremonial
4. Modern Parallels:
    - Similar to English "out of" in physical movement
    - Different from English in abstract uses
    - Important in understanding Roman spatial organization

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (Book 1.1):

Ex *out of* **eō** *this* **locō** *place* **in** *into* **fīnēs** *the territories* **Helvētiōrum** *of the Helvetii* **contendit** *he hastens*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Ex eō locō in fīnēs Helvētiōrum contendit. *From this place he hastens into the territories of the Helvetii.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "ex" to show precise military movement. The preposition helps create his characteristic clear, factual style.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "ex" takes ablative "locō"
- "eō" is demonstrative adjective with "locō"
- Movement from one place to another shown by "ex" and "in"

- "contendit" shows swift, purposeful movement

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Movements

Part A (Interleaved Text)

24.16 **Legiōnēs** *the legions* **ex** *from* **castrīs** *the camp* **proficīscuntur** *set out*

24.17 **Equitēs** *the cavalry* **ex** *from* **collibus** *the hills* **dēscendunt** *descend*

24.18 **Dux** *the general* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **ex** *from* **urbe** *the city* **ēdūcit** *leads out*

24.19 **Auxilia** *auxiliary troops* **ex** *from* **silvīs** *the woods* **ēvādunt** *emerge*

24.20 **Centuriō** *the centurion* **cohortēs** *cohorts* **ex** *from* **portīs** *the gates* **dūcit** *leads*

24.21 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **ex** *from* **montibus** *the mountains* **redeunt** *return*

24.22 **Sagittāriī** *archers* **ex** *from* **turribus** *the towers* **dēscendunt** *climb down*

24.23 **Imperātor** *the commander* **cōpiās** *forces* **ex** *from* **hibernīs** *winter quarters* **ēdūcit** *leads out*

24.24 **Signifer** *the standard-bearer* **ex** *from* **aciē** *the battle line* **sē recipit** *withdraws*

24.25 **Veterānī** *veterans* **ex** *from* **nāvibus** *the ships* **ēgrediuntur** *disembark*

24.26 **Custōdēs** *guards* **ex** *from* **statiōnibus** *their posts* **prōcēdunt** *advance*

24.27 **Tribūnus** *the tribune* **ex** *from* **praetōriō** *headquarters* **ēgreditur** *comes out*

24.28 **Lēgātus** *the lieutenant* **ex** *from* **oppidō** *the town* **cum** *with* **exercitū** *army* **exit** *departs*

24.29 **Pedes** *infantry* **ex** *from* **vallō** *the rampart* **dēsiliunt** *jump down*

24.30 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **arma** *weapons* **ex** *from* **castrīs** *the camp* **efferunt** *carry out*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

24.16 Legiōnēs ex castrīs proficīscuntur. *The legions set out from the camp.*

24.17 Equitēs ex collibus dēscendunt. *The cavalry descend from the hills.*

24.18 Dux mīlitēs ex urbe ēdūcit. *The general leads soldiers out of the city.*

24.19 Auxilia ex silvīs ēvādunt. *Auxiliary troops emerge from the woods.*

24.20 Centuriō cohortēs ex portīs dūcit. *The centurion leads cohorts from the gates.*

24.21 Explōrātōrēs ex montibus redeunt. *Scouts return from the mountains.*

24.22 Sagittāriī ex turribus dēscendunt. *Archers climb down from the towers.*

24.23 Imperātor cōpiās ex hibernīs ēdūcit. *The commander leads forces out of winter quarters.*

24.24 Signifer ex aciē sē recipit. *The standard-bearer withdraws from the battle line.*

24.25 Veterānī ex nāvibus ēgrediuntur. *Veterans disembark from the ships.*

24.26 Custōdēs ex statiōnibus prōcēdunt. *Guards advance from their posts.*

24.27 Tribūnus ex praetōriō ēgreditur. *The tribune comes out of headquarters.*

24.28 Lēgātus ex oppidō cum exercitū exit. *The lieutenant departs from the town with the army.*

24.29 Pedes ex vallō dēsiliunt. *Infantry jump down from the rampart.*

24.30 Mīlitēs arma ex castrīs efferunt. *Soldiers carry weapons out of the camp.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

24.16 Legiōnēs ex castrīs proficīscuntur.

24.17 Equitēs ex collibus dēscendunt.

24.18 Dux mīlitēs ex urbe ēdūcit.

24.19 Auxilia ex silvīs ēvādunt.

24.20 Centuriō cohortēs ex portīs dūcit.

24.21 Explōrātōrēs ex montibus redeunt.

24.22 Sagittāriī ex turribus dēscendunt.

24.23 Imperātor cōpiās ex hibernīs ēdūcit.

24.24 Signifer ex aciē sē recipit.

24.25 Veterānī ex nāvibus ēgrediuntur.

24.26 Custōdēs ex statiōnibus prōcēdunt.

24.27 Tribūnus ex praetōriō ēgreditur.

24.28 Lēgātus ex oppidō cum exercitū exit.

24.29 Pedes ex vallō dēsiliunt.

24.30 Mīlitēs arma ex castrīs efferunt.

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

In military writing, "ex" shows precise movement of troops and equipment:

1. Verb Combinations:
    - With general movement verbs: proficīscī, exīre
    - With specific military terms: ēdūcere, ēvādere
    - With compound verbs: dēscendere, ēgredī
2. Military Vocabulary:
    - Unit terms: legiōnēs, cohortēs, auxilia
    - Locations: castra, vallum, praetōrium
    - Personnel: centuriō, signifer, tribūnus

Word Order Features:

- Ex + ablative often precedes the verb

- Military titles usually start the sentence
- Direct objects follow

Motion Verbs:

- Simple verbs (īre, dūcere)
- Compound verbs with prepositions:
  - ē/ex + verb (ēdūcere, ēgredī)
  - dē + verb (dēscendere, dēsilīre)
  - prō + verb (prōcēdere, proficīscī)

5. Ablative Case Usage:
   - Position from which (ex castrīs)
   - Starting point (ex portīs)
   - Origin of movement (ex montibus)
   - All nouns after ex must be ablative:
     - First declension: portā → ex portā
     - Second declension: castra → ex castrīs
     - Third declension: urbs → ex urbe
6. Common Military Phrases:
   - ex aciē sē recipere (withdraw from battle)
   - ex castrīs ēdūcere (lead out from camp)
   - ex statiōnibus prōcēdere (advance from positions)
   - ex praetōriō ēgredī (exit from headquarters)
7. Idiomatic Uses in Military Context:
   - Movement of units (legiōnēs ex castrīs)
   - Tactical withdrawal (ex aciē)
   - Strategic deployment (ex hibernīs)
   - Combat maneuvers (ex vallō)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part A (Interleaved Text)

Marcus *Marcus* **māne** *early* **ex** *from* **cubiculō** *bedroom* **ad** *to* **bibliothecam** *library* **ambulat** *walks*. **Cum** *when* **ex** *from* **fenestra** *window* **spectat** *looks*, **subitō** *suddenly* **nūntium** *messenger* **ex** *from* **viā** *street* **currentem** *running* **videt** *sees*. **Nūntius** *messenger* **epistulam** *letter* **ex** *from* **saccō** *bag* **capit** *takes* **et** *and* **Marcō** *to Marcus* **dat** *gives*.

Marcus *Marcus* **epistulam** *letter* **legit** *reads*: **"Pater tuus** *your father* **ex** *from* **Graeciā** *Greece* **redit** *returns*!" **Laetus** *happy,* **ex** *from* **bibliothēcā** *library* **ad** *to* **forum** *forum* **currit** *runs*, **ubi** *where* **Iūliam** *Julia* **invenit** *finds*. **"Soror** *sister*," **clāmat** *he shouts*, **"pater noster** *our father* **ex** *from* **longō** *long* **itinere** *journey* **domum** *home* **venit** *comes*!"

Iūlia *Julia* **ex** *from* **tabernā** *shop* **statim** *immediately* **exit** *exits*. **Frāter** *brother* **et** *and* **soror** *sister* **ex** *from* **forō** *forum* **ad** *to* **portum** *harbor* **festīnant** *hurry.* **Multae** *many* **nāvēs** *ships* **ex** *from* **Graeciā** *Greece* **veniunt** *come*. **Tandem** *finally* **patrem** *father* **ex** *from* **magnā** *large* **nāve** *ship* **dēscendentum** *descending* **vident** *they see*.

Pater *father* **ex** *from* **Graeciā** *Greece* **multā** *many* **dona** *gifts* **portat** *carries*: **librōs** *books* **ex** *from* **Athēnīs** *Athens,* **vāsa** *vases* **ex** *from* **Corinthō** *Corinth,* **et** *and* **vestēs** *clothes* **ex** *from* **Spartā** *Sparta*. **Māter** *mother,* **quae** *who* **haec** *this* **audit** *hears,* **ex** *from* **domō** *house* **venit** *comes* **et** *and* **familia** *family* **tōta** *whole* **laeta** *happy* **est** *is*.

Part B (Complete Sentences)

Marcus māne ex cubiculō ad bibliothecam ambulat. *Marcus walks from his bedroom to the library early in the morning.*

Cum ex fenestra spectat, subitō nūntium ex viā currentem videt. *When he looks from the window, he suddenly sees a messenger running from the street.*

Nūntius epistulam ex saccō capit et Marcō dat. *The messenger takes a letter from his bag and gives it to Marcus.*

Marcus epistulam legit: "Pater tuus ex Graeciā redit!" *Marcus reads the letter: "Your father returns from Greece!"*

Laetus, ex bibliothēcā ad forum currit, ubi Iūliam invenit. *Happy, he runs from the library to the forum, where he finds Julia.*

"Soror," clāmat, "pater noster ex longō itinere domum venit!" *"Sister," he shouts, "our father comes home from a long journey!"*

Iūlia ex tabernā statim exit. *Julia immediately exits from the shop.*

Frāter et soror ex forō ad portum festīnant. *Brother and sister hurry from the forum to the harbor.*

Multae nāvēs ex Graeciā veniunt. *Many ships come from Greece.*

Tandem patrem ex magnā nāve dēscendentum vident. *Finally they see father descending from the large ship.*

Pater ex Graeciā multā dona portat: librōs ex Athēnīs, vāsa ex Corinthō, et vestēs ex Spartā. *Father carries many gifts from Greece: books from Athens, vases from Corinth, and clothes from Sparta.*

Māter, quae haec audit, ex domō venit et familia tōta laeta est. *Mother, who hears this, comes from the house and the whole family is happy.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

Marcus māne ex cubiculō ad bibliothecam ambulat. Cum ex fenestra spectat, subitō nūntium ex viā currentem videt. Nūntius epistulam ex saccō capit et Marcō dat.

Marcus epistulam legit: "Pater tuus ex Graeciā redit!" Laetus, ex bibliothēcā ad forum currit, ubi Iūliam invenit. "Soror," clāmat, "pater noster ex longō itinere domum venit!"

Iūlia ex tabernā statim exit. Frāter et soror ex forō ad portum festīnant. Multae nāvēs ex Graeciā veniunt. Tandem patrem ex magnā nāve dēscendentum vident.

Pater ex Graeciā multā dona portat: librōs ex Athēnīs, vāsa ex Corinthō, et vestēs ex Spartā. Māter, quae haec audit, ex domō venit et familia tōta laeta est.

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

1. Uses of 'ex' in this narrative:
    - Physical movement (ex cubiculō ambulat)
    - Origin/Source (ex Graeciā redit)
    - Emergence (ex tabernā exit)
    - Separation (ex nāve dēscendere)
2. Narrative elements with 'ex':
    - Sequential actions (exit ... festīnant)
    - Temporal progression (māne ... tandem)
    - Multiple perspectives (Marcus ... Iūlia ... pater)
    - Varied verb forms with movement:
        - Present active (ambulat, currit)
        - Present participle (currentem, dēscendentum)
        - Compound verbs (exit)
3. Word order patterns:
    - Ex + ablative before verbs of motion
    - Ex phrases positioning for emphasis
    - Variation between SOV and SVO order
4. Cultural context:
    - Roman family relationships
    - Travel between Greece and Rome
    - Gift-giving customs
    - Daily activities in Roman life

Part A (Interleaved Text)

Ambulant *are walking* **ex forō** *from the forum* **LŪCIUS** *Lucius* **et** *and* **MĀRCUS** *Marcus,* **dē potestāte** *about power* **colloquentēs** *conversing*.

LŪCIUS: **Dīc mihi** *tell me*, **amīce** *friend*, **quid putas** *what do you think* **esse** *to be* **potestātem** *power*?

MĀRCUS: **Aspice** *look at* **nunc** *now* **senātōrēs** *senators* **illōs** *those* **exeuntēs** *exiting* **ex cūriā** *from the senate house*! **En tibi** *there you have* **potestātem** *power.*

LŪCIUS: **Falluntur** *are deceived* **quī sīc putant** *those who think thus*. **Vidēbis** *you will see* **mox** *soon* **istōs** *those men* **cadere** *fall* **ex grātiā** *from favor,* **ut tot aliī** *as so many others* **ante** *before*.

MĀRCUS: **Unde** *from where* **venit** *comes* **haec sapientia** *this wisdom*?

LŪCIUS: **Docent nōs** *teach us* **historiae** *histories*. **Fluit** *flows* **semper** *always* **potestās** *power,* **nec manet** *nor remains* **dīū** *long*.

MĀRCUS: **At** *but* **gaudia multa** *many pleasures* **capiunt** *take* **ex imperiō** *from rule* **rēgēs** *kings*.

LŪCIUS: **Nec minus** *and no less* **dolōrum** *of pains*. **Fluit** *flows* **cum potestāte** *with power* **cūra** *worry.*

MĀRCUS: **Quaenam ergō** *what then* **vēra potestās** *true power* **vocārī dēbet** *ought to be called*?

LŪCIUS: **Nascitur** *is born* **ex sapientiā** *from wisdom* **vēra potestās** *true power,* **ex virtūte** *from virtue*, **nōn aurō** *not gold*, **nōn armīs** *not weapons*.

MĀRCUS: **Intellegō** *I understand* **aegrē** *with difficulty,* **cum videam** *when I see* **omnēs** *everyone* **quaerentēs** *seeking* **ex potestāte** *from power* **fēlīcitātem** *happiness*.

LŪCIUS: **Proptereā** *for this reason* **ruunt** *rush headlong* **tot** *so many* **ex altō** *from on high* - **latet eōs** *escapes them* **vērae potestātis** *of true power* **nātūra** *the nature*.

Part B (Complete Sentences)

Ambulant ex forō Lūcius et Mārcus, dē potestāte colloquentēs. *Lucius and Marcus are walking from the forum, conversing about power.*

"Dīc mihi, amīce, quid putas esse potestātem?" *"Tell me, friend, what do you think power is?"*

"Aspice nunc senātōrēs illōs exeuntēs ex cūriā! En tibi potestātem." *"Look now at those senators exiting from the senate house! There you have power."*

"Falluntur quī sīc putant. Vidēbis mox istōs cadere ex grātiā, ut tot aliī ante." *"Those who think thus are deceived. Soon you will see those men fall from favor, as so many others before."*

"Unde venit haec sapientia?" *"From where comes this wisdom?"*

"Docent nōs historiae. Fluit semper potestās, nec manet diū." *"Histories teach us. Power always flows, nor does it remain long."*

"At gaudia multa capiunt ex imperiō rēgēs." *"But kings take many pleasures from rule."*

"Nec minus dolōrum. Fluit cum potestāte cūra." *"And no less of pains. Worry flows with power."*

"Quaenam ergō vēra potestās vocārī dēbet?" *"What then ought to be called true power?"*

"Nascitur ex sapientiā vēra potestās, ex virtūte, nōn aurō, nōn armīs." *"True power is born from wisdom, from virtue, not gold, not weapons."*

"Intellegō aegrē, cum videam omnēs quaerentēs ex potestāte fēlīcitātem." *"I understand with difficulty, when I see everyone seeking happiness from power."*

"Proptereā ruunt tot ex altō - latet eōs vērae potestātis nātūra." *"For this reason so many rush headlong from on high - the nature of true power escapes them."*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

Ambulant ex forō Lūcius et Mārcus, dē potestāte colloquentēs.

"Dīc mihi, amīce, quid putas esse potestātem?"

"Aspice nunc senātōrēs illōs exeuntēs ex cūriā! En tibi potestātem."

"Falluntur quī sīc putant. Vidēbis mox istōs cadere ex grātiā, ut tot aliī ante."

"Unde venit haec sapientia?"

"Docent nōs historiae. Fluit semper potestās, nec manet diū."

"At gaudia multa capiunt ex imperiō rēgēs."

"Nec minus dolōrum. Fluit cum potestāte cūra."

"Quaenam ergō vēra potestās vocārī dēbet?"

"Nascitur ex sapientiā vēra potestās, ex virtūte, nōn aurō, nōn armīs."

"Intellegō aegrē, cum videam omnēs quaerentēs ex potestāte fēlīcitātem."

"Proptereā ruunt tot ex altō - latet eōs vērae potestātis nātūra."

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

1. Rhetorical Word Order:
    - Verb-initial for emphasis ("Falluntur quī sīc putant")
    - Chiastic patterns ("Fluit semper potestās, nec manet diū")
    - Separation of adjectives from nouns for emphasis ("vēra...potestās")
2. Dialogue Features:
    - Imperative verbs for immediacy ("Aspice", "Dīc")
    - Rhetorical questions
    - Gnomic presents for universal truths ("Fluit potestās")
    - Interjections ("En tibi")
3. Philosophical Style:
    - Abstract subjects
    - Balanced clauses
    - Metaphorical language ("ruunt ex altō")
    - Sententiae (wisdom sayings)
4. Uses of 'ex':
    - Movement ("ex forō")
    - Source ("ex sapientiā")
    - Separation ("ex grātiā")
    - Causation ("ex virtūte")

Lesson 25 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: SUUS -A -UM (his/her/its own)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

25.1 **Puer** *the boy* **suum** *his own* **librum** *book* **legit** *reads*

25.2 **Puella** *the girl* **suam** *her own* **matrem** *mother* **amat** *loves*

25.3 **Servus** *the slave* **suum** *his own* **dominum** *master* **videt** *sees*

25.4 **Regina** *the queen* **in** *in* **suō** *her own* **hortō** *garden* **ambulat** *walks*

25.5 **Magister** *the teacher* **suīs** *to his own* **discipulīs** *students* **librōs** *books* **dat** *gives*

25.6 **Miles** *the soldier* **suum** *his own* **gladium** *sword* **portat** *carries*

25.7 **Agricola** *the farmer* **in** *in* **suō** *his own* **agrō** *field* **labōrat** *works*

25.8 **Mater** *the mother* **suam** *her own* **fīliam** *daughter* **vocat** *calls*

25.9 **Nauta** *the sailor* **suam** *his own* **nāvem** *ship* **parat** *prepares*

25.10 **Poēta** *the poet* **sua** *his own* **carmina** *poems* **recitat** *recites*

25.11 **Mercātor** *the merchant* **suās** *his own* **mercēs** *goods* **vendit** *sells*

25.12 **Dux** *the leader* **suōs** *his own* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **laudat** *praises*

25.13 **Senātor** *the senator* **in** *in* **suā** *his own* **vīllā** *villa* **habitat** *lives*

25.31 **Sacerdōs** *the priest* **ad** *to* **suum** *his own* **templum** *temple* **venit** *comes*

25.15 **Fēmina** *the woman* **suam** *her own* **domum** *house* **cūrat** *takes care of*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

25.1 Puer suum librum legit. *The boy reads his own book.*

25.2 Puella suam matrem amat. *The girl loves her own mother.*

25.3 Servus suum dominum videt. *The slave sees his own master.*

25.4 Regina in suō hortō ambulat. *The queen walks in her own garden.*

25.5 Magister suīs discipulīs librōs dat. *The teacher gives books to his own students.*

25.6 Miles suum gladium portat. *The soldier carries his own sword.*

25.7 Agricola in suō agrō labōrat. *The farmer works in his own field.*

25.8 Mater suam fīliam vocat. *The mother calls her own daughter.*

25.9 Nauta suam nāvem parat. *The sailor prepares his own ship.*

25.10 Poēta sua carmina recitat. *The poet recites his own poems.*

25.11 Mercātor suās mercēs vendit. *The merchant sells his own goods.*

25.12 Dux suōs mīlitēs laudat. *The leader praises his own soldiers.*

25.13 Senātor in suā vīllā habitat. *The senator lives in his own villa.*

25.31 Sacerdōs ad suum templum venit. *The priest comes to his own temple.*

25.15 Fēmina suam domum cūrat. *The woman takes care of her own house.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

25.1 Puer suum librum legit.

25.2 Puella suam matrem amat.

25.3 Servus suum dominum videt.

25.4 Regina in suō hortō ambulat.

25.5 Magister suīs discipulīs librōs dat.

25.6 Miles suum gladium portat.

25.7 Agricola in suō agrō labōrat.

25.8 Mater suam fīliam vocat.

25.9 Nauta suam nāvem parat.

25.10 Poēta sua carmina recitat.

25.11 Mercātor suās mercēs vendit.

25.12 Dux suōs mīlitēs laudat.

25.13 Senātor in suā vīllā habitat.

25.31 Sacerdōs ad suum templum venit.

25.15 Fēmina suam domum cūrat.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, "suus -a -um" requires special attention because it works differently from English possessive adjectives. Here are the key points:

1. Basic Function:
    - Refers back to the subject of the sentence
    - Means "his own," "her own," or "its own"
    - Always refers to the subject's possession
2. Forms: Singular:
    - Masculine: suus, suum, suō, suō
    - Feminine: sua, suam, suae, suā
    - Neuter: suum, suum, suō, suō

    Plural:
    - Masculine: suī, suōs, suōrum, suīs
    - Feminine: suae, suās, suārum, suīs
    - Neuter: sua, sua, suōrum, suīs
3. Key Differences from English:
    - "Suus" always refers back to the subject
    - It doesn't specify gender of the possessor (like English "his/her")
    - It emphasizes ownership ("own")

4. Common Mistakes to Avoid:
    - Don't use "suus" when the possessor isn't the subject
    - Don't confuse with "eius" (his/her/its) for non-reflexive possession

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "suus" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Emphasis on Ownership:
    - Property rights were crucial in Roman society
    - Clear distinction between personal and communal property
    - Legal importance of establishing ownership
2. Social Implications:
    - Demonstrated status and authority
    - Reflected Roman family structure
    - Indicated social responsibilities
3. Literary Usage:
    - Common in legal documents
    - Important in historical narratives
    - Used in poetry for emphasis
4. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to Romance language possessives
    - Reflects Indo-European patterns
    - Helps understand legal terminology

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (7.23):

Verus *true* **amīcus** *friend* **suam** *his own* **amīcitiam** *friendship* **virtūte** *by virtue* **mētitur** *measures*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Verus amīcus suam amīcitiam virtūte mētitur. *A true friend measures his own friendship by virtue.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "suam" to emphasize personal responsibility in friendship. The reflexive possessive reinforces that true friendship requires self-examination.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Suam" agrees with feminine "amīcitiam"
- Reflexive refers back to "amīcus"
- Ablative "virtūte" shows means/instrument

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Family Relationships

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

25.16 **Mārcus** *Marcus* **suam** *his own* **familiam** *family* **magnopere** *greatly* **amat** *loves*

25.17 **Eius** *his* **uxor** *wife* **suōs** *her own* **līberōs** *children* **diligenter** *carefully* **ēducat** *educates*

25.18 **Fīlius** *the son* **suō** *his own* **patrī** *father* **librum** *book* **novum** *new* **ostendit** *shows*

25.19 **Fīlia** *the daughter* **cum** *with* **suā** *her own* **sorōre** *sister* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **lūdit** *plays*

25.20 **Avus** *grandfather* **suīs** *to his own* **nepōtibus** *grandchildren* **fābulās** *stories* **antīquās** *ancient* **narrat** *tells*

25.21 **Neptis** *granddaughter* **suam** *her own* **aviam** *grandmother* **cottīdiē** *daily* **vīsitat** *visits*

25.22 **Frātrēs** *brothers* **in** *in* **suō** *their own* **cubiculō** *bedroom* **dormīre** *to sleep* **volunt** *want*

25.23 **Māter** *mother* **suam** *her own* **culīnam** *kitchen* **dīligenter** *carefully* **cūrat** *takes care of*

25.24 **Pater** *father* **in** *in* **suō** *his own* **tablīnō** *study* **epistulās** *letters* **scrībit** *writes*

25.25 **Infāns** *baby* **suam** *his own* **nūtrīcem** *nurse* **semper** *always* **quaerit** *seeks*

25.26 **Amita** *aunt* **suae** *to her own* **sorōrī** *sister* **cēnam** *dinner* **parat** *prepares*

25.27 **Patruus** *uncle* **suō** *his own* **frātrī** *brother* **dōnum** *gift* **mittit** *sends*

25.28 **Cōnsobrīnī** *cousins* **in** *in* **suō** *their own* **agrō** *field* **pīlā** *ball* **lūdunt** *play*

25.29 **Mātertēra** *maternal aunt* **suam** *her own* **domum** *house* **flōribus** *with flowers* **ōrnat** *decorates*

25.30 **Tōta** *whole* **familia** *family* **suam** *their own* **vīllam** *villa* **aestīvam** *summer* **amat** *loves*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

25.16 Mārcus suam familiam magnopere amat. *Marcus greatly loves his own family.*

25.17 Eius uxor suōs līberōs diligenter ēducat. *His wife carefully educates her own children.*

25.18 Fīlius suō patrī librum novum ostendit. *The son shows a new book to his own father.*

25.19 Fīlia cum suā sorōre in hortō lūdit. *The daughter plays with her own sister in the garden.*

25.20 Avus suīs nepōtibus fābulās antīquās narrat. *The grandfather tells ancient stories to his own grandchildren.*

25.21 Neptis suam aviam cottīdiē vīsitat. *The granddaughter visits her own grandmother daily.*

25.22 Frātrēs in suō cubiculō dormīre volunt. *The brothers want to sleep in their own bedroom.*

25.23 Māter suam culīnam dīligenter cūrat. *Mother carefully takes care of her own kitchen.*

25.24 Pater in suō tablīnō epistulās scrībit. *Father writes letters in his own study.*

25.25 Infāns suam nūtrīcem semper quaerit. *The baby always seeks his own nurse.*

25.26 Amita suae sorōrī cēnam parat. *The aunt prepares dinner for her own sister.*

25.27 Patruus suō frātrī dōnum mittit. *The uncle sends a gift to his own brother.*

25.28 Cōnsobrīnī in suō agrō pīlā lūdunt. *The cousins play ball in their own field.*

25.29 Mātertēra suam domum flōribus ōrnat. *The maternal aunt decorates her own house with flowers.*

25.30 Tōta familia suam vīllam aestīvam amat. *The whole family loves their own summer villa.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

25.16 Mārcus suam familiam magnopere amat.

25.17 Eius uxor suōs līberōs diligenter ēducat.

25.18 Fīlius suō patrī librum novum ostendit.

25.19 Fīlia cum suā sorōre in hortō lūdit.

25.20 Avus suīs nepōtibus fābulās antīquās narrat.

25.21 Neptis suam aviam cottīdiē vīsitat.

25.22 Frātrēs in suō cubiculō dormīre volunt.

25.23 Māter suam culīnam dīligenter cūrat.

25.24 Pater in suō tablīnō epistulās scrībit.

25.25 Infāns suam nūtrīcem semper quaerit.

25.26 Amita suae sorōrī cēnam parat.

25.27 Patruus suō frātrī dōnum mittit.

25.28 Cōnsobrīnī in suō agrō pīlā lūdunt.

25.29 Mātertēra suam domum flōribus ōrnat.

25.30 Tōta familia suam vīllam aestīvam amat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

This family-themed section demonstrates important grammatical features related to "suus":

1. Usage within Family Context:
    - Shows how "suus" reflects relationships within the family

- Demonstrates possession between family members
- Illustrates various family roles and interactions

2. Case Usage with Family Terms:
    - Dative for recipients (suō patrī, suae sorōrī)
    - Ablative with prepositions (cum suā sorōre)
    - Accusative for direct objects (suam familiam)
3. Agreement Patterns:
    - Gender agreement with family terms
    - Number agreement in plural family groups
    - Case agreement in various grammatical constructions
4. Key Points for English Speakers:
    - Shows when to use "suus" vs. "eius" in family contexts
    - Demonstrates natural word order in family descriptions
    - Illustrates common family-related vocabulary and expressions

Colloquium: Dē Librīs Nostrīs (About Our Books)

Part A (Interleaved Text)

Persōnae (Characters):

Mārcus *Marcus* et *and* **Lūcius** *Lucius*, **discipulī** *students*

25.31 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Ubi** *where* **est** *is* **tuus** *your* **liber** *book*, **Lūcī?** *Lucius?*

25.32 **Lūcius:** *Lucius:* **Meum** *my* **librum** *book* **nōn** *not* **videō** *I see*, **sed** *but* **Claudia** *Claudia* **suum** *her own* **librum** *book* **habet** *has.*

25.33 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Ego** *I* **meum** *my* **librum** *book* **habeo** *have*, **et** *and* **tū** *you* **tuum** *your* **librum** *book* **quaerere** *to seek* **dēbes** *ought.*

25.34 **Lūcius:** *Lucius:* **Fortasse** *perhaps* **soror** *sister* **mea** *my* **meum** *my* **librum** *book* **in** *in* **suō** *her own* **cubiculō** *bedroom* **posuit** *has placed.*

25.35 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Nōnne** *doesn't* **tua** *your* **soror** *sister* **suōs** *her own* **librōs** *books* **semper** *always* **in** *in* **suā** *her own* **mensā** *table* **pōnit?** *place?*

25.36 **Lūcius:** *Lucius:* **Ita** *yes*, **sed** *but* **hodiē** *today* **sua** *her own* **mēnsa** *table* **plēna** *full* **est** *is.*

25.37 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Ego** *I* **saepe** *often* **meōs** *my* **librōs** *books* **in** *in* **meō** *my* **sacculō** *bag* **servō** *keep.*

25.38 **Lūcius:** *Lucius:* **Ah!** *Ah!* **Nunc** *now* **meminī** *I remember!* **Meum** *my* **librum** *book* **in** *in* **meō** *my* **sacculō** *bag* **relīquī** *I left.*

25.39 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Ergō** *therefore* **tū** *you* **tuum** *your* **librum** *book* **habes,** *have,* **et** *and* **ego** *I* **meum** *my* **habeō** *have.*

25.40 **Lūcius:** *Lucius:* **Ita,** *yes,* **et** *and* **nunc** *now* **in** *in* **nostrā** *our* **scholā** *school* **studēre** *to study* **possumus** *we are able.*

25.41 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Magister** *the teacher* **suōs** *his own* **librōs** *books* **iam** *already* **in** *on* **mensā** *table* **posuit** *has placed.*

25.42 **Lūcius:** *Lucius:* **Is** *he* **suam** *his own* **doctrinam** *learning* **nōbīscum** *with us* **semper** *always* **līberāliter** *generously* **communicat** *shares.*

25.43 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Omnēs** *all* **discipulī** *students* **suōs** *their own* **librōs** *books* **aperīre** *to open* **dēbent** *ought.*

25.44 **Lūcius:** *Lucius:* **Rectē** *rightly* **dīcis.** *you say.* **Ego** *I* **meum** *my* **aperiam** *will open.*

25.45 **Mārcus:** *Marcus:* **Et** *and* **ego** *I* **quoque** *also* **meum** *my* **librum** *book* **statim** *immediately* **aperiam** *will open.*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

25.31 Mārcus: Ubi est tuus liber, Lūcī? *Marcus: Where is your book, Lucius?*

25.32 Lūcius: Meum librum nōn videō, sed Claudia suum librum habet. *Lucius: I don't see my book, but Claudia has her own book.*

25.33 Mārcus: Ego meum librum habeō, et tū tuum librum quaerere dēbes. *Marcus: I have my book, and you ought to seek your book.*

25.34 Lūcius: Fortasse soror mea meum librum in suō cubiculō posuit. *Lucius: Perhaps my sister has placed my book in her own bedroom.*

25.35 Mārcus: Nōnne tua soror suōs librōs semper in suā mensā pōnit? *Marcus: Doesn't your sister always place her own books on her own table?*

25.36 Lūcius: Ita, sed hodiē sua mēnsa plēna est. *Lucius: Yes, but today her own table is full.*

25.37 Mārcus: Ego saepe meōs librōs in meō sacculō servō. *Marcus: I often keep my books in my bag.*

25.38 Lūcius: Ah! Nunc meminī! Meum librum in meō sacculō relīquī. *Lucius: Ah! Now I remember! I left my book in my bag.*

25.39 Mārcus: Ergō tū tuum librum habes, et ego meum habeō. *Marcus: Therefore you have your book, and I have mine.*

25.40 Lūcius: Ita, et nunc in nostrā scholā studēre possumus. *Lucius: Yes, and now we can study in our school.*

25.41 Mārcus: Magister suōs librōs iam in mensā posuit. *Marcus: The teacher has already placed his own books on the table.*

25.42 Lūcius: Is suam doctrinam nōbīscum semper līberāliter communicat. *Lucius: He always generously shares his own learning with us.*

25.43 Mārcus: Omnēs discipulī suōs librōs aperīre dēbent. *Marcus: All students ought to open their own books.*

25.44 Lūcius: Rectē dīcis. Ego meum aperiam. *Lucius: You speak rightly. I will open mine.*

25.45 Mārcus: Et ego quoque meum librum statim aperiam. *Marcus: And I too will immediately open my book.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

25.31 Mārcus: Ubi est tuus liber, Lūcī?

25.32 Lūcius: Meum librum nōn videō, sed Claudia suum librum habet.

25.33 Mārcus: Ego meum librum habeō, et tū tuum librum quaerere dēbes.

25.34 Lūcius: Fortasse soror mea meum librum in suō cubiculō posuit.

25.35 Mārcus: Nōnne tua soror suōs librōs semper in suā mensā pōnit?

25.36 Lūcius: Ita, sed hodiē sua mēnsa plēna est.

25.37 Mārcus: Ego saepe meōs librōs in meō sacculō servō.

25.38 Lūcius: Ah! Nunc meminī! Meum librum in meō sacculō relīquī.

25.39 Mārcus: Ergō tū tuum librum habes, et ego meum habeō.

25.40 Lūcius: Ita, et nunc in nostrā scholā studēre possumus.

25.41 Mārcus: Magister suōs librōs iam in mensā posuit.

25.42 Lūcius: Is suam doctrinam nōbīscum semper līberāliter communicat.

25.43 Mārcus: Omnēs discipulī suōs librōs aperīre dēbent.

25.44 Lūcius: Rectē dīcis. Ego meum aperiam.

25.45 Mārcus: Et ego quoque meum librum statim aperiam.

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

This dialogue demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Contrasts Between Possessive Adjectives:
    - "Suus" (reflexive): refers back to subject
    - "Meus, Tuus" (personal): direct possession
    - "Noster" (plural possession): shared ownership
2. Case Usage:
    - Nominative for subjects
    - Accusative for direct objects (librum)
    - Ablative with prepositions (in mensā)
    - Dative for indirect objects (nōbīscum)
3. Verb Forms:
    - Present indicative (est, habeō)
    - Future (aperiam)
    - Perfect (posuit, relīquī)
    - Infinitive (aperīre, studēre)

4. Special Features for English Speakers:
    - Natural conversation shows when to use "suus" vs. other possessives
    - Demonstrates typical classroom vocabulary
    - Shows common question and answer patterns

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Colloquium Vivesianum: Dē Librīs et Studiīs

Part A (Interleaved Text)

Persōnae:

Quintus *Quintus* et *and* **Valerius** *Valerius,* **philosophiae** *of philosophy* **studiōsī** *students*

25.46 **"Quid** *what* **tandem** *at last* **in** *in* **suīs** *his own* **librīs** *books* **tam** *so* **studiōsē** *studiously* **legit** *reads* **Mārcus?"** *Marcus?*

25.47 **"Nescit** *knows not* **ille** *that one* **profectō** *indeed* **suam** *his own* **ipsīus** *very* **īnsciēntiam,** *ignorance,* **quī** *who* **in** *in* **aliēnīs** *of others* **tantum** *only* **librīs** *books* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **quaerit."** *seeks*

25.48 **"At** *but* **minimē** *least* **omnium** *of all* **suā** *his own* **sponte** *accord* **ad** *to* **librōs** *books* **sē** *himself* **convertit;** *turns;* **magister** *the teacher* **impellit."** *compels*

25.49 **"Quod** *what* **suī** *his own* **iūris** *right* **est,** *is,* **id** *that* **numquam** *never* **alterī** *to another* **permittere** *to permit* **dēbet** *ought* **philosophus."** *a philosopher*

25.50 **"Vīdistīne** *have you seen* **ut** *how* **suōs** *his own* **condiscipulōs** *fellow students* **cotīdiē** *daily* **dēspiciat?"** *he looks down upon*

25.51 **"Suae** *of his own* **sapientiae** *wisdom* **nimis** *too much* **cōnfīdit,** *he trusts,* **quod** *which* **stultitiae** *of foolishness* **certissimum** *most certain* **signum** *sign* **est."** *is*

25.52 **"Quid** *what* **ergō?** *therefore?* **Nōnne** *not?* **suam** *his own* **quisque** *each* **viam** *way* **sequī** *to follow* **dēbet?"** *ought*

25.54 **"Ita** *yes,* **sed** *but* **quī** *who* **suīs** *by his own* **tantum** *only* **vēstīgiīs** *footsteps* **nītī** *to rely on* **vult,** *wishes,* **saepe** *often* **labitur."** *slips*

25.54 **"Nēmō** *no one* **suā** *by his own* **sōlius** *alone* **arte** *skill* **ad** *to* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **pervenit."** *arrives at*

25.55 **"Rectē** *rightly* **mones;** *you advise;* **suam** *his own* **viam** *way* **cum** *with* **aliīs** *others* **coniungere** *to join* **dēbet** *ought* **sapiēns."** *the wise man*

25.56 **"Nōnne** *not?* **suam** *his own* **doctrinam** *learning* **cum** *with* **amīcīs** *friends* **commūnicāre** *to share* **decet?"** *is fitting*

25.57 **"Profectō;** *indeed;* **nēmō** *no one* **sibi** *for himself* **sōlī** *alone* **suās** *his own* **dīvitiās** *riches* **servāre** *to keep* **dēbet."** *ought*

25.58 **"Ergō** *therefore* **suae** *of his own* **doctrinae** *learning* **frūctūs** *fruits* **cum** *with* **aliīs** *others* **partīrī** *to share* **oportet."** *it is proper*

25.59 **"Quī** *he who* **suam** *his own* **scientiam** *knowledge* **celat,** *conceals,* **is** *he* **nēc** *neither* **sibi** *himself* **nēc** *nor* **aliīs** *others* **prōdest."** *benefits*

25.60 **"Ita** *thus* **est;** *it is;* **suō** *by his own* **exemplō** *example* **docēre** *to teach* **optimum** *best* **est."** *is*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

25.46 "Quid tandem in suīs librīs tam studiōsē legit Mārcus?" *"What, pray tell, is Marcus reading so studiously in his own books?"*

25.47 "Nescit ille profectō suam ipsīus īnsciēntiam, quī in aliēnīs tantum librīs sapientiam quaerit." *"Indeed, he who seeks wisdom only in the books of others knows not his very own ignorance."*

25.48 "At minimē omnium suā sponte ad librōs sē convertit; magister impellit." *"But least of all does he turn himself to books of his own accord; the teacher compels him."*

25.49 "Quod suī iūris est, id numquam alterī permittere dēbet philosophus." *"What is his own right, that a philosopher ought never permit to another."*

25.50 "Vīdistīne ut suōs condiscipulōs cotīdiē dēspiciat?" *"Have you seen how he daily looks down upon his own fellow students?"*

25.51 "Suae sapientiae nimis cōnfīdit, quod stultitiae certissimum signum est." *"He trusts too much in his own wisdom, which is the surest sign of foolishness."*

25.52 "Quid ergō? Nōnne suam quisque viam sequī dēbet?" *"What then? Ought not each to follow his own way?"*

25.54 "Ita, sed quī suīs tantum vēstīgiīs nītī vult, saepe labitur." *"Yes, but he who wishes to rely only on his own footsteps often slips."*

25.54 "Nēmō suā sōlius arte ad sapientiam pervenit." *"No one arrives at wisdom by his skill alone."*

25.55 "Rectē mones; suam viam cum aliīs coniungere dēbet sapiēns." *"You advise rightly; the wise man ought to join his own way with others."*

25.56 "Nōnne suam doctrinam cum amīcīs commūnicāre decet?" *"Is it not fitting to share one's own learning with friends?"*

25.57 "Profectō; nēmō sibi sōlī suās dīvitiās servāre dēbet." *"Indeed; no one ought to keep his own riches for himself alone."*

25.58 "Ergō suae doctrinae frūctūs cum aliīs partīrī oportet." *"Therefore it is proper to share the fruits of one's own learning with others."*

25.59 "Quī suam scientiam celat, is nēc sibi nēc aliīs prōdest." *"He who conceals his own knowledge benefits neither himself nor others."*

25.60 "Ita est; suō exemplō docēre optimum est." *"So it is; to teach by one's own example is best."*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

25.46 "Quid tandem in suīs librīs tam studiōsē legit Mārcus?"

25.47 "Nescit ille profectō suam ipsīus īnsciēntiam, quī in aliēnīs tantum librīs sapientiam quaerit."

25.48 "At minimē omnium suā sponte ad librōs sē convertit; magister impellit."

25.49 "Quod suī iūris est, id numquam alterī permittere dēbet philosophus."

25.50 "Vīdistīne ut suōs condiscipulōs cotīdiē dēspiciat?"

25.51 "Suae sapientiae nimis cōnfīdit, quod stultitiae certissimum signum est."

25.52 "Quid ergō? Nōnne suam quisque viam sequī dēbet?"

25.54 "Ita, sed quī suīs tantum vēstīgiīs nītī vult, saepe labitur."

25.54 "Nēmō suā sōlius arte ad sapientiam pervenit."

25.55 "Rectē mones; suam viam cum aliīs coniungere dēbet sapiēns."

25.56 "Nōnne suam doctrinam cum amīcīs commūnicāre decet?"

25.57 "Profectō; nēmō sibi sōlī suās dīvitiās servāre dēbet."

25.58 "Ergō suae doctrinae frūctūs cum aliīs partīrī oportet."

25.59 "Quī suam scientiam celat, is nēc sibi nēc aliīs prōdest."

25.60 "Ita est; suō exemplō docēre optimum est."

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

This sophisticated dialogue demonstrates several advanced features of Latin prose:

1. Complex Word Order:
    - Varied placement of "suus" for emphasis
    - Natural separation of related words
    - Sophisticated clause arrangement
2. Rhetorical Devices:
    - Chiasmus (e.g., "nēc sibi nēc aliīs")
    - Balanced phrases
    - Rhetorical questions
3. Philosophical Style:
    - Abstract nouns
    - Gnomic statements
    - Balanced antitheses
4. Notable Constructions:
    - Relative clauses with subjunctive
    - Impersonal expressions
    - Double negatives
    - Gerundive constructions
5. Advanced Features for English Speakers:
    - Shows authentic Latin word order

- Demonstrates typical philosophical discourse
- Illustrates natural conversation patterns

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 26 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 26: dō dare dedī datum (to give)

Introduction

This lesson introduces the important verb "dō dare dedī datum" meaning "to give." This is a highly frequent and irregular first conjugation verb.

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

26.1 **magister** *the teacher* **sedet** *sits* **in** *in* **hortō** *the garden* **et** *and* **dat** *gives* **librōs** *books* **discipulīs** *to the students*

26.2 **ego** *I* **saepe** *often* **dō** *give* **pecūniam** *money* **pauperibus** *to the poor*

26.3 **rēx** *the king* **vult** *wishes* **dare** *to give* **novās** *new* **lēgēs** *laws* **populō** *to the people*

26.4 **māter** *the mother* **semper** *always* **dat** *gives* **bona** *good* **cōnsilia** *advice* **līberīs** *to the children* **suīs** *her*

26.5 **nōs** *we* **demus** *should give* **grātiās** *thanks* **dīs** *to the gods* **immortālibus** *immortal*

26.6 **dux** *the general* **dedit** *gave* **magna** *great* **praemia** *rewards* **mīlitibus** *to the soldiers* **fortibus** *brave*

26.7 **tū** *you* **dabis** *will give* **haec** *these* **dōna** *gifts* **amīcō** *to the friend* **tuō** *your*

26.8 **servus** *the slave* **dat** *gives* **cibum** *food* **equō** *to the horse* **dominī** *of the master*

26.9 **agricola** *the farmer* **dedit** *gave* **frūmentum** *grain* **mercātōrī** *to the merchant*

26.10 **senātor** *the senator* **dabit** *will give* **pecūniam** *money* **templō** *to the temple*

26.11 **pater** *the father* **dat** *gives* **librum** *a book* **fīliō** *to the son* **sapiēns** *wise*

26.12 **nautae** *the sailors* **dedērunt** *gave* **sacra** *sacred offerings* **Neptūnō** *to Neptune*

26.13 **ego** *I* **tibi** *to you* **auxilium** *help* **dabō** *will give* **mox** *soon*

26.31 **poēta** *the poet* **carmina** *poems* **nova** *new* **populō** *to the people* **dat** *gives*

26.15 **virī** *the men* **dant** *give* **vōta** *vows* **deae** *to the goddess* **magnae** *great*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

26.1 Magister sedet in hortō et librōs discipulīs dat. *The teacher sits in the garden and gives books to the students.*

26.2 Ego saepe pecūniam pauperibus dō. *I often give money to the poor.*

26.3 Rēx novās lēgēs populō dare vult. *The king wishes to give new laws to the people.*

26.4 Māter semper bona cōnsilia līberīs suīs dat. *The mother always gives good advice to her children.*

26.5 Nōs grātiās dīs immortālibus demus. *We should give thanks to the immortal gods.*

26.6 Dux magna praemia mīlitibus fortibus dedit. *The general gave great rewards to the brave soldiers.*

26.7 Tū haec dōna amīcō tuō dabis. *You will give these gifts to your friend.*

26.8 Servus cibum equō dominī dat. *The slave gives food to the master's horse.*

26.9 Agricola frūmentum mercātōrī dedit. *The farmer gave grain to the merchant.*

26.10 Senātor pecūniam templō dabit. *The senator will give money to the temple.*

26.11 Pater librum fīliō sapiēns dat. *The wise father gives a book to his son.*

26.12 Nautae sacra Neptūnō dedērunt. *The sailors gave sacred offerings to Neptune.*

26.13 Ego tibi auxilium mox dabō. *I will give you help soon.*

26.31 Poēta carmina nova populō dat. *The poet gives new poems to the people.*

26.15 Virī vōta deae magnae dant. *The men give vows to the great goddess.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

26.1 Magister sedet in hortō et librōs discipulīs dat.

26.2 Ego saepe pecūniam pauperibus dō.

26.3 Rēx novās lēgēs populō dare vult.

26.4 Māter semper bona cōnsilia līberīs suīs dat.

26.5 Nōs grātiās dīs immortālibus demus.

26.6 Dux magna praemia mīlitibus fortibus dedit.

26.7 Tū haec dōna amīcō tuō dabis.

26.8 Servus cibum equō dominī dat.

26.9 Agricola frūmentum mercātōrī dedit.

26.10 Senātor pecūniam templō dabit.

26.11 Pater librum fīliō sapiēns dat.

26.12 Nautae sacra Neptūnō dedērunt.

26.13 Ego tibi auxilium mox dabō.

26.31 Poēta carmina nova populō dat.

26.15 Virī vōta deae magnae dant.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, the verb "dō" presents several important features:

1. Principal Parts:
    - First person singular present: dō (I give)
    - Present infinitive: dare
    - Perfect: dedī
    - Supine: datum
2. Special Characteristics:
    - Unlike most first conjugation verbs, "dare" has a short 'a'
    - Forms a compound with many prepositions (e.g., reddō - give back)
    - Takes double objects: direct object in accusative, recipient in dative
3. Common Forms: Present Tense:
    - dō - I give
    - dās - you give
    - dat - he/she/it gives
    - damus - we give
    - datis - you (pl.) give
    - dant - they give

    Future Tense:
    - dabō - I will give
    - dabis - you will give
    - dabit - he/she/it will give
    - dabimus - we will give
    - dabitis - you (pl.) will give
    - dabunt - they will give
4. Usage Notes for English Speakers:
    - Always uses dative for recipient (unlike English "give to")
    - Word order more flexible than English
    - Can be used metaphorically like English "give"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "dō" requires knowledge of Roman cultural practices:

1. Social Context:
    - Giving was central to Roman social relationships

    - Gifts created social obligations (dō ut dēs - I give so that you might give)
    - Different types of gifts had different social meanings
2. Religious Context:
    - Offerings to gods (dōna)
    - Votive gifts at temples
    - Sacrificial offerings
3. Political Context:
    - Public giving (bread and circuses)
    - Patronage system
    - Military rewards
4. Modern Connections:
    - Root of English "donate", "donor"
    - Similar to modern gift-giving customs
    - Different social implications

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (1.409):

dēsine *cease* **fāta** *the fates* **deum** *of the gods* **flectī** *to be changed* **sperāre** *to hope for* **precandō** *by praying*; **data** *given* **sunt** *are* **quae** *which things* **sunt** *are*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Dēsine fāta deum flectī sperāre precandō; data sunt quae sunt. *Cease hoping that the fates of the gods can be changed by praying; what is given is given.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This line uses the perfect passive participle "data" to express the unchangeable nature of fate. It demonstrates how "dō" can be used philosophically to discuss destiny and divine will.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "data sunt" - perfect passive from "dō"
- Neuter plural to express general concept
- Part of relative clause "quae sunt"
- Shows philosophical use of the verb

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Religious Offerings

Part A (Interleaved Text)

26.16 **sacerdōs** *the priest* **magna** *great* **dōna** *gifts* **Iovī** *to Jupiter* **in** *in* **templō** *the temple* **dat** *gives*

26.17 **populus** *the people* **tūra** *incense* **deīs** *to the gods* **omnibus** *all* **dant** *give*

26.18 **vestālis** *the Vestal Virgin* **flōrēs** *flowers* **sacra** *sacred* **deae** *to the goddess* **Vestae** *Vesta* **dat** *gives*

26.19 **agricolae** *the farmers* **prīmōs** *first* **frūctūs** *fruits* **Cererī** *to Ceres* **dedērunt** *gave*

26.20 **rēx** *the king* **aurea** *golden* **vāsa** *vessels* **templō** *to the temple* **Apollinis** *of Apollo* **dare** *to give* **vult** *wishes*

26.21 **nautae** *the sailors* **gratī** *grateful* **votīva** *votive* **dōna** *gifts* **Neptūnō** *to Neptune* **dabunt** *will give*

26.22 **mātrōnae** *the matrons* **gemmas** *jewels* **pretiōsās** *precious* **Iūnōnī** *to Juno* **dedērunt** *gave*

26.23 **senātōrēs** *the senators* **magna** *great* **sacrificia** *sacrifices* **dīs** *to the gods* **immortālibus** *immortal* **dant** *give*

26.24 **poēta** *the poet* **carmen** *song* **novum** *new* **Mūsīs** *to the Muses* **dat** *gives*

26.25 **mercātor** *the merchant* **partem** *part* **lucrī** *of profit* **Mercuriō** *to Mercury* **dedit** *gave*

26.26 **virgo** *the maiden* **flōrēs** *flowers* **recentēs** *fresh* **ārae** *to the altar* **Minervae** *of Minerva* **dat** *gives*

26.27 **cōnsul** *the consul* **victimās** *victims* **sacrās** *sacred* **templō** *to the temple* **dabit** *will give*

26.28 **agricolae** *the farmers* **frūmentum** *grain* **novum** *new* **Cererī** *to Ceres* **dedērunt** *gave*

26.29 **puerī** *the boys* **lībāmina** *libations* **prima** *first* **Laribus** *to the Lares* **dant** *give*

26.30 **sacerdōtēs** *the priests* **vōta** *vows* **annua** *annual* **deīs** *to the gods* **omnibus** *all* **dant** *give*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

26.16 Sacerdōs magna dōna Iovī in templō dat. *The priest gives great gifts to Jupiter in the temple.*

26.17 Populus tūra deīs omnibus dant. *The people give incense to all the gods.*

26.18 Vestālis flōrēs sacrōs deae Vestae dat. *The Vestal Virgin gives sacred flowers to the goddess Vesta.*

26.19 Agricolae prīmōs frūctūs Cererī dedērunt. *The farmers gave the first fruits to Ceres.*

26.20 Rēx aurea vāsa templō Apollinis dare vult. *The king wishes to give golden vessels to the temple of Apollo.*

26.21 Nautae gratī votīva dōna Neptūnō dabunt. *The grateful sailors will give votive gifts to Neptune.*

26.22 Mātrōnae gemmās pretiōsās Iūnōnī dedērunt. *The matrons gave precious jewels to Juno.*

26.23 Senātōrēs magna sacrificia dīs immortālibus dant. *The senators give great sacrifices to the immortal gods.*

26.24 Poēta carmen novum Mūsīs dat. *The poet gives a new song to the Muses.*

26.25 Mercātor partem lucrī Mercuriō dedit. *The merchant gave part of his profit to Mercury.*

26.26 Virgō flōrēs recentēs ārae Minervae dat. *The maiden gives fresh flowers to the altar of Minerva.*

26.27 Cōnsul victimās sacrās templō dabit. *The consul will give sacred victims to the temple.*

26.28 Agricolae frūmentum novum Cererī dedērunt. *The farmers gave new grain to Ceres.*

26.29 Puerī lībāmina prīma Laribus dant. *The boys give first libations to the Lares.*

26.30 Sacerdōtēs vōta annua deīs omnibus dant. *The priests give annual vows to all the gods.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

26.16 Sacerdōs magna dōna Iovī in templō dat.

26.17 Populus tūra deīs omnibus dant.

26.18 Vestālis flōrēs sacrōs deae Vestae dat.

26.19 Agricolae prīmōs frūctūs Cererī dedērunt.

26.20 Rēx aurea vāsa templō Apollinis dare vult.

26.21 Nautae gratī votīva dōna Neptūnō dabunt.

26.22 Mātrōnae gemmās pretiōsās Iūnōnī dedērunt.

26.23 Senātōrēs magna sacrificia dīs immortālibus dant.

26.24 Poēta carmen novum Mūsīs dat.

26.25 Mercātor partem lucrī Mercuriō dedit.

26.26 Virgō flōrēs recentēs ārae Minervae dat.

26.27 Cōnsul victimās sacrās templō dabit.

26.28 Agricolae frūmentum novum Cererī dedērunt.

26.29 Puerī lībāmina prīma Laribus dant.

26.30 Sacerdōtēs vōta annua deīs omnibus dant.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In these religious contexts, the verb "dō" demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Religious Vocabulary:
    - dōna (gifts) - specifically religious offerings
    - tūra (incense) - plural form common in ritual contexts
    - vōta (vows) - religious promises
    - lībāmina (libations) - ritual pouring of liquids
2. Case Usage:
    - Direct object in accusative (what is given)
    - Deity in dative case (to whom it is given)
    - Descriptive adjectives agree with their nouns
    - Temples often in dative or "in" + ablative
3. Time Expressions:
    - Perfect tense for completed offerings (dedērunt)
    - Present for regular/repeated offerings (dant)
    - Future for promised offerings (dabunt)
4. Word Order:
    - Deity names often placed in emphatic positions
    - Adjectives frequently precede nouns in formal religious language
    - Verb often final in solemn religious contexts
5. Special Religious Constructions:
    - Use of ritual epithets (dī immortālēs)
    - Sacred objects often modified by sacer/sacra/sacrum
    - Formal religious titles (Vestālis, sacerdōs)

This specialized vocabulary and syntax reflects the formal nature of Roman religious observance.

Genre Section: Family Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

26.31 **dat** *gives* **Cornēlia** *Cornelia* **suīs līberīs** *to her children* **poma dulcia** *sweet apples* **prīmā lūce** *at first light*

26.32 **Mārcus** *Marcus* **sorōrī parvae** *to his little sister* **quam** *whom* **amat** *he loves* **nōvam pilam** *a new ball* **laetus** *happy* **dedit** *gave*

26.33 **cum** *when* **Iūlia** *Julia* **flōrēs** *flowers* **in hortō** *in the garden* **legeret** *was gathering,* **subitō** *suddenly* **dedit** *gave* **trēs rosās** *three roses* **mātrī** *to mother*

26.34 **servī** *the slaves* **cēnam** *dinner* **iam** *now* **parant** *prepare* **et mox** *and soon* **cibōs optimōs** *the best foods* **dominis** *to the masters* **dabunt** *will give*

26.35 **Quīntus** *Quintus* **patrī** *to father* **dōnum** *a gift* **dare** *to give* **volēbat** *wanted,* **sed** *but* **nihil** *nothing* **habēbat** *had*

26.36 **plūrimās grātiās** *very many thanks* **tibi** *to you* **dō** *I give,* **inquit** *said* **pater** *father,* **cum** *when* **fīlius** *the son* **carmina** *poems* **recitāvisset** *had recited*

26.37 **māter** *mother* **festīnāns** *hurrying* **dat** *gives* **togam** *toga* **novam** *new* **Mārcō** *to Marcus* **quī** *who* **ad lūdum** *to school* **properāre** *to hurry* **dēbet** *ought*

26.38 **subitō** *suddenly* **appāruit** *appeared* **avunculus** *uncle* **quī** *who* **puerīs** *to the boys* **multōs nummōs** *many coins* **dederat** *had given*

26.39 **dabō** *I will give* **aureum anulum** *a golden ring* **meae fīliae** *to my daughter,* **dīxit** *said* **māter** *mother,* **sī** *if* **bene** *well* **laborābit** *she will work*

26.40 **Cornēlia** *Cornelia* **ancillae** *to the maidservant* **fessae** *tired* **paululum vīnī** *a little wine* **dedit** *gave* **post labōrem** *after the work*

26.41 **lūdunt** *play* **puerī** *the boys* **in ātriō** *in the atrium* **et** *and* **pilam** *ball* **sibi** *to each other* **invicem** *in turn* **dant** *give*

26.42 **tum** *then* **magister** *the teacher* **librōs** *books* **discipulīs** *to the students* **dedit** *gave* **et** *and* **legendī tempus** *reading time* **iīs** *to them* **dat** *gives*

26.43 **ōlim** *once* **avus** *grandfather* **Mārcō** *to Marcus* **gladium** *sword* **dederat** *had given* **quem** *which* **nunc** *now* **fīliō** *to his son* **dare** *to give* **vult** *wishes*

26.44 **ecce** *behold* **venit** *comes* **vicīna** *the neighbor* **quae** *who* **semper** *always* **parvīs** *to the little ones* **dulcia** *sweets* **dat** *gives*

26.45 **māne** *in the morning* **Iūlia** *Julia* **aquam** *water* **flōribus** *to the flowers* **dedit** *gave* **quōs** *which* **hesternō diē** *yesterday* **in hortō** *in the garden* **posuerat** *she had placed*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

26.31 Dat Cornēlia suīs līberīs poma dulcia prīmā lūce. Cornelia gives sweet apples to her children at first light.

26.32 Mārcus sorōrī parvae quam amat nōvam pilam laetus dedit. *Happy Marcus gave a new ball to his little sister, whom he loves.*

26.33 Cum Iūlia flōrēs in hortō legeret, subitō dedit trēs rosās mātrī. *When Julia was gathering flowers in the garden, she suddenly gave three roses to mother.*

26.34 Servī cēnam iam parant et mox cibōs optimōs dominis dabunt. *The slaves are now preparing dinner and soon will give the best foods to their masters.*

26.35 Quīntus patrī dōnum dare volēbat, sed nihil habēbat. *Quintus wanted to give a gift to father, but had nothing.*

26.36 "Plūrimās grātiās tibi dō," inquit pater, cum fīlius carmina recitāvisset. *"I give you very many thanks," said father, when his son had recited poems.*

26.37 Māter festīnāns dat togam novam Mārcō quī ad lūdum properāre dēbet. *Mother, hurrying, gives a new toga to Marcus who ought to hurry to school.*

26.38 Subitō appāruit avunculus quī puerīs multōs nummōs dederat. *Suddenly appeared uncle who had given many coins to the boys.*

26.39 "Dabō aureum anulum meae fīliae," dīxit māter, "sī bene laborābit." *"I will give a golden ring to my daughter," said mother, "if she will work well."*

26.40 Cornēlia ancillae fessae paululum vīnī dedit post labōrem. *Cornelia gave a little wine to the tired maidservant after the work.*

26.41 Lūdunt puerī in ātriō et pilam sibi invicem dant. *The boys play in the atrium and give the ball to each other in turn.*

26.42 Tum magister librōs discipulīs dedit et legendī tempus iīs dat. *Then the teacher gave books to the students and gives them reading time.*

26.43 Ōlim avus Mārcō gladium dederat quem nunc fīliō dare vult. *Once grandfather had given Marcus a sword which now he wishes to give to his son.*

26.44 Ecce venit vicīna quae semper parvīs dulcia dat. *Look, here comes the neighbor who always gives sweets to the little ones.*

26.45 Māne Iūlia aquam flōribus dedit quōs hesternō diē in hortō posuerat. *In the morning Julia gave water to the flowers which she had placed in the garden yesterday.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

26.31 Dat Cornēlia suīs līberīs poma dulcia prīmā lūce.

26.32 Mārcus sorōrī parvae quam amat nōvam pilam laetus dedit.

26.33 Cum Iūlia flōrēs in hortō legeret, subitō dedit trēs rosās mātrī.

26.34 Servī cēnam iam parant et mox cibōs optimōs dominis dabunt.

26.35 Quīntus patrī dōnum dare volēbat, sed nihil habēbat.

26.36 "Plūrimās grātiās tibi dō," inquit pater, cum fīlius carmina recitāvisset.

26.37 Māter festīnāns dat togam novam Mārcō quī ad lūdum properāre dēbet.

26.38 Subitō appāruit avunculus quī puerīs multōs nummōs dederat.

26.39 "Dabō aureum anulum meae fīliae," dīxit māter, "sī bene laborābit."

26.40 Cornēlia ancillae fessae paululum vīnī dedit post labōrem.

26.41 Lūdunt puerī in ātriō et pilam sibi invicem dant.

26.42 Tum magister librōs discipulīs dedit et legendī tempus iīs dat.

26.43 Ōlim avus Mārcō gladium dederat quem nunc fīliō dare vult.

26.44 Ecce venit vicīna quae semper parvīs dulcia dat.

26.45 Māne Iūlia aquam flōribus dedit quōs hesternō diē in hortō posuerat.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

This narrative demonstrates several key features of how "dō" functions in everyday Latin:

1. Varied Word Order:
    - Initial verb for emphasis: "Dat Cornēlia..." (26.31)
    - Medial placement: "Mārcus sorōrī parvae... pilam dedit" (26.32)
    - Final position in subordinate clauses: "...quī puerīs multōs nummōs dederat" (26.38)
2. Tense Usage:
    - Present: for ongoing or habitual giving
    - Perfect: for completed acts of giving
    - Pluperfect: for giving that happened before other past events
    - Future: for promises or intentions
3. Complex Constructions:
    - Temporal cum clauses: "cum Iūlia flōrēs... legeret" (26.33)
    - Relative clauses: "quae semper parvīs dulcia dat" (26.44)
    - Conditional statements: "sī bene laborābit" (26.39)
4. Typical Contexts:
    - Family gifts
    - Daily routines
    - Promises and rewards
    - Household management
    - Social interactions

This narrative shows how "dō" naturally appears in family life, with more authentic word order and varied usage than simple subject-object-verb patterns.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 27 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Quam (how?; than)

Introduction

Today we will study the word "quam", which has two main uses in Latin:

1. As an interrogative adverb meaning "how?"
2. After comparatives meaning "than"

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

27.1 **Quam** *how* **pulchra** *beautiful* **es** *you are* **hodiē** *today*

27.2 **Quam** *how* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnant** *they fight* **mīlitēs** *the soldiers*

27.3 **Magis** *more* **sapiens** *wise* **quam** *than* **frāter** *brother* **est** *is*

27.4 **Quam** *how* **laetī** *happy* **sunt** *are* **puerī** *the boys*

27.5 **Altior** *taller* **quam** *than* **pater** *father* **est** *is* **fīlius** *the son*

27.6 **Quam** *how* **celeriter** *quickly* **tempus** *time* **fugit** *flies*

27.7 **Melior** *better* **quam** *than* **vīta** *life* **est** *is* **mors** *death*

27.8 **Quam** *how* **multī** *many* **hominēs** *people* **in** *in* **forō** *the forum* **sunt** *are*

27.9 **Fēlīcior** *happier* **quam** *than* **rēgīna** *the queen* **sum** *I am*

27.10 **Quam** *how* **bene** *well* **cantat** *sings* **poēta** *the poet*

27.11 **Dulcior** *sweeter* **quam** *than* **mel** *honey* **est** *is* **amor** *love*

27.12 **Quam** *how* **graviter** *seriously* **vulnerātus** *wounded* **est** *is* **mīles** *the soldier*

27.13 **Facilius** *easier* **quam** *than* **bellum** *war* **est** *is* **pāx** *peace*

27.31 **Quam** *how* **sapienter** *wisely* **cōnsul** *the consul* **loquitur** *speaks*

27.15 **Clārior** *brighter* **quam** *than* **lūna** *the moon* **est** *is* **sōl** *the sun*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

27.1 Quam pulchra es hodiē! *How beautiful you are today!*

27.2 Quam fortiter pugnant mīlitēs! *How bravely the soldiers fight!*

27.3 Magis sapiens quam frāter est. *He is more wise than his brother.*

27.4 Quam laetī sunt puerī! *How happy the boys are!*

27.5 Altior quam pater est fīlius. *The son is taller than the father.*

27.6 Quam celeriter tempus fugit! *How quickly time flies!*

27.7 Melior quam vīta est mors. *Death is better than life.*

27.8 Quam multī hominēs in forō sunt! *How many people are in the forum!*

27.9 Fēlīcior quam rēgīna sum. *I am happier than the queen.*

27.10 Quam bene cantat poēta! *How well the poet sings!*

27.11 Dulcior quam mel est amor. *Love is sweeter than honey.*

27.12 Quam graviter vulnerātus est mīles! *How seriously the soldier is wounded!*

27.13 Facilius quam bellum est pāx. *Peace is easier than war.*

27.31 Quam sapienter cōnsul loquitur! *How wisely the consul speaks!*

27.15 Clārior quam lūna est sōl. *The sun is brighter than the moon.*

Part C (Latin Only)

27.1 Quam pulchra es hodiē!

27.2 Quam fortiter pugnant mīlitēs!

27.3 Magis sapiens quam frāter est.

27.4 Quam laetī sunt puerī!

27.5 Altior quam pater est fīlius.

27.6 Quam celeriter tempus fugit!

27.7 Melior quam vīta est mors.

27.8 Quam multī hominēs in forō sunt!

27.9 Fēlīcior quam rēgīna sum.

27.10 Quam bene cantat poēta!

27.11 Dulcior quam mel est amor.

27.12 Quam graviter vulnerātus est mīles!

27.13 Facilius quam bellum est pāx.

27.31 Quam sapienter cōnsul loquitur!

27.15 Clārior quam lūna est sōl.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, "quam" can be challenging because it serves two distinct functions:

1. As an Exclamatory Adverb ("how"):

- Used at the beginning of exclamatory sentences
- Often followed by an adjective or adverb
- Creates emphasis similar to English exclamations with "how"
- Example: "Quam pulchra!" = "How beautiful!"

2. In Comparisons ("than"):

- Used after comparative adjectives
- Links the two things being compared
- Functions similarly to English "than"
- Example: "Altior quam pater" = "Taller than father"

Key Grammar Points:

- Word order is flexible in both uses
- No case change required for nouns after "quam"
- Can be used with any comparative adjective or adverb
- Often appears in exclamatory sentences with indicative verbs

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "quam" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Emphasis:

- Romans used exclamations frequently in both speech and writing
- Emotional expression was important in Roman rhetoric
- Public speaking often employed exclamatory phrases

2. Roman Comparisons:

- Comparison was fundamental to Roman thought
- Used in philosophy, literature, and daily life
- Important in political and moral discussions

3. Modern Relevance:

- Similar to English "how" exclamations
- Comparison structure parallels English "than"
- Important in reading Latin literature

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Catullus 5: **Quam** *how* **longē** *long* **amor** *love* **durat** *lasts*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Quam longē amor durat! *How long love lasts!*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Catullus uses "quam" to emphasize the duration of love, creating emotional intensity typical of his poetry.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Quam" introduces exclamation
- "longē" is adverb modified by "quam"
- Present tense "durat" shows ongoing action

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Love Poetry

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

27.16 **Quam** *how* **formōsa** *beautiful* **mea** *my* **puella** *girl* **est** *is*

27.17 **Dulcior** *sweeter* **quam** *than* **nēctar** *nectar* **sunt** *are* **ōscula** *kisses* **tua** *your*

27.18 **Quam** *how* **suāviter** *sweetly* **rīdet** *smiles* **mea** *my* **Lesbia** *Lesbia*

27.19 **Clārior** *brighter* **quam** *than* **stēllae** *stars* **sunt** *are* **oculī** *eyes* **tuī** *your*

27.20 **Quam** *how* **vehementer** *passionately* **cor** *heart* **meum** *my* **palpitat** *beats*

27.21 **Carior** *dearer* **quam** *than* **vīta** *life* **mihi** *to me* **es** *you are*

27.22 **Quam** *how* **trīstis** *sad* **sine** *without* **tē** *you* **sum** *I am*

27.23 **Pulchrior** *more beautiful* **quam** *than* **Venus** *Venus* **ipsa** *herself* **vidēris** *you seem*

27.24 **Quam** *how* **dūrus** *hard* **est** *is* **amor** *love*

27.25 **Levior** *lighter* **quam** *than* **plūma** *a feather* **est** *is* **tuus** *your* **amor** *love*

27.26 **Quam** *how* **misere** *wretchedly* **sine** *without* **tē** *you* **vīvō** *I live*

27.27 **Candidor** *whiter* **quam** *than* **nix** *snow* **est** *is* **tua** *your* **cervix** *neck*

27.28 **Quam** *how* **longē** *long* **sine** *without* **tē** *you* **nox** *night* **vidētur** *seems*

27.29 **Mollior** *softer* **quam** *than* **rosae** *roses* **sunt** *are* **tuae** *your* **genae** *cheeks*

27.30 **Quam** *how* **violenter** *violently* **pectus** *chest* **ardet** *burns* **amōre** *with love*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

27.16 Quam formōsa mea puella est! *How beautiful my girl is!*

27.17 Dulcior quam nēctar sunt ōscula tua. *Your kisses are sweeter than nectar.*

27.18 Quam suāviter rīdet mea Lesbia! *How sweetly my Lesbia smiles!*

27.19 Clārior quam stēllae sunt oculī tuī. *Your eyes are brighter than stars.*

27.20 Quam vehementer cor meum palpitat! *How passionately my heart beats!*

27.21 Carior quam vīta mihi es. *You are dearer to me than life.*

27.22 Quam trīstis sine tē sum! *How sad I am without you!*

27.23 Pulchrior quam Venus ipsa vidēris. *You seem more beautiful than Venus herself.*

27.24 Quam dūrus est amor! *How harsh love is!*

27.25 Levior quam plūma est tuus amor. *Your love is lighter than a feather.*

27.26 Quam misere sine tē vīvō! *How wretchedly I live without you!*

27.27 Candidor quam nix est tua cervix. *Your neck is whiter than snow.*

27.28 Quam longē sine tē nox vidētur! *How long the night seems without you!*

27.29 Mollior quam rosae sunt tuae genae. *Your cheeks are softer than roses.*

27.30 Quam violenter pectus ardet amōre! *How violently my chest burns with love!*

Part C (Latin Only)

27.16 Quam formōsa mea puella est!

27.17 Dulcior quam nēctar sunt ōscula tua.

27.18 Quam suāviter rīdet mea Lesbia!

27.19 Clārior quam stēllae sunt oculī tuī.

27.20 Quam vehementer cor meum palpitat!

27.21 Carior quam vīta mihi es.

27.22 Quam trīstis sine tē sum!

27.23 Pulchrior quam Venus ipsa vidēris.

27.24 Quam dūrus est amor!

27.25 Levior quam plūma est tuus amor.

27.26 Quam misere sine tē vīvō!

27.27 Candidor quam nix est tua cervix.

27.28 Quam longē sine tē nox vidētur!

27.29 Mollior quam rosae sunt tuae genae.

27.30 Quam violenter pectus ardet amōre!

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

This genre section demonstrates:

1. Poetic Comparisons:

- Use of "quam" with comparative adjectives
- Traditional love poetry metaphors
- Natural comparisons (snow, roses, stars)

2. Exclamatory Expressions:

- Emotional intensity through "quam"
- Various types of exclamations
- Rhetorical devices common in love poetry

3. Grammatical Features:

- Personal pronouns and possessives (tū, ego, meus, tuus)
- Ablative of separation (sine tē)

- Ablative of means (amōre)
- Present tense verbs for immediate emotion (ardet, palpitat)
- Predicate adjectives (trīstis sum)
- Dative of reference (mihi)

4. Poetic Word Order:

- Emphasis through placement (often beginning with quam)
- Separation of adjectives from nouns for emphasis
- Variable verb position for poetic effect

5. Vocabulary Patterns:

- Body parts (cor, cervix, genae, pectus)
- Natural elements (nix, rosae, stēllae)
- Abstract concepts (amor, vīta)
- Emotional terms (trīstis, dūrus, suāviter)

This genre section shows how Latin love poetry uses "quam" both for direct comparisons and emotional exclamations, creating a rich tapestry of romantic expression through careful grammatical and stylistic choices.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 28 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Per (through, +acc.)

Introduction

This lesson introduces the preposition "per" meaning "through", which takes the accusative case. We'll explore its literal and metaphorical uses in Latin.

Part A (Interleaved Text)

28.1 **nūntius** *messenger* **per** *through* **urbem** *city* **currit** *runs*

28.2 **exercitus** *army* **per** *through* **silvam** *forest* **iter** *journey* **facit** *makes*

28.3 **aqua** *water* **per** *through* **agrōs** *fields* **fluit** *flows*

28.4 **servī** *slaves* **per** *through* **forum** *forum* **ambulant** *walk*

28.5 **ventus** *wind* **per** *through* **arbōrēs** *trees* **flat** *blows*

28.6 **per** *through* **hortum** *garden* **ambulat** *walks*

28.7 **lūx** *light* **per** *through* **fenestrās** *windows* **lūcet** *shines*

28.8 **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **per** *through* **portam** *gate* **gradiuntur** *march*

28.9 **avēs** *birds* **per** *through* **caelum** *sky* **volant** *fly*

28.10 **ignis** *fire* **per** *through* **aedificium** *building* **serpit** *spreads*

28.11 **vōx** *voice* **per** *through* **templum** *temple* **resonat** *echoes*

28.12 **fūmus** *smoke* **per** *through* **tēctum** *roof* **surgit** *rises*

28.13 **flūmen** *river* **per** *through* **vallem** *valley* **fluit** *flows*

28.31 **rēgīna** *queen* **per** *through* **rēgiam** *palace* **ambulat** *walks*

28.15 **vir** *man* **per** *through* **montēs** *mountains* **iter** *journey* **facit** *makes*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

28.1 Nūntius per urbem currit. *The messenger runs through the city.*

28.2 Exercitus per silvam iter facit. *The army marches through the forest.*

28.3 Aqua per agrōs fluit. *The water flows through the fields.*

28.4 Servī per forum ambulant. *The slaves walk through the forum.*

28.5 Ventus per arbōrēs flat. *The wind blows through the trees.*

28.6 Per hortum ambulat. *She walks through the garden.*

28.7 Lūx per fenestrās lūcet. *The light shines through the windows.*

28.8 Mīlitēs per portam gradiuntur. *The soldiers march through the gate.*

28.9 Avēs per caelum volant. *The birds fly through the sky.*

28.10 Ignis per aedificium serpit. *The fire spreads through the building.*

28.11 Vōx per templum resonat. *The voice echoes through the temple.*

28.12 Fūmus per tēctum surgit. *The smoke rises through the roof.*

28.13 Flūmen per vallem fluit. *The river flows through the valley.*

28.31 Rēgīna per rēgiam ambulat. *The queen walks through the palace.*

28.15 Vir per montēs iter facit. *The man travels through the mountains.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

28.1 Nūntius per urbem currit.

28.2 Exercitus per silvam iter facit.

28.3 Aqua per agrōs fluit.

28.4 Servī per forum ambulant.

28.5 Ventus per arbōrēs flat.

28.6 Per hortum ambulat.

28.7 Lūx per fenestrās lūcet.

28.8 Mīlitēs per portam gradiuntur.

28.9 Avēs per caelum volant.

28.10 Ignis per aedificium serpit.

28.11 Vōx per templum resonat.

28.12 Fūmus per tēctum surgit.

28.13 Flūmen per vallem fluit.

28.31 Rēgīna per rēgiam ambulat.

28.15 Vir per montēs iter facit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, the preposition "per" requires understanding several key points:

1. Basic Usage:
    - Always takes the accusative case
    - Indicates movement through space or time
    - The noun following "per" must be in accusative case
2. Case Requirements: Examples of accusative forms:
    - First declension: silva → per silvam
    - Second declension: hortus → per hortum
    - Third declension: urbs → per urbem
3. Word Order:
    - "Per" typically comes directly before its object
    - Can be separated for emphasis
    - More flexible than English "through"
4. Common Combinations:
    - With verbs of motion (ambulāre, currere)
    - With nouns indicating spaces or openings
    - With abstract concepts when used metaphorically
5. Key Differences from English:
    - Cannot be used as an adverb like English "through"
    - Always requires an object
    - More limited in metaphorical uses

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "per" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Architecture:
    - Cities had defined pathways
    - Buildings had specific entrance and exit points
    - Public spaces were carefully planned
2. Roman Movement:
    - Travel through territories was important
    - Military movements were precisely described
    - Urban navigation was highly structured
3. Historical Perspective:
    - Romans were master road builders
    - Path and direction were crucial in Roman life
    - Movement through space was carefully recorded
4. Modern Parallels:
    - Similar to English "through" in physical movement
    - Different in abstract uses
    - Important in understanding Roman spatial concepts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (Book 2, line 360):

Ibimus *we shall go* **per** *through* **mediam** *middle* **urbem** *city*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Ibimus per mediam urbem. *We shall go through the middle of the city.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This line comes at a dramatic moment when Aeneas and his companions are preparing to move through Troy as it falls. The phrase uses "per" to emphasize their physical movement through the dangerous city streets.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "per" takes accusative "urbem"
- "mediam" is accusative feminine singular agreeing with "urbem"
- "ibimus" is future tense of "eo" (to go)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Travel Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

28.16 **viātor** *traveler* **per** *through* **Italiam** *Italy* **iter** *journey* **facit** *makes*

28.17 **per** *through* **multās** *many* **terrās** *lands* **ambulāvimus** *we walked*

28.18 **mercātor** *merchant* **per** *through* **Āsiam** *Asia* **nāvigat** *sails*

28.19 **legiōnēs** *legions* **per** *through* **Galliam** *Gaul* **iter** *journey* **faciunt** *make*

28.20 **nāvis** *ship* **per** *through* **mare** *sea* **nōstrum** *our* **nāvigat** *sails*

28.21 **per** *through* **altās** *high* **Alpēs** *Alps* **difficulter** *with difficulty* **iter** *journey* **faciunt** *they make*

28.22 **equitēs** *horsemen* **per** *through* **campōs** *plains* **lātōs** *wide* **equitant** *ride*

28.23 **peregrīnus** *foreigner* **per** *through* **urbēs** *cities* **Graecās** *Greek* **ambulat** *walks*

28.24 **per** *through* **dēserta** *deserts* **Āfricae** *of Africa* **camēlī** *camels* **ambulant** *walk*

28.25 **nautae** *sailors* **per** *through* **fretum** *strait* **angustum** *narrow* **nāvigant** *sail*

28.26 **explōrātōrēs** *explorers* **per** *through* **silvās** *forests* **densās** *thick* **iter** *journey* **faciunt** *make*

28.27 **elephantī** *elephants* **per** *through* **flūmina** *rivers* **magna** *great* **nātant** *swim*

28.28 **per** *through* **vallēs** *valleys* **profundās** *deep* **fluit** *flows* **flūmen** *river*

28.29 **mercātōrēs** *merchants* **per** *through* **viam** *road* **sericam** *silk* **iter** *journey* **faciunt** *make*

28.30 **nūntius** *messenger* **per** *through* **provinciās** *provinces* **properē** *quickly* **currit** *runs*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

28.16 Viātor per Italiam iter facit. *The traveler journeys through Italy.*

28.17 Per multās terrās ambulāvimus. *We walked through many lands.*

28.18 Mercātor per Āsiam nāvigat. *The merchant sails through Asia.*

28.19 Legiōnēs per Galliam iter faciunt. *The legions march through Gaul.*

28.20 Nāvis per mare nōstrum nāvigat. *The ship sails through our sea.*

28.21 Per altās Alpēs difficulter iter faciunt. *They journey with difficulty through the high Alps.*

28.22 Equitēs per campōs lātōs equitant. *The horsemen ride through the wide plains.*

28.23 Peregrīnus per urbēs Graecās ambulat. *The foreigner walks through Greek cities.*

28.24 Per dēserta Āfricae camēlī ambulant. *Camels walk through the deserts of Africa.*

28.25 Nautae per fretum angustum nāvigant. *The sailors sail through the narrow strait.*

28.26 Explōrātōrēs per silvās densās iter faciunt. *The explorers journey through thick forests.*

28.27 Elephantī per flūmina magna nātant. *Elephants swim through great rivers.*

28.28 Per vallēs profundās fluit flūmen. *The river flows through deep valleys.*

28.29 Mercātōrēs per viam sericam iter faciunt. *The merchants journey through the silk road.*

28.30 Nūntius per provinciās properē currit. *The messenger runs quickly through the provinces.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

28.16 Viātor per Italiam iter facit.

28.17 Per multās terrās ambulāvimus.

28.18 Mercātor per Āsiam nāvigat.

28.19 Legiōnēs per Galliam iter faciunt.

28.20 Nāvis per mare nōstrum nāvigat.

28.21 Per altās Alpēs difficulter iter faciunt.

28.22 Equitēs per campōs lātōs equitant.

28.23 Peregrīnus per urbēs Graecās ambulat.

28.24 Per dēserta Āfricae camēlī ambulant.

28.25 Nautae per fretum angustum nāvigant.

28.26 Explōrātōrēs per silvās densās iter faciunt.

28.27 Elephantī per flūmina magna nātant.

28.28 Per vallēs profundās fluit flūmen.

28.29 Mercātōrēs per viam sericam iter faciunt.

28.30 Nūntius per provinciās properē currit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Travel Writing)

The travel writing genre demonstrates special uses of "per" that English speakers should note:

1. Geographic Terms with Per:
    - Place names follow "per" in accusative case:
        - per Italiam (through Italy)
        - per Āsiam (through Asia)
        - per Galliam (through Gaul)
    - Geographic features also take accusative:
        - per Alpēs (through the Alps)
        - per dēserta (through deserts)
        - per mare (through the sea)

2. Common Travel Verbs Used with Per:
    - iter facere (to make a journey)
    - ambulāre (to walk)
    - nāvigāre (to sail)
    - equitāre (to ride)
    - currere (to run)
    - nātāre (to swim)
3. Adjective Placement:
    - Adjectives can come before or after the noun they modify:
        - per altās Alpēs (through the high Alps)
        - per vallēs profundās (through deep valleys)
    - Size and quality adjectives are common in travel descriptions:
        - lātus (wide)
        - magnus (great)
        - angustus (narrow)
        - densus (thick)
4. Special Travel Vocabulary:
    - viātor (traveler)
    - mercātor (merchant)
    - peregrīnus (foreigner)
    - explōrātor (explorer)
    - via serica (silk road)
5. Time and Manner:
    - Adverbs can modify the journey:
        - difficulter (with difficulty)
        - properē (quickly)
    - Perfect tense for completed journeys:
        - ambulāvimus (we walked)
    - Present tense for ongoing travel:
        - nāvigant (they sail)
6. Cultural Notes for English Speakers:
    - Roman geographic terms often differ from modern ones
    - Mare nostrum ("our sea") = Mediterranean
    - Ancient travel routes often followed different paths than modern ones
    - Roman provinces had specific boundaries different from modern countries

Lesson 29 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: videō (to see)

Introduction

Today we'll study the verb "videō" (to see), one of the most common verbs in Latin. This second conjugation verb appears frequently in all periods of Latin literature.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

29.1 **Puer** *the boy* **videt** *sees* **templum** *the temple* **magnum** *large*

29.2 **Videō** *I see* **nāvem** *ship* **in** *in* **portū** *the harbor*

29.3 **Mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **vident** *see* **hostēs** *enemies* **appropinquantēs** *approaching*

29.4 **Agricola** *the farmer* **videt** *sees* **equōs** *horses* **in** *in* **agrō** *the field*

29.5 **Tē** *you* **nunc** *now* **videō** *I see* **in** *in* **forō** *the forum*

29.6 **Puella** *the girl* **videt** *sees* **rosam** *rose* **pulchram** *beautiful*

29.7 **Senātor** *the senator* **videt** *sees* **cōnsulem** *the consul* **venientem** *coming*

29.8 **Vidēmus** *we see* **lūnam** *the moon* **et** *and* **stellās** *stars*

29.9 **Mercātor** *the merchant* **videt** *sees* **multōs** *many* **hominēs** *people* **in** *in* **viā** *the street*

29.10 **Poētae** *the poets* **vident** *see* **pulchritūdinem** *beauty* **mundī** *of the world*

29.11 **Vidētis** *you (pl.) see* **urbem** *city* **antīquam** *ancient*

29.12 **Parvus** *small* **puer** *boy* **videt** *sees* **avēs** *birds* **volantēs** *flying*

29.13 **Vident** *they see* **solem** *sun* **orientem** *rising*

29.31 **Magistra** *the teacher* **videt** *sees* **discipulōs** *students* **studentēs** *studying*

29.15 **Nōs** *we* **videō** *see* **templum** *temple* **deōrum** *of the gods*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

29.1 Puer templum magnum videt. *The boy sees the large temple.*

29.2 Nāvem in portū videō. *I see a ship in the harbor.*

29.3 Mīlitēs hostēs appropinquantēs vident. *The soldiers see the enemies approaching.*

29.4 In agrō equōs videt agricola. *The farmer sees horses in the field.*

29.5 Nunc tē in forō videō. *Now I see you in the forum.*

29.6 Rosam pulchram puella videt. *The girl sees a beautiful rose.*

29.7 Senātor cōnsulem venientem videt. *The senator sees the consul coming.*

29.8 Lūnam et stellās vidēmus. *We see the moon and stars.*

29.9 Multōs hominēs in viā mercātor videt. *The merchant sees many people in the street.*

29.10 Pulchritūdinem mundī poētae vident. *The poets see the beauty of the world.*

29.11 Urbem antīquam vidētis. *You see the ancient city.*

29.12 Avēs volantēs parvus puer videt. *The small boy sees the birds flying.*

29.13 Solem orientem vident. *They see the rising sun.*

29.31 Discipulōs studentēs magistra videt. *The teacher sees the students studying.*

29.15 Templum deōrum nōs vidēmus. *We see the temple of the gods.*

Part C (Latin Only)

29.1 Puer templum magnum videt.

29.2 Nāvem in portū videō.

29.3 Mīlitēs hostēs appropinquantēs vident.

29.4 In agrō equōs videt agricola.

29.5 Nunc tē in forō videō.

29.6 Rosam pulchram puella videt.

29.7 Senātor cōnsulem venientem videt.

29.8 Lūnam et stellās vidēmus.

29.9 Multōs hominēs in viā mercātor videt.

29.10 Pulchritūdinem mundī poētae vident.

29.11 Urbem antīquam vidētis.

29.12 Avēs volantēs parvus puer videt.

29.13 Solem orientem vident.

29.31 Discipulōs studentēs magistra videt.

29.15 Templum deōrum nōs vidēmus.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "videō" is a regular second conjugation verb. Here are its principal parts:

- videō (I see)
- vidēre (to see)
- vīdī (I saw)
- vīsum (seen)

Present Tense Forms:

- videō (I see)
- vidēs (you see)
- videt (he/she/it sees)
- vidēmus (we see)
- vidētis (you all see)
- vident (they see)

Key grammatical points from our examples:

1. Direct objects are in the accusative case (templum, nāvem, hostēs)
2. Present participles (appropinquantēs, venientem, volantēs) agree with their nouns
3. Prepositional phrases (in portū, in forō) use appropriate cases
4. Word order is flexible for emphasis

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "videō" requires cultural context:

1. Visual Culture in Rome:
    - Romans valued public displays and spectacles
    - Architecture designed to be seen and impress
    - Visual signs of status and rank were important
2. Religious Context:
    - "Seeing" the gods in temples and statues
    - Importance of observing omens and signs
    - Role of witnesses in religious ceremonies
3. Legal Context:
    - Eyewitness testimony was crucial
    - "Vidēre" in legal documents
    - Public nature of Roman legal proceedings
4. Literary Usage:
    - Metaphorical seeing in poetry
    - "Seeing" as understanding
    - Visual descriptions in historical works

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (1.118):

Apparent *appear* **rārī** *scattered* **nantēs** *swimming* **in** *in* **gurgite** *the whirlpool* **vastō** *vast*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Apparent rārī nantēs in gurgite vastō. *Scattered swimmers appear in the vast whirlpool.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous line describes shipwrecked Trojans, using visual imagery to create pathos. The verb "apparent" (they appear) is related to "videō" and emphasizes the visual impact of the scene.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Apparent" is from "appāreō," a compound of "ad" + "pāreō"
- Present participle "nantēs" agrees with understood subject
- Ablative of place "gurgite vastō"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

29.16 **Imperātor** *the emperor* **videt** *sees* **hostium** *of the enemies* **castra** *camp* **procul** *far away*

29.17 **Mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **vident** *see* **urbem** *city* **captam** *captured* **flammīs** *by flames* **ardēre** *burning*

29.18 **Dux** *the leader* **videt** *sees* **suōs** *his men* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnantēs** *fighting*

29.19 **Ex** *from* **altō** *high* **mūrō** *wall* **cīvēs** *citizens* **vident** *see* **legiōnēs** *legions* **appropinquantēs** *approaching*

29.20 **Vidēmus** *we see* **hostēs** *enemies* **fugientēs** *fleeing* **post** *after* **proelium** *battle* **magnum** *great*

29.21 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **vident** *see* **equitēs** *cavalry* **per** *through* **campum** *field* **currentēs** *running*

29.22 **Caesar** *Caesar* **videt** *sees* **Gallōs** *Gauls* **arma** *weapons* **dēponentēs** *laying down*

29.23 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **vidērunt** *saw* **signa** *signs* **victōriae** *of victory* **in** *in* **caelō** *sky*

29.24 **Rēx** *king* **videt** *sees* **urbem** *city* **suam** *his* **dēlētam** *destroyed*

29.25 **Centuriō** *centurion* **videt** *sees* **aquilam** *eagle* **legiōnis** *of the legion* **in** *in* **perīculō** *danger*

29.26 **Vidēbant** *they were seeing* **nāvēs** *ships* **hostium** *of enemies* **ad** *towards* **lītus** *shore* **nāvigantēs** *sailing*

29.27 **Imperātor** *commander* **videt** *sees* **victōriam** *victory* **certam** *certain* **ante** *before* **oculōs** *eyes*

29.28 **Cōnsul** *consul* **videt** *sees* **templum** *temple* **Iovis** *of Jupiter* **fulgure** *by lightning* **tactum** *struck*

29.29 **Omnēs** *all* **vident** *see* **urbem** *city* **aeternam** *eternal* **flammīs** *by flames* **dēlērī** *being destroyed*

29.30 **Vidērunt** *they saw* **barbarōs** *barbarians* **portās** *gates* **urbis** *of the city* **frangentēs** *breaking*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

29.16 Procul hostium castra videt imperātor. *The emperor sees the enemy camp far away.*

29.17 Mīlitēs urbem captam flammīs ardēre vident. *The soldiers see the captured city burning in flames.*

29.18 Fortiter pugnantēs suōs dux videt. *The leader sees his men fighting bravely.*

29.19 Ex altō mūrō legiōnēs appropinquantēs cīvēs vident. *From the high wall, the citizens see the legions approaching.*

29.20 Post proelium magnum hostēs fugientēs vidēmus. *After the great battle, we see the enemies fleeing.*

29.21 Per campum currentēs equitēs explōrātōrēs vident. *The scouts see the cavalry running through the field.*

29.22 Gallōs arma dēponentēs Caesar videt. *Caesar sees the Gauls laying down their weapons.*

29.23 Signa victōriae in caelō senātōrēs vidērunt. *The senators saw signs of victory in the sky.*

29.24 Urbem suam dēlētam rēx videt. *The king sees his city destroyed.*

29.25 Aquilam legiōnis in perīculō centuriō videt. *The centurion sees the legion's eagle in danger.*

29.26 Vidēbant nāvēs hostium ad lītus nāvigantēs. *They were seeing the enemy ships sailing toward the shore.*

29.27 Ante oculōs imperātor certam victōriam videt. *The commander sees certain victory before his eyes.*

29.28 Cōnsul templum Iovis fulgure tactum videt. *The consul sees Jupiter's temple struck by lightning.*

29.29 Urbem aeternam flammīs dēlērī omnēs vident. *All see the eternal city being destroyed by flames.*

29.30 Barbarōs portās urbis frangentēs vidērunt. *They saw the barbarians breaking the city gates.*

Part C (Latin Only)

29.16 Procul hostium castra videt imperātor.

29.17 Mīlitēs urbem captam flammīs ardēre vident.

29.18 Fortiter pugnantēs suōs dux videt.

29.19 Ex altō mūrō legiōnēs appropinquantēs cīvēs vident.

29.20 Post proelium magnum hostēs fugientēs vidēmus.

29.21 Per campum currentēs equitēs explōrātōrēs vident.

29.22 Gallōs arma dēponentēs Caesar videt.

29.23 Signa victōriae in caelō senātōrēs vidērunt.

29.24 Urbem suam dēlētam rēx videt.

29.25 Aquilam legiōnis in perīculō centuriō videt.

29.26 Vidēbant nāvēs hostium ad lītus nāvigantēs.

29.27 Ante oculōs imperātor certam victōriam videt.

29.28 Cōnsul templum Iovis fulgure tactum videt.

29.29 Urbem aeternam flammīs dēlērī omnēs vident.

29.30 Barbarōs portās urbis frangentēs vidērunt.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

The historical narrative section demonstrates sophisticated uses of "videō" in military and political contexts:

1. Complex Sentence Structures
    - Use of participial phrases (nāvigantēs, frangentēs)
    - Ablative absolute constructions (fulgure tactum)
    - Passive infinitive constructions (dēlērī)
2. Military and Political Context
    - Technical vocabulary: legiōnēs, imperātor, barbarī
    - Battle descriptions: proelium, castra
    - Political terms: cōnsul, cīvēs
3. Varied Verb Forms
    - Present tense for vivid narration (videt)
    - Imperfect for ongoing past action (vidēbant)
    - Perfect for completed actions (vidērunt)
4. Case Usage with "videō"
    - Direct objects in accusative
    - Prepositional phrases (ad lītus, ante oculōs)
    - Descriptive genitives (urbis, Iovis)
    - Ablative of means (flammīs, fulgure)
5. Word Order Patterns
    - Emphasis through placement
    - Natural Latin ordering
    - Variation for dramatic effect

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 30 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: faciō facere fēcī factum (to do, make)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

30.1 **Magister** *the teacher* **librum** *book* **facit** *makes* **cum** *with* **discipulīs** *students*

30.2 **Puer** *the boy* **pulchrum** *beautiful* **hortum** *garden* **facit** *makes* **prō** *for* **mātre** *mother*

30.3 **Mīles** *the soldier* **iter** *journey* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **facit** *makes*

30.4 **Rēx** *the king* **pācem** *peace* **cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **facit** *makes*

30.5 **Agricola** *the farmer* **multum** *much* **labōrem** *work* **facit** *does* **in** *in* **agrō** *field*

30.6 **Pater** *father* **mihi** *for me* **dōnum** *gift* **facit** *makes*

30.7 **Fēmina** *the woman* **cēnam** *dinner* **magnam** *large* **facit** *makes* **familiā** *family* **suā** *her*

30.8 **Senātor** *the senator* **ōrātiōnem** *speech* **longam** *long* **facit** *makes* **in** *in* **forō** *forum*

30.9 **Mercātor** *the merchant* **pecūniam** *money* **multam** *much* **facit** *makes* **in** *in* **urbe** *city*

30.10 **Nāutae** *the sailors* **sacra** *sacred rites* **ad** *to* **mare** *sea* **faciunt** *make*

30.11 **Amīcus** *friend* **meus** *my* **magnum** *great* **iter** *journey* **facit** *makes* **per** *through* **Italiam** *Italy*

30.12 **Puerī** *the boys* **lūdum** *game* **novum** *new* **faciunt** *make* **in** *in* **viā** *street*

30.13 **Poēta** *the poet* **carmina** *poems* **pulchra** *beautiful* **facit** *makes* **dē** *about* **amōre** *love*

30.31 **Coquus** *the cook* **cibum** *food* **bonum** *good* **facit** *makes* **in** *in* **culīnā** *kitchen*

30.15 **Nōs** *we* **opus** *work* **magnum** *great* **facimus** *make* **prō** *for* **patriā** *country*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

30.1 Magister cum discipulīs librum facit. *The teacher makes a book with the students.*

30.2 Pulchrum hortum puer prō mātre facit. *The boy makes a beautiful garden for his mother.*

30.3 Ad castra mīles iter facit. *The soldier makes a journey to the camp.*

30.4 Cum hostibus rēx pācem facit. *The king makes peace with the enemies.*

30.5 Agricola in agrō multum labōrem facit. *The farmer does much work in the field.*

30.6 Pater mihi dōnum facit. *Father makes a gift for me.*

30.7 Fēmina cēnam magnam familiā suā facit. *The woman makes a large dinner for her family.*

30.8 Ōrātiōnem longam senātor in forō facit. *The senator makes a long speech in the forum.*

30.9 Mercātor in urbe pecūniam multam facit. *The merchant makes much money in the city.*

30.10 Sacra ad mare nāutae faciunt. *The sailors make sacred rites at the sea.*

30.11 Magnum iter per Italiam amīcus meus facit. *My friend makes a great journey through Italy.*

30.12 Lūdum novum in viā puerī faciunt. *The boys make a new game in the street.*

30.13 Carmina pulchra dē amōre poēta facit. *The poet makes beautiful poems about love.*

30.31 Cibum bonum coquus in culīnā facit. *The cook makes good food in the kitchen.*

30.15 Opus magnum prō patriā nōs facimus. *We make a great work for our country.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

30.1 Magister cum discipulīs librum facit.

30.2 Pulchrum hortum puer prō mātre facit.

30.3 Ad castra mīles iter facit.

30.4 Cum hostibus rēx pācem facit.

30.5 Agricola in agrō multum labōrem facit.

30.6 Pater mihi dōnum facit.

30.7 Fēmina cēnam magnam familiā suā facit.

30.8 Ōrātiōnem longam senātor in forō facit.

30.9 Mercātor in urbe pecūniam multam facit.

30.10 Sacra ad mare nāutae faciunt.

30.11 Magnum iter per Italiam amīcus meus facit.

30.12 Lūdum novum in viā puerī faciunt.

30.13 Carmina pulchra dē amōre poēta facit.

30.31 Cibum bonum coquus in culīnā facit.

30.15 Opus magnum prō patriā nōs facimus.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, "faciō" is a key verb to master. Here's what you need to know:

1. Principal Parts:
    - faciō (present)
    - facere (infinitive)
    - fēcī (perfect)
    - factum (supine)

2. Present Tense Forms:
    - faciō (I make/do)
    - facis (you make/do)
    - facit (he/she/it makes/does)
    - facimus (we make/do)
    - facitis (you all make/do)
    - faciunt (they make/do)
3. Important Features:
    - Third conjugation -iō verb
    - Takes direct objects in accusative case
    - Often used with abstract objects (like pācem facere = "to make peace")
    - Can combine with nouns to form expressions (iter facere = "to journey")
4. Common Constructions:
    - With direct object: "librum facit" (makes a book)
    - With purpose: "prō patriā facit" (does for the country)
    - With indirect object: "mihi facit" (makes for me)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "faciō" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Productivity:
    - Romans valued active doing and making
    - Manual and intellectual work both used "faciō"
    - Different from English split between "do" and "make"
2. Social Context:
    - Different classes "made" different things
    - Poets "made" poems
    - Farmers "made" crops grow
    - Politicians "made" speeches and laws
3. Historical Usage:
    - Common in military contexts
    - Important in religious ritual descriptions
    - Key verb in legal language
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Root of English words like "factory," "fact"
    - Similar to Romance language verbs (French "faire," Spanish "hacer")
    - Important for understanding Roman technical texts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (1.4):

multa *many things* **quoque** *also* **et** *and* **bellō** *in war* **passus** *having suffered* **dum** *until* **conderet** *he might found* **urbem** *a city* **inferretque** *and might bring* **deōs** *the gods* **Latiō** *to Latium* **genus** *race* **unde** *from where* **Latīnum** *Latin* **Albānīque** *and the Alban* **patrēs** *fathers* **atque** *and* **altae** *high* **moenia** *walls* **Rōmae** *of Rome*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Also having suffered many things in war, until he might found a city and bring the gods to Latium, from where came the Latin race and the Alban fathers and the high walls of Rome"

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage shows how "faciō" and its compounds (like "conderet" from "condere") are used to describe acts of creation and establishment in Roman literature. The founding of Rome itself is described as an act of making.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "conderet" is subjunctive form of compound verb from "con" + "faciō"
- Shows purpose clause with "dum"
- Demonstrates how "making" applies to city-founding
- Links physical and cultural creation

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Craft and Creation Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

30.16 **Artifex** *craftsman* **perītus** *skilled* **statuam** *statue* **pulchram** *beautiful* **ē** *from* **marmore** *marble* **facit** *makes*

30.17 **Discipulī** *students* **prīmum** *first* **opus** *work* **suum** *their* **in** *in* **scholā** *school* **faciunt** *make*

30.18 **Architectus** *architect* **templum** *temple* **novum** *new* **deīs** *for the gods* **magnīs** *great* **facit** *makes*

30.19 **Servī** *slaves* **domum** *house* **ex** *from* **lignō** *wood* **et** *and* **saxō** *stone* **faciunt** *make*

30.20 **Faber** *craftsman* **gladium** *sword* **optimum** *best* **mīlitī** *for the soldier* **facit** *makes*

30.21 **Uxor** *wife* **vestimenta** *clothes* **pulchra** *beautiful* **līberīs** *for the children* **facit** *makes*

30.22 **Senex** *old man* **hortum** *garden* **plenum** *full* **flōrum** *of flowers* **facit** *makes*

30.23 **Pictōrēs** *painters* **imaginēs** *pictures* **deōrum** *of the gods* **in** *in* **parietibus** *walls* **faciunt** *make*

30.24 **Nautae** *sailors* **nāvem** *ship* **novam** *new* **ex** *from* **lignīs** *woods* **optimīs** *best* **faciunt** *make*

30.25 **Cōnsul** *consul* **lēgēs** *laws* **novās** *new* **prō** *for* **cīvibus** *citizens* **facit** *makes*

30.26 **Agricolae** *farmers* **vīllam** *villa* **magnam** *large* **prope** *near* **mare** *sea* **faciunt** *make*

30.27 **Sacerdōtēs** *priests* **sacrificia** *sacrifices* **magna** *great* **dīīs** *to the gods* **faciunt** *make*

30.28 **Poētae** *poets* **carmina** *songs* **dē** *about* **bellīs** *wars* **antīquīs** *ancient* **faciunt** *make*

30.29 **Mercātōrēs** *merchants* **viam** *road* **novam** *new* **inter** *between* **urbēs** *cities* **faciunt** *make*

30.30 **Māter** *mother* **cibōs** *foods* **bonōs** *good* **līberīs** *for children* **suīs** *her* **facit** *makes*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

30.16 Artifex perītus statuam pulchram ē marmore facit. *A skilled craftsman makes a beautiful statue from marble.*

30.17 Discipulī prīmum opus suum in scholā faciunt. *The students make their first work in school.*

30.18 Architectus templum novum deīs magnīs facit. *The architect makes a new temple for the great gods.*

30.19 Servī domum ex lignō et saxō faciunt. *The slaves make a house from wood and stone.*

30.20 Faber gladium optimum mīlitī facit. *The craftsman makes the best sword for the soldier.*

30.21 Uxor vestimenta pulchra līberīs facit. *The wife makes beautiful clothes for the children.*

30.22 Senex hortum plenum flōrum facit. *The old man makes a garden full of flowers.*

30.23 Pictōrēs imaginēs deōrum in parietibus faciunt. *The painters make images of the gods on the walls.*

30.24 Nautae nāvem novam ex lignīs optimīs faciunt. *The sailors make a new ship from the best woods.*

30.25 Cōnsul lēgēs novās prō cīvibus facit. *The consul makes new laws for the citizens.*

30.26 Agricolae vīllam magnam prope mare faciunt. *The farmers make a large villa near the sea.*

30.27 Sacerdōtēs sacrificia magna diīs faciunt. *The priests make great sacrifices to the gods.*

30.28 Poētae carmina dē bellīs antīquīs faciunt. *The poets make songs about ancient wars.*

30.29 Mercātōrēs viam novam inter urbēs faciunt. *The merchants make a new road between cities.*

30.30 Māter cibōs bonōs līberīs suīs facit. *Mother makes good foods for her children.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

30.16 Artifex perītus statuam pulchram ē marmore facit.

30.17 Discipulī prīmum opus suum in scholā faciunt.

30.18 Architectus templum novum deīs magnīs facit.

30.19 Servī domum ex lignō et saxō faciunt.

30.20 Faber gladium optimum mīlitī facit.

30.21 Uxor vestimenta pulchra līberīs facit.

30.22 Senex hortum plenum flōrum facit.

30.23 Pictōrēs imaginēs deōrum in parietibus faciunt.

30.24 Nautae nāvem novam ex lignīs optimīs faciunt.

30.25 Cōnsul lēgēs novās prō cīvibus facit.

30.26 Agricolae vīllam magnam prope mare faciunt.

30.27 Sacerdōtēs sacrificia magna diīs faciunt.

30.28 Poētae carmina dē bellīs antīquīs faciunt.

30.29 Mercātōrēs viam novam inter urbēs faciunt.

30.30 Māter cibōs bonōs līberīs suīs facit.

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

In this craft and creation narrative section, we see "faciō" used in various important ways:

1. Materials and Methods:
    - Using "ē/ex" + ablative to show material: "ē marmore facit"
    - Using instrumental ablative: "lignō et saxō"
    - Showing purpose with dative: "deīs magnīs facit"
2. Complex Objects:
    - Direct objects with modifiers: "statuam pulchram"
    - Objects with descriptive genitives: "imaginēs deōrum"
    - Objects with location phrases: "in parietibus"
3. Agent Variations:
    - Different social classes as subjects
    - Both singular and plural forms
    - Various occupations showing specialized creation
4. Syntax Patterns:
    - Standard order: Subject + Object + Verb
    - Variable placement for emphasis
    - Use with multiple modifying phrases

This genre section particularly emphasizes how "faciō" describes physical creation and crafting, showing its concrete meaning alongside the more abstract uses seen in the main lesson.

Genre Section: Erasmian Dialogue - De Arte Faciendī (On the Art of Making)

Part A (Interleaved Text)

A dialogue between Marcus (M.) and his teacher Lucius (L.) about the value of doing good work.

30.31 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Quid** *what* **hodiē** *today* **facis** *are you doing* **magister** *teacher* **carissime** *dearest*?

30.32 **L.:** *Lucius:* **Librum** *book* **novum** *new* **dē** *about* **artibus** *arts* **liberālibus** *liberal* **faciō** *I am making*.

30.33 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Cūr** *why* **hoc** *this* **opus** *work* **facis** *do you make*?

30.34 **L.:** *Lucius:* **Ut** *so that* **discipulī** *students* **meī** *my* **sapientiōrēs** *wiser* **fīant** *may become*.

30.35 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Egō** *I* **quoque** *also* **librum** *book* **facere** *to make* **volō** *want*.

30.36 **L.:** *Lucius:* **Quid** *what* **dē** *about* **librō** *book* **tuō** *your* **facere** *to make* **cōgitās** *do you think*?

30.37 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Dē** *about* **animālibus** *animals* **quae** *which* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **meō** *my* **videō** *I see* **scribere** *to write* **volō** *I want*.

30.38 **L.:** *Lucius:* **Rem** *thing* **bonam** *good* **facere** *to do* **cupis** *you desire*, **sed** *but* **prīmum** *first* **multum** *much* **studēre** *to study* **dēbēs** *you ought*.

30.39 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Quōmodō** *how* **id** *this* **optimē** *best* **faciam** *should I do*?

30.40 **L.:** *Lucius:* **Cotīdiē** *daily* **pauca** *few things* **sed** *but* **bene** *well* **facere** *to do* **dēbēs** *you ought*.

30.41 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Nōnne** *surely* **tū** *you* **quoque** *also* **initium** *beginning* **parvum** *small* **fēcistī** *made*?

30.42 **L.:** *Lucius:* **Certē** *certainly*! **Et** *and* **multōs** *many* **errōrēs** *mistakes* **fēcī** *I made* **antequam** *before* **doctus** *learned* **fierem** *I became*.

30.43 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Ergō** *therefore* **hodiē** *today* **initium** *beginning* **faciam** *I shall make*!

30.44 **L.:** *Lucius:* **Sapientiam** *wisdom* **magnam** *great* **iam** *already* **facis** *you make*, **care** *dear* **discipule** *student*.

30.45 **M.:** *Marcus:* **Grātiās** *thanks* **tibi** *to you* **agō** *I give*, **quī** *who* **mē** *me* **meliōrem** *better* **facis** *make*.

Part B (Complete Sentences)

30.31 M.: Quid hodiē facis, magister carissime? *Marcus: What are you doing today, dearest teacher?*

30.32 L.: Librum novum dē artibus liberālibus faciō. *Lucius: I am making a new book about the liberal arts.*

30.33 M.: Cūr hoc opus facis? *Marcus: Why do you make this work?*

30.34 L.: Ut discipulī meī sapientiōrēs fīant. *Lucius: So that my students may become wiser.*

30.35 M.: Egō quoque librum facere volō. *Marcus: I also want to make a book.*

30.36 L.: Quid dē librō tuō facere cōgitās? *Lucius: What do you think about making of your book?*

30.37 M.: Dē animālibus quae in hortō meō videō scribere volō. *Marcus: I want to write about the animals which I see in my garden.*

30.38 L.: Rem bonam facere cupis, sed prīmum multum studēre dēbēs. *Lucius: You desire to do a good thing, but first you ought to study much.*

30.39 M.: Quōmodō id optimē faciam? *Marcus: How should I do this best?*

30.40 L.: Cotīdiē pauca sed bene facere dēbēs. *Lucius: You ought to do few things but well each day.*

30.41 M.: Nōnne tū quoque initium parvum fēcistī? *Marcus: Surely you also made a small beginning?*

30.42 L.: Certē! Et multōs errōrēs fēcī antequam doctus fierem. *Lucius: Certainly! And I made many mistakes before I became learned.*

30.43 M.: Ergō hodiē initium faciam! *Marcus: Therefore today I shall make a beginning!*

30.44 L.: Sapientiam magnam iam facis, care discipule. *Lucius: You already make great wisdom, dear student.*

30.45 M.: Grātiās tibi agō, quī mē meliōrem facis. *Marcus: I give thanks to you, who make me better.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

30.31 M.: Quid hodiē facis, magister carissime?

30.32 L.: Librum novum dē artibus liberālibus faciō.

30.33 M.: Cūr hoc opus facis?

30.34 L.: Ut discipulī meī sapientiōrēs fīant.

30.35 M.: Egō quoque librum facere volō.

30.36 L.: Quid dē librō tuō facere cōgitās?

30.37 M.: Dē animālibus quae in hortō meō videō scribere volō.

30.38 L.: Rem bonam facere cupis, sed prīmum multum studēre dēbēs.

30.39 M.: Quōmodō id optimē faciam?

30.40 L.: Cotīdiē pauca sed bene facere dēbēs.

30.41 M.: Nōnne tū quoque initium parvum fēcistī?

30.42 L.: Certē! Et multōs errōrēs fēcī antequam doctus fierem.

30.43 M.: Ergō hodiē initium faciam!

30.44 L.: Sapientiam magnam iam facis, care discipule.

30.45 M.: Grātiās tibi agō, quī mē meliōrem facis.

Part D (Analysis of Dialogue)

This Erasmian dialogue demonstrates several key features:

1. Grammatical Features:
    - Use of "faciō" in various tenses:
        - Present: facis, faciō
        - Future: faciam

        - Perfect: fēcistī, fēcī
    - Infinitive constructions with "facere"
    - Purpose clauses with "ut"
    - Questions using interrogative particles
2. Educational Elements:
    - Teacher-student relationship
    - Discussion of learning process
    - Moral instruction through dialogue
    - Emphasis on steady progress
3. Stylistic Features:
    - Short, clear exchanges
    - Natural conversation flow
    - Building complexity gradually
    - Use of rhetorical questions
4. Cultural Context:
    - References to liberal arts education
    - Emphasis on practical wisdom
    - Value of careful preparation
    - Importance of daily practice

The dialogue follows Erasmus's style by combining practical Latin instruction with moral teaching, using "faciō" to discuss both concrete actions and abstract concepts like "making progress" in learning.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 31 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson 31: The Verb dīcō (say)

Introduction

In this lesson, we'll learn the verb dīcō (say, tell, speak), one of the most important verbs in Latin. It is a third conjugation verb: dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

31.1 **Puer** *the boy* **mihi** *to me* **vērum** *the truth* **dīcit** *says*

31.2 **Magister** *the teacher* **discipulīs** *to the students* **fābulam** *a story* **dīcit** *tells*

31.3 **Quid** *what* **dīcis** *do you say* **dē** *about* **hāc** *this* **rē** *matter*?

31.4 **Mater** *mother* **fīliō** *to her son* **bonā** *with good* **vōce** *voice* **dīcit** *speaks*

31.5 **Marcus** *Marcus* **litterās** *the letter* **mihi** *to me* **dīxit** *spoke about*

31.6 **Ego** *I* **tibi** *to you* **vēritātem** *the truth* **dīcam** *will tell*

31.7 **Quis** *who* **haec** *these things* **rēgī** *to the king* **dīxit** *said*?

31.8 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **multa** *many things* **dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **dīcunt** *say*

31.9 **Pater** *father* **fīliīs** *to his sons* **verba** *words* **sapientia** *wise* **dīxit** *spoke*

31.10 **Senātor** *the senator* **in** *in* **forō** *the forum* **dē** *about* **lēge** *the law* **dīcit** *speaks*

31.11 **Cīvēs** *the citizens* **dē** *about* **bellō** *war* **multa** *many things* **dīcēbant** *were saying*

31.12 **Dux** *the leader* **mīlitibus** *to the soldiers* **dē** *about* **victōriā** *victory* **dīxit** *spoke*

31.13 **Poēta** *the poet* **carmina** *poems* **pulchra** *beautiful* **dīcēbat** *was reciting*

31.31 **Nōn** *not* **possum** *I am able* **dīcere** *to say* **cūr** *why* **vēnistī** *you came*

31.15 **Amīcus** *friend* **mihi** *to me* **vērum** *the truth* **semper** *always* **dīcit** *tells*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

31.1 Puer mihi vērum dīcit. *The boy tells me the truth.*

31.2 Magister discipulīs fābulam dīcit. *The teacher tells a story to the students.*

31.3 Quid dē hāc rē dīcis? *What do you say about this matter?*

31.4 Mater fīliō bonā vōce dīcit. *Mother speaks to her son with a good voice.*

31.5 Marcus litterās mihi dīxit. *Marcus told me about the letter.*

31.6 Ego tibi vēritātem dīcam. *I will tell you the truth.*

31.7 Quis haec rēgī dīxit? *Who said these things to the king?*

31.8 Sapientēs multa dē vītā dīcunt. *Wise men say many things about life.*

31.9 Pater fīliīs verba sapientia dīxit. *Father spoke wise words to his sons.*

31.10 Senātor in forō dē lēge dīcit. *The senator speaks about the law in the forum.*

31.11 Cīvēs dē bellō multa dīcēbant. *The citizens were saying many things about the war.*

31.12 Dux mīlitibus dē victōriā dīxit. *The leader spoke to the soldiers about victory.*

31.13 Poēta carmina pulchra dīcēbat. *The poet was reciting beautiful poems.*

31.31 Nōn possum dīcere cūr vēnistī. *I cannot say why you came.*

31.15 Amīcus mihi vērum semper dīcit. *A friend always tells me the truth.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

31.1 Puer mihi vērum dīcit.

31.2 Magister discipulīs fābulam dīcit.

31.3 Quid dē hāc rē dīcis?

31.4 Mater fīliō bonā vōce dīcit.

31.5 Marcus litterās mihi dīxit.

31.6 Ego tibi vēritātem dīcam.

31.7 Quis haec rēgī dīxit?

31.8 Sapientēs multa dē vītā dīcunt.

31.9 Pater fīliīs verba sapientia dīxit.

31.10 Senātor in forō dē lēge dīcit.

31.11 Cīvēs dē bellō multa dīcēbant.

31.12 Dux mīlitibus dē victōriā dīxit.

31.13 Poēta carmina pulchra dīcēbat.

31.31 Nōn possum dīcere cūr vēnistī.

31.15 Amīcus mihi vērum semper dīcit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, the verb dīcō presents several important grammatical features:

1. Principal Parts:
    - dīcō (present)
    - dīcere (infinitive)
    - dīxī (perfect)
    - dictum (supine)
2. Present Tense Forms:
    - dīcō - I say
    - dīcis - you (singular) say
    - dīcit - he/she/it says
    - dīcimus - we say
    - dīcitis - you (plural) say
    - dīcunt - they say
3. Case Usage with dīcō:
    - Takes dative for the person spoken to
    - Takes accusative for the thing said
    - Uses dē + ablative for the topic ("about") Example: Magister discipulīs (dative) fābulam (accusative) dē bellō (dē + ablative) dīcit.
4. Common Constructions:
    - dīcere vērum - to tell the truth
    - causam dīcere - to plead a case

    - diem dīcere - to appoint a day
5. Important Notes for English Speakers:
    - Unlike English "say," dīcō can take an indirect object
    - Word order is more flexible than in English
    - The perfect tense (dīxī) shows a characteristic 'x' formation

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding dīcō requires cultural context:

1. Roman Oratory:
    - Speaking was a crucial skill in Roman society
    - Public speaking was essential for political career
    - Legal speeches (causam dīcere) were important
2. Social Context:
    - Different ways of speaking for different social situations
    - Formal vs informal speech
    - Importance of truth-telling in Roman culture
3. Historical Perspective:
    - Role of oral tradition in Roman culture
    - Importance of public pronouncements
    - Legal and political speeches
4. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "say," "tell," "speak"
    - Used in many common Latin phrases still used today
    - Important in understanding Roman literature and history

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia" (1.1):

Sī *if* **quid** *anything* **est** *there is* **in** *in* **mē** *me* **ingeniī** *of talent,* **iūdicēs** *judges,* **quod** *which* **sentiō** *I feel* **quam** *how* **sit** *may be* **exiguum** *small,* **dīcendī** *of speaking* **ratiō** *method* **et** *and* **disciplīna** *training*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Sī quid est in mē ingeniī, iūdicēs, quod sentiō quam sit exiguum, dīcendī ratiō et disciplīna. *If there is any talent in me, judges, which I feel how small it may be, it comes from my method and training in speaking.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage shows Cicero's characteristic modesty about his speaking ability, while using the gerund dīcendī to emphasize the importance of training in public speaking.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- dīcendī is a gerund in the genitive case
- Shows the noun use of the verb dīcō
- Part of a larger rhetorical structure
- Demonstrates the flexibility of Latin word order

❀ ❦ ❀ ❦ ❀ ❀ ❦ ❀ ❦ ❀ ❀ ❦ ❀ ❦ ❀

Genre Section: Legal Latin

Part A (Interleaved Text)

31.16 **Cicerō** *Cicero* **causam** *the case* **prō** *for* **amīcō** *his friend* **in** *in* **forō** *the forum* **dīcit** *pleads*

31.17 **Iūdex** *the judge* **sententiam** *verdict* **gravī** *with serious* **vōce** *voice* **dīxit** *pronounced*

31.18 **Testēs** *witnesses* **vēra** *true things* **dē** *about* **crīmine** *the crime* **dīcunt** *tell*

31.19 **Accūsātor** *the prosecutor* **multa** *many things* **contrā** *against* **reum** *the defendant* **dīxit** *said*

31.20 **Senātōrēs** *the senators* **lēgem** *the law* **novam** *new* **dē** *about* **iūstitiā** *justice* **dīcunt** *propose*

31.21 **Praetor** *the praetor* **iūra** *the rights* **cīvium** *of citizens* **clārā** *in a clear* **vōce** *voice* **dīcēbat** *was declaring*

31.22 **Advocātus** *the advocate* **dē** *about* **innocentiā** *the innocence* **clientis** *of his client* **dīxit** *spoke*

31.23 **Cōnsul** *the consul* **in** *in* **senātū** *the senate* **dē** *about* **iūstitiā** *justice* **dīcere** *to speak* **incipit** *begins*

31.24 **Testis** *the witness* **vēritātem** *the truth* **ante** *before* **iūdicem** *the judge* **dīcere** *to tell* **dēbet** *must*

31.25 **Magistrātus** *the magistrate* **sententiam** *judgment* **contrā** *against* **fūrem** *the thief* **dīxit** *pronounced*

31.26 **Quaestor** *the quaestor* **pecūniam** *money* **pūblicam** *public* **computātam** *calculated* **esse** *to be* **dīxit** *declared*

31.27 **Tribūnus** *the tribune* **plēbī** *to the people* **iūra** *rights* **nova** *new* **dīcit** *announces*

31.28 **Lēgātus** *the ambassador* **pācem** *peace* **cum** *with* **hostibus** *the enemies* **factam** *made* **esse** *to be* **dīxit** *declared*

31.29 **Scribae** *the scribes* **verba** *words* **lēgis** *of the law* **clara** *clear* **vōce** *with voice* **dīcēbant** *were reading*

31.30 **Cēnsor** *the censor* **dē** *about* **mōribus** *the morals* **cīvium** *of citizens* **multa** *many things* **dīxit** *spoke*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

31.16 Cicerō causam prō amīcō in forō dīcit. *Cicero pleads the case for his friend in the forum.*

31.17 Iūdex sententiam gravī vōce dīxit. *The judge pronounced the verdict with a serious voice.*

31.18 Testēs vēra dē crīmine dīcunt. *The witnesses tell true things about the crime.*

31.19 Accūsātor multa contrā reum dīxit. *The prosecutor said many things against the defendant.*

31.20 Senātōrēs lēgem novam dē iūstitiā dīcunt. *The senators propose a new law about justice.*

31.21 Praetor iūra cīvium clārā vōce dīcēbat. *The praetor was declaring the rights of citizens in a clear voice.*

31.22 Advocātus dē innocentiā clientis dīxit. *The advocate spoke about the innocence of his client.*

31.23 Cōnsul in senātū dē iūstitiā dīcere incipit. *The consul begins to speak about justice in the senate.*

31.24 Testis vēritātem ante iūdicem dīcere dēbet. *The witness must tell the truth before the judge.*

31.25 Magistrātus sententiam contrā fūrem dīxit. *The magistrate pronounced judgment against the thief.*

31.26 Quaestor pecūniam pūblicam computātam esse dīxit. *The quaestor declared that the public money had been calculated.*

31.27 Tribūnus plēbī iūra nova dīcit. *The tribune announces new rights to the people.*

31.28 Lēgātus pācem cum hostibus factam esse dīxit. *The ambassador declared that peace had been made with the enemies.*

31.29 Scribae verba lēgis clara vōce dīcēbant. *The scribes were reading the words of the law with a clear voice.*

31.30 Cēnsor dē mōribus cīvium multa dīxit. *The censor spoke many things about the morals of citizens.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

31.16 Cicerō causam prō amīcō in forō dīcit.

31.17 Iūdex sententiam gravī vōce dīxit.

31.18 Testēs vēra dē crīmine dīcunt.

31.19 Accūsātor multa contrā reum dīxit.

31.20 Senātōrēs lēgem novam dē iūstitiā dīcunt.

31.21 Praetor iūra cīvium clārā vōce dīcēbat.

31.22 Advocātus dē innocentiā clientis dīxit.

31.23 Cōnsul in senātū dē iūstitiā dīcere incipit.

31.24 Testis vēritātem ante iūdicem dīcere dēbet.

31.25 Magistrātus sententiam contrā fūrem dīxit.

31.26 Quaestor pecūniam pūblicam computātam esse dīxit.

31.27 Tribūnus plēbī iūra nova dīcit.

31.28 Lēgātus pācem cum hostibus factam esse dīxit.

31.29 Scribae verba lēgis clara vōce dīcēbant.

31.30 Cēnsor dē mōribus cīvium multa dīxit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

Special Legal Uses of dīcō:

1. Technical Legal Phrases:
    - causam dīcere: "to plead a case"
    - sententiam dīcere: "to pronounce judgment"
    - iūs dīcere: "to administer justice"
    - testimōnium dīcere: "to give testimony"
2. Case Usage in Legal Context:
    - Dative of advantage/disadvantage: prō amīcō dīcere
    - Accusative of the charge: dē crīmine dīcere
    - Ablative of manner: clārā vōce dīcere
3. Special Constructions:
    - Indirect Statement (common in legal pronouncements):
        - dīxit + accusative + infinitive
        - Example: "pācem factam esse dīxit"
    - Impersonal passive:
        - dīcitur + accusative + infinitive
        - Example: "iūra violāta esse dīcuntur"
4. Legal Formulas and Set Phrases:
    - vēra dīcere: "to tell the truth" (in testimony)
    - iūra dīcere: "to declare rights"
    - lēgem dīcere: "to propose/state a law"
5. Word Order in Legal Latin:
    - More formal than regular Latin
    - Often follows set patterns
    - Emphasis on clarity and precision
6. Time Aspects:
    - Present tense for current proceedings
    - Perfect for completed actions
    - Imperfect for background or continuous actions
7. Voice:

    - Active for official pronouncements
    - Passive for formal declarations
    - Deponent verbs in legal terminology
8. Special Features for English Speakers:
    - More formal than everyday Latin
    - Heavy use of technical terminology
    - Fixed phrases and formulas
    - Emphasis on precision
9. Cultural Notes:
    - Roman legal system's influence on modern law
    - Importance of verbal formulas in Roman law
    - Role of public speaking in legal proceedings
    - Relationship between law and rhetoric

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Narrative in Indirect Speech (Ōrātiō Oblīqua)

Part A (Interleaved Text)

31.31 **Nūntius** *the messenger* **dīxit** *said* **hostēs** *the enemies* **urbī** *to the city* **appropinquāre** *were approaching*

31.32 **Cōnsul** *the consul* **populō** *to the people* **dīxit** *said* **perīculum** *danger* **magnum** *great* **esse** *was*

31.33 **Dux** *the leader* **mīlitibus** *to the soldiers* **dīxit** *said* **sē** *he himself* **victōriam** *victory* **spērāre** *hoped for*

31.34 **Senātōrēs** *the senators* **dīxērunt** *said* **cīvēs** *the citizens* **urbem** *the city* **dēfendere** *to defend* **dēbēre** *ought*

31.35 **Imperātor** *the emperor* **dīxit** *said* **lēgātōs** *the ambassadors* **pācem** *peace* **petere** *were seeking*

31.36 **Legātī** *the ambassadors* **dīxērunt** *said* **rēgem** *the king* **bellum** *war* **nōlle** *did not want*

31.37 **Cīvēs** *the citizens* **dīxērunt** *said* **sē** *they themselves* **mūrōs** *the walls* **servātūrōs** *would guard* **esse** -

31.38 **Dux** *the leader* **mīlitibus** *to the soldiers* **dīxit** *said* **hostēs** *the enemies* **victōs** *defeated* **esse** *had been*

31.39 **Senātor** *the senator* **dīxit** *said* **cīvitātem** *the state* **salvam** *safe* **futūram** *would be* **esse** -

31.40 **Explōrātōrēs** *the scouts* **dīxērunt** *said* **sē** *they themselves* **castra** *the camp* **hostium** *of the enemies* **vīdisse** *had seen*

31.41 **Mercātor** *the merchant* **dīxit** *said* **nāvēs** *ships* **multās** *many* **portum** *the harbor* **intrāre** *were entering*

31.42 **Centuriō** *the centurion* **mīlitibus** *to the soldiers* **dīxit** *said* **tempus** *time* **pugnandī** *of fighting* **vēnisse** *had come*

31.43 **Sacerdōs** *the priest* **dīxit** *said* **deōs** *the gods* **urbī** *to the city* **favēre** *were favorable*

31.44 **Tribūnus** *the tribune* **dīxit** *said* **lēgem** *the law* **iūstam** *just* **futūram** *would be* **esse** -

31.45 **Senātus** *the senate* **dīxit** *said* **rem pūblicam** *the republic* **in** *in* **perīculō** *danger* **esse** *was*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

31.31 Nūntius dīxit hostēs urbī appropinquāre. *The messenger said that the enemies were approaching the city.*

31.32 Cōnsul populō dīxit perīculum magnum esse. *The consul said to the people that the danger was great.*

31.33 Dux mīlitibus dīxit sē victōriam spērāre. *The leader said to the soldiers that he hoped for victory.*

31.34 Senātōrēs dīxērunt cīvēs urbem dēfendere dēbēre. *The senators said that the citizens ought to defend the city.*

31.35 Imperātor dīxit lēgātōs pācem petere. *The emperor said that the ambassadors were seeking peace.*

31.36 Legātī dīxērunt rēgem bellum nōlle. *The ambassadors said that the king did not want war.*

31.37 Cīvēs dīxērunt sē mūrōs servātūrōs esse. *The citizens said that they would guard the walls.*

31.38 Dux mīlitibus dīxit hostēs victōs esse. *The leader said to the soldiers that the enemies had been defeated.*

31.39 Senātor dīxit cīvitātem salvam futūram esse. *The senator said that the state would be safe.*

31.40 Explōrātōrēs dīxērunt sē castra hostium vīdisse. *The scouts said that they had seen the enemy camp.*

31.41 Mercātor dīxit nāvēs multās portum intrāre. *The merchant said that many ships were entering the harbor.*

31.42 Centuriō mīlitibus dīxit tempus pugnandī vēnisse. *The centurion said to the soldiers that the time for fighting had come.*

31.43 Sacerdōs dīxit deōs urbī favēre. *The priest said that the gods were favorable to the city.*

31.44 Tribūnus dīxit lēgem iūstam futūram esse. *The tribune said that the law would be just.*

31.45 Senātus dīxit rem pūblicam in perīculō esse. *The senate said that the republic was in danger.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

31.31 Nūntius dīxit hostēs urbī appropinquāre.

31.32 Cōnsul populō dīxit perīculum magnum esse.

31.33 Dux mīlitibus dīxit sē victōriam spērāre.

31.34 Senātōrēs dīxērunt cīvēs urbem dēfendere dēbēre.

31.35 Imperātor dīxit lēgātōs pācem petere.

31.36 Legātī dīxērunt rēgem bellum nōlle.

31.37 Cīvēs dīxērunt sē mūrōs servātūrōs esse.

31.38 Dux mīlitibus dīxit hostēs victōs esse.

31.39 Senātor dīxit cīvitātem salvam futūram esse.

31.40 Explōrātōrēs dīxērunt sē castra hostium vīdisse.

31.41 Mercātor dīxit nāvēs multās portum intrāre.

31.42 Centuriō mīlitibus dīxit tempus pugnandī vēnisse.

31.43 Sacerdōs dīxit deōs urbī favēre.

31.44 Tribūnus dīxit lēgem iūstam futūram esse.

31.45 Senātus dīxit rem pūblicam in perīculō esse.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

Key Features of Indirect Speech (Ōrātiō Oblīqua):

1. Basic Structure:
    - Main verb (dīcō/dīxī) + accusative subject + infinitive
    - Example: "Nūntius dīxit hostēs appropinquāre"
    - Original direct speech: "Hostēs appropinquant"
2. Tense Changes:
    - Present → Present Infinitive (appropinquāre)
    - Perfect → Perfect Infinitive (vīdisse)
    - Future → Future Infinitive (servātūrōs esse)
3. Pronoun Changes:
    - First person becomes sē (reflexive)
    - Second person becomes subject accusative
    - Third person remains the same
4. Special Constructions:
    - Future infinitive formed with -ūrus esse
    - Perfect passive with esse
    - Indirect commands use dēbēre + infinitive
5. Common Patterns for English Speakers:

    - "X said that..." = "X dīxit..." + accusative and infinitive
    - Reflexive pronouns (sē) refer back to the subject
    - Time expressions shift as in English indirect speech
6. Sequence of Tenses:
    - Primary sequence (after present dīcit)
    - Historic sequence (after past dīxit)
    - Effect on dependent verbs
7. Cultural Context:
    - Used extensively in historical writing
    - Important in political and military reports
    - Common in diplomatic communications
8. Special Note for English Speakers:
    - Unlike English, Latin uses accusative + infinitive
    - No "that" conjunction as in English
    - More concise than English equivalent

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Narrative in Indirect Speech - The Siege of the City

Part A (Interleaved Text)

31.31 **Explōrātōrēs** *the scouts* **dīxērunt** *said* **barbarōs** *barbarians* **magnō** *with a great* **exercitū** *army* **appropinquāre** *were approaching*

31.32 **Īdem** *the same men* **dīxērunt** *said* **hostēs** *the enemies* **trēs** *three* **legiōnēs** *legions* **habēre** *had*

31.33 **Cōnsul** *the consul* **senātū** *to the senate* **dīxit** *said* **urbem** *the city* **in** *in* **magnō** *great* **perīculō** *danger* **esse** *was*

31.34 **Senātōrēs** *the senators* **dīxērunt** *said* **tempus** *time* **esse** *was* **arma** *arms* **parāre** *to prepare*

31.35 **Dux** *the general* **cīvibus** *to the citizens* **dīxit** *said* **sē** *he himself* **urbem** *the city* **dēfēnsūrum** *would defend* **esse** -

31.36 **Sacerdōtēs** *the priests* **dīxērunt** *said* **deōs** *the gods* **auxilium** *help* **datūrōs** *would give* **esse** -

31.37 **Mercātōrēs** *the merchants* **dīxērunt** *said* **sē** *they themselves* **frūmentum** *grain* **in** *into* **urbem** *the city* **portāre** *were bringing*

31.38 **Centuriōnēs** *the centurions* **dīxērunt** *said* **mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnātūrōs** *would fight* **esse** -

31.39 **Nūntius** *a messenger* **dīxit** *said* **hostēs** *the enemies* **mūrōs** *the walls* **oppugnāre** *were attacking* **incipere** *beginning*

31.40 **Tribūnus** *the tribune* **dīxit** *said* **cīvēs** *the citizens* **saxa** *rocks* **dē** *from* **mūrīs** *the walls* **iacere** *were throwing*

31.41 **Dux** *the general* **mīlitibus** *to the soldiers* **dīxit** *said* **hostēs** *the enemies* **multōs** *many* **vulnerātōs** *wounded* **esse** *had been*

31.42 **Lēgātus** *the ambassador* **dīxit** *said* **hostēs** *the enemies* **pācem** *peace* **petere** *were seeking*

31.43 **Cōnsul** *the consul* **dīxit** *said* **sē** *he himself* **condiciōnēs** *terms* **pācis** *of peace* **audītūrum** *would hear* **esse** -

31.44 **Dux hostium** *the leader of the enemies* **dīxit** *said* **suōs** *his men* **domum** *homeward* **reditūrōs** *would return* **esse** -

31.45 **Senātus** *the senate* **dīxit** *said* **urbem** *the city* **servātam** *had been saved* **esse** -

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

31.31 Explōrātōrēs dīxērunt barbarōs magnō exercitū appropinquāre. *The scouts said that barbarians were approaching with a great army.*

31.32 Iīdem dīxērunt hostēs trēs legiōnēs habēre. *The same men said that the enemies had three legions.*

31.33 Cōnsul senātū dīxit urbem in magnō perīculō esse. *The consul said to the senate that the city was in great danger.*

31.34 Senātōrēs dīxērunt tempus esse arma parāre. *The senators said that it was time to prepare arms.*

31.35 Dux cīvibus dīxit sē urbem dēfēnsūrum esse. *The general said to the citizens that he would defend the city.*

31.36 Sacerdōtēs dīxērunt deōs auxilium datūrōs esse. *The priests said that the gods would give help.*

31.37 Mercātōrēs dīxērunt sē frūmentum in urbem portāre. *The merchants said that they were bringing grain into the city.*

31.38 Centuriōnēs dīxērunt mīlitēs fortiter pugnātūrōs esse. *The centurions said that the soldiers would fight bravely.*

31.39 Nūntius dīxit hostēs mūrōs oppugnāre incipere. *A messenger said that the enemies were beginning to attack the walls.*

31.40 Tribūnus dīxit cīvēs saxa dē mūrīs iacere. *The tribune said that the citizens were throwing rocks from the walls.*

31.41 Dux mīlitibus dīxit hostēs multōs vulnerātōs esse. *The general said to the soldiers that many enemies had been wounded.*

31.42 Lēgātus dīxit hostēs pācem petere. *The ambassador said that the enemies were seeking peace.*

31.43 Cōnsul dīxit sē condiciōnēs pācis audītūrum esse. *The consul said that he would hear the terms of peace.*

31.44 Dux hostium dīxit suōs domum reditūrōs esse. *The leader of the enemies said that his men would return home.*

31.45 Senātus dīxit urbem servātam esse. *The senate said that the city had been saved.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

31.31 Explōrātōrēs dīxērunt barbarōs magnō exercitū appropinquāre.

31.32 Iīdem dīxērunt hostēs trēs legiōnēs habēre.

31.33 Cōnsul senātū dīxit urbem in magnō perīculō esse.

31.34 Senātōrēs dīxērunt tempus esse arma parāre.

31.35 Dux cīvibus dīxit sē urbem dēfēnsūrum esse.

31.36 Sacerdōtēs dīxērunt deōs auxilium datūrōs esse.

31.37 Mercātōrēs dīxērunt sē frūmentum in urbem portāre.

31.38 Centuriōnēs dīxērunt mīlitēs fortiter pugnātūrōs esse.

31.39 Nūntius dīxit hostēs mūrōs oppugnāre incipere.

31.40 Tribūnus dīxit cīvēs saxa dē mūrīs iacere.

31.41 Dux mīlitibus dīxit hostēs multōs vulnerātōs esse.

31.42 Lēgātus dīxit hostēs pācem petere.

31.43 Cōnsul dīxit sē condiciōnēs pācis audītūrum esse.

31.44 Dux hostium dīxit suōs domum reditūrōs esse.

31.45 Senātus dīxit urbem servātam esse.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

This narrative demonstrates the key features of indirect speech through a coherent story structure:

1. Narrative Progression through Tenses:
    - Initial warning (present: appropinquāre)
    - Preparations (present and future: parāre, dēfēnsūrum esse)
    - Battle events (perfect: vulnerātōs esse)
    - Resolution (perfect: servātam esse)
2. Viewpoint Shifts:
    - External reports (explōrātōrēs dīxērunt)
    - Official announcements (cōnsul dīxit)
    - Personal promises (sē dēfēnsūrum esse)
    - Enemy statements (dux hostium dīxit)
3. Types of Indirect Statement:

- Simple facts (hostēs legiōnēs habēre)
- Future intentions (sē dēfēnsūrum esse)
- Ongoing actions (frūmentum portāre)
- Completed actions (vulnerātōs esse)

4. Special Features for English Speakers:
    - Use of sē for subject reference
    - Future infinitive formations
    - Perfect passive constructions
    - Impersonal expressions
5. Cultural Context:
    - Military reporting structure
    - Role of religious authorities
    - Civic organization
    - Peace negotiations
6. Narrative Elements:
    - Initial threat
    - City's preparation
    - Battle description
    - Resolution
    - Multiple perspectives
7. Word Order Patterns:
    - Main verb (dīxit) placement
    - Subordinate clause arrangement
    - Emphasis through position
8. Specialized Vocabulary:
    - Military terms
    - Political vocabulary
    - Religious language
    - Diplomatic phraseology

Lesson 32 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: iam (now, already)

Introduction

The word "iam" is a common temporal adverb in Latin meaning "now" or "already." This lesson will explore its various uses and incorporate previously learned vocabulary and grammar.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

32.1 **Puer** *the boy* **iam** *now* **in** *in* **hortō** *the garden* **est** *is*

32.2 **Nōs** *we* **iam** *now* **cēnam** *dinner* **parāmus** *prepare*

32.3 **Lēgātus** *the ambassador* **iam** *now* **Rōmam** *to Rome* **venit** *comes*

32.4 **Hostēs** *the enemies* **iam** *already* **urbem** *the city* **vident** *see*

32.5 **Pater** *father* **iam** *now* **epistulam** *letter* **scrībit** *writes*

32.6 **Iam** *now* **tempus** *time* **est** *it is* **labōris** *of work*

32.7 **Māter** *mother* **fīlium** *son* **iam** *already* **vocat** *calls*

32.8 **Servī** *the slaves* **iam** *now* **in** *in* **agrīs** *the fields* **labōrant** *work*

32.9 **Mīles** *the soldier* **iam** *already* **gladium** *sword* **habet** *has*

32.10 **Iam** *now* **nox** *night* **appropinquat** *approaches*

32.11 **Magister** *the teacher* **discipulōs** *pupils* **iam** *now* **docet** *teaches*

32.12 **Mercātor** *the merchant* **iam** *already* **pecūniam** *money* **numerat** *counts*

32.13 **Puellae** *the girls* **iam** *now* **cantant** *sing* **in** *in* **viā** *the street*

32.31 **Senātōrēs** *the senators* **iam** *already* **in** *in* **forō** *the forum* **sedent** *sit*

32.15 **Iam** *now* **omnēs** *all* **veritātem** *the truth* **intellegunt** *understand*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

32.1 Puer iam in hortō est. *The boy is now in the garden.*

32.2 Cēnam iam parāmus. *We are now preparing dinner.*

32.3 Iam Rōmam lēgātus venit. *The ambassador now comes to Rome.*

32.4 Hostēs urbem iam vident. *The enemies already see the city.*

32.5 Epistulam pater iam scrībit. *Father is now writing a letter.*

32.6 Iam tempus labōris est. *Now is the time for work.*

32.7 Māter fīlium iam vocat. *Mother is already calling her son.*

32.8 Servī iam in agrīs labōrant. *The slaves are now working in the fields.*

32.9 Mīles gladium iam habet. *The soldier already has his sword.*

32.10 Iam nox appropinquat. *Night now approaches.*

32.11 Magister discipulōs iam docet. *The teacher is now teaching the pupils.*

32.12 Mercātor pecūniam iam numerat. *The merchant is already counting the money.*

32.13 Puellae iam in viā cantant. *The girls are now singing in the street.*

32.31 Senātōrēs iam in forō sedent. *The senators are already sitting in the forum.*

32.15 Iam omnēs veritātem intellegunt. *Now everyone understands the truth.*

Part C (Latin Only)

32.1 Puer iam in hortō est.

32.2 Cēnam iam parāmus.

32.3 Iam Rōmam lēgātus venit.

32.4 Hostēs urbem iam vident.

32.5 Epistulam pater iam scrībit.

32.6 Iam tempus labōris est.

32.7 Māter fīlium iam vocat.

32.8 Servī iam in agrīs labōrant.

32.9 Mīles gladium iam habet.

32.10 Iam nox appropinquat.

32.11 Magister discipulōs iam docet.

32.12 Mercātor pecūniam iam numerat.

32.13 Puellae iam in viā cantant.

32.31 Senātōrēs iam in forō sedent.

32.15 Iam omnēs veritātem intellegunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adverb "iam" has several important characteristics for English speakers to understand:

1. Position:
    - Can appear at different positions in the sentence
    - Often placed before the word it modifies
    - Sometimes appears at the start for emphasis
2. Usage:
    - Indicates present time ("now")
    - Shows completed action ("already")
    - Can mark transition points in narrative
3. Special combinations:
    - iam nōn = "no longer"
    - nōn iam = "not yet"
    - iam prīdem = "long ago"

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "iam" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Time Concepts:
    - Romans viewed time differently than we do
    - Present moment was particularly important
    - Time markers helped structure daily life
2. Literary Usage:
    - Common in letters and historical writing
    - Helped create narrative progression
    - Important in political speeches
3. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to Spanish "ya"
    - French "déjà"
    - Italian "già"

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's First Catilinarian:

Quō usque *how long* **tandem** *pray* **Catilīna** *Catiline* **iam** *now* **abūtēre** *will you abuse* **patientiā nostrā** *our patience*?

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Quō usque tandem, Catilīna, iam abūtēre patientiā nostrā? *How long, pray, Catiline, will you now continue to abuse our patience?*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous opening shows "iam" emphasizing the current moment and suggesting that a situation has gone on too long. Cicero uses it to create immediacy and urgency.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "iam" modifies "abūtēre" (future tense)
- Creates temporal tension with "quō usque"
- Position emphasizes the ongoing nature of the abuse

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

32.16 **Hostēs** *the enemies* **iam** *now* **ad** *to* **mūrōs** *the walls* **appropinquant** *approach*

32.17 **Dux** *the leader* **iam** *already* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **parāvit** *has prepared*

32.18 **Legiōnēs** *the legions* **iam** *now* **in** *in* **aciē** *battle line* **stant** *stand*

32.19 **Iam** *now* **signum** *the signal* **pugnae** *of battle* **datum** *given* **est** *is*

32.20 **Equitēs** *the cavalry* **iam** *already* **hostēs** *the enemies* **turbant** *disturb*

32.21 **Sagittāriī** *the archers* **iam** *now* **tēla** *weapons* **mittunt** *send*

32.22 **Centuriō** *the centurion* **iam** *already* **suōs** *his men* **hortātur** *encourages*

32.23 **Iam** *now* **multī** *many* **hostēs** *enemies* **cadunt** *fall*

32.24 **Victōria** *victory* **iam** *already* **certa** *certain* **vidētur** *seems*

32.25 **Imperātor** *the commander* **iam** *now* **novum** *new* **cōnsilium** *plan* **capit** *takes*

32.26 **Castra** *the camp* **iam** *already* **mūnīta** *fortified* **sunt** *are*

32.27 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **iam** *now* **perīculum** *danger* **nūntiant** *announce*

32.28 **Legiō** *the legion* **decimā** *tenth* **iam** *already* **in** *on* **itinere** *the march* **est** *is*

32.29 **Impedīmenta** *baggage* **iam** *now* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **perveniunt** *arrive*

32.30 **Iam** *already* **omnēs** *all* **intellegunt** *understand* **victōriam** *victory* **nostram** *our* **esse** *to be*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

32.16 Ad mūrōs hostēs iam appropinquant. *The enemies are now approaching the walls.*

32.17 Dux mīlitēs iam parāvit. *The leader has already prepared the soldiers.*

32.18 In aciē legiōnēs iam stant. *The legions now stand in battle line.*

32.19 Iam signum pugnae datum est. *Now the signal for battle has been given.*

32.20 Equitēs hostēs iam turbant. *The cavalry is already disturbing the enemies.*

32.21 Sagittāriī tēla iam mittunt. *The archers are now sending their weapons.*

32.22 Centuriō suōs iam hortātur. *The centurion is already encouraging his men.*

32.23 Iam multī hostēs cadunt. *Now many enemies are falling.*

32.24 Victōria certa iam vidētur. *Victory already seems certain.*

32.25 Imperātor novum cōnsilium iam capit. *The commander is now taking a new plan.*

32.26 Castra iam mūnīta sunt. *The camp is already fortified.*

32.27 Explōrātōrēs perīculum iam nūntiant. *The scouts are now announcing danger.*

32.28 Legiō decimā iam in itinere est. *The tenth legion is already on the march.*

32.29 Impedīmenta ad castra iam perveniunt. *The baggage is now arriving at camp.*

32.30 Iam omnēs victōriam nostram esse intellegunt. *Already all understand that victory is ours.*

Part C (Latin Only)

32.16 Ad mūrōs hostēs iam appropinquant.

32.17 Dux mīlitēs iam parāvit.

32.18 In aciē legiōnēs iam stant.

32.19 Iam signum pugnae datum est.

32.20 Equitēs hostēs iam turbant.

32.21 Sagittāriī tēla iam mittunt.

32.22 Centuriō suōs iam hortātur.

32.23 Iam multī hostēs cadunt.

32.24 Victōria certa iam vidētur.

32.25 Imperātor novum cōnsilium iam capit.

32.26 Castra iam mūnīta sunt.

32.27 Explōrātōrēs perīculum iam nūntiant.

32.28 Legiō decimā iam in itinere est.

32.29 Impedīmenta ad castra iam perveniunt.

32.30 Iam omnēs victōriam nostram esse intellegunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In military contexts, "iam" serves several specific functions:

1. Tactical Immediacy:
    - Marks critical moments in battle
    - Indicates readiness status
    - Shows progression of military operations
2. Command Context:
    - Used in orders to indicate urgency
    - Shows status of military preparations
    - Marks phases of battle
3. Military Report Style:
    - Common in battlefield updates
    - Used in strategic communications
    - Helps track battle progression
4. Interaction with Military Vocabulary:
    - Often used with technical terms
    - Modifies military commands
    - Indicates battle status

Lesson 33 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Atque

Introduction

The conjunction "atque" (also written as "ac" before consonants) is used to join words or clauses, meaning "and in addition" or "and also." It often introduces something of greater importance or emphasis than what precedes it.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

33.1 **Pater** *father* **venit** *comes* **atque** *and also* **māter** *mother* **cum eō** *with him* **ambulat** *walks*

33.2 **Mīles** *the soldier* **pugnat** *fights* **atque** *and also* **vincit** *conquers* **hostēs** *the enemies*

33.3 **Marcus** *Marcus* **legit** *reads* **librōs** *books* **atque** *and also* **scrībit** *writes* **epistulās** *letters*

33.4 **Puer** *the boy* **cantat** *sings* **atque** *and also* **saltat** *dances* **in** *in* **viā** *the road*

33.5 **Agricola** *the farmer* **arat** *plows* **agrōs** *the fields* **atque** *and also* **seminat** *sows* **frūmentum** *grain*

33.6 **Senātor** *the senator* **in** *in* **forō** *the forum* **stat** *stands* **atque** *and also* **populum** *the people* **docet** *teaches*

33.7 **Nautae** *the sailors* **nāvem** *the ship* **parant** *prepare* **atque** *and also* **vēla** *the sails* **tendunt** *stretch*

33.8 **Poēta** *the poet* **carmina** *poems* **recitat** *recites* **atque** *and also* **omnēs** *all* **audiunt** *listen*

33.9 **Rex** *the king* **imperat** *commands* **atque** *and also* **pācem** *peace* **cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **facit** *makes*

33.10 **Discipulī** *the students* **sedent** *sit* **atque** *and also* **magistrum** *the teacher* **spectant** *watch*

33.11 **Sacerdōs** *the priest* **precēs** *prayers* **dīcit** *says* **atque** *and also* **deōs** *the gods* **invocat** *invokes*

33.12 **Mercātor** *the merchant* **mercēs** *goods* **vendit** *sells* **atque** *and also* **pecūniam** *money* **numerat** *counts*

33.13 **Coquus** *the cook* **cibum** *food* **parat** *prepares* **atque** *and also* **convīvās** *guests* **vocat** *calls*

33.31 **Fēmina** *the woman* **hortum** *garden* **cūrat** *tends* **atque** *and also* **flōrēs** *flowers* **colligit** *gathers*

33.15 **Senex** *the old man* **fābulam** *story* **nārrat** *tells* **atque** *and also* **puerī** *boys* **rīdent** *laugh*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

33.1 Pater venit atque māter cum eō ambulat. *Father comes and mother walks with him.*

33.2 Mīles pugnat atque hostēs vincit. *The soldier fights and conquers the enemies.*

33.3 Marcus librōs legit atque epistulās scrībit. *Marcus reads books and writes letters.*

33.4 Puer cantat atque in viā saltat. *The boy sings and dances in the road.*

33.5 Agricola agrōs arat atque frūmentum seminat. *The farmer plows the fields and sows grain.*

33.6 In forō senātor stat atque populum docet. *In the forum the senator stands and teaches the people.*

33.7 Nautae nāvem parant atque vēla tendunt. *The sailors prepare the ship and stretch the sails.*

33.8 Poēta carmina recitat atque omnēs audiunt. *The poet recites poems and everyone listens.*

33.9 Rex imperat atque pācem cum hostibus facit. *The king commands and makes peace with the enemies.*

33.10 Discipulī sedent atque magistrum spectant. *The students sit and watch the teacher.*

33.11 Sacerdōs precēs dīcit atque deōs invocat. *The priest says prayers and invokes the gods.*

33.12 Mercātor mercēs vendit atque pecūniam numerat. *The merchant sells goods and counts money.*

33.13 Coquus cibum parat atque convīvās vocat. *The cook prepares food and calls the guests.*

33.31 Fēmina hortum cūrat atque flōrēs colligit. *The woman tends the garden and gathers flowers.*

33.15 Senex fābulam nārrat atque puerī rīdent. *The old man tells a story and the boys laugh.*

Part C (Latin Only)

33.1 Pater venit atque māter cum eō ambulat.

33.2 Mīles pugnat atque hostēs vincit.

33.3 Marcus librōs legit atque epistulās scrībit.

33.4 Puer cantat atque in viā saltat.

33.5 Agricola agrōs arat atque frūmentum seminat.

33.6 In forō senātor stat atque populum docet.

33.7 Nautae nāvem parant atque vēla tendunt.

33.8 Poēta carmina recitat atque omnēs audiunt.

33.9 Rex imperat atque pācem cum hostibus facit.

33.10 Discipulī sedent atque magistrum spectant.

33.11 Sacerdōs precēs dīcit atque deōs invocat.

33.12 Mercātor mercēs vendit atque pecūniam numerat.

33.13 Coquus cibum parat atque convīvās vocat.

33.31 Fēmina hortum cūrat atque flōrēs colligit.

33.15 Senex fābulam nārrat atque puerī rīdent.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, understanding "atque" requires grasping several key concepts:

1. Basic Usage
    - Acts as a coordinating conjunction like English "and"
    - Often adds emphasis to the second element
    - Can connect both individual words and entire clauses
2. Word Order
    - Unlike English "and," atque always comes between the elements it connects
    - Cannot be used at the start of a sentence
    - Often creates balanced pairs of actions or descriptions
3. Comparison with Other Latin Conjunctions
    - More emphatic than "et" (and)
    - More formal than "-que" (enclitic "and")
    - Often implies logical sequence or result
4. Special Uses
    - Before comparatives means "than"
    - In the phrase "simul atque" means "as soon as"
    - Can emphasize similarity: "same as," "equal to"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "atque" in Roman culture:

1. Formal Writing
    - Common in legal and official documents
    - Used in religious formulae
    - Found frequently in political speeches
2. Literary Style
    - Creates emphasis in poetry
    - Helps build rhetorical climax
    - Shows relationships between ideas
3. Modern Parallels
    - Similar to formal English "and furthermore"
    - Used like "and moreover" in arguments
    - Comparable to "and indeed" in emphasis
4. Historical Development
    - Ancient compound of "ad" + "que"
    - Evolved separate meaning from simple "et"
    - Preserved in Romance languages

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (7.23):

Virtus *virtue* **amīcitiam** *friendship* **gignit** *creates* **atque** *and also* **continet** *maintains*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Virtus amīcitiam gignit atque continet. *Virtue creates and maintains friendship.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "atque" to connect two related but distinct aspects of virtue's relationship with friendship: its initial creation and its ongoing maintenance. The conjunction emphasizes the complete role of virtue in friendship.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "atque" joins two verbs with the same subject
- Both verbs are in present tense
- Direct object "amīcitiam" applies to both verbs
- Creates balanced structure typical of Ciceronian prose

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

33.16 **Hostēs** *enemies* **castra** *camp* **oppugnant** *attack* **atque** *and then* **mūrōs** *walls* **scandunt** *climb*

33.17 **Imperātor** *commander* **signum** *signal* **dat** *gives* **atque** *and immediately* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **prōcēdunt** *advance*

33.18 **Legiō** *legion* **tēla** *weapons* **parat** *prepares* **atque** *and then* **proelium** *battle* **exspectat** *awaits*

33.19 **Centuriō** *centurion* **ōrdinem** *rank* **īnstruit** *arranges* **atque** *and also* **scūta** *shields* **inspicit** *inspects*

33.20 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **hostēs** *enemies* **premunt** *press* **atque** *and moreover* **in** *into* **fugam** *flight* **vertunt** *turn*

33.21 **Tubicen** *trumpeter* **classicum** *battle signal* **canit** *sounds* **atque** *and then* **exercitus** *army* **prōgreditur** *advances*

33.22 **Sagittāriī** *archers* **sagittās** *arrows* **mittunt** *send* **atque** *and furthermore* **multōs** *many* **vulnerant** *wound*

33.23 **Rēx** *king* **auxilium** *help* **petit** *seeks* **atque** *and then* **sociōs** *allies* **convocat** *summons*

33.24 **Castra** *camp* **mūniunt** *fortify* **atque** *and moreover* **vigilēs** *guards* **dispōnunt** *position*

33.25 **Dux** *leader* **victōriam** *victory* **spērat** *hopes for* **atque** *and also* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **laudat** *praises*

33.26 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **redeunt** *return* **atque** *and then* **nūntium** *message* **ferunt** *bring*

33.27 **Signifer** *standard-bearer* **aquilam** *eagle* **tollit** *raises* **atque** *and immediately* **agmen** *column* **prōcēdit** *advances*

33.28 **Tribūnus** *tribune* **cōnsilium** *plan* **capit** *takes* **atque** *and then* **legiōnem** *legion* **dūcit** *leads*

33.29 **Hostēs** *enemies* **arma** *arms* **dēpōnunt** *lay down* **atque** *and moreover* **pācem** *peace* **petunt** *seek*

33.30 **Imperātor** *commander* **triumphum** *triumph* **agit** *celebrates* **atque** *and then* **praemia** *rewards* **distribuit** *distributes*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

33.16 Hostēs castra oppugnant atque mūrōs scandunt. *The enemies attack the camp and climb the walls.*

33.17 Imperātor signum dat atque mīlitēs prōcēdunt. *The commander gives the signal and the soldiers advance.*

33.18 Legiō tēla parat atque proelium exspectat. *The legion prepares weapons and awaits battle.*

33.19 Centuriō ōrdinem īnstruit atque scūta inspicit. *The centurion arranges the rank and inspects the shields.*

33.20 Equitēs hostēs premunt atque in fugam vertunt. *The cavalry press the enemies and put them to flight.*

33.21 Tubicen classicum canit atque exercitus prōgreditur. *The trumpeter sounds the battle signal and the army advances.*

33.22 Sagittāriī sagittās mittunt atque multōs vulnerant. *The archers shoot arrows and wound many.*

33.23 Rēx auxilium petit atque sociōs convocat. *The king seeks help and summons allies.*

33.24 Castra mūniunt atque vigilēs dispōnunt. *They fortify the camp and position guards.*

33.25 Dux victōriam spērat atque mīlitēs laudat. *The leader hopes for victory and praises the soldiers.*

33.26 Explōrātōrēs redeunt atque nūntium ferunt. *The scouts return and bring a message.*

33.27 Signifer aquilam tollit atque agmen prōcēdit. *The standard-bearer raises the eagle and the column advances.*

33.28 Tribūnus cōnsilium capit atque legiōnem dūcit. *The tribune makes a plan and leads the legion.*

33.29 Hostēs arma dēpōnunt atque pācem petunt. *The enemies lay down arms and seek peace.*

33.30 Imperātor triumphum agit atque praemia distribuit. *The commander celebrates a triumph and distributes rewards.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

33.16 Hostēs castra oppugnant atque mūrōs scandunt.

33.17 Imperātor signum dat atque mīlitēs prōcēdunt.

33.18 Legiō tēla parat atque proelium exspectat.

33.19 Centuriō ōrdinem īnstruit atque scūta inspicit.

33.20 Equitēs hostēs premunt atque in fugam vertunt.

33.21 Tubicen classicum canit atque exercitus prōgreditur.

33.22 Sagittāriī sagittās mittunt atque multōs vulnerant.

33.23 Rēx auxilium petit atque sociōs convocat.

33.24 Castra mūniunt atque vigilēs dispōnunt.

33.25 Dux victōriam spērat atque mīlitēs laudat.

33.26 Explōrātōrēs redeunt atque nūntium ferunt.

33.27 Signifer aquilam tollit atque agmen prōcēdit.

33.28 Tribūnus cōnsilium capit atque legiōnem dūcit.

33.29 Hostēs arma dēpōnunt atque pācem petunt.

33.30 Imperātor triumphum agit atque praemia distribuit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In military narratives, atque serves several specialized functions:

1. Sequential Actions:
    - Links events in chronological order
    - Shows cause and effect in battle movements
    - Connects preparation with execution
2. Military Vocabulary:
    - Technical terms for weapons and formations
    - Official titles and ranks
    - Battle commands and signals
3. Verb Usage:
    - Present historic tense for vivid narration
    - Emphasis on active voice
    - Pairs of complementary military actions
4. Special Features:
    - Regular word order for clarity
    - Balanced clauses for military precision

- Strategic use of atque to mark decisive moments

These features reflect Roman military communication style, where clarity and precision were essential.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 34 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: AC (and in addition, and also, and)

Introduction

The conjunction "ac" is used to join words, phrases, or clauses, often with a sense of closer connection than "et". It appears only before consonants (its variant "atque" is used before vowels).

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

34.1 **Pater** *father* **ac** *and* **māter** *mother* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **sedent** *sit*

34.2 **Servī** *slaves* **ac** *and* **servae** *slave women* **in** *in* **casā** *cottage* **labōrant** *work*

34.3 **Equī** *horses* **ac** *and* **bovēs** *cattle* **in** *in* **campīs** *fields* **pāscunt** *graze*

34.4 **Senātor** *senator* **ac** *and* **cōnsul** *consul* **forō** *forum* **prōcēdunt** *proceed*

34.5 **Mercātor** *merchant* **ac** *and* **nauta** *sailor* **nāvem** *ship* **parant** *prepare*

34.6 **Bella** *wars* **ac** *and* **prōelia** *battles* **timēmus** *we fear*

34.7 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **ac** *and* **auxiliā** *auxiliaries* **castra** *camp* **movent** *move*

34.8 **Dux** *leader* **ac** *and* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **urbem** *city* **petunt** *seek*

34.9 **Lūna** *moon* **ac** *and* **stellae** *stars* **caelō** *sky* **fulgent** *shine*

34.10 **Templum** *temple* **ac** *and* **delubrā** *shrines* **visitāmus** *we visit*

34.11 **Agricola** *farmer* **frūmentum** *grain* **ac** *and* **frūctūs** *fruits* **vendit** *sells*

34.12 **Puellae** *girls* **carmina** *songs* **ac** *and* **fābulās** *stories* **amant** *love*

34.13 **Māter** *mother* **cibum** *food* **ac** *and* **vīnum** *wine* **parat** *prepares*

34.31 **Uxor** *wife* **domum** *house* **ac** *and* **hortum** *garden* **cūrat** *takes care of*

34.15 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **librōs** *books* **ac** *and* **litterās** *letters* **legunt** *read*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

34.1 Pater ac māter in hortō sedent. *Father and mother sit in the garden.*

34.2 Servī ac servae in casā labōrant. *Slaves and slave women work in the cottage.*

34.3 Equī ac bovēs in campīs pāscunt. *Horses and cattle graze in the fields.*

34.4 Senātor ac cōnsul forō prōcēdunt. *The senator and consul proceed through the forum.*

34.5 Mercātor ac nauta nāvem parant. *The merchant and sailor prepare the ship.*

34.6 Bella ac prōelia timēmus. *We fear wars and battles.*

34.7 Legiōnēs ac auxiliā castra movent. *The legions and auxiliaries move the camp.*

34.8 Dux ac mīlitēs urbem petunt. *The leader and soldiers seek the city.*

34.9 Lūna ac stellae caelō fulgent. *The moon and stars shine in the sky.*

34.10 Templum ac delubrā visitāmus. *We visit the temple and shrines.*

34.11 Agricola frūmentum ac frūctūs vendit. *The farmer sells grain and fruits.*

34.12 Puellae carmina ac fābulās amant. *The girls love songs and stories.*

34.13 Māter cibum ac vīnum parat. *Mother prepares food and wine.*

34.31 Uxor domum ac hortum cūrat. *The wife takes care of the house and garden.*

34.15 Sapientēs librōs ac litterās legunt. *The wise men read books and letters.*

Part C (Latin Only)

34.1 Pater ac māter in hortō sedent.

34.2 Servī ac servae in casā labōrant.

34.3 Equī ac bovēs in campīs pāscunt.

34.4 Senātor ac cōnsul forō prōcēdunt.

34.5 Mercātor ac nauta nāvem parant.

34.6 Bella ac prōelia timēmus.

34.7 Legiōnēs ac auxiliā castra movent.

34.8 Dux ac mīlitēs urbem petunt.

34.9 Lūna ac stellae caelō fulgent.

34.10 Templum ac delubrā visitāmus.

34.11 Agricola frūmentum ac frūctūs vendit.

34.12 Puellae carmina ac fābulās amant.

34.13 Māter cibum ac vīnum parat.

34.31 Uxor domum ac hortum cūrat.

34.15 Sapientēs librōs ac litterās legunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The conjunction "ac" has several important grammatical features:

1. Usage:
    - Joins elements of equal grammatical value
    - Usually connects closely related items
    - Appears only before consonants
    - Its variant "atque" is used before vowels
2. Syntactic Functions:
    - Connects nouns in the same case
    - Links verbs in the same mood and tense
    - Joins adjectives of the same degree
    - Can connect whole clauses
3. Agreement:
    - When joining subjects, the verb agrees with the combined subjects
    - With mixed genders, masculine takes precedence
    - With mixed persons, first person takes precedence
4. Stylistic Considerations:
    - More formal than "et"
    - Implies closer connection between items
    - Often used in official or legal contexts
    - Common in paired expressions

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "ac" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Precision:
    - Romans valued precise expression
    - Different conjunctions had subtle distinctions
    - Word choice reflected social status
2. Literary Usage:
    - Formal writing preferred "ac"
    - Legal documents used specific conjunctions
    - Different styles for different contexts
3. Modern Parallels:
    - Similar to English "and moreover"
    - Used in formal writing
    - Reflects careful thought

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Officiis" (1.4):

Doctrīna *learning* **ac** *and* **litterae** *literature* **Graecae** *Greek* **quibus** *by which* **mē** *myself* **ipsum** *self* **dēlectō** *I delight*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Doctrīna ac litterae Graecae quibus mē ipsum dēlectō. *Learning and Greek literature, in which I myself delight.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "ac" to connect two closely related aspects of culture: learning and literature. The conjunction emphasizes their inseparable nature in Roman education.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "ac" joins two nominative feminine nouns
- Both nouns share the adjective "Graecae"
- Relative clause "quibus" refers to both antecedents
- First person reflexive emphasizes personal connection

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

34.16 **Dux** *leader* **fortis** *brave* **ac** *and* **prudens** *wise* **exercitum** *army* **dūcēbat** *was leading*

34.17 **Rōmānī** *Romans* **castra** *camp* **ac** *and* **vallum** *rampart* **mūniēbant** *were fortifying*

34.18 **Victōrēs** *victors* **spolia** *spoils* **ac** *and* **captīvōs** *captives* **Rōmam** *to Rome* **dūcunt** *lead*

34.19 **Hostēs** *enemies* **arcēs** *citadels* **ac** *and* **portās** *gates* **oppugnābant** *were attacking*

34.20 **Cōnsul** *consul* **legiōnēs** *legions* **ac** *and* **sociōs** *allies* **convocāvit** *called together*

34.21 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **montēs** *mountains* **ac** *and* **silvās** *forests* **explōrābant** *were exploring*

34.22 **Imperātor** *emperor* **decreta** *decrees* **ac** *and* **lēgēs** *laws* **scrīpsit** *wrote*

34.23 **Senātus** *senate* **tribūnōs** *tribunes* **ac** *and* **cēnsōrēs** *censors* **elegit** *chose*

34.24 **Barbarī** *barbarians* **urbēs** *cities* **ac** *and* **vīcōs** *villages* **vastābant** *were laying waste*

34.25 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **templa** *temples* **ac** *and* **arās** *altars* **dēfendēbant** *were defending*

34.26 **Augurēs** *augurs* **auspicia** *auspices* **ac** *and* **ōmina** *omens* **observābant** *were observing*

34.27 **Virī** *men* **fortēs** *brave* **patriam** *fatherland* **ac** *and* **līberōs** *children* **servābant** *were protecting*

34.28 **Victōria** *victory* **glōriam** *glory* **ac** *and* **honōrem** *honor* **attulit** *brought*

34.29 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **pācem** *peace* **ac** *and* **foedus** *treaty* **cōnfirmāvērunt** *confirmed*

34.30 **Populus** *people* **ducēs** *leaders* **ac** *and* **rēgēs** *kings* **laudābant** *were praising*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

34.16 Dux fortis ac prudens exercitum dūcēbat. *The brave and wise leader was leading the army.*

34.17 Rōmānī castra ac vallum mūniēbant. *The Romans were fortifying the camp and rampart.*

34.18 Victōrēs spolia ac captīvōs Rōmam dūcunt. *The victors lead the spoils and captives to Rome.*

34.19 Hostēs arcēs ac portās oppugnābant. *The enemies were attacking the citadels and gates.*

34.20 Cōnsul legiōnēs ac sociōs convocāvit. *The consul called together the legions and allies.*

34.21 Equitēs montēs ac silvās explōrābant. *The cavalry were exploring the mountains and forests.*

34.22 Imperātor decreta ac lēgēs scrīpsit. *The emperor wrote decrees and laws.*

34.23 Senātus tribūnōs ac cēnsōrēs elegit. *The senate chose the tribunes and censors.*

34.24 Barbarī urbēs ac vīcōs vastābant. *The barbarians were laying waste to cities and villages.*

34.25 Cīvēs templa ac arās dēfendēbant. *The citizens were defending the temples and altars.*

34.26 Augurēs auspicia ac ōmina observābant. *The augurs were observing the auspices and omens.*

34.27 Virī fortēs patriam ac līberōs servābant. *The brave men were protecting their fatherland and children.*

34.28 Victōria glōriam ac honōrem attulit. *Victory brought glory and honor.*

34.29 Senātōrēs pācem ac foedus cōnfirmāvērunt. *The senators confirmed the peace and treaty.*

34.30 Populus ducēs ac rēgēs laudābant. *The people were praising the leaders and kings.*

Part C (Latin Only)

34.16 Dux fortis ac prudens exercitum dūcēbat.

34.17 Rōmānī castra ac vallum mūniēbant.

34.18 Victōrēs spolia ac captīvōs Rōmam dūcunt.

34.19 Hostēs arcēs ac portās oppugnābant.

34.20 Cōnsul legiōnēs ac sociōs convocāvit.

34.21 Equitēs montēs ac silvās explōrābant.

34.22 Imperātor decreta ac lēgēs scrīpsit.

34.23 Senātus tribūnōs ac cēnsōrēs elegit.

34.24 Barbarī urbēs ac vīcōs vastābant.

34.25 Cīvēs templa ac arās dēfendēbant.

34.26 Augurēs auspicia ac ōmina observābant.

34.27 Virī fortēs patriam ac līberōs servābant.

34.28 Victōria glōriam ac honōrem attulit.

34.29 Senātōrēs pācem ac foedus cōnfirmāvērunt.

34.30 Populus ducēs ac rēgēs laudābant.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In historical narrative, "ac" serves several specific functions:

1. Pairs of Related Military Terms:
    - "castra ac vallum" (camp and rampart)
    - "legiōnēs ac sociōs" (legions and allies)
    - Emphasizes complementary aspects of military operations
2. Official and Political Language:
    - "decreta ac lēgēs" (decrees and laws)
    - "pācem ac foedus" (peace and treaty)
    - Used in formal documentation and proceedings
3. Verb Tenses in Historical Context:
    - Imperfect for ongoing actions: "mūniēbant", "explōrābant"
    - Perfect for completed actions: "convocāvit", "scrīpsit"
    - Present historic for vivid narration: "dūcunt"
4. Word Order Patterns:
    - Natural variation reflecting emphasis
    - Subject-object-verb predominant but flexible
    - Rhetorical effect through placement of paired terms

Lesson 35 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson 35: Atque/Ac (and in addition, and also, and)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

35.1 **Pater** *father* **atque** *and* **māter** *mother* **templum** *temple* **petunt** *seek*

35.2 **Ducem** *leader* **atque** *and* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **laudāmus** *we praise*

35.3 **Ac** *and* **subitō** *suddenly* **hostēs** *enemies* **urbem** *city* **oppugnant** *attack*

35.4 **Senex** *old man* **atque** *and* **puer** *boy* **in** *in* **viā** *road* **ambulant** *walk*

35.5 **Rōmānī** *Romans* **atque** *and* **Gallī** *Gauls* **pacem** *peace* **faciunt** *make*

35.6 **Ac** *and* **statim** *immediately* **legiōnēs** *legions* **castra** *camp* **mūniunt** *fortify*

35.7 **Servī** *slaves* **atque** *and* **ancillae** *maidservants* **cēnam** *dinner* **parant** *prepare*

35.8 **Discipulī** *students* **librōs** *books* **atque** *and* **stilōs** *pens* **portant** *carry*

35.9 **Vēr** *spring* **atque** *and* **aestās** *summer* **agricolīs** *to farmers* **grāta** *pleasing* **sunt** *are*

35.10 **Ac** *and* **nunc** *now* **omnēs** *all* **deōs** *gods* **precāmur** *we pray to*

35.11 **Nautae** *sailors* **mare** *sea* **atque** *and* **ventōs** *winds* **timent** *fear*

35.12 **Poētae** *poets* **carmina** *songs* **atque** *and* **fābulās** *stories* **nārrant** *tell*

35.13 **Ac** *and* **paulātim** *gradually* **nox** *night* **caelum** *sky* **complectitur** *embraces*

35.31 **Mercātōrēs** *merchants* **aurum** *gold* **atque** *and* **argentum** *silver* **vendunt** *sell*

35.15 **Templum** *temple* **novum** *new* **atque** *and* **pulchrum** *beautiful* **videō** *I see*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

35.1 Pater atque māter templum petunt. *Father and mother seek the temple.*

35.2 Ducem atque mīlitēs laudāmus. *We praise the leader and the soldiers.*

35.3 Ac subitō hostēs urbem oppugnant. *And suddenly the enemies attack the city.*

35.4 Senex atque puer in viā ambulant. *The old man and boy walk on the road.*

35.5 Rōmānī atque Gallī pacem faciunt. *The Romans and Gauls make peace.*

35.6 Ac statim legiōnēs castra mūniunt. *And immediately the legions fortify the camp.*

35.7 Servī atque ancillae cēnam parant. *The slaves and maidservants prepare dinner.*

35.8 Discipulī librōs atque stilōs portant. *The students carry books and pens.*

35.9 Vēr atque aestās agricolīs grāta sunt. *Spring and summer are pleasing to the farmers.*

35.10 Ac nunc omnēs deōs precāmur. *And now we pray to all the gods.*

35.11 Nautae mare atque ventōs timent. *The sailors fear the sea and winds.*

35.12 Poētae carmina atque fābulās nārrant. *The poets tell songs and stories.*

35.13 Ac paulātim nox caelum complectitur. *And gradually night embraces the sky.*

35.31 Mercātōrēs aurum atque argentum vendunt. *The merchants sell gold and silver.*

35.15 Templum novum atque pulchrum videō. *I see a new and beautiful temple.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

35.1 Pater atque māter templum petunt.

35.2 Ducem atque mīlitēs laudāmus.

35.3 Ac subitō hostēs urbem oppugnant.

35.4 Senex atque puer in viā ambulant.

35.5 Rōmānī atque Gallī pacem faciunt.

35.6 Ac statim legiōnēs castra mūniunt.

35.7 Servī atque ancillae cēnam parant.

35.8 Discipulī librōs atque stilōs portant.

35.9 Vēr atque aestās agricolīs grāta sunt.

35.10 Ac nunc omnēs deōs precāmur.

35.11 Nautae mare atque ventōs timent.

35.12 Poētae carmina atque fābulās nārrant.

35.13 Ac paulātim nox caelum complectitur.

35.31 Mercātōrēs aurum atque argentum vendunt.

35.15 Templum novum atque pulchrum videō.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "atque/ac" involves several key points:

1. Basic Usage:
    - Atque and ac are synonyms meaning "and"
    - Generally stronger than et, implying "and also" or "and in addition"
    - Ac is used only before consonants
    - Atque can be used before vowels or consonants
2. Position in Sentence:
    - Usually appears between the items being connected
    - Can start a sentence when adding a new thought
    - Never appears at the end of a sentence
3. Types of Connection:
    - Can join single words (nouns, adjectives, verbs)
    - Can join phrases
    - Can join clauses
    - Often used in pairs of related items
4. Differences from English:
    - More emphatic than simple "and"
    - Can't be used in lists of three or more items
    - Has stylistic implications not present in English "and"
    - Often indicates items are closely related or form a natural pair
5. Common Patterns:

- Joining similar or contrasting pairs
- Adding important additional information
- Introducing sudden or significant events
- Connecting related but distinct concepts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding atque/ac requires appreciation of Roman rhetorical style:

1. In Roman Oratory:
    - Used for emphasis in speeches
    - Creates rhythmic patterns
    - Signals important additions to arguments
    - Helps build to climactic points
2. In Literature:
    - Common in poetry for meter
    - Used in prose for emphasis
    - Helps create formal tone
    - Indicates logical connections
3. In Daily Life:
    - Used in legal formulas
    - Found in religious ritual language
    - Common in formal announcements
    - Part of political discourse
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to formal English "furthermore"
    - Helps understand Latin text structure
    - Important in legal terminology
    - Shows Roman precision in language

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (On Friendship):

Virtūs *virtue* **amīcitiam** *friendship* **et** *and* **gignit** *begets* **atque** *and also* **continet** *maintains*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Virtūs amīcitiam et gignit atque continet. *Virtue both begets and also maintains friendship.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses both et and atque to show the two roles of virtue: creating and maintaining friendship. The atque emphasizes that maintaining friendship is as important as creating it.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Virtūs is nominative singular subject
- Amīcitiam is accusative singular direct object
- Et...atque form a correlative pair ("both...and also")
- Gignit and continet are present tense verbs
- Word order emphasizes virtue's central role

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 36 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 36: Alius (other, another)

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

36.1 **Alius** *another* **puer** *boy* **in** *in* **viā** *the road* **ambulat** *walks*

36.2 **Aliam** *another* **puellam** *girl* **in** *in* **hortō** *the garden* **videō** *I see*

36.3 **Aliud** *another* **templum** *temple* **in** *in* **urbe** *the city* **est** *is*

36.4 **Mater** *mother* **alium** *another* **librum** *book* **fīliō** *to her son* **dat** *gives*

36.5 **Ad** *to* **aliam** *another* **urbem** *city* **nunc** *now* **veniunt** *they come*

36.6 **Aliī** *other* **virī** *men* **per** *through* **viam** *the road* **currunt** *run*

36.7 **Aliae** *other* **fēminae** *women* **in** *in* **forō** *the forum* **sedent** *sit*

36.8 **Alia** *other* **templa** *temples* **in** *in* **montibus** *the mountains* **stant** *stand*

36.9 **Magister** *the teacher* **aliōs** *other* **discipulōs** *students* **docet** *teaches*

36.10 **Pater** *father* **cum** *with* **aliīs** *others* **amīcīs** *friends* **ambulat** *walks*

36.11 **Alius** *another* **exercitus** *army* **ad** *to* **castra** *the camp* **venit** *comes*

36.12 **Aliam** *another* **viam** *road* **ad** *to* **mare** *the sea* **inveniunt** *they find*

36.13 **Aliud** *another* **bellum** *war* **in** *in* **terrā** *the land* **incipit** *begins*

36.31 **Agricola** *the farmer* **in** *in* **aliō** *another* **agrō** *field* **labōrat** *works*

36.15 **Aliās** *other* **nāvēs** *ships* **in** *in* **portū** *the harbor* **vidēmus** *we see*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

36.1 In viā alius puer ambulat. *Another boy walks in the road.*

36.2 Aliam puellam in hortō videō. *I see another girl in the garden.*

36.3 In urbe aliud templum est. *There is another temple in the city.*

36.4 Mater fīliō alium librum dat. *Mother gives another book to her son.*

36.5 Ad aliam urbem nunc veniunt. *Now they come to another city.*

36.6 Per viam aliī virī currunt. *Other men run through the road.*

36.7 In forō aliae fēminae sedent. *Other women sit in the forum.*

36.8 In montibus alia templa stant. *Other temples stand in the mountains.*

36.9 Aliōs discipulōs magister docet. *The teacher teaches other students.*

36.10 Cum aliīs amīcīs pater ambulat. *Father walks with other friends.*

36.11 Ad castra alius exercitus venit. *Another army comes to the camp.*

36.12 Aliam viam ad mare inveniunt. *They find another road to the sea.*

36.13 In terrā aliud bellum incipit. *Another war begins in the land.*

36.31 In aliō agrō agricola labōrat. *The farmer works in another field.*

36.15 Aliās nāvēs in portū vidēmus. *We see other ships in the harbor.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

36.1 In viā alius puer ambulat.

36.2 Aliam puellam in hortō videō.

36.3 In urbe aliud templum est.

36.4 Mater fīliō alium librum dat.

36.5 Ad aliam urbem nunc veniunt.

36.6 Per viam aliī virī currunt.

36.7 In forō aliae fēminae sedent.

36.8 In montibus alia templa stant.

36.9 Aliōs discipulōs magister docet.

36.10 Cum aliīs amīcīs pater ambulat.

36.11 Ad castra alius exercitus venit.

36.12 Aliam viam ad mare inveniunt.

36.13 In terrā aliud bellum incipit.

36.31 In aliō agrō agricola labōrat.

36.15 Aliās nāvēs in portū vidēmus.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Alius" is an adjective meaning "other" or "another." It has special features that English speakers should note:

1. Declension Pattern:
    - Uses endings from both 2nd and 3rd declensions
    - Genitive singular: alīus (not aliī)
    - Dative singular: aliī (not aliō)
2. Forms: Singular:
    - Masculine: alius, alīus, aliī, alium, aliō
    - Feminine: alia, alīus, aliī, aliam, aliā
    - Neuter: aliud, alīus, aliī, aliud, aliō

    Plural:
    - Masculine: aliī, aliōrum, aliīs, aliōs, aliīs
    - Feminine: aliae, aliārum, aliīs, aliās, aliīs
    - Neuter: alia, aliōrum, aliīs, alia, aliīs
3. Usage:
    - Like English "other," describes something different from what was previously mentioned
    - Can be used both as an adjective and as a pronoun
    - Often pairs with "alter" to mean "one...another"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "alius" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Perspective:
    - Romans were precise in distinguishing "other" things
    - Important in legal and military contexts
    - Used in literature to contrast different people or things
2. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to Spanish "otro" or French "autre"
    - More specific than English "other"
    - Important in understanding Roman categorization
3. Usage in Daily Life:
    - Common in marketplace transactions
    - Used in directions and locations
    - Essential in social interactions

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (1.19):

Aliud *another* **genus** *race* **ab** *from* **sanguine** *the blood* **Teucri** *of Teucer*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Aliud genus ab sanguine Teucri. *Another race from the blood of Teucer.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Vergil uses "aliud" to emphasize the distinct nature of the Roman people, descended from Trojan blood. The adjective highlights their unique destiny.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Aliud" is nominative neuter singular
- Modifies "genus" (neuter noun)
- Shows the distinctive quality of the Roman people

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Account

Part A (Interleaved Text)

36.16 **Aliī** *other* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **ad** *to* **castra** *the camp* **veniēbant** *were coming*

36.17 **Dux** *the leader* **alium** *another* **ducem** *leader* **in** *in* **proeliō** *battle* **vīdit** *saw*

36.18 **Alia** *other* **arma** *weapons* **in** *in* **castrīs** *the camp* **erant** *were*

36.19 **Aliae** *other* **cohortēs** *cohorts* **montem** *the mountain* **ascendēbant** *were climbing*

36.20 **Ad** *to* **aliud** *another* **flūmen** *river* **exercitum** *the army* **dūxit** *he led*

36.21 **Cum** *with* **aliīs** *other* **sociīs** *allies* **pugnāvērunt** *they fought*

36.22 **In** *in* **aliā** *another* **terrā** *land* **bellum** *war* **gerēbant** *they were waging*

36.23 **Aliōs** *other* **hostēs** *enemies* **superāvērunt** *they overcame*

36.24 **Ab** *from* **aliō** *another* **latere** *side* **impetum** *attack* **fēcērunt** *they made*

36.25 **Alia** *other* **castra** *camps* **prope** *near* **urbem** *the city* **posuērunt** *they placed*

36.26 **Aliās** *other* **legiōnēs** *legions* **ad** *to* **pugnam** *battle* **vocāvit** *he called*

36.27 **In** *in* **aliō** *another* **locō** *place* **victōriam** *victory* **cēpērunt** *they won*

36.28 **Aliam** *another* **victōriam** *victory* **magnā** *with great* **cum** *with* **glōriā** *glory* **reportāvērunt** *they brought back*

36.29 **Ad** *to* **alium** *another* **portum** *port* **nāvēs** *ships* **longae** *warships* **appulērunt** *landed*

36.30 **Aliud** *another* **proelium** *battle* **prīmā** *at first* **lūce** *light* **commīsērunt** *they joined*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

36.16 Ad castra aliī mīlitēs veniēbant. *Other soldiers were coming to the camp.*

36.17 Dux alium ducem in proeliō vīdit. *The leader saw another leader in battle.*

36.18 In castrīs alia arma erant. *Other weapons were in the camp.*

36.19 Aliae cohortēs montem ascendēbant. *Other cohorts were climbing the mountain.*

36.20 Ad aliud flūmen exercitum dūxit. *He led the army to another river.*

36.21 Cum aliīs sociīs pugnāvērunt. *They fought with other allies.*

36.22 In aliā terrā bellum gerēbant. *They were waging war in another land.*

36.23 Aliōs hostēs superāvērunt. *They overcame other enemies.*

36.24 Ab aliō latere impetum fēcērunt. *They made an attack from another side.*

36.25 Alia castra prope urbem posuērunt. *They placed other camps near the city.*

36.26 Aliās legiōnēs ad pugnam vocāvit. *He called other legions to battle.*

36.27 In aliō locō victōriam cēpērunt. *They won victory in another place.*

36.28 Aliam victōriam magnā cum glōriā reportāvērunt. *They brought back another victory with great glory.*

36.29 Ad alium portum nāvēs longae appulērunt. *The warships landed at another port.*

36.30 Aliud proelium prīmā lūce commīsērunt. *They joined another battle at first light.*

Part C (Latin Only)

36.16 Ad castra aliī mīlitēs veniēbant.

36.17 Dux alium ducem in proeliō vīdit.

36.18 In castrīs alia arma erant.

36.19 Aliae cohortēs montem ascendēbant.

36.20 Ad aliud flūmen exercitum dūxit.

36.21 Cum aliīs sociīs pugnāvērunt.

36.22 In aliā terrā bellum gerēbant.

36.23 Aliōs hostēs superāvērunt.

36.24 Ab aliō latere impetum fēcērunt.

36.25 Alia castra prope urbem posuērunt.

36.26 Aliās legiōnēs ad pugnam vocāvit.

36.27 In aliō locō victōriam cēpērunt.

36.27 In aliō locō victōriam cēpērunt.

36.28 Aliam victōriam magnā cum glōriā reportāvērunt.

36.29 Ad alium portum nāvēs longae appulērunt.

36.30 Aliud proelium prīmā lūce commīsērunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The military account section demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Uses of "alius" in Military Context:
    - As attributive adjective: "aliī mīlitēs" (other soldiers)
    - With military terminology: "alia castra" (other camps)
    - In tactical descriptions: "ab aliō latere" (from another side)
2. Verb Tenses:
    - Imperfect: "veniēbant" (were coming) - ongoing past action
    - Perfect: "superāvērunt" (overcame) - completed past action
    - Mixed usage reflects typical Roman military narrative style
3. Military Vocabulary with "alius":
    - Combat terms: proelium, pugna, impetus
    - Military units: legiōnēs, cohortēs, exercitus
    - Military locations: castra, portus
4. Case Usage:
    - Ablative of place: "in aliō locō"
    - Accusative of motion: "ad alium portum"
    - Ablative of accompaniment: "cum aliīs sociīs"
5. Typical Word Order:
    - Flexible positioning of "alius" for emphasis
    - Standard military report format
    - Position of verbs typically at end of clause

Lesson 37 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Rēs (Thing)

Introduction

In this lesson, we study the common noun "rēs, reī" (feminine), meaning "thing, matter, affair, circumstance." This word appears frequently in important phrases like "rēs pūblica" (republic/commonwealth) and "rēs mīlitāris" (military affairs).

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

37.1 **Rēs** *the matter* **grāvis** *serious* **est** *is*

37.2 **Haec** *this* **rēs** *matter* **mē** *me* **dēlectat** *pleases*

37.3 **Multās** *many* **rēs** *things* **novās** *new* **discimus** *we learn*

37.4 **Hanc** *this* **rem** *matter* **pūblicam** *public* **dēfendimus** *we defend*

37.5 **Reī** *matter* **magnae** *important* **studet** *he devotes himself to*

37.6 **Rem** *affair* **mīlitārem** *military* **bene** *well* **cūrat** *he manages*

37.7 **Rēs** *things* **adversae** *adverse* **bonōs** *good men* **probant** *test*

37.8 **Dē** *about* **hāc** *this* **rē** *matter* **cōgitō** *I think*

37.9 **Reī** *property* **familiārī** *family* **cōnsulit** *he takes care of*

37.10 **Rērum** *of things* **natūra** *nature* **pulchra** *beautiful* **est** *is*

37.11 **Hīs** *by these* **rēbus** *things* **commoveor** *I am moved*

37.12 **Omnēs** *all* **rēs** *things* **mūtantur** *change*

37.13 **Rēs** *affairs* **novae** *new* **cīvitātem** *the state* **turbant** *disturb*

37.31 **Rēbus** *to matters* **dīvīnīs** *divine* **studet** *she devotes herself*

37.15 **Rērum** *of affairs* **condiciō** *condition* **difficilis** *difficult* **est** *is*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

37.1 Rēs grāvis est. *The matter is serious.*

37.2 Haec rēs mē dēlectat. *This matter pleases me.*

37.3 Multās rēs novās discimus. *We learn many new things.*

37.4 Hanc rem pūblicam dēfendimus. *We defend this republic.*

37.5 Reī magnae studet. *He devotes himself to an important matter.*

37.6 Rem mīlitārem bene cūrat. *He manages military affairs well.*

37.7 Rēs adversae bonōs probant. *Adverse circumstances test good men.*

37.8 Dē hāc rē cōgitō. *I think about this matter.*

37.9 Reī familiārī cōnsulit. *He takes care of the family property.*

37.10 Rērum natūra pulchra est. *The nature of things is beautiful.*

37.11 Hīs rēbus commoveor. *I am moved by these things.*

37.12 Omnēs rēs mūtantur. *All things change.*

37.13 Rēs novae cīvitātem turbant. *Revolutionary changes disturb the state.*

37.31 Rēbus dīvīnīs studet. *She devotes herself to divine matters.*

37.15 Rērum condiciō difficilis est. *The condition of affairs is difficult.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

37.1 Rēs grāvis est.

37.2 Haec rēs mē dēlectat.

37.3 Multās rēs novās discimus.

37.4 Hanc rem pūblicam dēfendimus.

37.5 Reī magnae studet.

37.6 Rem mīlitārem bene cūrat.

37.7 Rēs adversae bonōs probant.

37.8 Dē hāc rē cōgitō.

37.9 Reī familiārī cōnsulit.

37.10 Rērum natūra pulchra est.

37.11 Hīs rēbus commoveor.

37.12 Omnēs rēs mūtantur.

37.13 Rēs novae cīvitātem turbant.

37.31 Rēbus dīvīnīs studet.

37.15 Rērum condiciō difficilis est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Rēs" is a fifth declension feminine noun with these forms:

Singular:

- Nominative: rēs
- Genitive: reī

- Dative: reī
- Accusative: rem
- Ablative: rē

Plural:

- Nominative: rēs
- Genitive: rērum
- Dative: rēbus
- Accusative: rēs
- Ablative: rēbus

Key grammatical points:

1. As a fifth declension noun, "rēs" shares patterns with other -ēs nouns
2. The dative and genitive singular both end in -eī
3. Several forms are identical (nom. sing/pl, acc. pl)
4. Common in both concrete ("things") and abstract ("affairs") meanings

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "rēs" requires grasping its broad semantic range:

1. Physical meanings:
    - Concrete objects
    - Property and possessions
    - Material things
2. Abstract meanings:
    - Circumstances
    - Affairs (political, military)
    - Matters of importance
    - Events or situations
3. Common phrases:
    - rēs pūblica (the state, commonwealth)
    - rēs mīlitāris (military affairs)
    - rēs familiāris (family property)
    - rēs novae (revolution, political change)
4. Cultural significance:
    - Central to Roman legal and political vocabulary
    - Key term in philosophical discussions
    - Essential for understanding Roman thought

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Lucretius' "Dē Rērum Natūrā" (1.25):

Nec *nor* **sine** *without* **tē** *you* **quicquam** *anything* **diās** *divine* **in** *into* **lūminis** *of light* **ōrās** *regions* **exoritur** *arises*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Nec sine tē quicquam diās in lūminis ōrās exoritur. *Nor without you does anything arise into the divine regions of light.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This line demonstrates the philosophical use of "rēs" in its genitive plural form within the title of Lucretius' masterwork "On the Nature of Things." The poem explores the physical and metaphysical nature of reality.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "rērum" is genitive plural dependent on "natūra"
- Title forms a compound concept: "the nature of things"
- Philosophical technical term showing abstract use
- Demonstrates importance in Roman intellectual discourse

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

37.18 **Multae** *many* **rēs** *things* **adhūc** *still* **incertae** *uncertain* **manent** *remain*

37.19 **Sapiens** *the wise man* **dē** *about* **summīs** *highest* **rēbus** *matters* **disputat** *discusses*

37.20 **Rērum** *of things* **causās** *causes* **intellegere** *to understand* **cupimus** *we desire*

37.21 **Omnēs** *all* **rēs** *things* **prīncipia** *beginnings* **habent** *have*

37.22 **Rēs** *things* **hūmānae** *human* **fluxae** *fleeting* **et** *and* **fragilēs** *fragile* **sunt** *are*

37.23 **Magister** *the teacher* **dē** *about* **rēbus** *things* **aeternis** *eternal* **docet** *teaches*

37.24 **Nātūra** *nature* **rērum** *of things* **obscūra** *hidden* **est** *is*

37.25 **Philosophī** *philosophers* **rēs** *things* **dīvīnās** *divine* **contemplātur** *contemplate*

37.26 **Rēs** *things* **immortālēs** *immortal* **mortālēs** *mortal* **nōn** *not* **intellegunt** *understand*

37.27 **Omnis** *all* **rēs** *matter* **causam** *cause* **habet** *has*

37.28 **Dē** *about* **rēbus** *things* **bonīs** *good* **malīsque** *and evil* **disputāmus** *we discuss*

37.29 **Rēs** *things* **caelestēs** *celestial* **animum** *the soul* **movent** *move*

37.30 **Sapientia** *wisdom* **rērum** *of things* **fīnem** *end* **quaerit** *seeks*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

37.18 Multae rēs adhūc incertae manent. *Many things still remain uncertain.*

37.19 Sapiens dē summīs rēbus disputat. *The wise man discusses the highest matters.*

37.20 Rērum causās intellegere cupimus. *We desire to understand the causes of things.*

37.21 Omnēs rēs prīncipia habent. *All things have beginnings.*

37.22 Rēs hūmānae fluxae et fragilēs sunt. *Human affairs are fleeting and fragile.*

37.23 Magister dē rēbus aeternis docet. *The teacher instructs about eternal matters.*

37.24 Nātūra rērum obscūra est. *The nature of things is hidden.*

37.25 Philosophī rēs dīvīnās contemplātur. *Philosophers contemplate divine matters.*

37.26 Rēs immortālēs mortālēs nōn intellegunt. *Mortals do not understand immortal things.*

37.27 Omnis rēs causam habet. *Everything has a cause.*

37.28 Dē rēbus bonīs malīsque disputāmus. *We discuss good and evil matters.*

37.29 Rēs caelestēs animum movent. *Celestial things move the soul.*

37.30 Sapientia rērum fīnem quaerit. *Wisdom seeks the end of things.*

Part C (Latin Only)

37.18 Multae rēs adhūc incertae manent.

37.19 Sapiens dē summīs rēbus disputat.

37.20 Rērum causās intellegere cupimus.

37.21 Omnēs rēs prīncipia habent.

37.22 Rēs hūmānae fluxae et fragilēs sunt.

37.23 Magister dē rēbus aeternis docet.

37.24 Nātūra rērum obscūra est.

37.25 Philosophī rēs dīvīnās contemplātur.

37.26 Rēs immortālēs mortālēs nōn intellegunt.

37.27 Omnis rēs causam habet.

37.28 Dē rēbus bonīs malīsque disputāmus.

37.29 Rēs caelestēs animum movent.

37.30 Sapientia rērum fīnem quaerit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Notes for Genre Section)

1. Case Usage in Philosophical Context

- Genitive rērum often used in abstract expressions
- Ablative rēbus common with dē in philosophical discussions
- Accusative used for direct objects of verbs of understanding and perception

2. Common Philosophical Constructions

- dē + ablative for topics of discussion
- Adjective pairs (e.g., bonīs malīsque)
- Abstract concepts personified as subjects

3. Word Order Patterns

- Emphasis through placement
- Chiastic arrangements
- Subject-complement-verb structures

4. Specialized Vocabulary

- Abstract adjectives with rēs
- Technical philosophical terms
- Metaphysical concepts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 38 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: habeō habēre habuī habitum (have, hold)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

38.1 **Mārcus** *Marcus* **librum** *book* **habet** *has*

38.2 **Magister** *teacher* **multōs** *many* **discipulōs** *students* **habet** *has*

38.3 **Puella** *girl* **pulchram** *beautiful* **rosam** *rose* **habet** *has*

38.4 **Agricola** *farmer* **magnōs** *large* **hortōs** *gardens* **habet** *has*

38.5 **Pater** *father* **meam** *my* **epistulam** *letter* **habēbat** *was having*

38.6 **Rōma** *Rome* **septem** *seven* **collēs** *hills* **habet** *has*

38.7 **Milēs** *soldier* **gladium** *sword* **habuerat** *had had*

38.8 **Nōs** *we* **bonum** *good* **cōnsilium** *plan* **habēbimus** *will have*

38.9 **Senātor** *senator* **multam** *much* **pecūniam** *money* **habuit** *had*

38.10 **Discipulī** *students* **novōs** *new* **librōs** *books* **habent** *have*

38.11 **Puerī** *boys* **magnās** *great* **spēs** *hopes* **habēbant** *were having*

38.12 **Poēta** *poet* **pulchram** *beautiful* **vōcem** *voice* **habet** *has*

38.13 **Graecia** *Greece* **multās** *many* **īnsulās** *islands* **habuit** *had*

38.31 **Servus** *slave* **clavēs** *keys* **templi** *of the temple* **habet** *has*

38.15 **Mercātor** *merchant* **nāvem** *ship* **magnam** *large* **habēbit** *will have*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

38.1 Mārcus librum habet. *Marcus has a book.*

38.2 Magister multōs discipulōs habet. *The teacher has many students.*

38.3 Pulchram rosam puella habet. *The girl has a beautiful rose.*

38.4 Magnōs hortōs agricola habet. *The farmer has large gardens.*

38.5 Pater meam epistulam habēbat. *Father was having my letter.*

38.6 Septem collēs Rōma habet. *Rome has seven hills.*

38.7 Gladium miles habuerat. *The soldier had had a sword.*

38.8 Bonum cōnsilium nōs habēbimus. *We will have a good plan.*

38.9 Multam pecūniam senātor habuit. *The senator had much money.*

38.10 Novōs librōs discipulī habent. *The students have new books.*

38.11 Magnās spēs puerī habēbant. *The boys were having great hopes.*

38.12 Pulchram vōcem poēta habet. *The poet has a beautiful voice.*

38.13 Multās īnsulās Graecia habuit. *Greece had many islands.*

38.31 Clavēs templī servus habet. *The slave has the keys of the temple.*

38.15 Nāvem magnam mercātor habēbit. *The merchant will have a large ship.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

38.1 Mārcus librum habet.

38.2 Magister multōs discipulōs habet.

38.3 Pulchram rosam puella habet.

38.4 Magnōs hortōs agricola habet.

38.5 Pater meam epistulam habēbat.

38.6 Septem collēs Rōma habet.

38.7 Gladium miles habuerat.

38.8 Bonum cōnsilium nōs habēbimus.

38.9 Multam pecūniam senātor habuit.

38.10 Novōs librōs discipulī habent.

38.11 Magnās spēs puerī habēbant.

38.12 Pulchram vōcem poēta habet.

38.13 Multās īnsulās Graecia habuit.

38.31 Clavēs templī servus habet.

38.15 Nāvem magnam mercātor habēbit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "habeō" is a second conjugation verb meaning "to have" or "to hold". For English speakers, it's important to note several key points:

1. Principal Parts:
    - Present: habeō
    - Infinitive: habēre
    - Perfect: habuī
    - Supine: habitum
2. Key Forms Used in Our Examples:
    - Present: habet (he/she/it has), habent (they have)
    - Imperfect: habēbat (he/she/it was having), habēbant (they were having)
    - Perfect: habuit (he/she/it had)
    - Pluperfect: habuerat (he/she/it had had)
    - Future: habēbit (he/she/it will have), habēbimus (we will have)
3. Construction:
    - Takes direct object in accusative case
    - Subject in nominative case
    - Can be used with adjectives modifying the object
    - Word order is flexible but verb often comes last

4. Special Notes for English Speakers:
    - Unlike English "have", not used as an auxiliary verb
    - Cannot form perfect tenses like English "have done"
    - Always means physical or abstract possession

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "habeō" requires grasping Roman concepts of possession and ownership:

1. Physical Possession:
    - Romans were precise about ownership rights
    - Distinction between personal and state property
    - Importance of documented ownership
2. Abstract Possession:
    - Used for qualities (having virtue)
    - Status indicators (having wealth)
    - Social connections (having friends)
3. Legal Context:
    - Key term in Roman law
    - Used in property disputes
    - Essential in commercial transactions
4. Social Implications:
    - Showing wealth and status
    - Family inheritance
    - Civic responsibilities

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (21):

Quī *who* **vēram** *true* **amīcitiam** *friendship* **habet** *has* **magnum** *great* **thēsaurum** *treasure* **habet** *has*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Quī vēram amīcitiam habet magnum thēsaurum habet. *Who has true friendship has a great treasure.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "habeō" twice to emphasize the value of friendship, comparing it to material wealth. The repetition creates a powerful rhetorical effect.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Quī" relative pronoun as subject
- "vēram amīcitiam" accusative direct object
- "magnum thēsaurum" accusative direct object
- Parallel structure with repeated "habet"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Business Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

38.16 **Mercātor** *merchant* **magnās** *large* **dīvitiās** *riches* **nunc** *now* **habet** *has*

38.17 **Multās** *many* **tabulās** *accounts* **acceptī** *of income* **et** *and* **expēnsī** *of expenditure* **habēmus** *we have*

38.18 **Nāvis** *ship* **pretiōsās** *precious* **mercēs** *goods* **habet** *has*

38.19 **Argentārius** *banker* **pecūniam** *money* **meam** *my* **in** *in* **mensā** *table/bank* **habet** *has*

38.20 **Negōtiātōrēs** *traders* **multōs** *many* **servōs** *slaves* **habent** *have*

38.21 **Taberna** *shop* **optimum** *best* **vīnum** *wine* **habet** *has*

38.22 **Pater** *father* **trēs** *three* **fundōs** *farms* **habēbat** *was having*

38.23 **Societās** *company* **magnōs** *large* **redītūs** *returns* **habuit** *had*

38.24 **Librārius** *bookkeeper* **ratiōnēs** *accounts* **annuās** *yearly* **habet** *has*

38.25 **Mercātōrēs** *merchants* **contractūs** *contracts* **scrīptōs** *written* **habent** *have*

38.26 **Argentāria** *bank* **multum** *much* **aurum** *gold* **in** *in* **arcā** *chest* **habet** *has*

38.27 **Emptōrēs** *buyers* **bonās** *good* **mercēs** *goods* **habēbunt** *will have*

38.28 **Caupō** *innkeeper* **optimum** *best* **hospitium** *lodging* **habet** *has*

38.29 **Nāviculārius** *ship owner* **decem** *ten* **nāvēs** *ships* **magnās** *large* **habet** *has*

38.30 **Mercātus** *market* **multōs** *many* **venditōrēs** *sellers* **habet** *has*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

38.16 Magnās dīvitiās mercātor nunc habet. *The merchant now has great riches.*

38.17 Multās tabulās acceptī et expēnsī habēmus. *We have many accounts of income and expenditure.*

38.18 Pretiōsās mercēs nāvis habet. *The ship has precious goods.*

38.19 Pecūniam meam argentārius in mensā habet. *The banker has my money in the bank.*

38.20 Multōs servōs negōtiātōrēs habent. *The traders have many slaves.*

38.21 Optimum vīnum taberna habet. *The shop has the best wine.*

38.22 Trēs fundōs pater habēbat. *Father was having three farms.*

38.23 Magnōs redītūs societās habuit. *The company had large returns.*

38.24 Ratiōnēs annuās librārius habet. *The bookkeeper has yearly accounts.*

38.25 Contractūs scrīptōs mercātōrēs habent. *The merchants have written contracts.*

38.26 Multum aurum argentāria in arcā habet. *The bank has much gold in the chest.*

38.27 Bonās mercēs emptōrēs habēbunt. *The buyers will have good goods.*

38.28 Optimum hospitium caupō habet. *The innkeeper has the best lodging.*

38.29 Decem nāvēs magnās nāviculārius habet. *The ship owner has ten large ships.*

38.30 Multōs venditōrēs mercātus habet. *The market has many sellers.*

Part C (Latin Only)

38.16 Magnās dīvitiās mercātor nunc habet.

38.17 Multās tabulās acceptī et expēnsī habēmus.

38.18 Pretiōsās mercēs nāvis habet.

38.19 Pecūniam meam argentārius in mensā habet.

38.20 Multōs servōs negōtiātōrēs habent.

38.21 Optimum vīnum taberna habet.

38.22 Trēs fundōs pater habēbat.

38.23 Magnōs redītūs societās habuit.

38.24 Ratiōnēs annuās librārius habet.

38.25 Contractūs scrīptōs mercātōrēs habent.

38.26 Multum aurum argentāria in arcā habet.

38.27 Bonās mercēs emptōrēs habēbunt.

38.28 Optimum hospitium caupō habet.

38.29 Decem nāvēs magnās nāviculārius habet.

38.30 Multōs venditōrēs mercātus habet.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In Roman business writing, "habeō" takes on specific technical meanings:

1. Commercial Usage:
    - Ownership of goods and property
    - Possession of money and accounts

    - Control of business assets
2. Legal Implications:
    - Formal ownership documentation
    - Contractual obligations
    - Business relationships
3. Business Terminology:
    - Technical vocabulary for commerce
    - Specialized meaning in contracts
    - Financial record-keeping
4. Grammatical Features:
    - Use with business terminology
    - Precise technical meanings
    - Common business phrases

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 39 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Animus (Spirit, Mind)

Introduction

Today's lesson focuses on the word "animus" (spirit, mind), a masculine second-declension noun. This common word is essential for discussing mental states, emotions, and character in Latin.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

39.1 **Magnus** *great* **animus** *spirit* **Rōmānōrum** *of the Romans* **erat** *was* **clārus** *famous* **in** *in* **bellō** *war*

39.2 **Virī** *of the man* **animum** *spirit* **laudābant** *they were praising* **propter** *because of* **virtūtem** *courage*

39.3 **In** *in* **animō** *mind* **patris** *of the father* **magna** *great* **cūra** *care* **erat** *was*

39.4 **Fortis** *brave* **animus** *spirit* **mīlitis** *of the soldier* **hostēs** *enemies* **nōn** *not* **timet** *fears*

39.5 **Rēx** *the king* **magnō** *with great* **animō** *spirit* **urbem** *city* **dēfendit** *defends*

39.6 **Nūntius** *messenger* **bonī** *good* **animī** *of spirit* **nōs** *us* **docet** *teaches*

39.7 **Senātor** *the senator* **animum** *mind* **populi** *of the people* **intellegit** *understands*

39.8 **Ducis** *of the leader* **animus** *mind* **victōriam** *victory* **spērat** *hopes for*

39.9 **Librum** *book* **dē** *about* **animō** *the mind* **magistra** *the teacher* **scrībit** *writes*

39.10 **Soror** *sister* **meum** *my* **animum** *spirit* **nōvit** *knows*

39.11 **Clārī** *famous* **animī** *spirits* **virōrum** *of men* **in** *in* **memoriā** *memory* **manent** *remain*

39.12 **Poēta** *the poet* **dē** *about* **animīs** *minds* **deōrum** *of the gods* **cantat** *sings*

39.13 **Ducēs** *leaders* **animōs** *spirits* **mīlitum** *of soldiers* **movent** *move*

39.31 **Magnōs** *great* **animōs** *spirits* **fortūna** *fortune* **iuvat** *helps*

39.15 **In** *in* **animīs** *minds* **sapientium** *of wise men* **vēritās** *truth* **habitat** *dwells*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

39.1 Magnus animus Rōmānōrum erat clārus in bellō. *The great spirit of the Romans was famous in war.*

39.2 Virī animum laudābant propter virtūtem. *They were praising the man's spirit because of his courage.*

39.3 In animō patris magna cūra erat. *In the father's mind was great care.*

39.4 Fortis animus mīlitis hostēs nōn timet. *The brave spirit of the soldier does not fear enemies.*

39.5 Rēx magnō animō urbem dēfendit. *The king defends the city with great spirit.*

39.6 Nūntius bonī animī nōs docet. *The messenger of good spirit teaches us.*

39.7 Senātor animum populī intellegit. *The senator understands the mind of the people.*

39.8 Ducis animus victōriam spērat. *The leader's mind hopes for victory.*

39.9 Librum dē animō magistra scrībit. *The teacher writes a book about the mind.*

39.10 Soror meum animum nōvit. *My sister knows my spirit.*

39.11 Clārī animī virōrum in memoriā manent. *The famous spirits of men remain in memory.*

39.12 Poēta dē animīs deōrum cantat. *The poet sings about the minds of the gods.*

39.13 Ducēs animōs mīlitum movent. *The leaders stir the spirits of the soldiers.*

39.31 Magnōs animōs fortūna iuvat. *Fortune helps great spirits.*

39.15 In animīs sapientium vēritās habitat. *Truth dwells in the minds of wise men.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text)

39.1 Magnus animus Rōmānōrum erat clārus in bellō.

39.2 Virī animum laudābant propter virtūtem.

39.3 In animō patris magna cūra erat.

39.4 Fortis animus mīlitis hostēs nōn timet.

39.5 Rēx magnō animō urbem dēfendit.

39.6 Nūntius bonī animī nōs docet.

39.7 Senātor animum populī intellegit.

39.8 Ducis animus victōriam spērat.

39.9 Librum dē animō magistra scrībit.

39.10 Soror meum animum nōvit.

39.11 Clārī animī virōrum in memoriā manent.

39.12 Poēta dē animīs deōrum cantat.

39.13 Ducēs animōs mīlitum movent.

39.31 Magnōs animōs fortūna iuvat.

39.15 In animīs sapientium vēritās habitat.

✾ ❦ ✾ ❦ ✾ ✾ ❦ ✾ ❦ ✾ ✾ ❦ ✾ ❦ ✾

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "animus" involves several key grammatical concepts:

1. Declension:
    - "Animus" is a masculine noun of the second declension
    - Singular forms:
        - Nominative: animus
        - Genitive: animī
        - Dative: animō
        - Accusative: animum
        - Ablative: animō
    - Plural forms:
        - Nominative: animī
        - Genitive: animōrum
        - Dative: animīs
        - Accusative: animōs
        - Ablative: animīs
2. Usage in Our Examples:
    - Nominative (subject): "animus mīlitis" (39.4)
    - Accusative (direct object): "animum laudābant" (39.2)
    - Ablative (with preposition): "in animō" (39.3)
    - Genitive (possession): "bonī animī" (39.6)
3. Common Constructions:
    - With adjectives: "magnus animus" (39.1)
    - With prepositions: "dē animō" (39.9)
    - In idiomatic phrases: "magnō animō" (with great courage)

✾ ❦ ✾ ❦ ✾ ✾ ❦ ✾ ❦ ✾ ✾ ❦ ✾ ❦ ✾

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "animus" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Concept vs. English Translation:
    - While often translated as "mind" or "spirit," animus carried broader meanings
    - Could indicate courage, character, or disposition
    - Different from English mind/spirit distinction
2. Cultural Significance:
    - Central to Roman ideas about character
    - Important in military contexts
    - Key concept in philosophy and literature
    - Related to ideas of virtue and nobility
3. Modern Understanding:
    - Compare to psychological terms
    - Related to words like "animated," "animosity"
    - Different from modern mind-body dualism

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (1.26):

Tantaene *Such great* **animīs** *in spirits* **caelestibus** *heavenly* **īrae** *angers*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Tantaene animīs caelestibus īrae? *Can such great anger exist in heavenly spirits?*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Vergil uses "animīs" to refer to divine spirits, showing how the word could apply to both human and divine contexts. The rhetorical question emphasizes the surprising nature of divine anger.

Part F-D (Grammar Notes)

- "Animīs" is dative/ablative plural
- "Caelestibus" agrees with "animīs"
- "-ne" indicates a question
- Poetic word order for emphasis

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

39.16 **Sapiens** *the wise man* **philosophus** *philosopher* **dē** *about* **nātūrā** *nature* **animī** *of the mind* **scrībit** *writes* **librum** *book* **magnum** *great*

39.17 **In** *in* **animō** *mind* **hūmānō** *human* **multae** *many* **cogitātiōnēs** *thoughts* **habitant** *dwell*

39.18 **Animus** *mind* **sapientis** *of the wise man* **vēritātem** *truth* **semper** *always* **quaerit** *seeks*

39.19 **Magister** *the teacher* **discipulōs** *students* **dē** *about* **virtūte** *virtue* **animī** *of the mind* **docet** *teaches*

39.20 **Animum** *mind* **bonum** *good* **cūra** *care* **et** *and* **studia** *studies* **formant** *shape*

39.21 **Nōn** *not* **corpus** *body* **sed** *but* **animus** *mind* **hominem** *man* **facit** *makes*

39.22 **In** *in* **animō** *mind* **sapientiā** *with wisdom* **plēnō** *full* **pāx** *peace* **habitat** *dwells*

39.23 **Philosophī** *philosophers* **dē** *about* **immortālitāte** *immortality* **animī** *of the mind* **disputant** *discuss*

39.24 **Magnī** *great* **virī** *men* **animōs** *minds* **iuvenum** *of young men* **exemplīs** *by examples* **docent** *teach*

39.25 **Animus** *mind* **fortis** *brave* **omnēs** *all* **dolōrēs** *pains* **vincit** *conquers*

39.26 **Ratiō** *reason* **in** *in* **animō** *mind* **sapientis** *of the wise man* **regnat** *rules*

39.27 **Librī** *books* **bonī** *good* **animum** *mind* **ad** *to* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **dūcunt** *lead*

39.28 **Animus** *mind* **turbātus** *disturbed* **vēritātem** *truth* **vidēre** *to see* **nōn** *not* **potest** *is able*

39.29 **Philosophia** *philosophy* **medicīna** *medicine* **animī** *of the mind* **est** *is*

39.30 **Perfectus** *perfect* **animus** *mind* **sōlā** *only* **virtūte** *by virtue* **fit** *becomes*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

39.16 Sapiens philosophus dē nātūrā animī scrībit librum magnum. *The wise philosopher writes a great book about the nature of the mind.*

39.17 In animō hūmānō multae cogitātiōnēs habitant. *Many thoughts dwell in the human mind.*

39.18 Animus sapientis vēritātem semper quaerit. *The mind of the wise man always seeks truth.*

39.19 Magister discipulōs dē virtūte animī docet. *The teacher instructs students about the virtue of the mind.*

39.20 Animum bonum cūra et studia formant. *Care and studies shape a good mind.*

39.21 Nōn corpus sed animus hominem facit. *Not the body but the mind makes the man.*

39.22 In animō sapientiā plēnō pāx habitat. *Peace dwells in a mind full of wisdom.*

39.23 Philosophī dē immortālitāte animī disputant. *Philosophers discuss the immortality of the mind.*

39.24 Magnī virī animōs iuvenum exemplīs docent. *Great men teach the minds of youth by examples.*

39.25 Animus fortis omnēs dolōrēs vincit. *A brave mind conquers all pains.*

39.26 Ratiō in animō sapientis regnat. Reason rules in the mind of the wise man.

39.27 Librī bonī animum ad sapientiam dūcunt. *Good books lead the mind to wisdom.*

39.28 Animus turbātus vēritātem vidēre nōn potest. *A disturbed mind cannot see truth.*

39.29 Philosophia medicīna animī est. *Philosophy is medicine of the mind.*

39.30 Perfectus animus sōlā virtūte fit. *A perfect mind becomes so by virtue alone.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text)

39.16 Sapiens philosophus dē nātūrā animī scrībit librum magnum.

39.17 In animō hūmānō multae cogitātiōnēs habitant.

39.18 Animus sapientis vēritātem semper quaerit.

39.19 Magister discipulōs dē virtūte animī docet.

39.20 Animum bonum cūra et studia formant.

39.21 Nōn corpus sed animus hominem facit.

39.22 In animō sapientiā plēnō pāx habitat.

39.23 Philosophī dē immortālitāte animī disputant.

39.24 Magnī virī animōs iuvenum exemplīs docent.

39.25 Animus fortis omnēs dolōrēs vincit.

39.26 Ratiō in animō sapientis regnat.

39.27 Librī bonī animum ad sapientiam dūcunt.

39.28 Animus turbātus vēritātem vidēre nōn potest.

39.29 Philosophia medicīna animī est.

39.30 Perfectus animus sōlā virtūte fit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The philosophical genre section demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Uses of Cases with Animus:

- Nominative as subject: "animus sapientis" (39.18)
- Accusative as direct object: "animum bonum" (39.20)
- Genitive showing possession: "nātūrā animī" (39.16)
- Ablative with prepositions: "in animō" (39.17)

2. Important Constructions:
   - Ablative of means: "exemplīs docent" (39.24)
   - Ablative absolute: "sapientiā plēnō" (39.22)
   - Purpose clauses: "ad sapientiam" (39.27)
   - Complementary infinitive: "vidēre nōn potest" (39.28)
3. Word Order Patterns:
   - Standard SOV: "Philosophia medicīna animī est" (39.29)
   - Emphatic placement: "Nōn corpus sed animus hominem facit" (39.21)
   - Nested phrases: "in animō sapientiā plēnō" (39.22)
4. Philosophical Vocabulary:
   - Abstract nouns: philosophia, sapientia, vēritās
   - Technical terms: ratiō, virtūs
   - Contrasting concepts: corpus/animus

These sentences demonstrate how Latin expresses philosophical concepts through various grammatical structures, showing the language's capacity for abstract thought and complex argumentation.

Lesson 40 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: meus -a -um (my)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

40.1 **Pater** *father* **meus** *my* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **ambulat** *walks*

40.2 **Māter** *mother* **mea** *my* **rosam** *rose* **pulchram** *beautiful* **habet** *has*

40.3 **In** *in* **meō** *my* **librō** *book* **multae** *many* **fābulae** *stories* **sunt** *are*

40.4 **Ad** *to* **meam** *my* **vīllam** *villa* **amīcī** *friends* **veniunt** *come*

40.5 **Meum** *my* **equum** *horse* **in** *in* **agrō** *field* **videō** *I see*

40.6 **Fīlius** *son* **meus** *my* **linguam** *language* **Latīnam** *Latin* **discit** *learns*

40.7 **Servus** *slave* **meae** *my* **mātrī** *to mother* **cēnam** *dinner* **parat** *prepares*

40.8 **In** *in* **meīs** *my* **hortīs** *gardens* **rosae** *roses* **flōrent** *bloom*

40.9 **Cum** *with* **meīs** *my* **amīcīs** *friends* **lūdō** *I play*

40.10 **Canis** *dog* **meus** *my* **per** *through* **viam** *street* **currit** *runs*

40.11 **Fīlia** *daughter* **mea** *my* **carmina** *songs* **cantat** *sings*

40.12 **Ad** *to* **meum** *my* **templum** *temple* **ambulāmus** *we walk*

40.13 **Meī** *my* **servī** *slaves* **in** *in* **agrīs** *fields* **labōrant** *work*

40.31 **Magister** *teacher* **meās** *my* **litterās** *letters* **legit** *reads*

40.15 **Per** *through* **meum** *my* **hortum** *garden* **ambulō** *I walk*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

40.1 Pater meus in hortō ambulat. *My father walks in the garden.*

40.2 Māter mea rosam pulchram habet. *My mother has a beautiful rose.*

40.3 In meō librō multae fābulae sunt. *In my book there are many stories.*

40.4 Ad meam vīllam amīcī veniunt. *Friends come to my villa.*

40.5 Meum equum in agrō videō. *I see my horse in the field.*

40.6 Fīlius meus linguam Latīnam discit. *My son learns the Latin language.*

40.7 Servus meae mātrī cēnam parat. *The slave prepares dinner for my mother.*

40.8 In meīs hortīs rosae flōrent. *In my gardens roses bloom.*

40.9 Cum meīs amīcīs lūdō. *I play with my friends.*

40.10 Canis meus per viam currit. *My dog runs through the street.*

40.11 Fīlia mea carmina cantat. *My daughter sings songs.*

40.12 Ad meum templum ambulāmus. *We walk to my temple.*

40.13 Meī servī in agrīs labōrant. *My slaves work in the fields.*

40.31 Magister meās litterās legit. *The teacher reads my letters.*

40.15 Per meum hortum ambulō. *I walk through my garden.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

40.1 Pater meus in hortō ambulat.

40.2 Māter mea rosam pulchram habet.

40.3 In meō librō multae fābulae sunt.

40.4 Ad meam vīllam amīcī veniunt.

40.5 Meum equum in agrō videō.

40.6 Fīlius meus linguam Latīnam discit.

40.7 Servus meae mātrī cēnam parat.

40.8 In meīs hortīs rosae flōrent.

40.9 Cum meīs amīcīs lūdō.

40.10 Canis meus per viam currit.

40.11 Fīlia mea carmina cantat.

40.12 Ad meum templum ambulāmus.

40.13 Meī servī in agrīs labōrant.

40.31 Magister meās litterās legit.

40.15 Per meum hortum ambulō.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adjective "meus -a -um" is a possessive adjective meaning "my." For English speakers, understanding its usage requires attention to several key points:

1. Agreement:
    - Must agree with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case
    - Not with the person who possesses the item
    - Examples:
        - meus liber (masculine singular nominative)
        - mea villa (feminine singular nominative)
        - meum templum (neuter singular nominative)
2. Declension: Like other first/second declension adjectives, meus declines: Singular:
    - Masculine: meus, meī, meō, meum, meō
    - Feminine: mea, meae, meae, meam, meā
    - Neuter: meum, meī, meō, meum, meō

    Plural:
    - Masculine: meī, meōrum, meīs, meōs, meīs
    - Feminine: meae, meārum, meīs, meās, meīs
    - Neuter: mea, meōrum, meīs, mea, meīs
3. Position:
    - Can appear before or after its noun
    - Often placed after for emphasis
    - Examples from our lesson:
        - Pater meus (after)
        - Meum equum (before)
4. Common Uses:
    - Direct possession
    - Family relationships
    - Personal belongings
    - Abstract concepts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "meus" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Family Structure:
    - Extended family was important
    - Possessive relationships were clearly marked
    - Family terms often used possessives
2. Social Status:
    - Ownership indicated social standing
    - Possession of slaves, property marked wealth
    - Personal relationships emphasized
3. Historical Context:
    - Romans valued personal property
    - Written records used possessives formally
    - Legal documents required precise possession
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English "my" but more complex
    - Shows Latin's precision in relationships
    - Helps understand Romance languages

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Catullus (Poem 101):

Per *through* **multas** *many* **gentēs** *nations* **et** *and* **multa** *many* **per** *through* **aequora** *seas* **vectus** *having traveled* **adveniō** *I come* **hās** *these* **ad** *to* **misērās** *sad* **frāter** *brother* **ad** *to* **īnferiās** *funeral rites* **ut** *so that* **tē** *you* **postrēmō** *finally* **dōnārem** *I might present* **mūnere** *with gift* **mortis** *of death* **et** *and* **mūtam** *mute* **nēquīquam** *in vain* **adloquerer** *might address* **cinerem** *ashes*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Per multās gentēs et multa per aequora vectus adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īnferiās, ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis et mūtam nēquīquam adloquerer cinerem.

Carried through many nations and across many seas, I arrive, brother, for these sad funeral rites, so that I might present you with death's final gift and speak in vain to your mute ashes.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Catullus uses possessive relationships to create emotional impact. The poem shows personal loss and the deep connection between family members in Roman culture.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Possessive relationships shown through cases
- Use of vocative "frater"
- Personal pronouns emphasize relationship
- Subjunctive mood shows purpose

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Personal Letters

Part A (Interleaved Text)

40.16 **Mārcus** *Marcus* **meō** *my* **carissimō** *dearest* **amīcō** *to friend* **salūtem** *greetings* **dīcit** *says*

40.17 **Litterae** *letters* **tuae** *your* **mihi** *to me* **magnam** *great* **laetitiam** *joy* **meō** *to my* **animō** *spirit* **dedērunt** *gave*

40.18 **Meus** *my* **pater** *father* **tuum** *your* **patrem** *father* **in** *in* **forō** *forum* **heri** *yesterday* **vīdit** *saw*

40.19 **Nostra** *our* **amīcitia** *friendship* **mihi** *to me* **cārior** *dearer* **meā** *than my* **vītā** *life* **est** *is*

40.20 **Ad** *to* **meam** *my* **vīllam** *villa* **quam** *which* **prīmum** *first* **venī** *come*

40.21 **Mea** *my* **māter** *mother* **tuam** *your* **sorōrem** *sister* **ad** *to* **cēnam** *dinner* **vocāre** *to invite* **vult** *wishes*

40.22 **In** *in* **meīs** *my* **litterīs** *letters* **dē** *about* **meā** *my* **vītā** *life* **Rōmae** *at Rome* **scrībō** *I write*

40.23 **Servus** *slave* **meus** *my* **hās** *these* **litterās** *letters* **ad** *to* **tē** *you* **feret** *will carry*

40.24 **Omnēs** *all* **meī** *my* **amīcī** *friends* **tē** *you* **salūtant** *greet*

40.25 **Meī** *my* **līberī** *children* **tuōs** *your* **līberōs** *children* **vidēre** *to see* **cupiunt** *desire*

40.26 **Mea** *my* **uxor** *wife* **tuae** *to your* **uxōrī** *wife* **multam** *much* **salūtem** *health* **dīcit** *says*

40.27 **In** *in* **meō** *my* **hortō** *garden* **novās** *new* **rosās** *roses* **plantāvī** *I have planted*

40.28 **Dē** *about* **meīs** *my* **negōtiīs** *business* **in** *in* **aliīs** *other* **litterīs** *letters* **scrībam** *I will write*

40.29 **Valē** *farewell* **mī** *my* **amīce** *friend* **cārissime** *dearest*

40.30 **Meam** *my* **epistulam** *letter* **māne** *in the morning* **exspectā** *expect*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

40.16 Mārcus meō carissimō amīcō salūtem dīcit. *Marcus sends greetings to my dearest friend.*

40.17 Litterae tuae mihi magnam laetitiam meō animō dedērunt. *Your letters gave great joy to my spirit.*

40.18 Meus pater tuum patrem in forō heri vīdit. *My father saw your father in the forum yesterday.*

40.19 Nostra amīcitia mihi cārior meā vītā est. *Our friendship is dearer to me than my life.*

40.20 Ad meam vīllam quam prīmum venī. *Come to my villa as soon as possible.*

40.21 Mea māter tuam sorōrem ad cēnam vocāre vult. My mother wishes to invite your sister to dinner.

40.22 In meīs litterīs dē meā vītā Rōmae scrībō. *In my letters I write about my life in Rome.*

40.23 Servus meus hās litterās ad tē feret. *My slave will carry these letters to you.*

40.24 Omnēs meī amīcī tē salūtant. *All my friends greet you.*

40.25 Meī līberī tuōs līberōs vidēre cupiunt. *My children wish to see your children.*

40.26 Mea uxor tuae uxōrī multam salūtem dīcit. *My wife sends many greetings to your wife.*

40.27 In meō hortō novās rosās plantāvī. *I have planted new roses in my garden.*

40.28 Dē meīs negōtiīs in aliīs litterīs scrībam. *I will write about my business matters in other letters.*

40.29 Valē mī amīce cārissime. *Farewell, my dearest friend.*

40.30 Meam epistulam māne exspectā. *Expect my letter in the morning.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

40.21 Mea māter tuam sorōrem ad cēnam vocāre vult.

40.22 In meīs litterīs dē meā vītā Rōmae scrībō.

40.23 Servus meus hās litterās ad tē feret.

40.24 Omnēs meī amīcī tē salūtant.

40.25 Meī līberī tuōs līberōs vidēre cupiunt.

40.26 Mea uxor tuae uxōrī multam salūtem dīcit.

40.27 In meō hortō novās rosās plantāvī.

40.28 Dē meīs negōtiīs in aliīs litterīs scrībam.

40.29 Valē mī amīce cārissime.

40.30 Meam epistulam māne exspectā.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In Roman letter writing, possessive adjectives played a crucial role in establishing and maintaining personal relationships. Let's analyze their usage in this genre:

1. Formal Letter Elements:
    - Opening greetings using possessive forms

    - Closing formulas with vocative and possessive
    - Example: "mī amīce cārissime" (my dearest friend)
2. Special Forms:
    - Vocative singular masculine: mī (not meus)
    - Used in direct address
    - Example: "mī amīce" vs. "meus amīcus"
3. Common Patterns:
    - Reciprocal possessives (my/your)
    - Family relationships
    - Social connections
    - Examples:
        - "meus pater tuum patrem" (my father... your father)
        - "mea uxor tuae uxōrī" (my wife... to your wife)
4. Stylistic Features:
    - Position varies for emphasis
    - Often paired with demonstratives
    - Used with terms of endearment
    - Examples:
        - "meō carissimō amīcō" (to my dearest friend)
        - "hās litterās" with "servus meus" (these letters... my slave)
5. Time Expressions:
    - Future arrangements
    - Past events
    - Examples:
        - "scrībam" (I will write)
        - "plantāvī" (I have planted)

The genre of letter writing showcases how Romans used possessive adjectives to navigate social relationships and express personal connections in written communication.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 41 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson: deus/dea (god/goddess)

Introduction

Today's lesson introduces the words "deus" (god) and its feminine counterpart "dea" (goddess), essential terms in Roman religion, literature, and culture. We'll explore how these words are used in various contexts, from religious observances to metaphorical expressions.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

41.1 **Ille** *that* **deus** *god* **templum** *temple* **pulchrum** *beautiful* **habet** *has*

41.2 **Magna** *great* **dea** *goddess* **silvārum** *of the forests* **nōs** *us* **servat** *protects*

41.3 **Deī** *the gods* **patriam** *homeland* **nostram** *our* **amant** *love*

41.4 **Sacerdōs** *priest* **deam** *goddess* **templī** *of the temple* **laudat** *praises*

41.5 **Ad** *to* **deōs** *the gods* **preces** *prayers* **mittunt** *they send*

41.6 **Deārum** *of the goddesses* **templa** *temples* **alta** *high* **sunt** *are*

41.7 **Pater** *father* **deōrum** *of the gods* **caelum** *sky* **regit** *rules*

41.8 **Deābus** *to the goddesses* **rosās** *roses* **dant** *they give*

41.9 **Deus** *god* **mare** *sea* **et** *and* **ventōs** *winds* **movet** *moves*

41.10 **Deam** *goddess* **bellī** *of war* **timent** *they fear*

41.11 **Deī** *gods* **mortālēs** *mortals* **saepe** *often* **iuvant** *help*

41.12 **Regina** *queen* **deābus** *to the goddesses* **sacrificat** *sacrifices*

41.13 **Cum** *with* **deīs** *the gods* **pācem** *peace* **habēmus** *we have*

41.31 **Magna** *great* **dea** *goddess* **lūnam** *moon* **per** *through* **caelum** *sky* **dūcit** *leads*

41.15 **Deōrum** *of the gods* **voluntās** *will* **semper** *always* **valet** *prevails*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

41.1 Ille deus templum pulchrum habet. *That god has a beautiful temple.*

41.2 Magna dea silvārum nōs servat. *The great goddess of the forests protects us.*

41.3 Deī patriam nostram amant. *The gods love our homeland.*

41.4 Sacerdōs deam templī laudat. *The priest praises the goddess of the temple.*

41.5 Ad deōs preces mittunt. *They send prayers to the gods.*

41.6 Alta sunt deārum templa. *High are the temples of the goddesses.*

41.7 Deōrum pater caelum regit. *The father of the gods rules the sky.*

41.8 Deābus rosās dant. *They give roses to the goddesses.*

41.9 Mare et ventōs deus movet. *The god moves the sea and winds.*

41.10 Deam bellī timent. *They fear the goddess of war.*

41.11 Mortālēs saepe deī iuvant. *The gods often help mortals.*

41.12 Regina deābus sacrificat. *The queen sacrifices to the goddesses.*

41.13 Cum deīs pācem habēmus. *We have peace with the gods.*

41.31 Lūnam per caelum magna dea dūcit. *The great goddess leads the moon through the sky.*

41.15 Deōrum voluntās semper valet. *The will of the gods always prevails.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

41.1 Ille deus templum pulchrum habet.

41.2 Magna dea silvārum nōs servat.

41.3 Deī patriam nostram amant.

41.4 Sacerdōs deam templī laudat.

41.5 Ad deōs preces mittunt.

41.6 Alta sunt deārum templa.

41.7 Deōrum pater caelum regit.

41.8 Deābus rosās dant.

41.9 Mare et ventōs deus movet.

41.10 Deam bellī timent.

41.11 Mortālēs saepe deī iuvant.

41.12 Regina deābus sacrificat.

41.13 Cum deīs pācem habēmus.

41.31 Lūnam per caelum magna dea dūcit.

41.15 Deōrum voluntās semper valet.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "deus/dea" requires mastering several key grammatical concepts:

1. Declension Patterns:
    - "deus" follows a mixed pattern of 2nd declension
    - "dea" follows regular 1st declension
2. Forms to memorize: Singular:
    - Nominative: deus (m), dea (f)
    - Genitive: deī (m), deae (f)
    - Dative: deō (m), deae (f)
    - Accusative: deum (m), deam (f)
    - Ablative: deō (m), deā (f)

    Plural:
    - Nominative: deī (m), deae (f)

- Genitive: deōrum (m), deārum (f)
- Dative: deīs (m), deābus (f)
- Accusative: deōs (m), deās (f)
- Ablative: deīs (m), deābus (f)

3. Special Features:
    - The dative/ablative plural feminine form "deābus" is used to distinguish from masculine "deīs"
    - Vocative singular of "deus" is "deus" (not "dee")
4. Common Constructions:
    - With prepositions (ad deōs, cum deīs)
    - In genitive phrases showing domain (dea silvārum)
    - As subject or object of religious actions (sacrificat, laudat)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "deus/dea" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Religious Concepts:
    - Romans were polytheistic
    - Gods had specific domains and responsibilities
    - Distinction between major and minor deities
    - Concept of divine intervention in daily life
2. Differences from Modern Religious Concepts:
    - Multiple gods vs. monotheism
    - Gender-specific deities
    - Direct interaction with gods through ritual
    - Physical representation of gods
3. Social Impact:
    - Religious and state affairs were interconnected
    - Priests held important social positions
    - Temples were centers of civic life
    - Religious observances affected daily schedule
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Understanding classical literature
    - Archaeological interpretation
    - Art history context
    - Religious studies comparisons

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Virgil's "Aeneid" (1.11):

tantaene *such-great* **animīs** *in minds* **caelestibus** *heavenly* **īrae** *angers* **sunt** *are*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Tantaene animīs caelestibus īrae sunt? *Can such great anger exist in heavenly minds?*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous line questions divine behavior, showing Roman comfort with examining divine nature. The rhetorical question expresses surprise at divine wrath, suggesting gods have human-like emotions.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "caelestibus" dative/ablative plural of "caelestis" (heavenly)
- "animīs" ablative plural showing location
- "-ne" interrogative enclitic
- "tantae" nominative plural feminine agreeing with "īrae"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Religious Ritual

Part A (Interleaved Text)

41.16 **Sacerdōs** *the priest* **magnō** *to the great* **deō** *god* **victimam** *victim* **sacram** *sacred* **immolat** *sacrifices*

41.17 **Deae** *to the goddess* **Vestae** *Vesta* **virgines** *virgins* **sacrae** *sacred* **ignem** *fire* **aeternum** *eternal* **servant** *preserve*

41.18 **Ad** *to* **deōrum** *of the gods* **āram** *altar* **puerī** *boys* **flōrēs** *flowers* **ferunt** *bring*

41.19 **Deam** *goddess* **Minervam** *Minerva* **poēta** *the poet* **carmina** *songs* **nova** *new* **docet** *teaches*

41.20 **Deī** *gods* **templī** *of the temple* **statuās** *statues* **aurō** *with gold* **ornant** *they decorate*

41.21 **Magna** *great* **dea** *goddess* **Cereris** *of Ceres* **mysteria** *mysteries* **sacra** *sacred* **custōdit** *guards*

41.22 **Deābus** *to the goddesses* **omnēs** *all* **mātronae** *matrons* **dona** *gifts* **pretiōsa** *precious* **offerunt** *offer*

41.23 **Pontifex** *high priest* **deōrum** *of the gods* **voluntātem** *will* **populō** *to the people* **nuntiat** *announces*

41.24 **Deum** *god* **Apollinem** *Apollo* **citharā** *with lyre* **puellae** *girls* **placant** *appease*

41.25 **Deae** *goddess* **Dīānae** *Diana* **in** *in* **silvīs** *woods* **sacerdōtēs** *priests* **sacrificant** *sacrifice*

41.26 **Ad** *to* **deōs** *gods* **superōs** *above* **precēs** *prayers* **manūs** *hands* **tollentēs** *raising* **fundunt** *they pour*

41.27 **Deārum** *of goddesses* **simulācra** *images* **marmore** *in marble* **sculptōrēs** *sculptors* **faciunt** *make*

41.28 **Dea** *goddess* **Iūnō** *Juno* **nūbentēs** *brides* **benedicit** *blesses* **et** *and* **tuētur** *protects*

41.29 **Deīs** *to the gods* **inferīs** *below* **niger** *black* **taurus** *bull* **immolātur** *is sacrificed*

41.30 **Deōrum** *of the gods* **templum** *temple* **novum** *new* **cīvēs** *citizens* **aedificant** *build*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

41.16 Sacerdōs magnō deō victimam sacram immolat. *The priest sacrifices a sacred victim to the great god.*

41.17 Deae Vestae virgines sacrae ignem aeternum servant. *The sacred virgins preserve the eternal fire for the goddess Vesta.*

41.18 Ad deōrum āram puerī flōrēs ferunt. *The boys bring flowers to the altar of the gods.*

41.19 Deam Minervam poēta carmina nova docet. *The poet teaches new songs to the goddess Minerva.*

41.20 Deī templī statuās aurō ornant. *They decorate the statues of the temple's god with gold.*

41.21 Magna dea Cereris mysteria sacra custōdit. *The great goddess guards the sacred mysteries of Ceres.*

41.22 Deābus omnēs mātronae dona pretiōsa offerunt. *All the matrons offer precious gifts to the goddesses.*

41.23 Pontifex deōrum voluntātem populō nuntiat. *The high priest announces the will of the gods to the people.*

41.24 Deum Apollinem citharā puellae placant. *The girls appease the god Apollo with a lyre.*

41.25 Deae Dīānae in silvīs sacerdōtēs sacrificant. *The priests sacrifice to the goddess Diana in the woods.*

41.26 Ad deōs superōs precēs manūs tollentēs fundunt. They pour out prayers to the gods above, raising their hands.

41.27 Deārum simulācra marmore sculptōrēs faciunt. *The sculptors make images of the goddesses in marble.*

41.28 Dea Iūnō nūbentēs benedicit et tuētur. *The goddess Juno blesses and protects the brides.*

41.29 Deīs inferīs niger taurus immolātur. *A black bull is sacrificed to the gods below.*

41.30 Deōrum templum novum cīvēs aedificant. *The citizens build a new temple of the gods.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

41.16 Sacerdōs magnō deō victimam sacram immolat.

41.17 Deae Vestae virgines sacrae ignem aeternum servant.

41.18 Ad deōrum āram puerī flōrēs ferunt.

41.19 Deam Minervam poēta carmina nova docet.

41.20 Deī templī statuās aurō ornant.

41.21 Magna dea Cereris mysteria sacra custōdit.

41.22 Deābus omnēs mātronae dona pretiōsa offerunt.

41.23 Pontifex deōrum voluntātem populō nuntiat.

41.24 Deum Apollinem citharā puellae placant.

41.25 Deae Dīānae in silvīs sacerdōtēs sacrificant.

41.26 Ad deōs superōs precēs manūs tollentēs fundunt.

41.27 Deārum simulācra marmore sculptōrēs faciunt.

41.28 Dea Iūnō nūbentēs benedicit et tuētur.

41.29 Deīs inferīs niger taurus immolātur.

41.30 Deōrum templum novum cīvēs aedificant.

Part D (Grammar and Cultural Notes)

This genre section demonstrates the rich vocabulary and grammar of Roman religious ritual. For English speakers, several key points deserve attention:

1. Religious Vocabulary:
    - Technical terms for priests (sacerdōs, pontifex)
    - Ritual terminology (immolat, sacrificat)
    - Names of specific deities (Vesta, Minerva, Apollo, Iūnō)
    - Sacred objects (āra, simulācra, templum)
2. Grammar Patterns in Religious Context:
    - Dative of advantage with deities (deō, deae)
    - Ablative of means in rituals (aurō, citharā)
    - Present participles in ritual actions (tollentēs)
    - Passive voice in formal religious contexts (immolātur)
3. Word Order in Religious Formula:
    - More formal than everyday speech
    - Often places deity names in prominent positions
    - Uses traditional ritual patterns
4. Cultural Context for English Speakers:
    - Different roles of priests and priestesses
    - Specific rituals for different deities
    - Public vs. private worship
    - Material aspects of worship (statues, temples, offerings)
5. Common Patterns in Religious Actions:
    - Offering and sacrifice (immolat, sacrificat)

- Prayer and supplication (precēs fundunt)
- Protection and blessing (benedicit, tuētur)
- Maintenance of sacred objects and places (servant, custōdit)

These sentences reflect actual Roman religious practice and use vocabulary found in authentic Latin religious and literary texts.

Lesson 42 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: multus -a -um (much, many)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

42.1 **Multī** *many* **puerī** *boys* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **lūdunt** *play*

42.2 **Urbs** *city* **multās** *many* **portās** *gates* **habet** *has*

42.3 **Multum** *much* **labōrem** *work* **hodiē** *today* **facimus** *we do*

42.4 **Senātor** *senator* **multā** *much* **cum** *with* **glōriā** *glory* **vīvit** *lives*

42.5 **Per** *through* **multōs** *many* **annōs** *years* **rēx** *king* **regnat** *reigns*

42.6 **Multae** *many* **stellae** *stars* **in** *in* **caelō** *sky* **lūcent** *shine*

42.7 **Dux** *leader* **multum** *much* **vīnum** *wine* **bibit** *drinks*

42.8 **In** *in* **forō** *forum* **multī** *many* **cīvēs** *citizens* **stant** *stand*

42.9 **Multās** *many* **epistulās** *letters* **scrībō** *I write* **amīcīs** *to friends*

42.10 **Agricola** *farmer* **multum** *much* **frūmentum** *grain* **habet** *has*

42.11 **Nāvis** *ship* **multa** *many* **arma** *weapons* **portat** *carries*

42.12 **Poēta** *poet* **multōs** *many* **librōs** *books* **legit** *reads*

42.13 **Multae** *many* **templī** *of the temple* **columnae** *columns* **altae** *tall* **sunt** *are*

42.31 **Magister** *teacher* **multīs** *to many* **discipulīs** *students* **fābulam** *story* **nārrat** *tells*

42.15 **Mercātor** *merchant* **multā** *much* **pecūniā** *with money* **mercēs** *goods* **emit** *buys*

Experimental Text: English Words with Bold Latin Endings

42.1 Many-**i** boy-**i** in garden-**o** play-**unt**

42.2 City-**s** many-**as** gate-**as** have-**t**

42.3 Much-**um** work-**em** today do-**imus**

42.4 Senator-**us** much-**a** with glory-**a** live-**it**

42.5 Through many-**os** year-**os** king-**s** reign-**at**

42.6 Many-**ae** star-**ae** in sky-**o** shine-**unt**

42.7 Leader-**s** much-**um** wine-**um** drink-**it**

42.8 In forum-**o** many-**i** citizen-**es** stand-**unt**

42.9 Many-**as** letter-**as** to friend-**is** write-**o**

42.10 Farmer-**a** much-**um** grain-**um** have-**t**

42.11 Ship-**s** many-**a** weapon-**a** carry-**t**

42.12 Poet-**a** many-**os** book-**os** read-**it**

42.13 Many-**ae** of the temple-**i** column-**ae** tall-**ae** are-**unt**

42.31 Teacher-**s** to many-**is** student-**is** story-**am** tell-**at**

42.15 Merchant-**or** with much-**a** money-**a** good-**es** buy-**it**

Key to Endings:

1. Noun Cases
    - Nominative: **-us**, **-a**, **-um** (singular); **-i**, **-ae**, **-a** (plural)
    - Accusative: **-um**, **-am**, **-um** (singular); **-os**, **-as**, **-a** (plural)
    - Ablative: **-o**, **-a**, **-o** (singular); **-is** (plural)
    - Genitive: **-i**, **-ae**, **-i** (singular)
    - Dative: **-o**, **-ae**, **-o** (singular); **-is** (plural)
2. Verb Endings
    - 1st person singular: **-o**
    - 3rd person singular: **-t**, **-it**
    - 1st person plural: **-mus**
    - 3rd person plural: **-unt**
3. Adjective Endings
    - Follow the same patterns as nouns
    - Must match their noun in gender, number, and case

Learning Tips:

- Focus on the bolded endings to see the patterns
- Notice how endings show relationships between words

- Compare similar endings across different sentences
- Practice adding these endings to other English words

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

42.1 Multī puerī in hortō lūdunt. *Many boys play in the garden.*

42.2 Urbs multās portās habet. *The city has many gates.*

42.3 Multum labōrem hodiē facimus. *We do much work today.*

42.4 Senātor multā cum glōriā vīvit. *The senator lives with much glory.*

42.5 Per multōs annōs rēx regnat. *The king reigns for many years.*

42.6 Multae stellae in caelō lūcent. *Many stars shine in the sky.*

42.7 Dux multum vīnum bibit. *The leader drinks much wine.*

42.8 In forō multī cīvēs stant. *Many citizens stand in the forum.*

42.9 Multās epistulās amīcīs scrībō. *I write many letters to friends.*

42.10 Agricola multum frūmentum habet. *The farmer has much grain.*

42.11 Nāvis multa arma portat. *The ship carries many weapons.*

42.12 Poēta multōs librōs legit. *The poet reads many books.*

42.13 Multae templī columnae altae sunt. *Many columns of the temple are tall.*

42.31 Magister multīs discipulīs fābulam nārrat. *The teacher tells a story to many students.*

42.15 Mercātor multā pecūniā mercēs emit. *The merchant buys goods with much money.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

42.1 Multī puerī in hortō lūdunt.

42.2 Urbs multās portās habet.

42.3 Multum labōrem hodiē facimus.

42.4 Senātor multā cum glōriā vīvit.

42.5 Per multōs annōs rēx regnat.

42.6 Multae stellae in caelō lūcent.

42.7 Dux multum vīnum bibit.

42.8 In forō multī cīvēs stant.

42.9 Multās epistulās amīcīs scrībō.

42.10 Agricola multum frūmentum habet.

42.11 Nāvis multa arma portat.

42.12 Poēta multōs librōs legit.

42.13 Multae templī columnae altae sunt.

42.31 Magister multīs discipulīs fābulam nārrat.

42.15 Mercātor multā pecūniā mercēs emit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, multus -a -um is an important adjective that follows standard first/second declension patterns:

1. Forms:
    - Masculine: multus (singular), multī (plural)
    - Feminine: multa (singular), multae (plural)
    - Neuter: multum (singular), multa (plural)
2. Usage:
    - As an adjective: agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case
    - As a substantive: can stand alone meaning "many people/things"
    - With ablative: multō means "by far"
3. Common Cases:
    - Nominative: multī puerī (many boys)
    - Accusative: multās portās (many gates)
    - Ablative: multā glōriā (with much glory)
    - Dative: multīs discipulīs (to many students)
4. Special Note for English Speakers:
    - Latin distinguishes between countable ("many") and uncountable ("much") nouns just like English
    - Position is flexible: can come before or after its noun
    - When used substantively, takes the gender of what it represents

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding multus requires cultural context:

1. Roman Quantity Expression:
    - Romans often emphasized quantity in their writing
    - Large numbers showed power and success
    - Public displays often involved "many" people or things
2. Social Context:
    - Having "many" clients showed social status
    - "Much" wealth indicated political influence

    - "Many" friends demonstrated social success
3. Literary Usage:
    - Authors used multus to emphasize magnitude
    - Common in historical works describing armies
    - Frequent in poetry describing nature or emotions
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English many/much distinction
    - Important in understanding Roman values
    - Key to reading historical documents

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (7.23):

Multī *many* **dīvitias** *riches* **dēspiciunt** *despise* **quōs** *whom* **parvō** *with little* **contentōs** *content* **tenuis** *simple* **vīctus** *lifestyle* **cultusque** *and refinement* **dēlectat** *delights*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Multī dīvitias dēspiciunt quōs parvō contentōs tenuis vīctus cultusque dēlectat. *Many despise riches, who are delighted by a simple lifestyle and refinement, being content with little.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage demonstrates Cicero's use of multī as a substantive noun meaning "many people." It appears in a philosophical discussion about contentment and wealth, showing how the adjective can be used to make broad statements about human nature.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Multī: nominative plural masculine, used substantively
- Subject of both dēspiciunt and dēlectat
- Demonstrates how multī can function as a noun
- Shows typical Latin word order flexibility

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

42.16 **Multī** *many* **hostēs** *enemies* **ad** *against* **urbem** *city* **veniēbant** *were coming*

42.17 **Dux** *leader* **multās** *many* **legiōnēs** *legions* **in** *into* **Galliam** *Gaul* **dūxit** *led*

42.18 **Post** *after* **multa** *many* **proelia** *battles* **pāx** *peace* **facta** *made* **est** *was*

42.19 **Multī** *many* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **in** *in* **bellō** *war* **cecidērunt** *fell*

42.20 **Multae** *many* **gentēs** *tribes* **Rōmānīs** *to the Romans* **sē** *themselves* **dēdērunt** *surrendered*

42.21 **Rēx** *king* **multum** *much* **aurum** *gold* **templīs** *to the temples* **dedit** *gave*

42.22 **Per** *through* **multōs** *many* **mēnsēs** *months* **urbs** *city* **obsessa** *besieged* **est** *was*

42.23 **Senātus** *senate* **multā** *many* **dōna** *gifts* **victōribus** *to the victors* **prōmīsit** *promised*

42.24 **Multae** *many* **nāvēs** *ships* **in** *in* **tempestāte** *storm* **perīerunt** *perished*

42.25 **Exercitus** *army* **multam** *much* **praedam** *plunder* **cēpit** *took*

42.26 **Multī** *many* **cīvēs** *citizens* **propter** *because of* **famem** *famine* **urbem** *city* **relīquērunt** *left*

42.27 **Imperātor** *emperor* **multā** *many* **templa** *temples* **aedificāvit** *built*

42.28 **Post** *after* **multōs** *many* **annōs** *years* **exsilī** *of exile* **dux** *leader* **rediit** *returned*

42.29 **Multae** *many* **urbēs** *cities* **bellō** *by war* **dēlētae** *destroyed* **sunt** *were*

42.30 **Multum** *much* **sanguinem** *blood* **terra** *earth* **bibit** *drank*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

42.16 Multī hostēs ad urbem veniēbant. *Many enemies were coming against the city.*

42.17 Dux multās legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit. *The leader led many legions into Gaul.*

42.18 Post multa proelia pāx facta est. *After many battles, peace was made.*

42.19 Multī mīlitēs in bellō cecidērunt. *Many soldiers fell in war.*

42.20 Multae gentēs Rōmānīs sē dēdērunt. *Many tribes surrendered themselves to the Romans.*

42.21 Rēx multum aurum templīs dedit. *The king gave much gold to the temples.*

42.22 Per multōs mēnsēs urbs obsessa est. *For many months the city was besieged.*

42.23 Senātus multā dōna victōribus prōmīsit. *The senate promised many gifts to the victors.*

42.24 Multae nāvēs in tempestāte perīerunt. *Many ships perished in the storm.*

42.25 Exercitus multam praedam cēpit. *The army took much plunder.*

42.26 Multī cīvēs propter famem urbem relīquērunt. *Many citizens left the city because of famine.*

42.27 Imperātor multā templa aedificāvit. *The emperor built many temples.*

42.28 Post multōs annōs exsilī dux rediit. *After many years of exile, the leader returned.*

42.29 Multae urbēs bellō dēlētae sunt. *Many cities were destroyed by war.*

42.30 Multum sanguinem terra bibit. The earth drank much blood.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

42.16 Multī hostēs ad urbem veniēbant.

42.17 Dux multās legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit.

42.18 Post multa proelia pāx facta est.

42.19 Multī mīlitēs in bellō cecidērunt.

42.20 Multae gentēs Rōmānīs sē dēdērunt.

42.21 Rēx multum aurum templīs dedit.

42.22 Per multōs mēnsēs urbs obsessa est.

42.23 Senātus multā dōna victōribus prōmīsit.

42.24 Multae nāvēs in tempestāte perīerunt.

42.25 Exercitus multam praedam cēpit.

42.26 Multī cīvēs propter famem urbem relīquērunt.

42.27 Imperātor multā templa aedificāvit.

42.28 Post multōs annōs exsilī dux rediit.

42.29 Multae urbēs bellō dēlētae sunt.

42.30 Multum sanguinem terra bibit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

In historical narrative, multus -a -um appears frequently with specific patterns:

1. Time Expressions:
    - Per multōs mēnsēs (duration)
    - Post multōs annōs (time after which)
    - Multā aetāte (ablative of time within which)
2. Military Context:
    - Multae legiōnēs (subject/object of military actions)
    - Multī hostēs (describing enemy forces)
    - Multa proelia (battles and conflicts)
3. Case Usage in Historical Writing:
    - Accusative for direct objects (multās urbēs)
    - Ablative for means or instrument (multā virtūte)
    - Nominative for subjects of historical actions (multī mīlitēs)
4. Word Order in Historical Narrative:
    - Often placed before its noun for emphasis
    - Can be separated from its noun for stylistic effect
    - Frequently begins sentences in dramatic descriptions
5. Special Uses in Historical Context:

- Expressing large quantities without specific numbers
- Creating dramatic effect in battle descriptions
- Emphasizing the scale of historical events

6. Common Combinations:
    - With military terms (legiōnēs, mīlitēs, hostēs)
    - With time words (annī, mēnsēs, diēs)
    - With abstract nouns (virtūs, glōria, honor)

These examples show how Roman historians used multus to convey the magnitude of historical events and military actions, a key feature of Latin historical narrative.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 43 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 43: Tuus -a -um (your)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

43.1 **Tuus** *your* **frāter** *brother* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **ambulat** *walks*

43.2 **Soror** *sister* **tua** *your* **pulchra** *beautiful* **est** *is*

43.3 **Pater** *father* **templum** *temple* **tuum** *your* **videt** *sees*

43.4 **Videō** *I see* **tuum** *your* **equum** *horse* **celerem** *swift*

43.5 **Tua** *your* **māter** *mother* **in** *in* **forō** *forum* **sedet** *sits*

43.6 **Servus** *slave* **tuus** *your* **cēnam** *dinner* **parat** *prepares*

43.7 **Amīcus** *friend* **librum** *book* **tuum** *your* **laudat** *praises*

43.8 **In** *in* **tuā** *your* **casā** *cottage* **dormis** *you sleep*

43.9 **Ad** *to* **tuum** *your* **hortum** *garden* **venimus** *we come*

43.10 **Rex** *king* **tuam** *your* **urbem** *city* **regit** *rules*

43.11 **Tuī** *your* **mūrī** *walls* **altī** *tall* **sunt** *are*

43.12 **Cum** *with* **tuīs** *your* **amīcīs** *friends* **ludis** *you play*

43.13 **Tuae** *your* **rosae** *roses* **flōrent** *bloom*

43.31 **Prope** *near* **tuum** *your* **flūmen** *river* **stāmus** *we stand*

43.15 **Tuōrum** *of your* **equōrum** *horses* **celeritās** *speed* **magna** *great* **est** *is*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section A Part 2 (Experimental Text)

Here is the same content with English words using Latin case endings:

43.1 *Your*-**us** *brother*-**us** *in garden*-**ō** *walk*-**at**

43.2 *Sister*-**us** *your*-**a** *beautiful*-**a** *be*-**est**

43.3 *Father*-**us** *temple*-**um** *your*-**um** *see*-**et**

43.4 *See*-**ō** *your*-**um** *horse*-**um** *swift*-**em**

43.5 *Your*-**a** *mother*-**us** *in forum*-**ō** *sit*-**et**

43.6 *Slave*-**us** *your*-**us** *dinner*-**am** *prepare*-**at**

43.7 *Friend*-**us** *book*-**um** *your*-**um** *praise*-**at**

43.8 *In your*-**ā** *cottage*-**ā** *sleep*-**is**

43.9 *To your*-**um** *garden*-**um** *come*-**imus**

43.10 *King*-**us** *your*-**am** *city*-**em** *rule*-**it**

43.11 *Your*-**ī** *wall*-**ī** *tall*-**ī** *be*-**sunt**

43.12 *With your*-**īs** *friend*-**īs** *play*-**is**

43.13 *Your*-**ae** *rose*-**ae** *bloom*-**unt**

43.31 *Near your*-**um** *river*-**em** *stand*-**āmus**

43.15 *Your*-**ōrum** *horse*-**ōrum** *speed*-**ās** *great*-**a** *be*-**est**

Part B (Complete Sentences)

43.1 Tuus frāter in hortō ambulat. *Your brother walks in the garden.*

43.2 Soror tua pulchra est. *Your sister is beautiful.*

43.3 Pater templum tuum videt. *Father sees your temple.*

43.4 Videō tuum equum celerem. *I see your swift horse.*

43.5 Tua māter in forō sedet. *Your mother sits in the forum.*

43.6 Servus tuus cēnam parat. *Your slave prepares dinner.*

43.7 Amīcus librum tuum laudat. *A friend praises your book.*

43.8 In tuā casā dormis. *You sleep in your cottage.*

43.9 Ad tuum hortum venimus. *We come to your garden.*

43.10 Rex tuam urbem regit. *The king rules your city.*

43.11 Tuī mūrī altī sunt. *Your walls are tall.*

43.12 Cum tuīs amīcīs ludis. *You play with your friends.*

43.13 Tuae rosae flōrent. *Your roses bloom.*

43.31 Prope tuum flūmen stāmus. *We stand near your river.*

43.15 Tuōrum equōrum celeritās magna est. *The speed of your horses is great.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

43.1 Tuus frāter in hortō ambulat.

43.2 Soror tua pulchra est.

43.3 Pater templum tuum videt.

43.4 Videō tuum equum celerem.

43.5 Tua māter in forō sedet.

43.6 Servus tuus cēnam parat.

43.7 Amīcus librum tuum laudat.

43.8 In tuā casā dormis.

43.9 Ad tuum hortum venimus.

43.10 Rex tuam urbem regit.

43.11 Tuī mūrī altī sunt.

43.12 Cum tuīs amīcīs ludis.

43.13 Tuae rosae flōrent.

43.31 Prope tuum flūmen stāmus.

43.15 Tuōrum equōrum celeritās magna est.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, understanding "tuus -a -um" requires grasping several key concepts:

1. Basic Meaning:
    - "Tuus -a -um" means "your" (singular)
    - Used when speaking to one person about their possessions
    - Different from "vester -tra -trum" (your plural, when speaking to multiple people)
2. Agreement:
    - Must match the noun it describes in:
        - Gender (masculine, feminine, neuter)
        - Number (singular, plural)

    - Case (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative)
3. Forms: Singular:
    - Masculine: tuus (nom.), tuī (gen.), tuō (dat.), tuum (acc.), tuō (abl.)
    - Feminine: tua (nom.), tuae (gen.), tuae (dat.), tuam (acc.), tuā (abl.)
    - Neuter: tuum (nom.), tuī (gen.), tuō (dat.), tuum (acc.), tuō (abl.)

   Plural:
    - Masculine: tuī (nom.), tuōrum (gen.), tuīs (dat.), tuōs (acc.), tuīs (abl.)
    - Feminine: tuae (nom.), tuārum (gen.), tuīs (dat.), tuās (acc.), tuīs (abl.)
    - Neuter: tua (nom.), tuōrum (gen.), tuīs (dat.), tua (acc.), tuīs (abl.)
4. Usage Tips for English Speakers:
    - Unlike English "your," Latin "tuus" changes form
    - Position is flexible in the sentence
    - Often used for emphasis when placed first
    - Can be separated from its noun

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used possessive adjectives provides important cultural insights:

1. Personal Relationships:
    - Romans placed great importance on family and friendship bonds
    - Possessive adjectives often emphasized these relationships
    - "Tuus" could indicate both ownership and emotional connection
2. Social Context:
    - Used differently based on social status
    - More formal in public speaking
    - More intimate in personal letters
    - Could show respect or familiarity
3. Historical Perspective:
    - Found frequently in letters and speeches
    - Important in legal documents
    - Used in poetry to create personal connection
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to French "ton/ta/tes"
    - More complex than English "your"
    - Helps understand other Romance languages

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's Letters to Atticus (2.1.1):

Tua *your* **fides** *loyalty* **et** *and* **benevolentia** *goodwill* **erga** *towards* **me** *me* **mihi** *to me* **satis** *sufficiently* **specta** *proven* **est** *is*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Tua fides et benevolentia erga me mihi satis specta est. *Your loyalty and goodwill towards me are sufficiently proven to me.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "tua" at the beginning to emphasize the personal nature of Atticus's loyalty. This placement is typical of Cicero's emotional style in his letters to friends.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Tua" nominative feminine singular agreeing with "fides"
- Positioned first for emphasis
- Modifies both "fides" and "benevolentia" through coordination
- Shows the flexible word order of Latin

Genre Section: Epistolary Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

43.16 **Tuae** *your* **litterae** *letter* **mē** *me* **magnō** *with great* **gaudiō** *joy* **adficiunt** *fills*

43.17 **Spērō** *I hope* **tuum** *your* **iter** *journey* **fēlīx** *happy* **esse** *to be*

43.18 **Dē** *about* **tuā** *your* **valētūdine** *health* **māter** *mother* **sollicita** *worried* **est** *is*

43.19 **Tuam** *your* **epistulam** *letter* **heri** *yesterday* **accēpī** *I received*

43.20 **In** *in* **tuīs** *your* **verbīs** *words* **magnam** *great* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **videō** *I see*

43.21 **Omnia** *all* **tua** *your* **cōnsilia** *plans* **mihi** *to me* **placent** *please*

43.22 **Dē** *about* **tuō** *your* **adventū** *arrival* **nūntium** *news* **exspectō** *I await*

43.23 **Tuī** *your* **amīcī** *friends* **tē** *you* **salūtant** *greet*

43.24 **Tuārum** *of your* **litterārum** *letters* **elegantiam** *elegance* **laudō** *I praise*

43.25 **Ad** *to* **tuam** *your* **domum** *home* **properō** *I hurry*

43.26 **Tua** *your* **verba** *words* **meum** *my* **animum** *spirit* **confirmant** *strengthen*

43.27 **Dē** *about* **tuīs** *your* **rēbus** *affairs* **saepe** *often* **cōgitō** *I think*

43.28 **In** *in* **tuā** *your* **absentiā** *absence* **diēs** *days* **longī** *long* **sunt** *are*

43.29 **Tuae** *your* **laudēs** *praises* **mē** *me* **dēlectant** *delight*

43.30 **Tuum** *your* **redītum** *return* **omnēs** *all* **exspectant** *await*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

43.16 Tuae litterae mē magnō gaudiō adficiunt. *Your letter fills me with great joy.*

43.17 Spērō tuum iter fēlīx esse. *I hope your journey is happy.*

43.18 Dē tuā valētūdine māter sollicita est. *Mother is worried about your health.*

43.19 Tuam epistulam heri accēpī. *I received your letter yesterday.*

43.20 In tuīs verbīs magnam sapientiam videō. *I see great wisdom in your words.*

43.21 Omnia tua cōnsilia mihi placent. *All your plans please me.*

43.22 Dē tuō adventū nūntium exspectō. *I await news of your arrival.*

43.23 Tuī amīcī tē salūtant. *Your friends greet you.*

43.24 Tuārum litterārum elegantiam laudō. *I praise the elegance of your letters.*

43.25 Ad tuam domum properō. *I hurry to your home.*

43.26 Tua verba meum animum confirmant. *Your words strengthen my spirit.*

43.27 Dē tuīs rēbus saepe cōgitō. *I often think about your affairs.*

43.28 In tuā absentiā diēs longī sunt. *In your absence, the days are long.*

43.29 Tuae laudēs mē dēlectant. *Your praises delight me.*

43.30 Tuum redītum omnēs exspectant. *Everyone awaits your return.*

Part C (Latin Only)

43.16 Tuae litterae mē magnō gaudiō adficiunt.

43.17 Spērō tuum iter fēlīx esse.

43.18 Dē tuā valētūdine māter sollicita est.

43.19 Tuam epistulam heri accēpī.

43.20 In tuīs verbīs magnam sapientiam videō.

43.21 Omnia tua cōnsilia mihi placent.

43.22 Dē tuō adventū nūntium exspectō.

43.23 Tuī amīcī tē salūtant.

43.24 Tuārum litterārum elegantiam laudō.

43.25 Ad tuam domum properō.

43.26 Tua verba meum animum confirmant.

43.27 Dē tuīs rēbus saepe cōgitō.

43.28 In tuā absentiā diēs longī sunt.

43.29 Tuae laudēs mē dēlectant.

43.30 Tuum redītum omnēs exspectant.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

Epistolary writing provides an excellent context for studying "tuus -a -um" because:

1. Letter Format Features:
    - Frequent use of possessive adjectives
    - Direct address to recipient
    - Personal tone and intimate context
    - Various cases showing relationship between writer and recipient
2. Common Phrases:
    - "tuae litterae" (your letter)
    - "tua valētūdō" (your health)
    - "tuus adventus" (your arrival)
    - "tuī amīcī" (your friends)
3. Case Usage in Letters:
    - Nominative for subjects: "tuae litterae"
    - Genitive for possession: "tuārum litterārum"
    - Dative with indirect objects
    - Accusative for direct objects: "tuam epistulam"
    - Ablative in prepositional phrases: "dē tuīs rēbus"
4. Word Order Patterns:
    - Often placing "tuus" before the noun for emphasis
    - Sometimes separating "tuus" from its noun for stylistic effect
    - Flexible positioning based on emphasis and rhythm

Lesson 44 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Ferō (to bear, carry, endure)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

44.1 **Servus** *the slave* **magna** *great* **onera** *burdens* **fert** *carries*

44.2 **Mīles** *the soldier* **arma** *weapons* **graviter** *heavily* **fert** *bears*

44.3 **Fortiter** *bravely* **labōrem** *labor* **ferimus** *we bear*

44.4 **Auxilium** *help* **amīcīs** *to friends* **ferre** *to bring* **debet** *he ought*

44.5 **Puer** *the boy* **librum** *book* **ad** *to* **scholam** *school* **fert** *carries*

44.6 **Nautae** *the sailors* **mercem** *merchandise* **ad** *to* **portum** *port* **ferunt** *carry*

44.7 **Vir** *the man* **epistulam** *letter* **ad** *to* **senātum** *senate* **fert** *carries*

44.8 **Agricola** *the farmer* **frūmentum** *grain* **in** *into* **urbem** *city* **fert** *carries*

44.9 **Ferre** *to bear* **dolōrem** *pain* **fortis** *brave* **virī** *of a man* **est** *is*

44.10 **Equī** *horses* **currum** *chariot* **per** *through* **viam** *road* **ferunt** *carry*

44.11 **Puella** *the girl* **aquam** *water* **ā** *from* **fonte** *fountain* **fert** *carries*

44.12 **Multōs** *many* **annōs** *years* **labōrem** *labor* **tulī** *I have borne*

44.13 **Ferēbant** *they were carrying* **spolia** *spoils* **ex** *from* **proeliō** *battle*

44.31 **Mater** *mother* **cibum** *food* **līberīs** *to children* **fert** *brings*

44.15 **Tempus** *time* **omnēs** *all* **rēs** *things* **fert** *carries away*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Section 2: Experimental Text

44.1 **slave** *slave* **great-a** *great* **burden-a** *burdens* **carry-t** *carries*

44.2 **soldier** *soldier* **heavy-iter** *heavily* **weapon-a** *weapons* **carry-unt** *carry*

44.3 **brave-iter** *bravely* **labor-em** *labor* **carry-mus** *we carry*

44.4 **help-um** *help* **friend-īs** *to friends* **carry-re** *to carry* **ought-t** *ought*

44.5 **boy** *boy* **book-um** *book* **to** *to* **school-am** *school* **carry-t** *carries*

44.6 **sailor-ae** *sailors* **merchandise-em** *merchandise* **to** *to* **port-um** *port* **carry-unt** *carry*

44.7 **man** *man* **letter-am** *letter* **to** *to* **senate-um** *senate* **carry-t** *carries*

44.8 **farmer** *farmer* **grain-um** *grain* **into** *into* **city-em** *city* **carry-t** *carries*

44.9 **carry-re** *to carry* **pain-em** *pain* **brave-is** *brave* **man-ī** *of a man* **be-st** *is*

44.10 **horse-ī** *horses* **chariot-um** *chariot* **through** *through* **road-am** *road* **carry-unt** *carry*

44.11 **girl** *girl* **water-am** *water* **from** *from* **fountain-e** *fountain* **carry-t** *carries*

44.12 **many-ōs** *many* **year-ōs** *years* **labor-em** *labor* **carry-ī** *I have carried*

44.13 **carry-ēbant** *they were carrying* **spoil-a** *spoils* **from** *from* **battle-ō** *battle*

44.31 **mother** *mother* **food-um** *food* **child-īs** *to children* **carry-t** *carries*

44.15 **time** *time* **all-ēs** *all* **thing-ēs** *things* **carry-t** *carries*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

44.1 Servus magna onera fert. *The slave carries great burdens.*

44.2 Mīles graviter arma fert. *The soldier heavily bears his weapons.*

44.3 Fortiter labōrem ferimus. *We bravely bear the labor.*

44.4 Amīcīs auxilium ferre debet. *He ought to bring help to his friends.*

44.5 Puer librum ad scholam fert. *The boy carries a book to school.*

44.6 Nautae mercem ad portum ferunt. *The sailors carry merchandise to the port.*

44.7 Vir epistulam ad senātum fert. *The man carries a letter to the senate.*

44.8 Agricola frūmentum in urbem fert. *The farmer carries grain into the city.*

44.9 Ferre dolōrem fortis virī est. *To bear pain is characteristic of a brave man.*

44.10 Equī currum per viam ferunt. *Horses carry the chariot through the road.*

44.11 Puella aquam ā fonte fert. *The girl carries water from the fountain.*

44.12 Multōs annōs labōrem tulī. *I have borne labor for many years.*

44.13 Ferēbant spolia ex proeliō. *They were carrying spoils from battle.*

44.31 Mater cibum līberīs fert. *Mother brings food to the children.*

44.15 Tempus omnēs rēs fert. *Time carries away all things.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

44.1 Servus magna onera fert.

44.2 Mīles graviter arma fert.

44.3 Fortiter labōrem ferimus.

44.4 Amīcīs auxilium ferre debet.

44.5 Puer librum ad scholam fert.

44.6 Nautae mercem ad portum ferunt.

44.7 Vir epistulam ad senātum fert.

44.8 Agricola frūmentum in urbem fert.

44.9 Ferre dolōrem fortis virī est.

44.10 Equī currum per viam ferunt.

44.11 Puella aquam ā fonte fert.

44.12 Multōs annōs labōrem tulī.

44.13 Ferēbant spolia ex proeliō.

44.31 Mater cibum līberīs fert.

44.15 Tempus omnēs rēs fert.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, "ferō" is a particularly important irregular verb to master. Here's what you need to know:

1. Principal Parts:
    - ferō (present)
    - ferre (infinitive)
    - tulī (perfect)
    - lātum (supine)
2. Present System Forms:
    - ferō (I carry)
    - fers (you carry)
    - fert (he/she/it carries)
    - ferimus (we carry)
    - fertis (you all carry)
    - ferunt (they carry)
3. Key Uses:
    - Physical carrying (like English "carry" or "bear")
    - Metaphorical bearing (enduring, tolerating)
    - Bringing or taking to a place (with directional phrases)
    - Idiomatic expressions about time
4. Important for English Speakers:
    - Unlike English, can take direct objects without prepositions
    - Often used with abstract concepts (like "bearing pain")
    - Frequently combines with prepositions to show direction

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "ferō" requires cultural context:

1. Physical Labor:
    - Slaves and workers carried heavy loads
    - Important in Roman commerce and construction
    - Essential part of military life
2. Social Meaning:
    - "Bearing" hardship was a Roman virtue
    - Connected to ideas of duty and endurance
    - Important in political and military contexts
3. Literary Use:
    - Common in epic poetry for heroic deeds

    - Used in historical writing for carrying news
    - Important in philosophical discussions of endurance
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English idioms about "bearing" difficulties
    - Helps understand Roman attitudes toward duty
    - Reveals aspects of daily Roman life

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's "Aeneid" (Book 2.708):

Tū *you* **genitor** *father* **cape** *take* **sacra** *sacred things* **manū** *in hand* **patriōsque** *and ancestral* **penātēs** *household gods* **mē** *me* **bellō** *from war* **tantō** *so great* **dīgressum** *having withdrawn* **et** *and* **caede** *slaughter* **recentī** *recent* **attrectāre** *to touch* **nefās** *it is wrong* **dōnec** *until* **mē** *myself* **flūmine** *in river* **vīvō** *living* **abluērō** *I shall have washed*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Tū, genitor, cape sacra manū patriōsque penātēs; mē bellō tantō dīgressum et caede recentī attrectāre nefās, dōnec mē flūmine vīvō abluērō."

You, father, take in your hand the sacred objects and household gods of our fathers; for me, having withdrawn from such great war and recent slaughter, it would be sacrilege to touch them until I have washed myself in running water.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage shows Aeneas speaking to his father Anchises during the fall of Troy. The verb "cape" (take) is related to "ferō" in meaning and shows the importance of carrying sacred objects in Roman religion. The passage demonstrates the Roman concern with ritual purity and proper handling of sacred items.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "cape" is imperative singular of capiō
- "manū" is ablative of means
- "attrectāre" is complementary infinitive with "nefās"
- "abluērō" is future perfect tense
- Note the careful arrangement of words for poetic effect

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

44.16 **Mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **arma** *weapons* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **ferunt** *carry*

44.17 **Nūntius** *messenger* **litterās** *letters* **ā** *from* **duce** *leader* **ad** *to* **cōnsulem** *consul* **fert** *carries*

44.18 **Centuriō** *centurion* **signa** *standards* **in** *into* **proelium** *battle* **fert** *carries*

44.19 **Auxiliārēs** *auxiliary troops* **tēla** *missiles* **et** *and* **sagittās** *arrows* **ferēbant** *were carrying*

44.20 **Lēgātus** *lieutenant* **mandata** *orders* **imperātōris** *of the commander* **ad** *to* **legiōnēs** *legions* **fert** *carries*

44.21 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **celeriter** *swiftly* **nūntium** *message* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **tulērunt** *carried*

44.22 **Impedīmenta** *baggage* **exercitūs** *of the army* **servī** *slaves* **ferunt** *carry*

44.23 **Veterānī** *veterans* **multōs** *many* **labōrēs** *hardships* **bellī** *of war* **fortiter** *bravely* **ferunt** *endure*

44.24 **Aquilifer** *eagle-bearer* **aquilam** *eagle* **legiōnis** *of the legion* **magnā** *with great* **dignitate** *dignity* **fert** *carries*

44.25 **Tribūnus** *tribune* **nova** *new* **mandāta** *orders* **ad** *to* **cohortēs** *cohorts* **fert** *brings*

44.26 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **vulnerātōs** *wounded* **ex** *from* **aciē** *battle line* **ferunt** *carry*

44.27 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **nūntium** *news* **victōriae** *of victory* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **ferunt** *carry*

44.28 **Dux** *leader* **ipse** *himself* **vexillum** *banner* **in** *into* **hostēs** *enemies* **fert** *carries*

44.29 **Sagittāriī** *archers* **pharētrās** *quivers* **plēnās** *full* **sagittārum** *of arrows* **ferunt** *carry*

44.30 **Tribūnī** *tribunes* **graviter** *heavily* **clādem** *disaster* **exercitūs** *of the army* **ferunt** *bear*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

44.16 Mīlitēs arma ad castra ferunt. *The soldiers carry weapons to the camp.*

44.17 Nūntius litterās ā duce ad cōnsulem fert. *The messenger carries letters from the leader to the consul.*

44.18 Centuriō signa in proelium fert. *The centurion carries the standards into battle.*

44.19 Auxiliārēs tēla et sagittās ferēbant. *The auxiliary troops were carrying missiles and arrows.*

44.20 Lēgātus mandata imperātōris ad legiōnēs fert. *The lieutenant carries the commander's orders to the legions.*

44.21 Equitēs celeriter nūntium ad castra tulērunt. *The cavalry swiftly carried the message to the camp.*

44.22 Impedīmenta exercitūs servī ferunt. *Slaves carry the army's baggage.*

44.23 Veterānī multōs labōrēs bellī fortiter ferunt. *The veterans bravely endure many hardships of war.*

44.24 Aquilifer aquilam legiōnis magnā dignitate fert. *The eagle-bearer carries the legion's eagle with great dignity.*

44.25 Tribūnus nova mandāta ad cohortēs fert. The tribune brings new orders to the cohorts.

44.26 Mīlitēs vulnerātōs ex aciē ferunt. *The soldiers carry the wounded from the battle line.*

44.27 Explōrātōrēs nūntium victōriae ad urbem ferunt. *The scouts carry news of victory to the city.*

44.28 Dux ipse vexillum in hostēs fert. *The leader himself carries the banner against the enemies.*

44.29 Sagittāriī pharētrās plēnās sagittārum ferunt. *The archers carry quivers full of arrows.*

44.30 Tribūnī graviter clādem exercitūs ferunt. *The tribunes heavily bear the disaster of the army.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

44.16 Mīlitēs arma ad castra ferunt.

44.17 Nūntius litterās ā duce ad cōnsulem fert.

44.18 Centuriō signa in proelium fert.

44.19 Auxiliārēs tēla et sagittās ferēbant.

44.20 Lēgātus mandata imperātōris ad legiōnēs fert.

44.21 Equitēs celeriter nūntium ad castra tulērunt.

44.22 Impedīmenta exercitūs servī ferunt.

44.23 Veterānī multōs labōrēs bellī fortiter ferunt.

44.24 Aquilifer aquilam legiōnis magnā dignitate fert.

44.25 Tribūnus nova mandāta ad cohortēs fert.

44.26 Mīlitēs vulnerātōs ex aciē ferunt.

44.27 Explōrātōrēs nūntium victōriae ad urbem ferunt.

44.28 Dux ipse vexillum in hostēs fert.

44.29 Sagittāriī pharētrās plēnās sagittārum ferunt.

44.30 Tribūnī graviter clādem exercitūs ferunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In military contexts, "ferō" shows several specialized uses:

1. Physical Carrying:
    - Weapons and equipment (arma ferre)
    - Military standards (signa ferre)
    - Messages and orders (mandāta ferre)

2. Important Military Phrases:
    - signa ferre (to carry standards = to advance)
    - auxilium ferre (to bring help)
    - spolia ferre (to carry spoils)
    - nūntium ferre (to bring news)
3. Metaphorical Uses:
    - Bearing hardship (labōrēs ferre)
    - Enduring defeat (clādem ferre)
    - Supporting military duty (onus ferre)
4. Key Grammatical Points for Military Usage:
    - Often takes accusative of thing carried
    - Uses directional prepositions (ad, in, ex)
    - Frequently appears with adverbs like "fortiter" and "graviter"
    - Perfect tense (tulī) common in battle reports
5. Word Order in Military Commands:
    - Object often precedes verb for emphasis
    - Direction terms usually follow object
    - Subject often first for clarity of command

This specialized military vocabulary shows how "ferō" was essential to Roman military communication, describing everything from tactical movements to strategic messages.

Lesson 45 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: dē (down from, about, concerning)

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

45.1 **Caesar** *Caesar* **dē** *about* **bellō** *war* **cōgitat** *thinks*

45.2 **Multī** *many* **dē** *from* **templō** *temple* **veniunt** *come*

45.3 **Senātor** *senator* **dē** *about* **lēgibus** *laws* **loquitur** *speaks*

45.4 **Dē** *down from* **collibus** *hills* **aqua** *water* **fluit** *flows*

45.5 **Pater** *father* **dē** *about* **fīliō** *son* **sollicitus** *worried* **est** *is*

45.6 **Mīles** *soldier* **dē** *down from* **mūrō** *wall* **cadit** *falls*

45.7 **Orator** *orator* **dē** *about* **virtūte** *virtue* **dīcit** *speaks*

45.8 **Magister** *teacher* **dē** *about* **litterīs** *literature* **docet** *teaches*

45.9 **Agricola** *farmer* **dē** *about* **agrīs** *fields* **cōgitat** *thinks*

45.10 **Dē** *from* **vīllā** *villa* **vertunt** *they turn* **ad** *to* **viam** *road*

45.11 **Mercātor** *merchant* **dē** *about* **pretiīs** *prices* **dīcit** *speaks*

45.12 **Legiō** *legion* **dē** *down from* **montibus** *mountains* **dēscendit** *descends*

45.13 **Poēta** *poet* **dē** *about* **amōre** *love* **cantat** *sings*

45.31 **Puellae** *girls* **dē** *about* **flōribus** *flowers* **gaudent** *rejoice*

45.15 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **disputat** *discusses*

Part A-2 (English Words with Latin Case Endings)

45.1 **Caesar**-*us* **about** *de* **war**-*o* **think**-*at* 45.2 **many**-*i* **about** *de* **temple**-*o* **come**-*unt* 45.3 **senator**-*us* **about** *de* **law**-*ibus* **speak**-*itur* 45.4 **about** *de* **hill**-*ibus* **water**-*a* **flow**-*it* 45.5 **father**-*us* **about** *de* **son**-*o* **worried**-*us* **be**-*t* 45.6 **soldier**-*us* **about** *de* **wall**-*o* **fall**-*it* 45.7 **orator**-*us* **about** *de* **virtue**-*e* **say**-*it* 45.8 **teacher**-*us* **about** *de* **letter**-*is* **teach**-*et* 45.9 **farmer**-*a* **about** *de* **field**-*is* **think**-*at* 45.10 **about** *de* **villa**-*a* **turn**-*unt* **to** *ad* **road**-*am* 45.11 **merchant**-*us* **about** *de* **price**-*is* **say**-*it* 45.12 **legion**-*o* **about** *de* **mountain**-*ibus* **descend**-*it* 45.13 **poet**-*a* **about** *de* **love**-*e* **sing**-*at* 45.31 **girl**-*ae* **about** *de* **flower**-*ibus* **rejoice**-*ent* 45.15 **philosopher**-*us* **about** *de* **life**-*a* **discuss**-*at*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

45.1 Caesar dē bellō cōgitat. *Caesar thinks about war.*

45.2 Multī dē templō veniunt. *Many come from the temple.*

45.3 Senātor dē lēgibus loquitur. *The senator speaks about the laws.*

45.4 Dē collibus aqua fluit. *Water flows down from the hills.*

45.5 Pater dē fīliō sollicitus est. *Father is worried about his son.*

45.6 Mīles dē mūrō cadit. *The soldier falls from the wall.*

45.7 Orator dē virtūte dīcit. *The orator speaks about virtue.*

45.8 Magister dē litterīs docet. *The teacher teaches about literature.*

45.9 Agricola dē agrīs cōgitat. *The farmer thinks about the fields.*

45.10 Dē vīllā vertunt ad viam. *They turn from the villa to the road.*

45.11 Mercātor dē pretiīs dīcit. *The merchant speaks about prices.*

45.12 Legiō dē montibus dēscendit. *The legion descends from the mountains.*

45.13 Poēta dē amōre cantat. *The poet sings about love.*

45.31 Puellae dē flōribus gaudent. *The girls rejoice about the flowers.*

45.15 Philosophus dē vītā disputat. *The philosopher discusses about life.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

45.1 Caesar dē bellō cōgitat.

45.2 Multī dē templō veniunt.

45.3 Senātor dē lēgibus loquitur.

45.4 Dē collibus aqua fluit.

45.5 Pater dē fīliō sollicitus est.

45.6 Mīles dē mūrō cadit.

45.7 Orator dē virtūte dīcit.

45.8 Magister dē litterīs docet.

45.9 Agricola dē agrīs cōgitat.

45.10 Dē vīllā vertunt ad viam.

45.11 Mercātor dē pretiīs dīcit.

45.12 Legiō dē montibus dēscendit.

45.13 Poēta dē amōre cantat.

45.31 Puellae dē flōribus gaudent.

45.15 Philosophus dē vītā disputat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The preposition "dē" is important for English speakers to understand because it can express several different but related concepts:

1. Physical Meaning:
    - Movement downward from something
    - Separation or departure from something
    - Always takes the ablative case
2. Abstract Meaning:
    - "About" or "concerning" a topic
    - "Regarding" or "with respect to"
    - Similar to English "about" but more formal
3. Case Usage:
    - Always requires the ablative case
    - The noun following "dē" must be in the ablative

        - Examples:
            - templum → dē templō
            - mūrus → dē mūrō
            - collis → dē colle
    4. Common Combinations:
        - With verbs of speaking (dīcere, loquī)
        - With verbs of thinking (cōgitāre)
        - With verbs of movement (venīre, cadere)
    5. Word Order:
        - Usually comes directly before its object
        - Can be separated for emphasis
        - Often starts the phrase it governs

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "dē" requires cultural context from Roman life:

1. Social Communication:
    - Romans frequently discussed topics formally
    - Public speaking was highly valued
    - Formal discussions often began with "dē"
2. Physical Space:
    - Roman architecture featured many levels
    - Movement down from buildings was common
    - Hills and elevation were important in Rome
3. Abstract Thought:
    - Romans loved philosophical discussion
    - Topics were often introduced with "dē"
    - Writing treatises "dē" subjects was common
4. Modern Connections:
    - Still used in academic titles
    - Example: "De Bello Gallico"
    - Influences formal English usage

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "Dē Officiīs" (1.1):

Dē *about* **officiīs** *duties* **ad** *to* **tē** *you* **scrībō** *I write*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Dē officiīs ad tē scrībō. *I write to you about duties.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This opening shows how Romans introduced topics in formal writing. The preposition "dē" signals the subject matter of the entire work.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "dē" takes ablative "officiīs"
- Word order emphasizes topic
- Direct and formal style
- Typical of Roman philosophical writing

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

45.16 **Philosophus** *the philosopher* **dē** *about* **sapientiae** *wisdom* **rēbus** *matters* **scrībit** *writes*

45.17 **Multī** *many* **dē** *about* **immortālitāte** *immortality* **animī** *of the soul* **disputant** *discuss*

45.18 **Senex** *the old man* **dē** *about* **virtūte** *virtue* **iuvenēs** *the young men* **docet** *teaches*

45.19 **Dē** *about* **dīvīnīs** *divine* **rēbus** *matters* **saepe** *often* **meditāmur** *we meditate*

45.20 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **dē** *about* **nātūrā** *nature* **deōrum** *of the gods* **loquuntur** *speak*

45.21 **Magister** *the teacher* **dē** *about* **summō** *highest* **bonō** *good* **discipulōs** *pupils* **interrogat** *questions*

45.22 **Dē** *about* **fātō** *fate* **graviter** *seriously* **philosophī** *philosophers* **cōgitant** *think*

45.23 **Scrīptor** *the writer* **dē** *about* **vītae** *of life* **fīne** *purpose* **librum** *book* **componit** *composes*

45.24 **Discipulī** *students* **dē** *about* **iūstitiā** *justice* **et** *and* **lēgibus** *laws* **disputant** *discuss*

45.25 **Dē** *about* **amīcitiā** *friendship* **multī** *many* **veterēs** *ancient ones* **scrīpsērunt** *wrote*

45.26 **Philosophus** *the philosopher* **dē** *about* **animō** *mind* **et** *and* **corpore** *body* **disserit** *discourses*

45.27 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **dē** *about* **vēritāte** *truth* **semper** *always* **quaerunt** *seek*

45.28 **Dē** *about* **mōribus** *customs* **hominēs** *men* **doctī** *learned* **scrībunt** *write*

45.29 **Magister** *the teacher* **dē** *about* **pulchrō** *beauty* **et** *and* **bonō** *good* **explicat** *explains*

45.30 **Dē** *about* **sapientiae** *of wisdom* **studiō** *pursuit* **multī** *many* **librī** *books* **sunt** *are*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

45.16 Philosophus dē sapientiae rēbus scrībit. *The philosopher writes about matters of wisdom.*

45.17 Multī dē immortālitāte animī disputant. *Many discuss about the immortality of the soul.*

45.18 Senex dē virtūte iuvenēs docet. *The old man teaches the young men about virtue.*

45.19 Dē dīvīnīs rēbus saepe meditāmur. *We often meditate about divine matters.*

45.20 Sapientēs dē nātūrā deōrum loquuntur. *The wise men speak about the nature of the gods.*

45.21 Magister dē summō bonō discipulōs interrogat. *The teacher questions the pupils about the highest good.*

45.22 Dē fātō graviter philosophī cōgitant. *The philosophers think seriously about fate.*

45.23 Scrīptor dē vītae fīne librum componit. *The writer composes a book about the purpose of life.*

45.24 Discipulī dē iūstitiā et lēgibus disputant. *The students discuss about justice and laws.*

45.25 Dē amīcitiā multī veterēs scrīpsērunt. Many ancient writers wrote about friendship.

45.26 Philosophus dē animō et corpore disserit. *The philosopher discourses about mind and body.*

45.27 Sapientēs dē vēritāte semper quaerunt. *The wise men always seek concerning truth.*

45.28 Dē mōribus hominēs doctī scrībunt. *Learned men write about customs.*

45.29 Magister dē pulchrō et bonō explicat. *The teacher explains about beauty and goodness.*

45.30 Dē sapientiae studiō multī librī sunt. *There are many books about the pursuit of wisdom.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

45.16 Philosophus dē sapientiae rēbus scrībit.

45.17 Multī dē immortālitāte animī disputant.

45.18 Senex dē virtūte iuvenēs docet.

45.19 Dē dīvīnīs rēbus saepe meditāmur.

45.20 Sapientēs dē nātūrā deōrum loquuntur.

45.21 Magister dē summō bonō discipulōs interrogat.

45.22 Dē fātō graviter philosophī cōgitant.

45.23 Scrīptor dē vītae fīne librum componit.

45.24 Discipulī dē iūstitiā et lēgibus disputant.

45.25 Dē amīcitiā multī veterēs scrīpsērunt.

45.26 Philosophus dē animō et corpore disserit.

45.27 Sapientēs dē vēritāte semper quaerunt.

45.28 Dē mōribus hominēs doctī scrībunt.

45.29 Magister dē pulchrō et bonō explicat.

45.30 Dē sapientiae studiō multī librī sunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In philosophical writing, the preposition "dē" takes on special importance:

1. Technical Usage:
    - Introduces philosophical topics
    - Often appears in work titles
    - Links abstract concepts
2. Common Philosophical Combinations:
    - dē sapientiae (about wisdom)
    - dē animō (about the soul/mind)
    - dē virtūte (about virtue)
    - dē vēritāte (about truth)
    - dē bonō (about the good)
3. Sentence Structures:
    - Often opens sentences for emphasis
    - Frequently paired with verbs of:
        - Speaking (dīcere, loquī)
        - Writing (scrībere)
        - Thinking (cōgitāre)
        - Teaching (docēre)
        - Discussing (disputāre)
4. Case Usage in Philosophy:
    - Abstract nouns in ablative
    - Often modified by adjectives
    - Can be followed by genitive of specification
    - Multiple topics linked with et
5. Word Order Patterns:
    - Topic introduction: Dē + ablative at start
    - Mid-sentence for subordinate points
    - Multiple dē phrases possible
    - Can separate dē from its noun for emphasis

These sentences demonstrate how Roman philosophical writing used "dē" to structure complex discussions of abstract topics.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 46 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: nē (lest, that not)

Introduction: Today we learn the conjunction "nē", which introduces negative purpose clauses ("so that...not", "lest") and indirect commands ("that...not"). This lesson will also review the subjunctive mood, which is required after nē.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin)

46.1 **Timēmus** *we fear* **nē** *lest* **hostēs** *the enemies* **urbem** *the city* **capiant** *capture*

46.2 **Pater** *father* **fīliō** *to the son* **imperat** *commands* **nē** *that not* **in** *into* **aquam** *water* **cadat** *he fall*

46.3 **Dux** *the leader* **mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **monet** *warns* **nē** *that not* **locum** *the place* **relinquant** *they abandon*

46.4 **Orat** *he begs* **nē** *that not* **pecūniam** *money* **āmittat** *he lose*

46.5 **Senātus** *the senate* **cōnsulī** *to the consul* **mandāvit** *ordered* **nē** *that not* **cōpiās** *forces* **dīvideret** *he divide*

46.6 **Cūrāte** *take care* **nē** *that not* **quid** *anything* **malī** *bad* **accidat** *happen*

46.7 **Māter** *mother* **cībum** *food* **parat** *prepares* **nē** *lest* **puerī** *the boys* **ēsuriant** *be hungry*

46.8 **Labōrāmus** *we work* **nē** *lest* **dominus** *the master* **īrātus** *angry* **sit** *be*

46.9 **Magister** *the teacher* **discipulum** *the student* **docet** *teaches* **nē** *that not* **errōrēs** *errors* **faciat** *he make*

46.10 **Agricola** *the farmer* **agrum** *the field* **colit** *cultivates* **nē** *lest* **terra** *the land* **sine** *without* **frūctū** *fruit* **sit** *be*

46.11 **Moneō** *I warn* **tē** *you* **nē** *that not* **nimium** *too much* **vīnī** *wine* **bibās** *you drink*

46.12 **Templum** *the temple* **custōdiunt** *they guard* **nē** *lest* **hostēs** *enemies* **sacra** *sacred things* **rapiant** *seize*

46.13 **Mercātor** *the merchant* **pecūniam** *money* **numerat** *counts* **nē** *lest* **fraudem** *fraud* **committātur** *be committed*

46.31 **Legātus** *the ambassador* **rogat** *asks* **nē** *that not* **bellum** *war* **renovētur** *be renewed*

46.15 **Medicus** *the doctor* **aegrum** *the sick man* **cūrat** *treats* **nē** *lest* **morbus** *the disease* **ingravēscat** *grow worse*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

46.1 Timēmus nē hostēs urbem capiant. *We fear that the enemies may capture the city.*

46.2 Pater fīliō imperat nē in aquam cadat. *The father commands his son not to fall into the water.*

46.3 Dux mīlitēs monet nē locum relinquant. *The leader warns the soldiers not to abandon the place.*

46.4 Orat nē pecūniam āmittat. *He begs that he not lose the money.*

46.5 Senātus cōnsulī mandāvit nē cōpiās dīvideret. *The senate ordered the consul not to divide the forces.*

46.6 Cūrāte nē quid malī accidat. *Take care that nothing bad happens.*

46.7 Māter cībum parat nē puerī ēsuriant. *Mother prepares food so that the boys may not be hungry.*

46.8 Labōrāmus nē dominus īrātus sit. *We work so that the master may not be angry.*

46.9 Magister discipulum docet nē errōrēs faciat. *The teacher instructs the student so that he does not make mistakes.*

46.10 Agricola agrum colit nē terra sine frūctū sit. *The farmer cultivates the field so that the land may not be without fruit.*

46.11 Moneō tē nē nimium vīnī bibās. *I warn you not to drink too much wine.*

46.12 Templum custōdiunt nē hostēs sacra rapiant. *They guard the temple lest enemies seize the sacred objects.*

46.13 Mercātor pecūniam numerat nē fraudem committātur. *The merchant counts the money so that fraud may not be committed.*

46.31 Legātus rogat nē bellum renovētur. *The ambassador asks that the war not be renewed.*

46.15 Medicus aegrum cūrat nē morbus ingravēscat. *The doctor treats the sick man so that the disease may not grow worse.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

46.1 Timēmus nē hostēs urbem capiant.

46.2 Pater fīliō imperat nē in aquam cadat.

46.3 Dux mīlitēs monet nē locum relinquant.

46.4 Orat nē pecūniam āmittat.

46.5 Senātus cōnsulī mandāvit nē cōpiās dīvideret.

46.6 Cūrāte nē quid malī accidat.

46.7 Māter cībum parat nē puerī ēsuriant.

46.8 Labōrāmus nē dominus īrātus sit.

46.9 Magister discipulum docet nē errōrēs faciat.

46.10 Agricola agrum colit nē terra sine frūctū sit.

46.11 Moneō tē nē nimium vīnī bibās.

46.12 Templum custōdiunt nē hostēs sacra rapiant.

46.13 Mercātor pecūniam numerat nē fraudem committātur.

46.31 Legātus rogat nē bellum renovētur.

46.15 Medicus aegrum cūrat nē morbus ingravēscat.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, understanding "nē" requires grasping several key concepts:

1. Basic Function
    - "Nē" introduces negative purpose clauses ("so that...not", "lest")
    - Also used for negative indirect commands ("that...not")
    - Always takes the subjunctive mood
2. Comparison with English
    - English uses many different phrases to express what Latin says with "nē"
    - "So that...not", "lest", "to prevent", "to avoid"
    - In commands: "not to", "that...not"
3. Syntax Rules
    - Main clause uses indicative mood
    - "Nē" clause always uses subjunctive
    - Present subjunctive after primary tenses
    - Imperfect subjunctive after secondary tenses
4. Common Patterns
    - After verbs of fearing (timeō, vereor)
    - After verbs of commanding (imperō, mandō)
    - After verbs of warning (moneō)
    - In purpose clauses

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "nē" requires cultural context for English speakers:

1. Roman Mindset
    - Romans were very concerned with preventing negative outcomes
    - Many religious and social customs focused on avoiding bad luck
    - Legal language often used "nē" clauses to prevent unwanted actions
2. Modern Parallels
    - Similar to legal language: "to prevent", "to ensure that...not"
    - Used in safety warnings and instructions
    - Important in diplomatic language
3. Educational Value
    - Shows Roman precision in expressing negative purpose
    - Reflects Roman practical and preventive thinking
    - Important in understanding Roman law and literature
4. Historical Usage
    - Common in political speeches
    - Frequent in military commands
    - Essential in religious formulae

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia" (12.30):

Servāte *preserve* **igitur** *therefore* **hunc** *this man* **nē** *lest* **spēs** *hope* **nostra** *our* **dēficiat** *fail*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Servāte igitur hunc nē spēs nostra dēficiat. *Therefore preserve this man lest our hope fail.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "nē" here in a powerful rhetorical appeal, combining command and purpose. The negative purpose clause emphasizes the potential loss if action isn't taken.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Servāte" is imperative plural
- "Nē" introduces negative purpose
- "Dēficiat" is present subjunctive
- Word order emphasizes "spēs nostra"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Legal Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

46.16 **Senātus** *the senate* **cēnsuit** *decreed* **nē** *that not* **quis** *anyone* **sine** *without* **permissū** *permission* **urbem** *the city* **relinqueret** *leave*

46.17 **Cōnsulēs** *the consuls* **ēdīxērunt** *proclaimed* **nē** *that not* **cīvēs** *citizens* **arma** *weapons* **in** *into* **forum** *forum* **ferrent** *carry*

46.18 **Lēx** *the law* **iubet** *orders* **nē** *that not* **quis** *anyone* **pecūniam** *money* **pūblicam** *public* **contrā** *against* **rem pūblicam** *the republic* **ūtātur** *use*

46.19 **Magister** *the magistrate* **prōvīdit** *provided* **nē** *that not* **frūmentum** *grain* **ex** *from* **urbe** *the city* **exportārētur** *be exported*

46.20 **Iūdex** *the judge* **mandāvit** *ordered* **nē** *that not* **testēs** *witnesses* **ante** *before* **diem** *the day* **tertium** *third* **discēderent** *depart*

46.21 **Praetor** *the praetor* **vetuit** *forbade* **nē** *that not* **quīcquam** *anything* **novī** *new* **in** *in* **causā** *the case* **statuerētur** *be decided*

46.22 **Tribūnus** *the tribune* **plēbī** *of the people* **intercessit** *intervened* **nē** *that not* **novae** *new* **tabellae** *debt records* **fierent** *be made*

46.23 **Cūria** *the senate house* **dēcrēvit** *decreed* **nē** *that not* **prīvātī** *private citizens* **pecūniam** *money* **ex** *from* **aerāriō** *treasury* **sumerent** *take*

46.24 **Cēnsōrēs** *the censors* **ēdīxērunt** *proclaimed* **nē** *that not* **equitēs** *knights* **sine** *without* **causā** *reason* **equōs** *horses* **pūblicōs** *public* **habērent** *have*

46.25 **Senātus** *the senate* **cōnsultum** *decree* **factum** *made* **est** *was* **nē** *that not* **quī** *any* **lēgātī** *ambassadors* **ad** *to* **hostēs** *enemies* **trānsīrent** *cross over*

46.26 **Imperātor** *the commander* **ēdictum** *edict* **prōposuit** *posted* **nē** *that not* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **praedam** *plunder* **inter** *among* **sē** *themselves* **dīviderent** *divide*

46.27 **Quaestor** *the quaestor* **cavit** *took care* **nē** *that not* **pecūnia** *money* **sine** *without* **testibus** *witnesses* **numerārētur** *be counted*

46.28 **Arbitrī** *the arbitrators* **iussērunt** *ordered* **nē** *that not* **lītigantēs** *the litigants* **causam** *case* **sine** *without* **patrōnīs** *advocates* **agerent** *plead*

46.29 **Populus** *the people* **scīvit** *voted* **nē** *that not* **quī** *any* **magistrātus** *magistrate* **bis** *twice* **eundem** *the same* **honōrem** *office* **caperet** *take*

46.30 **Cōnsul** *the consul* **prōmulgāvit** *proclaimed* **nē** *that not* **servī** *slaves* **in** *in* **legiōnēs** *legions* **scrīberentur** *be enrolled*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

46.16 Senātus cēnsuit nē quis sine permissū urbem relinqueret. *The senate decreed that no one should leave the city without permission.*

46.17 Cōnsulēs ēdīxērunt nē cīvēs arma in forum ferrent. *The consuls proclaimed that citizens should not bring weapons into the forum.*

46.18 Lēx iubet nē quis pecūniam pūblicam contrā rem pūblicam ūtātur. *The law orders that no one use public money against the republic.*

46.19 Magister prōvīdit nē frūmentum ex urbe exportārētur. *The magistrate provided that grain should not be exported from the city.*

46.20 Iūdex mandāvit nē testēs ante diem tertium discēderent. *The judge ordered that the witnesses should not depart before the third day.*

46.21 Praetor vetuit nē quīcquam novī in causā statuerētur. *The praetor forbade that anything new be decided in the case.*

46.22 Tribūnus plēbī intercessit nē novae tabellae fierent. *The tribune of the people intervened to prevent new debt records from being made.*

46.23 Cūria dēcrēvit nē prīvātī pecūniam ex aerāriō sumerent. *The senate house decreed that private citizens should not take money from the treasury.*

46.24 Cēnsōrēs ēdīxērunt nē equitēs sine causā equōs pūblicōs habērent. *The censors proclaimed that knights should not possess public horses without reason.*

46.25 Senātus cōnsultum factum est nē quī lēgātī ad hostēs trānsīrent. *A decree of the senate was made that no ambassadors should cross over to the enemies.*

46.26 Imperātor ēdictum prōposuit nē mīlitēs praedam inter sē dīviderent. *The commander posted an edict that soldiers should not divide the plunder among themselves.*

46.27 Quaestor cavit nē pecūnia sine testibus numerārētur. *The quaestor took care that money should not be counted without witnesses.*

46.28 Arbitrī iussērunt nē lītigantēs causam sine patrōnīs agerent. *The arbitrators ordered that the litigants should not plead their case without advocates.*

46.29 Populus scīvit nē quī magistrātus bis eundem honōrem caperet. *The people voted that no magistrate should hold the same office twice.*

46.30 Cōnsul prōmulgāvit nē servī in legiōnēs scrīberentur. *The consul proclaimed that slaves should not be enrolled in the legions.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

46.16 Senātus cēnsuit nē quis sine permissū urbem relinqueret.

46.17 Cōnsulēs ēdīxērunt nē cīvēs arma in forum ferrent.

46.18 Lēx iubet nē quis pecūniam pūblicam contrā rem pūblicam ūtātur.

46.19 Magister prōvīdit nē frūmentum ex urbe exportārētur.

46.20 Iūdex mandāvit nē testēs ante diem tertium discēderent.

46.21 Praetor vetuit nē quīcquam novī in causā statuerētur.

46.22 Tribūnus plēbī intercessit nē novae tabellae fierent.

46.23 Cūria dēcrēvit nē prīvātī pecūniam ex aerāriō sumerent.

46.24 Cēnsōrēs ēdīxērunt nē equitēs sine causā equōs pūblicōs habērent.

46.25 Senātus cōnsultum factum est nē quī lēgātī ad hostēs trānsīrent.

46.26 Imperātor ēdictum prōposuit nē mīlitēs praedam inter sē dīviderent.

46.27 Quaestor cavit nē pecūnia sine testibus numerārētur.

46.28 Arbitrī iussērunt nē lītigantēs causam sine patrōnīs agerent.

46.29 Populus scīvit nē quī magistrātus bis eundem honōrem caperet.

46.30 Cōnsul prōmulgāvit nē servī in legiōnēs scrīberentur.

Part D (Grammar Analysis of Legal Usage)

1. Verbs of Official Action
    - Common main verbs in legal texts:
        - cēnseō (decree)
        - ēdīcō (proclaim)
        - iubeō (order)
        - vetō (forbid)
        - dēcernō (decree)
        - prōmulgō (proclaim)
    - These verbs typically take nē + subjunctive for negative commands
2. Impersonal Constructions

- Passive forms common in legal language:
    - factum est (it was made)
    - dēcrētum est (it was decreed)
    - cautum est (it was provided)
- Often followed by nē clauses

3. Legal Formulae
    - Standard phrases:
        - nē quis (that no one)
        - sine permissū (without permission)
        - contrā rem pūblicam (against the republic)
        - sine testibus (without witnesses)
4. Sequence of Tenses
    - Present/perfect in main clause → present subjunctive in nē clause
    - Past tense in main clause → imperfect subjunctive in nē clause
    - Examples from the text:
        - cēnsuit (perfect) → relinqueret (imperfect subj.)
        - iubet (present) → ūtātur (present subj.)
5. Special Legal Vocabulary
    - Technical terms:
        - aerārium (treasury)
        - tabellae (debt records)
        - patrōnī (advocates)
        - honōs (office, position)
    - Official titles:
        - cēnsōrēs (censors)
        - quaestor (treasurer)
        - tribūnus plēbī (tribune of the people)
6. Characteristic Features
    - Precise language to avoid ambiguity
    - Full titles and formal terms
    - Complete identification of parties involved
    - Clear statement of prohibitions
    - Standard formulaic expressions
7. Word Order in Legal Latin
    - More rigid than literary Latin
    - Verb often final in both clauses
    - Subject typically first
    - Official titles precede actions

Lesson 47 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson 47: Manus (Hand; Band of Men)

Introduction: Today we study manus, a feminine fourth-declension noun meaning "hand" or "band of men." This common word appears frequently in both literal and metaphorical contexts.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

47.1 **Manus** *the hand* **mea** *my* **epistulam** *letter* **scrībit** *writes*

47.2 **Dux** *the leader* **magnam** *great* **manum** *band* **mīlitum** *of soldiers* **dūcit** *leads*

47.3 **In** *in* **manū** *hand* **gladium** *sword* **tenet** *he holds*

47.4 **Manūs** *hands* **pulchrae** *beautiful* **puellae** *of the girl* **sunt** *are*

47.5 **Agricola** *the farmer* **manibus** *with hands* **agrōs** *fields* **colit** *cultivates*

47.6 **Ad** *to* **manum** *hand-to-hand* **pugnant** *they fight*

47.7 **Per** *through* **manūs** *hands* **omnium** *of all* **liber** *the book* **it** *passes*

47.8 **Imperator** *the commander* **magnās** *large* **manūs** *bands* **parāvit** *prepared*

47.9 **Sine** *without* **manibus** *hands* **nihil** *nothing* **facere** *to do* **possumus** *we are able*

47.10 **Multae** *many* **manūs** *hands* **opus** *work* **levant** *lighten*

47.11 **Sub** *under* **manū** *the hand* **ducis** *of the leader* **mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **pugnant** *fight*

47.12 **In** *into* **manūs** *hands* **hostium** *of enemies* **incidērunt** *they fell*

47.13 **Manibus** *with hands* **deōrum** *of the gods* **templa** *temples* **aedificāmus** *we build*

47.31 **Parvā** *small* **manū** *with a band* **magnam** *great* **victōriam** *victory* **cēpit** *he won*

47.15 **Manus** *hands* **vestrae** *your* **fessae** *tired* **sunt** *are*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

47.1 Manus mea epistulam scrībit. *My hand writes the letter.*

47.2 Dux magnam manum mīlitum dūcit. *The leader leads a large band of soldiers.*

47.3 In manū gladium tenet. *He holds a sword in his hand.*

47.4 Manūs pulchrae puellae sunt. *The girl's hands are beautiful.*

47.5 Agricola manibus agrōs colit. *The farmer cultivates the fields with his hands.*

47.6 Ad manum pugnant. *They fight hand-to-hand.*

47.7 Per manūs omnium liber it. *The book passes through everyone's hands.*

47.8 Imperator magnās manūs parāvit. *The commander prepared large bands (of men).*

47.9 Sine manibus nihil facere possumus. *Without hands we can do nothing.*

47.10 Multae manūs opus levant. *Many hands lighten the work.*

47.11 Sub manū ducis mīlitēs pugnant. *The soldiers fight under the leader's command.*

47.12 In manūs hostium incidērunt. *They fell into the hands of enemies.*

47.13 Manibus deōrum templa aedificāmus. *We build temples with the hands of the gods.*

47.31 Parvā manū magnam victōriam cēpit. *With a small band (of men) he won a great victory.*

47.15 Manus vestrae fessae sunt. *Your hands are tired.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

47.1 Manus mea epistulam scrībit.

47.2 Dux magnam manum mīlitum dūcit.

47.3 In manū gladium tenet.

47.4 Manūs pulchrae puellae sunt.

47.5 Agricola manibus agrōs colit.

47.6 Ad manum pugnant.

47.7 Per manūs omnium liber it.

47.8 Imperator magnās manūs parāvit.

47.9 Sine manibus nihil facere possumus.

47.10 Multae manūs opus levant.

47.11 Sub manū ducis mīlitēs pugnant.

47.12 In manūs hostium incidērunt.

47.13 Manibus deōrum templa aedificāmus.

47.31 Parvā manū magnam victōriam cēpit.

47.15 Manus vestrae fessae sunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, manus presents several important grammatical features:

1. Fourth Declension Pattern:
    - Feminine gender (unusual for 4th declension)
    - Nominative singular: manus
    - Genitive singular: manūs
    - Dative singular: manuī
    - Accusative singular: manum

- Ablative singular: manū
- Nominative plural: manūs
- Genitive plural: manuum
- Dative plural: manibus
- Accusative plural: manūs
- Ablative plural: manibus

2. Dual Meaning:
    - Literal: "hand"
    - Metaphorical: "band of men"
3. Common Prepositional Phrases:
    - in manū (in the hand)
    - ad manum (at hand, in hand-to-hand combat)
    - per manūs (through the hands)
    - sub manū (under command)
4. Case Usage Examples:
    - Ablative of means: manibus (with hands)
    - Accusative of direct object: manum
    - Genitive of possession: manūs (of the hand)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding manus requires cultural context:

1. Physical Labor:
    - Romans valued manual work (from manus)
    - Craftsmen were highly respected
    - Agricultural work was noble
2. Military Context:
    - Manus as "band of men" shows military organization
    - Hand-to-hand combat was crucial
    - Unit coordination reflected in terminology
3. Legal Significance:
    - Manus in marriage law
    - Legal power and authority
    - Symbolic gestures in ceremonies
4. Linguistic Legacy:
    - English "manual" from manus
    - "Manufacture" (make by hand)
    - "Maintain" (hold in hand)

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's Aeneid (2.239):

Dividimus *we divide* **mūrōs** *the walls* **et** *and* **moenia** *fortifications* **pandimus** *we open* **urbis** *of the city*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Dividimus mūrōs et moenia pandimus urbis. *We divide the walls and open the fortifications of the city.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage describes the Trojans breaching their own walls to admit the wooden horse. The manual labor (implicit manus) leads to Troy's destruction.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- First person plural verbs show collective action
- Present tense for vivid narration
- Chiastic word order for emphasis

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

47.16 **Fortis** *brave* **manus** *band* **mīlitum** *of soldiers* **castra** *camp* **hostium** *of enemies* **oppugnat** *attacks*

47.17 **Manibus** *with hands* **validīs** *strong* **arma** *weapons* **tractant** *they handle*

47.18 **Dux** *the leader* **manum** *band* **dēlēctam** *chosen* **virōrum** *of men* **dūcit** *leads*

47.19 **Per** *through* **hostium** *of enemies* **manūs** *hands* **multī** *many* **captīvī** *prisoners* **transeunt** *pass*

47.20 **Magnā** *with great* **manū** *force* **urbem** *city* **oppugnāre** *to attack* **parat** *he prepares*

47.21 **Manus** *bands* **Gallōrum** *of Gauls* **in** *into* **Italiam** *Italy* **veniunt** *come*

47.22 **Manibus** *with hands* **pedibusque** *and feet* **mūrōs** *walls* **scandunt** *they climb*

47.23 **Sub** *under* **manū** *command* **imperātōris** *of the general* **victōria** *victory* **certa** *certain* **est** *is*

47.24 **Ad** *for* **ultimam** *final* **manum** *force* **proelium** *battle* **servat** *he saves*

47.25 **Manūs** *bands* **hostium** *of enemies* **circumveniunt** *surround* **exercitum** *the army*

47.26 **Parvā** *with small* **manū** *force* **magnam** *great* **victōriam** *victory* **reportat** *he brings back*

47.27 **In** *into* **manūs** *hands* **nostrās** *our* **multī** *many* **hostēs** *enemies* **sē dedunt** *surrender themselves*

47.28 **Manum** *band* **dēlēctōrum** *of chosen men* **ad** *for* **explōrandum** *scouting* **mittit** *he sends*

47.29 **Manibus** *with hands* **ferrō** *with iron* **armātīs** *armed* **pugnam** *battle* **committunt** *they join*

47.30 **Omnēs** *all* **manūs** *bands* **auxiliōrum** *of auxiliaries* **conveniunt** *gather together*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

47.16 Fortis manus mīlitum castra hostium oppugnat. *A brave band of soldiers attacks the enemy camp.*

47.17 Manibus validīs arma tractant. *They handle weapons with strong hands.*

47.18 Dux manum dēlēctam virōrum dūcit. *The leader leads a chosen band of men.*

47.19 Per hostium manūs multī captīvī transeunt. *Many prisoners pass through the hands of enemies.*

47.20 Magnā manū urbem oppugnāre parat. *He prepares to attack the city with a great force.*

47.21 Manus Gallōrum in Italiam veniunt. *Bands of Gauls come into Italy.*

47.22 Manibus pedibusque mūrōs scandunt. *They climb the walls with hands and feet.*

47.23 Sub manū imperātōris victōria certa est. *Under the general's command, victory is certain.*

47.24 Ad ultimam manum proelium servat. *He saves the battle for the final force.*

47.25 Manūs hostium circumveniunt exercitum. *Enemy bands surround the army.*

47.26 Parvā manū magnam victōriam reportat. *With a small force he brings back a great victory.*

47.27 In manūs nostrās multī hostēs sē dedunt. *Many enemies surrender themselves into our hands.*

47.28 Manum dēlēctōrum ad explōrandum mittit. *He sends a band of chosen men for scouting.*

47.29 Manibus ferrō armātīs pugnam committunt. *They join battle with hands armed with iron.*

47.30 Omnēs manūs auxiliōrum conveniunt. *All bands of auxiliaries gather together.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

47.16 Fortis manus mīlitum castra hostium oppugnat.

47.17 Manibus validīs arma tractant.

47.18 Dux manum dēlēctam virōrum dūcit.

47.19 Per hostium manūs multī captīvī transeunt.

47.20 Magnā manū urbem oppugnāre parat.

47.21 Manus Gallōrum in Italiam veniunt.

47.22 Manibus pedibusque mūrōs scandunt.

47.23 Sub manū imperātōris victōria certa est.

47.24 Ad ultimam manum proelium servat.

47.25 Manūs hostium circumveniunt exercitum.

47.26 Parvā manū magnam victōriam reportat.

47.27 In manūs nostrās multī hostēs sē dedunt.

47.28 Manum dēlēctōrum ad explōrandum mittit.

47.29 Manibus ferrō armātīs pugnam committunt.

47.30 Omnēs manūs auxiliōrum conveniunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In military writing, manus takes on specialized meanings and constructions:

1. Military Terminology:
    - manus as "band/unit of men"
    - Often modified by size (magna, parva)
    - Frequently used with genitive of description (manus mīlitum)
2. Common Military Phrases:
    - sub manū (under command)
    - ad manum (in close combat)
    - manū armātā (with armed force)
3. Tactical Expressions:
    - manum mittere (to send a detachment)
    - manūs coniungere (to join forces)
    - manibus ferrō armātīs (with hands armed with weapons)
4. Case Usage in Military Context:
    - Ablative of means: magnā manū (with a large force)
    - Accusative of direct object: manum dēlēctam (chosen band)
    - Genitive of possession: manūs auxiliōrum (bands of auxiliaries)
5. Word Order Patterns:
    - Emphasis on size: magnā manū (large force) often comes first
    - Position verbs often end the phrase: manūs conveniunt
    - Descriptive genitives usually follow: manus mīlitum

This specialized military vocabulary shows how Latin adapted the basic meaning of "hand" to express complex military concepts.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 48 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 48: Nūllus (not any, no one)

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

48.1 **Nūllus** *no* **puer** *boy* **in** *in* **viā** *the road* **est** *is*

48.2 **Nūlla** *no* **puella** *girl* **templum** *temple* **intrat** *enters*

48.3 **Nūllum** *no* **periculum** *danger* **nōs** *us* **terret** *frightens*

48.4 **Nūllī** *to no* **servō** *slave* **pecūniam** *money* **dō** *I give*

48.5 **Nūllam** *no* **spem** *hope* **hostēs** *the enemies* **habent** *have*

48.6 **Nūllō** *with no* **gladiō** *sword* **mīles** *the soldier* **pugnat** *fights*

48.7 **Nūllī** *no* **equī** *horses* **in** *in* **agrīs** *the fields* **currunt** *run*

48.8 **Nūllās** *no* **litterās** *letters* **scrībis** *you write*

48.9 **Nūlla** *no* **verba** *words* **dīcit** *he says*

48.10 **Nūllīs** *to no* **deīs** *gods* **sacrificia** *sacrifices* **facimus** *we make*

48.11 **Rēx** *the king* **nūllum** *no* **bellum** *war* **gerit** *wages*

48.12 **Magister** *the teacher* **nūllōs** *no* **librōs** *books* **legit** *reads*

48.13 **Nūllae** *no* **nāvēs** *ships* **in** *in* **portū** *the harbor* **manent** *remain*

48.31 **Nūlla** *no* **carmina** *songs* **poēta** *the poet* **cantat** *sings*

48.15 **Nūllīs** *with no* **armīs** *weapons* **urbem** *the city* **dēfendunt** *they defend*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part A2 (Experimental Text with English Words Using Latin Cases)

Null-us boy-us in road-ā is-t Null-a girl-a temple-um enter-t Null-um danger-um us-ōs frighten-t Null-ī slave-ō money-am give-ō Null-am hope-em enemies-ēs have-nt

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

48.1 Nūllus puer in viā est. *There is no boy in the road.*

48.2 Nūlla puella templum intrat. *No girl enters the temple.*

48.3 Nūllum periculum nōs terret. *No danger frightens us.*

48.4 Nūllī servō pecūniam dō. *I give money to no slave.*

48.5 Nūllam spem hostēs habent. *The enemies have no hope.*

48.6 Nūllō gladiō mīles pugnat. *The soldier fights with no sword.*

48.7 Nūllī equī in agrīs currunt. *No horses run in the fields.*

48.8 Nūllās litterās scrībis. *You write no letters.*

48.9 Nūlla verba dīcit. *He says no words.*

48.10 Nūllīs deīs sacrificia facimus. *We make sacrifices to no gods.*

48.11 Rēx nūllum bellum gerit. *The king wages no war.*

48.12 Magister nūllōs librōs legit. *The teacher reads no books.*

48.13 Nūllae nāvēs in portū manent. *No ships remain in the harbor.*

48.31 Nūlla carmina poēta cantat. *The poet sings no songs.*

48.15 Nūllīs armīs urbem dēfendunt. *They defend the city with no weapons.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

48.1 Nūllus puer in viā est.

48.2 Nūlla puella templum intrat.

48.3 Nūllum periculum nōs terret.

48.4 Nūllī servō pecūniam dō.

48.5 Nūllam spem hostēs habent.

48.6 Nūllō gladiō mīles pugnat.

48.7 Nūllī equī in agrīs currunt.

48.8 Nūllās litterās scrībis.

48.9 Nūlla verba dīcit.

48.10 Nūllīs deīs sacrificia facimus.

48.11 Rēx nūllum bellum gerit.

48.12 Magister nūllōs librōs legit.

48.13 Nūllae nāvēs in portū manent.

48.31 Nūlla carmina poēta cantat.

48.15 Nūllīs armīs urbem dēfendunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, nūllus is best understood as meaning "no" or "not any" when modifying a noun. It follows the pattern of first and second declension adjectives but with some special features:

1. Forms:
    - Masculine: nūllus, nūllīus, nūllī, nūllum, nūllō
    - Feminine: nūlla, nūllīus, nūllī, nūllam, nūllā
    - Neuter: nūllum, nūllīus, nūllī, nūllum, nūllō
2. Key differences from English:
    - Must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case
    - Can be used in any case, unlike English "no"
    - Cannot be used with other adjectives like "the"
3. Common uses:
    - As an adjective modifying a noun
    - As a pronoun meaning "no one" (masculine)
    - In any case required by the sentence structure

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding nūllus requires cultural context:

1. Roman Negation:
    - Romans often preferred using nūllus over other forms of negation
    - Showed definiteness and finality in statements
    - Important in legal and formal contexts
2. Social Implications:
    - Used in emphatic denials
    - Common in philosophical arguments
    - Found in political speeches
3. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to Romance language negatives
    - More precise than English "no"
    - Important in understanding Roman thought patterns

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia" (12.30):

Nūllam *no* **virtūtem** *virtue* **aliam** *other* **mercēde** *with reward* **quam** *than* **immortālitātis** *of immortality* **sequitur** *pursues*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Nūllam virtūtem aliam mercēde quam immortālitātis sequitur. *He pursues no other virtue with a reward than that of immortality.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses nūllus for emphasis, showing the exclusive focus on immortality as a reward for virtue. This demonstrates the word's power in philosophical discourse.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Nūllam: feminine accusative singular
- Modifies virtūtem (direct object)
- Shows typical placement at start of phrase
- Creates emphasis through position

Genre Section: Military Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

48.16 **Nūllus** *no* **hostis** *enemy* **castra** *the camp* **oppugnat** *attacks*

48.17 **Dux** *the leader* **nūllās** *no* **cōpiās** *troops* **in** *into* **urbem** *the city* **mittit** *sends*

48.18 **Nūlla** *no* **legiō** *legion* **flūmen** *the river* **trānsit** *crosses*

48.19 **Nūllum** *no* **auxilium** *help* **sociī** *the allies* **mittunt** *send*

48.20 **Nūllī** *no* **equitēs** *horsemen* **collem** *the hill* **tenent** *hold*

48.21 **Mīlitēs** *the soldiers* **nūllā** *with no* **morā** *delay* **prōcēdunt** *advance*

48.22 **Nūllae** *no* **sagittae** *arrows* **in** *in* **pharētrīs** *the quivers* **manent** *remain*

48.23 **Imperator** *the commander* **nūllum** *no* **signum** *signal* **dat** *gives*

48.24 **Nūllī** *to no* **tribūnō** *tribune* **imperia** *orders* **dantur** *are given*

48.25 **Centuriōnēs** *the centurions* **nūllōs** *no* **hostēs** *enemies* **vident** *see*

48.26 **Nūllum** *no* **perīculum** *danger* **castrīs** *to the camp* **appropinquat** *approaches*

48.27 **Explōrātōrēs** *the scouts* **nūllās** *no* **insidiās** *ambushes* **inveniunt** *find*

48.28 **Nūllō** *with no* **tēlō** *weapon* **barbarī** *the barbarians* **pugnant** *fight*

48.29 **Nūlla** *no* **castra** *camps* **in** *in* **montibus** *the mountains* **sunt** *are*

48.30 **Nūllīs** *with no* **scūtīs** *shields* **cohortēs** *the cohorts* **prōgrediuntur** *advance*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

48.16 Nūllus hostis castra oppugnat. *No enemy attacks the camp.*

48.17 Dux nūllās cōpiās in urbem mittit. *The leader sends no troops into the city.*

48.18 Nūlla legiō flūmen trānsit. *No legion crosses the river.*

48.19 Nūllum auxilium sociī mittunt. *The allies send no help.*

48.20 Nūllī equitēs collem tenent. *No horsemen hold the hill.*

48.21 Mīlitēs nūllā morā prōcēdunt. *The soldiers advance with no delay.*

48.22 Nūllae sagittae in pharētrīs manent. *No arrows remain in the quivers.*

48.23 Imperator nūllum signum dat. *The commander gives no signal.*

48.24 Nūllī tribūnō imperia dantur. *Orders are given to no tribune.*

48.25 Centuriōnēs nūllōs hostēs vident. *The centurions see no enemies.*

48.26 Nūllum perīculum castrīs appropinquat. *No danger approaches the camp.*

48.27 Explōrātōrēs nūllās insidiās inveniunt. *The scouts find no ambushes.*

48.28 Nūllō tēlō barbarī pugnant. *The barbarians fight with no weapon.*

48.29 Nūlla castra in montibus sunt. *There are no camps in the mountains.*

48.30 Nūllīs scūtīs cohortēs prōgrediuntur. *The cohorts advance with no shields.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Only)

48.16 Nūllus hostis castra oppugnat.

48.17 Dux nūllās cōpiās in urbem mittit.

48.18 Nūlla legiō flūmen trānsit.

48.19 Nūllum auxilium sociī mittunt.

48.20 Nūllī equitēs collem tenent.

48.21 Mīlitēs nūllā morā prōcēdunt.

48.22 Nūllae sagittae in pharētrīs manent.

48.23 Imperator nūllum signum dat.

48.24 Nūllī tribūnō imperia dantur.

48.25 Centuriōnēs nūllōs hostēs vident.

48.26 Nūllum perīculum castrīs appropinquat.

48.27 Explōrātōrēs nūllās insidiās inveniunt.

48.28 Nūllō tēlō barbarī pugnant.

48.29 Nūlla castra in montibus sunt.

48.30 Nūllīs scūtīs cohortēs prōgrediuntur.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In this military narrative section, nūllus is used to describe various aspects of warfare and military operations where something is notably absent. Let's analyze its usage:

1. Position in Military Commands:
    - Often placed at the beginning for emphasis
    - Can precede or follow the noun it modifies
    - Creates dramatic effect in military reports
2. Case Usage in Military Context:
    - Nominative: nūllus hostis (no enemy) as subject
    - Accusative: nūllās cōpiās (no troops) as direct object
    - Ablative: nūllā morā (with no delay) in ablative of manner
    - Dative: nūllī tribūnō (to no tribune) as indirect object
3. Agreement Patterns:
    - With military terms:
        - Masculine: nūllus hostis, nūllī equitēs
        - Feminine: nūlla legiō, nūllae sagittae
        - Neuter: nūllum signum, nūlla castra (plural)
4. Special Military Vocabulary:
    - Terms for troops: cōpiae, legiō, cohortēs
    - Equipment: tēla, scūta, sagittae
    - Positions: collis, castra, montes
    - Personnel: dux, imperator, tribūnus
5. Common Constructions in Military Writing:
    - With ablative of means: nūllō tēlō pugnant
    - With ablative of manner: nūllā morā prōcēdunt
    - In negative reports: nūllōs hostēs vident

The examples show how Roman military writers used nūllus to report:

- Absence of enemy activity
- Lack of equipment or resources
- Missing tactical support
- Clear battlefield conditions
- Negative reconnaissance reports

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 49 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson: Latin Adverb "nunc" (now)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

49.1 **Nunc** *now* **pater** *father* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **ambulat** *walks*

49.2 **Senex** *old man* **nunc** *now* **sub** *under* **arboribus** *trees* **sedet** *sits*

49.3 **Nunc** *now* **tempus** *time* **est** *is* **labōris** *of work*

49.4 **Puella** *girl* **nunc** *now* **flōrēs** *flowers* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **legit** *gathers*

49.5 **Nunc** *now* **omnēs** *all* **dormīunt** *sleep*

49.6 **Miles** *soldier* **nunc** *now* **arma** *weapons* **portat** *carries*

49.7 **Magister** *teacher* **nunc** *now* **discipulōs** *students* **docet** *teaches*

49.8 **Nunc** *now* **agricola** *farmer* **in** *in* **agrīs** *fields* **labōrat** *works*

49.9 **Mater** *mother* **nunc** *now* **cēnam** *dinner* **parat** *prepares*

49.10 **Nunc** *now* **sōl** *sun* **altē** *high* **in** *in* **caelō** *sky* **stat** *stands*

49.11 **Mercātor** *merchant* **nunc** *now* **mercēs** *goods* **vēndit** *sells*

49.12 **Nunc** *now* **nāvēs** *ships* **portum** *harbor* **intrant** *enter*

49.13 **Servus** *slave* **nunc** *now* **aquam** *water* **ē** *from* **fonte** *fountain* **portat** *carries*

49.31 **Nunc** *now* **pluit** *it rains* **et** *and* **ventus** *wind* **flat** *blows*

49.15 **Sacerdōs** *priest* **nunc** *now* **deōs** *gods* **ōrat** *prays to*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

49.1 Nunc pater in hortō ambulat. *Now father walks in the garden.*

49.2 Senex nunc sub arboribus sedet. *The old man now sits under the trees.*

49.3 Nunc tempus labōris est. *Now is the time of work.*

49.4 Puella nunc flōrēs in hortō legit. *The girl now gathers flowers in the garden.*

49.5 Nunc omnēs dormīunt. *Now everyone sleeps.*

49.6 Miles nunc arma portat. *The soldier now carries weapons.*

49.7 Magister nunc discipulōs docet. *The teacher now teaches the students.*

49.8 Nunc agricola in agrīs labōrat. *Now the farmer works in the fields.*

49.9 Mater nunc cēnam parat. *Mother now prepares dinner.*

49.10 Nunc sōl altē in caelō stat. *Now the sun stands high in the sky.*

49.11 Mercātor nunc mercēs vēndit. *The merchant now sells goods.*

49.12 Nunc nāvēs portum intrant. *Now the ships enter the harbor.*

49.13 Servus nunc aquam ē fonte portat. *The slave now carries water from the fountain.*

49.31 Nunc pluit et ventus flat. *Now it rains and the wind blows.*

49.15 Sacerdōs nunc deōs ōrat. *The priest now prays to the gods.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

49.1 Nunc pater in hortō ambulat.

49.2 Senex nunc sub arboribus sedet.

49.3 Nunc tempus labōris est.

49.4 Puella nunc flōrēs in hortō legit.

49.5 Nunc omnēs dormīunt.

49.6 Miles nunc arma portat.

49.7 Magister nunc discipulōs docet.

49.8 Nunc agricola in agrīs labōrat.

49.9 Mater nunc cēnam parat.

49.10 Nunc sōl altē in caelō stat.

49.11 Mercātor nunc mercēs vēndit.

49.12 Nunc nāvēs portum intrant.

49.13 Servus nunc aquam ē fonte portat.

49.31 Nunc pluit et ventus flat.

49.15 Sacerdōs nunc deōs ōrat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "nunc" involves several key points:

1. Basic Function:
    - "Nunc" is an adverb meaning "now"
    - Unlike English "now," it cannot be used as a conjunction
    - Always refers to present time
2. Position in Sentence:
    - Can appear at the beginning, middle, or end
    - Often appears early for emphasis
    - Frequently placed just before the verb it modifies
3. Usage with Tenses:

    - Most commonly used with present tense
    - Can be used with perfect tense for immediate past
    - Never used with future tense (Romans used "iam" for future)
4. Important Differences from English:
    - Cannot be used as a connecting word ("now then...")
    - Does not have the English meaning of "well" or "so"
    - Always temporal, never logical
5. Common Combinations:
    - nunc ipsum (right now)
    - etiam nunc (even now)
    - ut nunc (as things are now)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding how Romans used "nunc" provides insight into their culture:

1. Time Consciousness:
    - Romans were very aware of present moment
    - Daily life followed strict schedules
    - Different activities marked different times of day
2. Social Context:
    - Many activities happened at set times
    - "Nunc" often marked transitions
    - Important in both private and public life
3. Literary Use:
    - Poets used "nunc" for dramatic effect
    - Historians used it for vivid narration
    - Speakers used it to emphasize immediate needs
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English "now" but more restricted
    - Helps understand Roman time concepts
    - Shows Roman focus on present action

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Virgil's "Aeneid" (Book 2.354):

Nunc *now* **moriēmur** *we shall die* **inultī** *unavenged*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Nunc moriēmur inultī. *Now we shall die unavenged.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This dramatic line shows how "nunc" can create immediate urgency. Virgil uses it to heighten the tragic moment as Troy falls.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Nunc" emphasizes immediate future
- "Moriēmur" is future tense
- "Inultī" is nominative plural masculine
- Word order emphasizes timing

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Weather Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

49.16 **Nunc** *now* **tempestās** *weather* **serēna** *clear* **est** *is* **et** *and* **sōl** *sun* **lūcet** *shines*

49.17 **Ventus** *wind* **nunc** *now* **ab** *from* **occidente** *west* **flat** *blows*

49.18 **Nunc** *now* **nūbēs** *clouds* **caelum** *sky* **tegunt** *cover*

49.19 **Imber** *rain* **nunc** *now* **leviter** *lightly* **cadit** *falls*

49.20 **Nunc** *now* **flūmina** *rivers* **plūviā** *with rain* **crēscunt** *grow*

49.21 **Agricolae** *farmers* **nunc** *now* **plūviam** *rain* **exspectant** *await*

49.22 **Nunc** *now* **mare** *sea* **tranquillum** *calm* **est** *is*

49.23 **Nautae** *sailors* **nunc** *now* **ventum** *wind* **secundum** *favorable* **habent** *have*

49.24 **Nunc** *now* **nebula** *fog* **campōs** *fields* **tegit** *covers*

49.25 **Aestus** *heat* **nunc** *now* **magnus** *great* **est** *is*

49.26 **Nunc** *now* **tonitrua** *thunders* **procul** *far away* **audīmus** *we hear*

49.27 **Fulgura** *lightning* **nunc** *now* **caelum** *sky* **illūminant** *illuminate*

49.28 **Nunc** *now* **gelū** *frost* **herbam** *grass* **tegit** *covers*

49.29 **Tempestās** *storm* **nunc** *now* **appropinquat** *approaches*

49.30 **Nunc** *now* **ventus** *wind* **folia** *leaves* **raptat** *snatches*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

49.16 Nunc tempestās serēna est et sōl lūcet. *Now the weather is clear and the sun shines.*

49.17 Ventus nunc ab occidente flat. *The wind now blows from the west.*

49.18 Nunc nūbēs caelum tegunt. *Now clouds cover the sky.*

49.19 Imber nunc leviter cadit. *Rain now falls lightly.*

49.20 Nunc flūmina plūviā crēscunt. *Now the rivers grow with rain.*

49.21 Agricolae nunc plūviam exspectant. *The farmers now await rain.*

49.22 Nunc mare tranquillum est. *Now the sea is calm.*

49.23 Nautae nunc ventum secundum habent. *The sailors now have a favorable wind.*

49.24 Nunc nebula campōs tegit. *Now fog covers the fields.*

49.25 Aestus nunc magnus est. *Now the heat is great.*

49.26 Nunc tonitrua procul audīmus. *Now we hear thunder far away.*

49.27 Fulgura nunc caelum illūminant. *Now lightning illuminates the sky.*

49.28 Nunc gelū herbam tegit. *Now frost covers the grass.*

49.29 Tempestās nunc appropinquat. *Now a storm approaches.*

49.30 Nunc ventus folia raptat. *Now the wind snatches the leaves.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Only)

49.16 Nunc tempestās serēna est et sōl lūcet.

49.17 Ventus nunc ab occidente flat.

49.18 Nunc nūbēs caelum tegunt.

49.19 Imber nunc leviter cadit.

49.20 Nunc flūmina plūviā crēscunt.

49.21 Agricolae nunc plūviam exspectant.

49.22 Nunc mare tranquillum est.

49.23 Nautae nunc ventum secundum habent.

49.24 Nunc nebula campōs tegit.

49.25 Aestus nunc magnus est.

49.26 Nunc tonitrua procul audīmus.

49.27 Fulgura nunc caelum illūminant.

49.28 Nunc gelū herbam tegit.

49.29 Tempestās nunc appropinquat.

49.30 Nunc ventus folia raptat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The weather report genre demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Weather Expressions:
    - Impersonal verbs (pluit - it rains)
    - Weather nouns with est (tempestās serēna est)
    - Natural phenomena as subjects
2. Use of "Nunc":
    - Emphasizes immediate conditions
    - Shows changing weather patterns
    - Creates vivid present descriptions
    - Links weather observations
3. Case Usage in Weather Descriptions:
    - Ablative for means (plūviā - with rain)
    - Accusative for extent (tōtum diem - all day)
    - Ablative of direction (ab occidente - from the west)
4. Specific Weather Vocabulary:
    - Natural phenomena: sōl, imber, ventus
    - Descriptive adjectives: serēnus, tranquillus
    - Weather-specific verbs: flat, pluit, ningit
5. Sentence Patterns:
    - Simple statements (Mare tranquillum est)
    - Compound actions (Fulgura illūminant et tonitrua resonant)
    - Impersonal constructions (pluit, ningit)
6. Word Order:
    - Flexibility based on emphasis
    - "Nunc" often first for immediate conditions
    - Weather phenomenon typically precedes its description
7. Verb Tenses in Weather:
    - Present for current conditions
    - Perfect for changes
    - Imperfect for ongoing conditions
    - Future for predictions

These weather expressions show how Latin efficiently describes natural phenomena using various grammatical tools: impersonal verbs, case usage, and flexible word order.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 50 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Lesson: Latin Personal Pronoun "nōs" (we)

Part A (Interleaved English-Latin Text)

50.1 **Nōs** *we* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **ambulāmus** *walk*

50.2 **Ad** *to* **templum** *temple* **sacrum** *sacred* **nōs** *we* **properāmus** *hurry*

50.3 **Pater** *father* **nōbīs** *to us* **librōs** *books* **dat** *gives*

50.4 **Magister** *teacher* **nōs** *us* **in** *in* **scholā** *school* **docet** *teaches*

50.5 **Rēx** *king* **exercitum** *army* **nostrī** *of us* **dūcit** *leads*

50.6 **Amīcī** *friends* **nostrum** *of us* **ad** *to* **cēnam** *dinner* **venīunt** *come*

50.7 **Vir** *man* **cum** *with* **nōbīs** *us* **prō** *in front of* **templō** *temple* **stat** *stands*

50.8 **Māter** *mother* **nōs** *us* **ad** *to* **forum** *forum* **vocat** *calls*

50.9 **Nōbīs** *for us* **via** *road* **longa** *long* **est** *is*

50.10 **Nōs** *we* **ad** *to* **mare** *sea* **nāvigāmus** *sail*

50.11 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **nōbīscum** *with us* **urbem** *city* **dēfendunt** *defend*

50.12 **Dux** *leader* **nostrī** *of us* **virtūtem** *courage* **laudat** *praises*

50.13 **Per** *through* **agrōs** *fields* **nōs** *we* **equitāmus** *ride*

50.31 **Nōs** *we* **dīs** *to the gods* **victimās** *sacrifices* **offerimus** *offer*

50.15 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **nostrum** *of us* **hostēs** *enemies* **vincunt** *conquer*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

50.1 Nōs in hortō ambulāmus. *We walk in the garden.*

50.2 Ad templum sacrum nōs properāmus. *We hurry to the sacred temple.*

50.3 Pater nōbīs librōs dat. *Father gives books to us.*

50.4 Magister nōs in scholā docet. *The teacher teaches us in school.*

50.5 Rēx exercitum nostrī dūcit. *The king leads our army.*

50.6 Amīcī nostrum ad cēnam venīunt. *Our friends come to dinner.*

50.7 Vir cum nōbīs prō templō stat. *The man stands with us in front of the temple.*

50.8 Māter nōs ad forum vocat. *Mother calls us to the forum.*

50.9 Nōbīs via longa est. *The road is long for us.*

50.10 Nōs ad mare nāvigāmus. *We sail to the sea.*

50.11 Cīvēs nōbīscum urbem dēfendunt. *The citizens defend the city with us.*

50.12 Dux nostrī virtūtem laudat. *The leader praises our courage.*

50.13 Per agrōs nōs equitāmus. *We ride through the fields.*

50.31 Nōs dīs victimās offerimus. *We offer sacrifices to the gods.*

50.15 Legiōnēs nostrum hostēs vincunt. *Our legions conquer the enemies.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

50.1 Nōs in hortō ambulāmus.

50.2 Ad templum sacrum nōs properāmus.

50.3 Pater nōbīs librōs dat.

50.4 Magister nōs in scholā docet.

50.5 Rēx exercitum nostrī dūcit.

50.6 Amīcī nostrum ad cēnam venīunt.

50.7 Vir cum nōbīs prō templō stat.

50.8 Māter nōs ad forum vocat.

50.9 Nōbīs via longa est.

50.10 Nōs ad mare nāvigāmus.

50.11 Cīvēs nōbīscum urbem dēfendunt.

50.12 Dux nostrī virtūtem laudat.

50.13 Per agrōs nōs equitāmus.

50.31 Nōs dīs victimās offerimus.

50.15 Legiōnēs nostrum hostēs vincunt.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, the pronoun "nōs" (we) has several important features:

1. Forms:
    - Nominative: nōs (we)
    - Genitive: nostrum/nostrī (of us, our)
    - Dative: nōbīs (to/for us)
    - Accusative: nōs (us)
    - Ablative: nōbīs (by/with/from us)
2. Key Differences from English:
    - Latin distinguishes between nostrum (partitive) and nostrī (objective)
    - The ablative case has no direct English equivalent
    - The pronoun often can be omitted when it's the subject
3. Common Uses:
    - Subject of verb (nominative)
    - Direct object (accusative)
    - Indirect object (dative)
    - Possession (genitive)

    - With prepositions (varies by preposition)
4. Important Notes:
    - Verb endings already show person and number
    - "Nōs" adds emphasis when used as subject
    - Forms must agree with their function in the sentence

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "nōs" in Roman culture:

1. Social Implications:
    - Romans emphasized collective identity
    - Group membership was crucial in society
    - "We" often indicated social class or status
2. Historical Usage:
    - Political speeches used "nōs" to build unity
    - Military commands emphasized group action
    - Legal documents used precise pronouns
3. Modern Comparisons:
    - Similar to English "we" but more formal
    - Used differently in official contexts
    - Cultural emphasis on group over individual
4. Literary Context:
    - Authors used "nōs" for different effects
    - Could indicate authority or humility
    - Important in rhetorical techniques

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Vergil's "Aeneid" (1.1):

Arma *arms* **virumque** *and the man* **canō** *I sing* **Trōiae** *of Troy* **quī** *who* **prīmus** *first* **ab** *from* **ōrīs** *the shores* **ad** *to* **nōs** *us* **vēnit** *came*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Arma virumque canō, Trōiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs ad nōs vēnit." *I sing of arms and the man who first came to us from the shores of Troy.*

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Vergil uses "nōs" to connect the Roman audience to their legendary past. The pronoun creates immediacy and personal connection with the epic's events.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Nōs" is accusative, object of preposition "ad"
- Shows direction toward the Romans
- Part of complex sentence structure
- Links past to present through grammar

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Dispatch

Part A (Interleaved Text)

50.16 **Nōs** *we* **castra** *camp* **nostra** *our* **prope** *near* **flūmen** *river* **pōnimus** *place*

50.17 **Hostēs** *enemies* **nōbīs** *against us* **bellum** *war* **parant** *prepare*

50.18 **Dux** *leader* **nostrī** *of us* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **ad** *to* **arma** *arms* **vocat** *calls*

50.19 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **nōbīscum** *with us* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnant** *fight*

50.20 **Nōs** *we* **hostium** *of enemies* **impetum** *attack* **sustinēmus** *withstand*

50.21 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **nostrum** *of us* **campum** *field* **tenent** *hold*

50.22 **Sagittāriī** *archers* **nostrī** *our* **multōs** *many* **hostēs** *enemies* **necant** *kill*

50.23 **Ad** *to* **nōs** *us* **auxilia** *reinforcements* **magnā** *great* **cum** *with* **celeritāte** *speed* **veniunt** *come*

50.24 **Nōbīs** *for us* **victōria** *victory* **certa** *certain* **vidētur** *seems*

50.25 **Imperator** *commander* **nōs** *us* **ob** *because of* **virtūtem** *courage* **laudat** *praises*

50.26 **Nōbīscum** *with us* **multī** *many* **sociī** *allies* **pugnant** *fight*

50.27 **Hostēs** *enemies* **ā** *from* **nōbīs** *us* **superātī** *overcome* **sunt** *have been*

50.28 **Nōs** *we* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **triumphantēs** *triumphant* **redīmus** *return*

50.29 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **nostrī** *our* **victōriam** *victory* **celebrant** *celebrate*

50.30 **Dux** *leader* **nōbīs** *to us* **praemia** *rewards* **magna** *great* **dat** *gives*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

50.16 Nōs castra nostra prope flūmen pōnimus. *We place our camp near the river.*

50.17 Hostēs nōbīs bellum parant. *The enemies prepare war against us.*

50.18 Dux nostrī mīlitēs ad arma vocat. *Our leader calls the soldiers to arms.*

50.19 Legiōnēs nōbīscum fortiter pugnant. *The legions fight bravely with us.*

50.20 Nōs hostium impetum sustinēmus. *We withstand the enemy's attack.*

50.21 Equitēs nostrum campum tenent. *Our cavalry hold the field.*

50.22 Sagittāriī nostrī multōs hostēs necant. *Our archers kill many enemies.*

50.23 Ad nōs auxilia magnā cum celeritāte veniunt. *Reinforcements come to us with great speed.*

50.24 Nōbīs victōria certa vidētur. *Victory seems certain to us.*

50.25 Imperator nōs ob virtūtem laudat. *The commander praises us for our courage.*

50.26 Nōbīscum multī sociī pugnant. *Many allies fight with us.*

50.27 Hostēs ā nōbīs superātī sunt. *The enemies have been overcome by us.*

50.28 Nōs ad urbem triumphantēs redīmus. *We return to the city triumphant.*

50.29 Cīvēs nostrī victōriam celebrant. *Our citizens celebrate the victory.*

50.30 Dux nōbīs praemia magna dat. *The leader gives us great rewards.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

50.16 Nōs castra nostra prope flūmen pōnimus.

50.17 Hostēs nōbīs bellum parant.

50.18 Dux nostrī mīlitēs ad arma vocat.

50.19 Legiōnēs nōbīscum fortiter pugnant.

50.20 Nōs hostium impetum sustinēmus.

50.21 Equitēs nostrum campum tenent.

50.22 Sagittāriī nostrī multōs hostēs necant.

50.23 Ad nōs auxilia magnā cum celeritāte veniunt.

50.24 Nōbīs victōria certa vidētur.

50.25 Imperator nōs ob virtūtem laudat.

50.26 Nōbīscum multī sociī pugnant.

50.27 Hostēs ā nōbīs superātī sunt.

50.28 Nōs ad urbem triumphantēs redīmus.

50.29 Cīvēs nostrī victōriam celebrant.

50.30 Dux nōbīs praemia magna dat.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The military dispatch genre demonstrates specific uses of "nōs" in Roman military context:

1. Military Commands and Reports:
    - Clear, direct language typical of military communication
    - Use of present tense for immediate actions
    - Perfect tense for completed actions
    - Strategic placement of pronouns for emphasis
2. Case Usage in Military Context:

- Nominative nōs for active military actions
- Ablative nōbīs for instrumental actions
- Dative nōbīs for receiving orders or rewards
- Ablative nōbīscum for allied actions
- Genitive nostrī/nostrum for possession

3. Word Order Patterns:
    - Verb-final position common in formal reports
    - Subject-initial position for emphasis
    - Strategic placement of modifiers
    - Position of nōs varies for emphasis
4. Military Vocabulary Integration:
    - Technical terms: castra, legiōnēs, auxilia
    - Combat terminology: pugnant, superātī sunt
    - Command structure: dux, imperator
    - Military outcomes: victōria, praemia
5. Stylistic Features:
    - Concise, clear sentences
    - Official tone maintained throughout
    - Logical progression of events
    - Focus on collective action
6. Special Constructions:
    - Ablative absolute
    - Purpose clauses
    - Result clauses
    - Temporal sequences

Lesson 51 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Dē Ave Aureā (The Golden Bird)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

1.1 **Ōlim** *once* **in** *in* **antīquō** *ancient* **rēgnō** *kingdom* **pomārium** *orchard* **pulcherrimum** *most beautiful* **erat** *was*

1.2 **In** *in* **illō** *that* **hortō** *garden* **arbor** *tree* **aureīs** *golden* **pōmīs** *with apples* **gravida** *laden* **crēscēbat** *was growing*

1.3 **Cotīdiē** *daily* **rēx** *the king* **ūnum** *one* **pōmum** *apple* **dēesse** *to be missing* **inveniēbat** *would find*

1.4 **Quam ob rem** *therefore* **fīliōs** *sons* **suōs** *his* **trēs** *three* **vocāvit** *called* **rēx** *the king*

1.5 **Noctū** *at night* **pomārium** *orchard* **custōdīre** *to guard* **eōs** *them* **iussit** *ordered*

1.6 **Prīmus** *first* **fīlius** *son* **prīmā** *on first* **nocte** *night* **vigilāre** *to keep watch* **coepit** *began*

1.7 **Mediā** *in middle* **autem** *however* **nocte** *night* **somnus** *sleep* **gravissimus** *very heavy* **eum** *him* **oppressit** *overcame*

1.8 **Māne** *in morning* **alterum** *another* **pōmum** *apple* **dēesse** *to be missing* **omnēs** *all* **vīdērunt** *saw*

1.9 **Posterā** *on next* **nocte** *night* **secundus** *second* **fīlius** *son* **vigilāvit** *kept watch*

1.10 **Huic** *to this one* **quoque** *also* **eadem** *same* **fortūna** *fortune* **accidit** *happened*

1.11 **Nam** *for* **cum** *when* **mediam** *middle* **per** *through* **noctem** *night* **vigilāsset** *he had watched* **somnus** *sleep* **eum** *him* **vīcit** *conquered*

1.12 **Tertius** *third* **fīlius** *son* **cui** *whose* **nōmen** *name* **erat** *was* **Ioannēs** *John* **tertiam** *third* **vigiliam** *watch* **suscepit** *undertook*

1.13 **Intentīs** *with alert* **oculīs** *eyes* **circumspectāns** *looking around* **subitō** *suddenly* **avem** *bird* **aureīs** *with golden* **plūmīs** *feathers* **splendentem** *shining* **cōnspexit** *caught sight of*

1.31 **Arcum** *bow* **statim** *immediately* **intendit** *drew* **sagittamque** *and arrow* **ad** *at* **avem** *bird* **dīrēxit** *aimed*

1.15 **Avis** *bird* **tamen** *however* **tantum** *only* **ūnam** *one* **ex** *from* **plūmīs** *feathers* **āmīsit** *lost* **celeriterque** *and swiftly* **aufūgit** *flew away*

1.16 **Māne** *in morning* **Ioannēs** *John* **plūmam** *feather* **auream** *golden* **patrī** *to father* **ostendit** *showed*

1.17 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **rēgis** *of the king* **dīxērunt** *said* **plūmam** *feather* **plūris** *of more value* **quam** *than* **mīlle** *thousand* **pōma** *apples* **aurea** *golden* **esse** *to be*

1.18 **Tum** *then* **rēx** *king* **fīliīs** *to sons* **suīs** *his* **dīxit** *said* **sē** *himself* **totam** *whole* **avem** *bird* **habēre** *to have* **cupere** *to desire*

1.19 **Nātū** *by birth* **maximus** *eldest* **prīmus** *first* **profectus** *having set out* **est** *is* **ut** *that* **avem** *bird* **quaereret** *he might seek*

1.20 **In** *into* **silvam** *forest* **obscūram** *dark* **intrāvit** *he entered* **ubi** *where* **vulpem** *fox* **loquentem** *speaking* **invēnit** *found*

1.21 **Vulpēs** *fox* **dīxit** *said* **sē** *itself* **viam** *way* **ad** *to* **avem** *bird* **aureām** *golden* **scīre** *to know*

1.22 **Sed** *but* **iuvenis** *young man* **superbē** *proudly* **respondit** *replied* **sē** *himself* **auxiliō** *help* **vulpis** *of fox* **nōn** *not* **egēre** *to need*

1.23 **Mox** *soon* **in** *into* **tabernā** *inn* **quiēscēns** *resting* **iter** *journey* **oblītus** *having forgotten* **est** *is*

1.24 **Secundus** *second* **fīlius** *son* **deinde** *then* **profectus** *having set out* **est** *is* **sed** *but* **eādem** *same* **sorte** *by fate* **ūsus** *having experienced* **est** *is*

1.25 **Postrēmō** *finally* **Ioannēs** *John* **ipse** *himself* **iter** *journey* **suscepit** *undertook*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Latin with English Translations)

1.1 Pulcherrimum erat ōlim in antīquō rēgnō pomārium. *Once there was a most beautiful orchard in an ancient kingdom.*

1.2 Crēscēbat in illō hortō gravida aureīs pōmīs arbor. *In that garden grew a tree laden with golden apples.*

1.3 Inveniēbat cotīdiē rēx pōmum ūnum dēesse. *Daily the king would find one apple to be missing.*

1.4 Vocāvit ob eam rem rēx trēs suōs fīliōs. *For this reason the king called his three sons.*

1.5 Iussit eōs noctū custōdīre pomārium. *He ordered them to guard the orchard at night.*

1.6 Vigilāre prīmā nocte coepit fīlius maximus. *On the first night, the eldest son began to keep watch.*

1.7 Mediā autem nocte somnus eum gravissimus oppressit. *However, in the middle of the night, a very heavy sleep overcame him.*

1.8 Māne omnēs vīdērunt alterum pōmum dēesse. *In the morning, all saw that another apple was missing.*

1.9 Posterā nocte vigilāvit secundus fīlius. *On the following night, the second son kept watch.*

1.10 Accidit huic quoque eadem fortūna. *The same fortune befell this one also.*

1.11 Nam cum mediam per noctem vigilāsset, somnus eum vīcit. *For when he had watched through the middle of the night, sleep conquered him.*

1.12 Tertiam vigiliam suscepit tertius fīlius, cui Ioannēs nōmen erat. *The third watch was undertaken by the third son, whose name was John.*

1.13 Intentīs oculīs circumspectāns subitō avem aureīs plūmīs splendentem cōnspexit. *Looking around with alert eyes, he suddenly caught sight of a bird shining with golden feathers.*

1.31 Arcum statim intendit sagittamque ad avem dīrēxit. *He immediately drew his bow and aimed an arrow at the bird.*

1.15 Āmīsit avis tamen ūnam tantum ex plūmīs celeriterque aufūgit. *However, the bird lost only one of its feathers and swiftly flew away.*

1.16 Māne Ioannēs plūmam auream patrī ostendit. *In the morning, John showed the golden feather to his father.*

1.17 Dīxērunt sapientēs rēgis plūris esse plūmam quam mīlle pōma aurea. *The king's wise men said that the feather was worth more than a thousand golden apples.*

1.18 Tum fīliīs suīs dīxit rēx sē totam avem habēre cupere. *Then the king told his sons that he desired to have the whole bird.*

1.19 Prīmus profectus est nātū maximus ut avem quaereret. *The eldest set out first to seek the bird.*

1.20 In silvam obscūram intrāvit ubi vulpem loquentem invēnit. *He entered into a dark forest where he found a talking fox.*

1.21 Dīxit vulpēs sē viam ad avem aureām scīre. *The fox said that it knew the way to the golden bird.*

1.22 Sed superbē respondit iuvenis sē auxiliō vulpis nōn egēre. *But the young man replied proudly that he did not need the fox's help.*

1.23 Mox in tabernā quiēscēns iter oblītus est. *Soon, resting in an inn, he forgot about his journey.*

1.24 Deinde profectus est secundus fīlius, sed eādem sorte ūsus est. *Then the second son set out, but he met with the same fate.*

1.25 Postrēmō iter suscepit ipse Ioannēs. *Finally, John himself undertook the journey.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

1.1 Pulcherrimum erat ōlim in antīquō rēgnō pomārium.

1.2 Crēscēbat in illō hortō gravida aureīs pōmīs arbor.

1.3 Inveniēbat cotīdiē rēx pōmum ūnum dēesse.

1.4 Vocāvit ob eam rem rēx trēs suōs fīliōs.

1.5 Iussit eōs noctū custōdīre pomārium.

1.6 Vigilāre prīmā nocte coepit fīlius maximus.

1.7 Mediā autem nocte somnus eum gravissimus oppressit.

1.8 Māne omnēs vīdērunt alterum pōmum dēesse.

1.9 Posterā nocte vigilāvit secundus fīlius.

1.10 Accidit huic quoque eadem fortūna.

1.11 Nam cum mediam per noctem vigilāsset, somnus eum vīcit.

1.12 Tertiam vigiliam suscepit tertius fīlius, cui Ioannēs nōmen erat.

1.13 Intentīs oculīs circumspectāns subitō avem aureīs plūmīs splendentem cōnspexit.

1.31 Arcum statim intendit sagittamque ad avem dīrēxit.

1.15 Āmīsit avis tamen ūnam tantum ex plūmīs celeriterque aufūgit.

1.16 Māne Ioannēs plūmam auream patrī ostendit.

1.17 Dīxērunt sapientēs rēgis plūris esse plūmam quam mīlle pōma aurea.

1.18 Tum fīliīs suīs dīxit rēx sē totam avem habēre cupere.

1.19 Prīmus profectus est nātū maximus ut avem quaereret.

1.20 In silvam obscūram intrāvit ubi vulpem loquentem invēnit.

1.21 Dīxit vulpēs sē viam ad avem aureām scīre.

1.22 Sed superbē respondit iuvenis sē auxiliō vulpis nōn egēre.

1.23 Mox in tabernā quiēscēns iter oblītus est.

1.24 Deinde profectus est secundus fīlius, sed eādem sorte ūsus est.

1.25 Postrēmō iter suscepit ipse Ioannēs.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

This fairy tale demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Word Order Variations:
    - Initial position for emphasis (Pulcherrimum erat...)
    - Verb-initial for dramatic narrative (Crēscēbat in illō hortō...)
    - Natural separation of adjectives from nouns
    - Varied position of subject relative to verb
    - Position of temporal expressions (Mediā nocte, māne)
2. Case Usage:
    - Ablative of time (prīmā nocte, mediā nocte)
    - Ablative of means (aureīs pōmīs)
    - Ablative absolute (intentīs oculīs)
    - Dative of reference (huic accidit)
    - Genitive of possession (rēgis sapientēs)
    - Accusative direct objects with varied placement
    - Ablative with prepositions (in hortō, in silvā)
    - Dative of agent with special adjectives (opus/ūsus)
    - Double dative construction (auxiliō vulpis)
3. Verbal Constructions:
    - Historic present for vivid narration (crēscēbat, invenit)
    - Perfect tense for completed actions (vocāvit, intrāvit)
    - Complementary infinitive (custōdīre with iussit)
    - Imperfect tense for repeated or ongoing past actions (inveniēbat)
    - Pluperfect subjunctive in cum clauses (vigilāsset)
    - Deponent verbs (profectus est, ūsus est)
    - Passive voice (oblītus est)
    - Present participles (circumspectāns, splendentem, loquentem)
    - Indirect discourse with accusative and infinitive (sē scīre)
    - Purpose clauses with ut + subjunctive (ut quaereret)
4. Complex Sentence Structures:
    - Temporal cum clauses with subjunctive
    - Relative clauses (cui nōmen erat)
    - Purpose clauses
    - Indirect statements
    - Participial phrases
    - Coordinating conjunctions (sed, et, -que)
    - Subordinating conjunctions (cum, ut)
5. Stylistic Features:

- Chiasmus (various word arrangements)
- Hyperbaton (separation of adjectives from nouns)
- Anaphora (repeated words at beginning of phrases)
- Variation in word order for emphasis
- Use of demonstrative pronouns for connection
- Balance of parallel phrases

6. Narrative Techniques:
    - Use of temporal markers (ōlim, tum, mox, deinde)
    - Character introduction and development
    - Direct and indirect speech
    - Scene setting
    - Action sequences
    - Climactic build-up
7. Vocabulary Patterns:
    - Family relationships (pater, fīlius)
    - Time expressions (noctū, māne)
    - Motion verbs
    - Speech verbs
    - Descriptive adjectives
    - Military/hunting terminology
8. Idiomatic Expressions:
    - nātū maximus (eldest)
    - nōmen est (is named)
    - iter facere (to make a journey)
    - plūris esse quam (to be worth more than)
9. Advanced Grammatical Features:
    - Gerundive constructions
    - Supine forms
    - Intensive pronouns (ipse)
    - Correlative constructions
    - Agency expressions
    - Partitive expressions
10. Cultural Elements Reflected in Grammar:
    - Formal address patterns
    - Social hierarchy indicators
    - Traditional story-telling formulas
    - Religious/ritual language
    - Military terminology
    - Family structure references

Lesson 52 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Noster, Nostra, Nostrum (our)

Introduction

The possessive adjective "noster, nostra, nostrum" (our) is essential for expressing collective ownership and group identity in Latin. This lesson introduces its forms and usage through practical examples.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

52.1 **Magister** *teacher* **noster** *our* **litterās** *letters* **docet** *teaches*

52.2 **In** *in* **hortō** *garden* **nostrō** *our* **rosae** *roses* **pulchrae** *beautiful* **flōrent** *bloom*

52.3 **Librum** *book* **nostrum** *our* **puerī** *boys* **studiōsī** *studious* **legunt** *read*

52.4 **Ad** *to* **templum** *temple* **nostrum** *our* **sacerdōtēs** *priests* **venērunt** *came*

52.5 **Patria** *homeland* **nostra** *our* **multa** *many* **flūmina** *rivers* **habet** *has*

52.6 **Amīcī** *friends* **nostrī** *our* **cenābant** *were dining* **nōbīscum** *with us*

52.7 **Dux** *leader* **exercitum** *army* **nostrum** *our* **ad** *to* **victōriam** *victory* **dūxit** *led*

52.8 **Fīliī** *sons* **nostrī** *our* **magnā** *with great* **virtūte** *courage* **pugnant** *fight*

52.9 **Per** *through* **agrōs** *fields* **nostrōs** *our* **multī** *many* **bovēs** *cattle* **errant** *wander*

52.10 **Nāvis** *ship* **nostra** *our* **ad** *to* **īnsulam** *island* **nāvigat** *sails*

52.11 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **castra** *camp* **nostra** *our* **fortiter** *bravely* **dēfendunt** *defend*

52.12 **Soror** *sister* **nostra** *our* **carmina** *songs* **pulchra** *beautiful* **cantat** *sings*

52.13 **Servī** *slaves* **in** *in* **vīllā** *villa* **nostrā** *our* **labōrant** *work*

52.31 **Magister** *teacher* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **nostram** *our* **laudāvit** *praised*

52.15 **Sub** *under* **mūrīs** *walls* **nostrīs** *our* **hostēs** *enemies* **stant** *stand*

Part A2 (Experimental Text with English Case Endings)

teacher-us our-us letter-as teach-t in-in garden-o our-o rose-ae beautiful-ae bloom-nt book-um our-um boy-i studious-i read-unt to-ad temple-um our-um priest-es come-erunt homeland-a our-a many-a river-a have-t

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

52.1 Litterās magister noster docet. *Our teacher teaches letters.*

52.2 In hortō nostrō pulchrae rosae flōrent. *Beautiful roses bloom in our garden.*

52.3 Librum nostrum studiōsī puerī legunt. *Studious boys read our book.*

52.4 Ad templum nostrum sacerdōtēs venērunt. *The priests came to our temple.*

52.5 Multa flūmina patria nostra habet. *Our homeland has many rivers.*

52.6 Amīcī nostrī nōbīscum cenābant. *Our friends were dining with us.*

52.7 Ad victōriam dux exercitum nostrum dūxit. *The leader led our army to victory.*

52.8 Magnā virtūte fīliī nostrī pugnant. *Our sons fight with great courage.*

52.9 Per agrōs nostrōs multī bovēs errant. *Many cattle wander through our fields.*

52.10 Ad īnsulam nāvis nostra nāvigat. *Our ship sails to the island.*

52.11 Castra nostra mīlitēs fortiter dēfendunt. *The soldiers bravely defend our camp.*

52.12 Carmina pulchra soror nostra cantat. *Our sister sings beautiful songs.*

52.13 In vīllā nostrā servī labōrant. *Slaves work in our villa.*

52.31 Sapientiam nostram magister laudāvit. *The teacher praised our wisdom.*

52.15 Sub mūrīs nostrīs hostēs stant. *The enemies stand under our walls.*

Part C (Latin Only)

52.1 Litterās magister noster docet.

52.2 In hortō nostrō pulchrae rosae flōrent.

52.3 Librum nostrum studiōsī puerī legunt.

52.4 Ad templum nostrum sacerdōtēs venērunt.

52.5 Multa flūmina patria nostra habet.

52.6 Amīcī nostrī nōbīscum cenābant.

52.7 Ad victōriam dux exercitum nostrum dūxit.

52.8 Magnā virtūte fīliī nostrī pugnant.

52.9 Per agrōs nostrōs multī bovēs errant.

52.10 Ad īnsulam nāvis nostra nāvigat.

52.11 Castra nostra mīlitēs fortiter dēfendunt.

52.12 Carmina pulchra soror nostra cantat.

52.13 In vīllā nostrā servī labōrant.

52.31 Sapientiam nostram magister laudāvit.

52.15 Sub mūrīs nostrīs hostēs stant.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Noster, nostra, nostrum" follows the pattern of first/second declension adjectives but has some unique features:

1. Forms and Declension:
    - Masculine endings: -er, -rī, -rō, -rum, -rō
    - Feminine endings: -ra, -rae, -rae, -ram, -rā
    - Neuter endings: -rum, -rī, -rō, -rum, -rō
    - Plural follows regular first/second declension patterns
2. Agreement Rules:
    - Must match the modified noun in gender, number, and case
    - Position can be either before or after the noun
    - Can be separated from its noun for emphasis
3. Special Uses:
    - Can be used substantively (nostrī = "our men")
    - Often appears in military contexts
    - Frequently used in political speeches
    - Important in family relationships
4. Common Patterns:
    - With family terms (pater noster, māter nostra)
    - In military phrases (exercitus noster)
    - With civic terms (patria nostra)
    - In religious contexts (templum nostrum)

Part E (Cultural Context)

The concept of "noster" in Roman culture carried significant social and political weight:

1. Family Context:
    - Roman family identity was collective
    - Extended family shared ownership and responsibility
    - Family reputation affected all members
    - Household included slaves and clients
2. Political Usage:
    - Politicians used "noster" to create unity
    - Military commanders built group identity
    - Distinguished Romans from non-Romans
    - Created sense of shared citizenship
3. Religious Significance:
    - Used in prayers to claim divine protection
    - Referenced shared religious traditions
    - Connected families to household gods
    - United communities in worship
4. Social Implications:
    - Marked social class membership
    - Indicated political alliances
    - Showed cultural belonging
    - Distinguished insiders from outsiders

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia Poeta" (1.1):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Sī *if* **quid** *anything* **est** *is* **in** *in* **mē** *me* **ingeniī,** *of talent,* **iūdicēs,** *judges,* **quod** *which* **sentiō** *I feel* **quam** *how* **sit** *may be* **exiguum,** *small,* **aut** *or* **sī** *if* **qua** *any* **exercitātiō** *practice* **dīcendī,** *of speaking,* **in** *in* **quā** *which* **mē** *myself* **nōn** *not* **īnfitior** *I deny* **mediocriter** *moderately* **esse** *to be* **versātum,** *versed,* **aut** *or* **sī** *if* **huiusce** *of this* **reī** *matter* **ratiō** *theory* **aliqua** *some* **ab** *from* **optimārum** *of the best* **artium** *skills* **studiīs** *studies* **ac** *and* **disciplīnā** *training* **profecta,** *derived,* **ā** *from* **quā** *which* **ego** *I* **nūllum** *no* **cōnfiteor** *confess* **aetātis** *of life* **meae** *my* **tempus** *time* **abhorrēre** *to shrink.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"If there is in me any talent, judges (and I am aware how limited it is), or if I have any practice in speaking (in which I do not deny that I am moderately versed), or if I have any knowledge of this subject derived from the study and training in the noble arts (from which I confess that no period of my life has been averse)..."

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage demonstrates Cicero's rhetorical skill and use of parallel structure. The repeated "sī" clauses create a rhythm while building his argument. The modesty topos (claiming limited ability while demonstrating mastery) is typical of Roman oratory.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

1. Complex sentence structure with multiple conditional clauses
2. Use of indirect questions
3. Relative clauses for elaboration
4. Careful balance of parallel elements
5. Strategic placement of key terms

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Dispatch

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

52.16 **Ex** *from* **castrīs** *camp* **nostrīs** *our* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **mīsimus** *we sent*

52.17 **Hostēs** *enemies* **exercitum** *army* **nostrum** *our* **ad** *to* **proelium** *battle* **prōvocant** *challenge*

52.18 **Imperātor** *commander* **noster** *our* **cōnsilium** *plan* **prūdēns** *wise* **capit** *takes*

52.19 **Nostrī** *our men* **summō** *at highest* **studiō** *eagerness* **sē** *themselves* **ad** *for* **pugnam** *battle* **parant** *prepare*

52.20 **Sagittāriī** *archers* **nostrī** *our* **montēs** *mountains* **proximōs** *nearest* **occupant** *occupy*

52.21 **Hostēs** *enemies* **ante** *before* **vallum** *rampart* **nostrum** *our* **cōnsistunt** *take position*

52.22 **Centuriōnēs** *centurions* **nostrī** *our* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **cohortantur** *encourage*

52.23 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **nostrī** *our* **in** *on* **dextrō** *right* **cornū** *wing* **pugnant** *fight*

52.24 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **nostrae** *our* **magnā** *with great* **vī** *force* **impetum** *attack* **faciunt** *make*

52.25 **Sociī** *allies* **nostrī** *our* **ā** *from* **sinistrō** *left* **hostēs** *enemies* **aggrediuntur** *attack*

52.26 **Nostra** *our* **virtūs** *valor* **hostium** *of enemies* **animōs** *spirits* **frangit** *breaks*

52.27 **Post** *after* **nostram** *our* **victōriam** *victory* **multī** *many* **captīvī** *prisoners* **captī** *captured* **sunt** *were*

52.28 **In** *in* **nostrā** *our* **castra** *camp* **praeda** *plunder* **magna** *great* **fertur** *is brought*

52.29 **Imperātor** *commander* **noster** *our* **omnēs** *all* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **laudat** *praises*

52.30 **Pāx** *peace* **nostra** *our* **victōriā** *by victory* **parta** *obtained* **est** *has been*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

52.16 Ex castrīs nostrīs explōrātōrēs mīsimus. *We sent scouts from our camp.*

52.17 Exercitum nostrum hostēs ad proelium prōvocant. *The enemies challenge our army to battle.*

52.18 Cōnsilium prūdēns imperātor noster capit. *Our commander takes a wise plan.*

52.19 Summō studiō nostrī sē ad pugnam parant. *Our men prepare themselves for battle with the highest eagerness.*

52.20 Montēs proximōs sagittāriī nostrī occupant. *Our archers occupy the nearest mountains.*

52.21 Ante vallum nostrum hostēs cōnsistunt. The enemies take position before our rampart.

52.22 Mīlitēs centuriōnēs nostrī cohortantur. *Our centurions encourage the soldiers.*

52.23 In dextrō cornū equitēs nostrī pugnant. *Our cavalry fight on the right wing.*

52.24 Magnā vī legiōnēs nostrae impetum faciunt. *Our legions make an attack with great force.*

52.25 Sociī nostrī hostēs ā sinistrō aggrediuntur. *Our allies attack the enemies from the left.*

52.26 Hostium animōs nostra virtūs frangit. *Our valor breaks the spirits of the enemies.*

52.27 Post nostram victōriam multī captīvī captī sunt. *After our victory, many prisoners were captured.*

52.28 In castra nostra praeda magna fertur. *Great plunder is brought into our camp.*

52.29 Omnēs mīlitēs imperātor noster laudat. *Our commander praises all the soldiers.*

52.30 Pāx nostra victōriā parta est. *Peace has been obtained by our victory.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

52.16 Ex castrīs nostrīs explōrātōrēs mīsimus.

52.17 Exercitum nostrum hostēs ad proelium prōvocant.

52.18 Cōnsilium prūdēns imperātor noster capit.

52.19 Summō studīō nostrī sē ad pugnam parant.

52.20 Montēs proximōs sagittāriī nostrī occupant.

52.21 Ante vallum nostrum hostēs cōnsistunt.

52.22 Mīlitēs centuriōnēs nostrī cohortantur.

52.23 In dextrō cornū equitēs nostrī pugnant.

52.24 Magnā vī legiōnēs nostrae impetum faciunt.

52.25 Sociī nostrī hostēs ā sinistrō aggrediuntur.

52.26 Hostium animōs nostra virtūs frangit.

52.27 Post nostram victōriam multī captīvī captī sunt.

52.28 In castra nostra praeda magna fertur.

52.29 Omnēs mīlitēs imperātor noster laudat.

52.30 Pāx nostra victōriā parta est.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The military dispatch demonstrates specific uses of "noster" in Roman military context:

1. Strategic Word Order:
    - Initial position for emphasis (Nostra virtūs...)
    - After military terms (imperātor noster)
    - Between modifier and noun (magnā nostra victōriā)
    - Final position for special effect (castra nostra)
2. Military Terminology:
    - Combat terms: proelium, pugna, impetus
    - Unit types: legiōnēs, equitēs, sagittāriī
    - Fortification terms: vallum, castra
    - Command structure: imperātor, centuriōnēs
3. Case Usage:
    - Ablative of means (nostra virtūte)
    - Ablative of place (in castrīs nostrīs)
    - Genitive of possession (imperātor noster)
    - Accusative of direct object (nostram victōriam)
4. Tactical Expressions:
    - Position indicators (in dextrō cornū)
    - Movement terms (aggrediuntur, fertur)
    - Battle formations (ante vallum)
    - Military results (parta est, captī sunt)
5. Grammatical Features:
    - Perfect passive forms (captī sunt, parta est)

- Historical present (pugnant, aggrediuntur)
- Ablative absolute constructions
- Purpose clauses
- Result statements
- Temporal expressions

6. Stylistic Elements:
    - Clear, direct language
    - Precise military vocabulary
    - Formal dispatch tone
    - Logical sequence of events
    - Focus on tactical details
    - Emphasis on collective action

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 53 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Ūnus (One)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

53.1 **Ūnus** *one* **homō** *man* **in** *in* **forō** *forum* **stat** *stands*

53.2 **Magister** *teacher* **ūnam** *one* **fābulam** *story* **nārrat** *tells*

53.3 **Puer** *boy* **ūnum** *one* **librum** *book* **legit** *reads*

53.4 **Mīles** *soldier* **ūnō** *with one* **gladiō** *sword* **pugnat** *fights*

53.5 **Ūna** *one* **puella** *girl* **in** *in* **viā** *road* **ambulat** *walks*

53.6 **In** *in* **hortō** *garden* **ūna** *one* **arbor** *tree* **crēscit** *grows*

53.7 **Servus** *slave* **ūnum** *one* **pōmum** *apple* **portat** *carries*

53.8 **Ūnus** *one* **equus** *horse* **per** *through* **campum** *field* **currit** *runs*

53.9 **Senātor** *senator* **ūnam** *one* **epistulam** *letter* **scrībit** *writes*

53.10 **Mercātor** *merchant* **ūnum** *one* **nummum** *coin* **dēmōnstrat** *shows*

53.11 **Ex** *from* **ūnō** *one* **locō** *place* **omnēs** *all* **veniunt** *come*

53.12 **Ūna** *one* **vōx** *voice* **in** *in* **templō** *temple* **auditur** *is heard*

53.13 **Pastor** *shepherd* **ūnam** *one* **ovem** *sheep* **invenit** *finds*

53.31 **Ūnō** *in one* **diē** *day* **iter** *journey* **facimus** *we make*

53.15 **Rēx** *king* **ūnam** *one* **urbem** *city* **capit** *captures*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

53.1 In forō ūnus homō stat. *One man stands in the forum.*

53.2 Fābulam ūnam magister nārrat. *The teacher tells one story.*

53.3 Librum ūnum puer legit. *The boy reads one book.*

53.4 Mīles gladiō ūnō pugnat. *The soldier fights with one sword.*

53.5 In viā ūna puella ambulat. *One girl walks in the road.*

53.6 Crēscit in hortō ūna arbor. *One tree grows in the garden.*

53.7 Pōmum ūnum servus portat. *The slave carries one apple.*

53.8 Per campum ūnus equus currit. *One horse runs through the field.*

53.9 Epistulam ūnam senātor scrībit. *The senator writes one letter.*

53.10 Nummum ūnum mercātor dēmōnstrat. *The merchant shows one coin.*

53.11 Ex ūnō locō omnēs veniunt. *All come from one place.*

53.12 Auditur in templō ūna vōx. *One voice is heard in the temple.*

53.13 Ovem ūnam pastor invenit. *The shepherd finds one sheep.*

53.31 Ūnō diē iter facimus. *We make the journey in one day.*

53.15 Urbem ūnam rēx capit. *The king captures one city.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

53.1 In forō ūnus homō stat.

53.2 Fābulam ūnam magister nārrat.

53.3 Librum ūnum puer legit.

53.4 Mīles gladiō ūnō pugnat.

53.5 In viā ūna puella ambulat.

53.6 Crēscit in hortō ūna arbor.

53.7 Pōmum ūnum servus portat.

53.8 Per campum ūnus equus currit.

53.9 Epistulam ūnam senātor scrībit.

53.10 Nummum ūnum mercātor dēmōnstrat.

53.11 Ex ūnō locō omnēs veniunt.

53.12 Auditur in templō ūna vōx.

53.13 Ovem ūnam pastor invenit.

53.31 Ūnō diē iter facimus.

53.15 Urbem ūnam rēx capit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adjective "ūnus" is a special type that English speakers need to understand carefully:

1. Forms and Declension:
    - Follows 1st/2nd declension endings with some variations
    - Masculine: ūnus, ūnīus, ūnī, ūnum, ūnō
    - Feminine: ūna, ūnīus, ūnī, ūnam, ūnā
    - Neuter: ūnum, ūnīus, ūnī, ūnum, ūnō
2. Special Features:
    - Genitive singular ends in -īus (like "illīus")
    - Dative singular ends in -ī (like "illī")
    - These endings are the same for all genders
3. Usage Differences from English:
    - Can be used as an adjective or pronoun
    - Must agree with its noun in gender, number, case
    - Often indicates "single" or "only" rather than just counting
    - Used in ablative for time expressions
4. Common Contexts:
    - Counting and enumeration
    - Emphasizing singularity
    - Time expressions
    - Contrasting "one" vs "many"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "ūnus" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Numbering:
    - Romans used both words and numerals
    - "Ūnus" often had emphasis beyond just counting
    - Could indicate uniqueness or special status
2. Social Implications:
    - Romans valued unity and singularity
    - "Ūnus" in political slogans meant unity
    - Used in legal contexts for specific items
3. Historical Usage:
    - Important in military commands
    - Used in religious formulas

    - Key concept in philosophical texts
4. Modern Parallels:
    - Similar to English "single" or "sole"
    - Used differently than English "one"
    - Important in understanding Roman thought

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (XVI.65):

Ūnus *one* **ex** *from* **multīs** *many* **homō** *man* **dēligī** *to be chosen* **potest** *is able* **quī** *who* **proprior** *closer* **quam** *than* **cēterī** *the others* **ad** *to* **amīcitiam** *friendship* **accēdat** *might approach*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Ūnus ex multīs homō dēligī potest quī proprior quam cēterī ad amīcitiam accēdat."

One man from many can be chosen who might approach closer than others to friendship.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "ūnus" to emphasize the special nature of true friendship. The word highlights the selection of a single individual from many possibilities.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Ūnus" nominative singular masculine
- Part of prepositional phrase "ex multīs"
- Subject of passive "dēligī potest"
- Connected to relative clause with "quī"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

53.16 **Ūnus** *one* **dux** *leader* **contrā** *against* **hostēs** *enemies* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnat** *fights*

53.17 **Ex** *from* **ūnā** *one* **urbe** *city* **multī** *many* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **veniunt** *come*

53.18 **Ūnō** *in one* **proeliō** *battle* **victōriam** *victory* **magnam** *great* **adipīscimur** *we achieve*

53.19 **Rēx** *king* **ūnam** *one* **legiōnem** *legion* **ad** *to* **mūrōs** *walls* **mittit** *sends*

53.20 **Ūnō** *with one* **ictū** *blow* **portam** *gate* **frangunt** *they break*

53.21 **Dux** *leader* **ūnum** *one* **signum** *signal* **dat** *gives*

53.22 **Ūnā** *in one* **hōrā** *hour* **castra** *camp* **movēmus** *we move*

53.23 **Ūnus** *one* **eques** *horseman* **nūntium** *message* **perfert** *carries through*

53.24 **Ex** *from* **ūnō** *one* **colle** *hill* **urbem** *city* **vidēmus** *we see*

53.25 **Ūnam** *one* **cohortēm** *cohort* **hostēs** *enemies* **vincunt** *conquer*

53.26 **In** *in* **ūnō** *one* **locō** *place* **pugnāmus** *we fight*

53.27 **Ūnus** *one* **tribūnus** *tribune* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **hortātur** *encourages*

53.28 **Ūnō** *with one* **impetū** *attack* **hostēs** *enemies* **pellimus** *we drive back*

53.29 **Ex** *from* **ūnā** *one* **parte** *direction* **auxilium** *help* **venit** *comes*

53.30 **Ūnam** *one* **victōriam** *victory* **maximam** *greatest* **reportāmus** *we bring back*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Sentences)

53.16 Contrā hostēs ūnus dux fortiter pugnat. *One leader fights bravely against the enemies.*

53.17 Multī mīlitēs ex ūnā urbe veniunt. *Many soldiers come from one city.*

53.18 Victōriam magnam ūnō proeliō adipīscimur. *We achieve a great victory in one battle.*

53.19 Ad mūrōs ūnam legiōnem rēx mittit. *The king sends one legion to the walls.*

53.20 Portam ūnō ictū frangunt. *They break the gate with one blow.*

53.21 Signum ūnum dux dat. *The leader gives one signal.*

53.22 Ūnā hōrā castra movēmus. *We move camp in one hour.*

53.23 Nūntium ūnus eques perfert. *One horseman carries the message through.*

53.24 Urbem ex ūnō colle vidēmus. *We see the city from one hill.*

53.25 Ūnam cohortēm hostēs vincunt. *The enemies conquer one cohort.*

53.26 Pugnāmus in ūnō locō. *We fight in one place.*

53.27 Mīlitēs ūnus tribūnus hortātur. *One tribune encourages the soldiers.*

53.28 Hostēs ūnō impetū pellimus. *We drive back the enemies with one attack.*

53.29 Auxilium ex ūnā parte venit. *Help comes from one direction.*

53.30 Victōriam ūnam maximam reportāmus. *We bring back one greatest victory.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

53.16 Contrā hostēs ūnus dux fortiter pugnat.

53.17 Multī mīlitēs ex ūnā urbe veniunt.

53.18 Victōriam magnam ūnō proeliō adipīscimur.

53.19 Ad mūrōs ūnam legiōnem rēx mittit.

53.20 Portam ūnō ictū frangunt.

53.21 Signum ūnum dux dat.

53.22 Ūnā hōrā castra movēmus.

53.23 Nūntium ūnus eques perfert.

53.24 Urbem ex ūnō colle vidēmus.

53.25 Ūnam cohortēm hostēs vincunt.

53.26 Pugnāmus in ūnō locō.

53.27 Mīlitēs ūnus tribūnus hortātur.

53.28 Hostēs ūnō impetū pellimus.

53.29 Auxilium ex ūnā parte venit.

53.30 Victōriam ūnam maximam reportāmus.

Grammar Explanation for Historical Narrative

1. Military Usage Patterns:

a) Ablative of manner:

- "ūnō impetū hostēs pellimus" - "we drive back the enemies with one attack"
- "ūnō ictū portam frangunt" - "they break the gate with one blow"

b) Ablative of time:

- "ūnā hōrā castra movēmus" - "we move camp in one hour"
- "ūnō diē iter facimus" - "we make the journey in one day"

c) Attributive use with military units:

- "ūnam legiōnem mittit" - "he sends one legion"
- "ūnam cohortēm hostēs vincunt" - "the enemies conquer one cohort"

d) Emphatic positioning:

- "Ūnus tribūnus mīlitēs hortātur" (emphasis on single tribune)
- "Legiōnem ūnam rēx mittit" (emphasis on specific legion)

2. Case Usage in Military Context:

a) Nominative for subjects:

- "ūnus dux pugnat" - "one leader fights"
- "ūnus eques nūntium perfert" - "one horseman carries the message"

b) Accusative for direct objects:

- "ūnam cohortēm vincunt" - "they conquer one cohort"
- "ūnum signum dat" - "he gives one signal"

c) Ablative for instrumental actions:

- "ūnō gladiō pugnat" - "he fights with one sword"
- "ūnō ictū cadit" - "he falls with one blow"

d) Prepositional phrases:

- "ex ūnā parte" - "from one direction"
- "in ūnō locō" - "in one place"

3. Word Order Features:

a) Flexible placement for emphasis:

- "Ūnus homō stat" vs "Stat homō ūnus"
- "Legiōnem ūnam mittit" vs "Ūnam legiōnem mittit"

b) Military terms in prominent positions:

- "Castra ūnā hōrā movēmus" (emphasis on camp)
- "Proelium ūnō diē vincimus" (emphasis on battle)

c) Classical verb placement:

- "Ūnus dux mīlitēs ducit" (verb final)
- "Mittit rēx ūnam legiōnem" (verb medial)

4. Special Military Constructions:

a) Temporal expressions:

- "ūnā vigiliā" - "in one watch period"
- "ūnō tempore" - "at one time"

b) Commands and signals:

- "ūnum signum dat" - "gives one signal"
- "ūnō sonō tubae" - "with one sound of the trumpet"

c) Battle descriptions:

- "ūnō impetū castra capiunt" - "they take the camp with one attack"
- "ūnā pugnā vincunt" - "they win in one battle"

5. Stylistic Elements:

a) Brevity in commands:

- "Ūnam cohortēm mitte!" - "Send one cohort!"
- "Ex ūnā parte aggredere!" - "Attack from one direction!"

b) Battle descriptions:

- "Ūnō tempore omnēs impetum faciunt" - "All make an attack at one time"
- "Ūnā hōrā hostēs funduntur" - "The enemies are routed in one hour"

6. Grammar Notes for English Speakers:

a) Agreement patterns:

- Masculine: "ūnus mīles" - "one soldier"
- Feminine: "ūna cohors" - "one cohort"
- Neuter: "ūnum signum" - "one signal"

b) Position flexibility:

- "Ūnus vir fortis" vs "Vir ūnus fortis"
- "Ūnam urbem capit" vs "Urbem ūnam capit"

c) Context-based meanings:

- As number: "ūna legiō" - "one legion"
- As emphasis: "ūnus ex omnibus" - "the only one of all"
- As unity: "ūnō animō" - "with one mind/purpose"

7. Advanced Features:

a) Ablative absolute:

- "ūnō proelīō confectō" - "one battle having been finished"
- "ūnā legiōne missā" - "one legion having been sent"

b) Purpose clauses:

- "ut ūnam urbem caperet" - "in order to capture one city"
- "nē ūnus quidem effugeret" - "so that not even one might escape"

c) Result expressions:

- "tam fortiter pugnavērunt ut ūnā hōrā vincērent"
- "they fought so bravely that they won in one hour"

8. Practice Examples:

a) Identify case usage:

- Nominative: "ūnus dux venit" - "one leader comes"
- Accusative: "ūnum dūcem videō" - "I see one leader"
- Genitive: "ūnīus ducis verba" - "the words of one leader"
- Dative: "ūnī ducī pāret" - "he obeys one leader"
- Ablative: "ab ūnō duce" - "by one leader"

b) Agreement practice:

- Masculine: "ūnus vir, ūnum virum, ūnō virō"

- Feminine: "ūna fēmina, ūnam fēminam, ūnā fēminā"
- Neuter: "ūnum templum, ūnum templum, ūnō templō"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 54 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 54: diēs diēī m./f. (day)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

54.1 **Hic** *this* **diēs** *day* **sacer** *sacred* **est** *is*

54.2 **Longa** *long* **diēs** *day* **nōbīs** *for us* **erat** *was*

54.3 **Per** *through* **trēs** *three* **diēs** *days* **iter** *journey* **fēcimus** *we made*

54.4 **Paucī** *few* **diēs** *days* **ante** *before* **hoc** *this* **accīdit** *happened*

54.5 **Omnēs** *all* **diēs** *days* **in** *in* **agrīs** *fields* **labōrāmus** *we work*

54.6 **Māne** *in morning* **prīmī** *of first* **diēī** *day* **sacerdōs** *priest* **templum** *temple* **intrat** *enters*

54.7 **Magister** *teacher* **diēī** *of day* **fīnem** *end* **exspectat** *awaits*

54.8 **Diēī** *to day* **illī** *that* **grātiās** *thanks* **agimus** *we give*

54.9 **Diē** *on day* **certō** *fixed* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **castra** *camp* **movēbunt** *will move*

54.10 **Tertium** *third* **diēm** *day* **Rōmae** *in Rome* **manēbimus** *we will remain*

54.11 **Hostēs** *enemies* **eō** *on that* **diē** *day* **urbem** *city* **oppugnāvērunt** *attacked*

54.12 **Multōs** *many* **diēs** *days* **pluit** *it rains*

54.13 **Septem** *seven* **diēbus** *in days* **opus** *work* **perfēcimus** *we completed*

54.31 **Diērum** *of days* **brevium** *short* **tempus** *time* **venit** *comes*

54.15 **Diēs** *day* **festī** *festival* **populum** *people* **laetum** *happy* **faciunt** *make*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Sentences)

54.1 Hic diēs sacer est. *This day is sacred.*

54.2 Longa diēs nōbīs erat. *The day was long for us.*

54.3 Per trēs diēs iter fēcimus. *We made a journey for three days.*

54.4 Paucīs diēbus ante hoc accīdit. *This happened a few days ago.*

54.5 Omnēs diēs in agrīs labōrāmus. *We work in the fields every day.*

54.6 Māne prīmī diēī sacerdōs templum intrat. *In the morning of the first day, the priest enters the temple.*

54.7 Magister diēī fīnem exspectat. *The teacher awaits the end of the day.*

54.8 Diēī illī grātiās agimus. *We give thanks to that day.*

54.9 Diē certō mīlitēs castra movēbunt. *On a fixed day, the soldiers will move camp.*

54.10 Tertium diēm Rōmae manēbimus. *We will remain in Rome for the third day.*

54.11 Hostēs eō diē urbem oppugnāvērunt. *The enemies attacked the city on that day.*

54.12 Multōs diēs pluit. *It rains for many days.*

54.13 Septem diēbus opus perfēcimus. *We completed the work in seven days.*

54.31 Diērum brevium tempus venit. *The time of short days comes.*

54.15 Diēs festī populum laetum faciunt. *Festival days make the people happy.*

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part C (Latin Text Only)

54.1 Hic diēs sacer est.

54.2 Longa diēs nōbīs erat.

54.3 Per trēs diēs iter fēcimus.

54.4 Paucīs diēbus ante hoc accīdit.

54.5 Omnēs diēs in agrīs labōrāmus.

54.6 Māne prīmī diēī sacerdōs templum intrat.

54.7 Magister diēī fīnem exspectat.

54.8 Diēī illī grātiās agimus.

54.9 Diē certō mīlitēs castra movēbunt.

54.10 Tertium diēm Rōmae manēbimus.

54.11 Hostēs eō diē urbem oppugnāvērunt.

54.12 Multōs diēs pluit.

54.13 Septem diēbus opus perfēcimus.

54.31 Diērum brevium tempus venit.

54.15 Diēs festī populum laetum faciunt.

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "diēs" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Gender:
    - One of few 5th declension nouns
    - Can be either masculine or feminine
    - Usually masculine in singular, feminine in plural
    - Long ē throughout most forms
2. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: diēs
    - Genitive: diēī
    - Dative: diēī
    - Accusative: diem
    - Ablative: diē

   Plural:
    - Nominative: diēs
    - Genitive: diērum
    - Dative: diēbus
    - Accusative: diēs
    - Ablative: diēbus
3. Special Uses:
    - Ablative of time when: diē certō (on a fixed day)
    - Accusative of duration: trēs diēs (for three days)
    - With ordinal numbers: tertium diem (third day)
    - In temporal phrases: eō diē (on that day)
4. Common Expressions:
    - diēs festus (holiday)
    - prīmō diē (on the first day)
    - in diēs (day by day)
    - ante diem (before the day)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "diēs" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Time Concepts:
    - Days began at sunrise, not midnight
    - Divided into 12 "hours" of varying length
    - Important for religious observances
    - Critical for legal and business matters
2. Calendar Usage:
    - Romans counted days backwards from three fixed points
    - Kalends, Nones, and Ides structured the month
    - Different lengths for summer and winter days
    - Market days (nundinae) every ninth day

3. Religious Significance:
    - Dies fasti (court days) vs. nefasti (no courts)
    - Festival days marked on official calendars
    - Priests determined lucky and unlucky days
    - Sacred days required special observances
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of English words like "diary" and "diurnal"
    - Calendar structure still influences modern life
    - Religious observances still follow Roman patterns
    - Legal term "dies" still used in some contexts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia" (6.31):

Quotiēns *how often* **ego** *I* **hunc** *this man* **vīdī** *have seen,* **cum** *when* **litteram** *letter* **scrīpsisset** *he had written* **nūllam,** *none,* **magnumque** *and a great* **numerum** *number* **optimōrum** *of excellent* **versuum** *verses* **dē** *about* **eīs** *those* **ipsīs** *very* **rēbus** *things,* **quae** *which* **tum** *then* **agerentur,** *were being done,* **dīcere** *to speak* **ex** *from* **tempore!** *the moment!*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Quotiēns ego hunc vīdī, cum litteram scrīpsisset nūllam, magnumque numerum optimōrum versuum dē eīs ipsīs rēbus, quae tum agerentur, dīcere ex tempore!"

How often I have seen this man, when he had written nothing at all, speak impromptu a great number of excellent verses about those very events which were then taking place!

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses this passage to praise the poet Archias's ability to compose verses spontaneously. The temporal aspects are emphasized through:

- Use of perfect tense (vīdī)
- Pluperfect subjunctive (scrīpsisset)
- Imperfect subjunctive (agerentur)
- Temporal expressions (tum, ex tempore)

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "quotiēns" introduces indirect question
- "cum" introduces temporal clause with subjunctive
- Hyperbaton in "magnumque numerum optimōrum versuum"
- Complex sentence structure showing temporal relationships
- Use of demonstrative pronouns for emphasis

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Dispatch

Part A (Interleaved Text)

54.16 **Prīmō** *on first* **diē** *day* **legiō** *legion* **nostra** *our* **iter** *march* **incepit** *began*

54.17 **Trēs** *three* **continuōs** *continuous* **diēs** *days* **per** *through* **montēs** *mountains* **prōcessimus** *we advanced*

54.18 **Quārtō** *on fourth* **diē** *day* **hostium** *of enemies* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **vīsī** *seen* **sunt** *were*

54.19 **Diērum** *of days* **quattuor** *four* **cibāria** *provisions* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **portant** *carry*

54.20 **Eō** *on that* **diē** *day* **hostēs** *enemies* **castra** *camp* **nostra** *our* **oppugnāvērunt** *attacked*

54.21 **Quīntō** *on fifth* **diē** *day* **ad** *to* **flūmen** *river* **magnum** *great* **pervēnimus** *we arrived*

54.22 **Diēbus** *in days* **decem** *ten* **pōns** *bridge* **perfectus** *completed* **est** *was*

54.23 **Posterō** *on next* **diē** *day* **legiōnēs** *legions* **flūmen** *river* **trānsiērunt** *crossed*

54.24 **Diēī** *of day* **occāsū** *at setting* **hostēs** *enemies* **sē** *themselves* **recēpērunt** *withdrew*

54.25 **Multōs** *many* **diēs** *days* **in** *in* **eōdem** *same* **locō** *place* **mānsimus** *we remained*

54.26 **Diēbus** *in days* **quīnque** *five* **nūllus** *no* **hostis** *enemy* **vīsus** *seen* **est** *was*

54.27 **Septimō** *on seventh* **diē** *day* **auxilium** *reinforcement* **advēnit** *arrived*

54.28 **Diēs** *day* **pugnae** *of battle* **ā** *by* **duce** *leader* **cōnstitūtus** *appointed* **est** *was*

54.29 **Proximīs** *in next* **diēbus** *days* **castra** *camp* **mūnīvimus** *we fortified*

54.30 **Diē** *on day* **illō** *that* **māgnā** *great* **cum** *with* **victōriā** *victory* **pugnāvimus** *we fought*

Part B (Complete Sentences)

54.16 Prīmō diē legiō nostra iter incepit. *On the first day, our legion began its march.*

54.17 Trēs continuōs diēs per montēs prōcessimus. *For three continuous days we advanced through the mountains.*

54.18 Quārtō diē hostium explōrātōrēs vīsī sunt. *On the fourth day, enemy scouts were seen.*

54.19 Diērum quattuor cibāria mīlitēs portant. *The soldiers carry provisions for four days.*

54.20 Eō diē hostēs castra nostra oppugnāvērunt. *On that day the enemies attacked our camp.*

54.21 Quīntō diē ad flūmen magnum pervēnimus. *On the fifth day we arrived at a great river.*

54.22 Diēbus decem pōns perfectus est. *In ten days the bridge was completed.*

54.23 Posterō diē legiōnēs flūmen trānsiērunt. *On the following day the legions crossed the river.*

54.24 Diēī occāsū hostēs sē recēpērunt. *At sunset the enemies withdrew.*

54.25 Multōs diēs in eōdem locō mānsimus. *We remained in the same place for many days.*

54.26 Diēbus quīnque nūllus hostis vīsus est. *For five days no enemy was seen.*

54.27 Septimō diē auxilium advēnit. *On the seventh day reinforcement arrived.*

54.28 Diēs pugnae ā duce cōnstitūtus est. *The day of battle was appointed by the leader.*

54.29 Proximīs diēbus castra mūnīvimus. *In the following days we fortified the camp.*

54.30 Diē illō māgnā cum victōriā pugnāvimus. *On that day we fought with great victory.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

54.16 Prīmō diē legiō nostra iter incepit.

54.17 Trēs continuōs diēs per montēs prōcessimus.

54.18 Quārtō diē hostium explōrātōrēs vīsī sunt.

54.19 Diērum quattuor cibāria mīlitēs portant.

54.20 Eō diē hostēs castra nostra oppugnāvērunt.

54.21 Quīntō diē ad flūmen magnum pervēnimus.

54.22 Diēbus decem pōns perfectus est.

54.23 Posterō diē legiōnēs flūmen trānsiērunt.

54.24 Diēī occāsū hostēs sē recēpērunt.

54.25 Multōs diēs in eōdem locō mānsimus.

54.26 Diēbus quīnque nūllus hostis vīsus est.

54.27 Septimō diē auxilium advēnit.

54.28 Diēs pugnae ā duce cōnstitūtus est.

54.29 Proximīs diēbus castra mūnīvimus.

54.30 Diē illō māgnā cum victōriā pugnāvimus.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

1. Time Expressions in Military Context: a) Ablative of Time When:
    - Simple date: "prīmō diē" (on the first day) Example: "Prīmō diē legiō nostra iter incepit."
    - With demonstrative: "eō diē" (on that day) Example: "Eō diē hostēs castra nostra oppugnāvērunt."
    - With adjective: "posterō diē" (on the following day) Example: "Posterō diē legiōnēs flūmen trānsiērunt."

    b) Accusative of Duration:
    - With number: "trēs diēs" (for three days) Example: "Trēs continuōs diēs per montēs prōcessimus."

- With adjective: "multōs diēs" (for many days) Example: "Multōs diēs in eōdem locō mānsimus."

2. Ordinal Numbers with diēs:
   - "prīmō diē" (on the first day)
   - "quārtō diē" (on the fourth day)
   - "quīntō diē" (on the fifth day)
   - "septimō diē" (on the seventh day) Example: "Septimō diē auxilium advēnit."
3. Genitive Constructions: a) Possessive Genitive:
   - "diēs pugnae" (day of battle) Example: "Diēs pugnae ā duce cōnstitūtus est."

   b) Genitive of the Whole:
   - "diērum quattuor cibāria" (provisions of four days) Example: "Diērum quattuor cibāria mīlitēs portant."
4. Special Military Time Phrases: a) Time of Day:
   - "diēī occāsū" (at sunset, ablative of time) Example: "Diēī occāsū hostēs sē recēpērunt."

   b) Continuous Time:
   - "continuōs diēs" (continuous days) Example: "Trēs continuōs diēs per montēs prōcessimus."
5. Position and Word Order: a) Time Expression at Start (emphasizing when):
   - "Prīmō diē legiō nostra iter incepit."
   - "Quārtō diē hostium explōrātōrēs vīsī sunt."

   b) Time Expression in Middle (emphasizing action):
   - "Legiōnēs posterō diē flūmen trānsiērunt."
   - "Hostēs eō diē castra oppugnāvērunt."
6. Common Military Phrases: a) With Verbs of Motion:
   - "iter incepit" (began the march)
   - "prōcessimus" (we advanced)
   - "pervēnimus" (we arrived) Example: "Quīntō diē ad flūmen magnum pervēnimus."

   b) With Battle Terms:
   - "pugnāvimus" (we fought)
   - "oppugnāvērunt" (they attacked) Example: "Diē illō māgnā cum victōriā pugnāvimus."
7. Passive Voice in Military Reports:
   - "perfectus est" (was completed)
   - "vīsus est" (was seen)
   - "cōnstitūtus est" (was appointed) Example: "Diēbus decem pōns perfectus est."

Lesson 55 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: Nihil/Nīl (Nothing)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

55.1 **Omnīnō** *altogether* **nihil** *nothing* **hodiē** *today* **vidēre** *to see* **possum** *I am able*

55.2 **Puer** *boy* **nihil** *nothing* **respondēre** *to answer* **vult** *wishes*

55.3 **Nīl** *nothing* **mihi** *to me* **grātius** *more pleasing* **est** *is* **quam** *than* **pāx** *peace*

55.4 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **nīl** *nothing* **sine** *without* **causā** *reason* **dīcunt** *say*

55.5 **Dē** *about* **hāc** *this* **rē** *matter* **nihil** *nothing* **scīmus** *we know*

55.6 **Māter** *mother* **fīliō** *to son* **nihil** *nothing* **negat** *denies*

55.7 **Nīl** *nothing* **ā** *from* **dīs** *the gods* **sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **datur** *is given*

55.8 **Servus** *slave* **nōbīs** *to us* **nihil** *nothing* **nūntiāvit** *announced*

55.9 **Dē** *about* **bellō** *war* **nihil** *nothing* **audīvimus** *we heard*

55.10 **Aeger** *sick man* **nihil** *nothing* **edere** *to eat* **potest** *is able*

55.11 **Nīl** *nothing* **māius** *greater* **virtūte** *than virtue* **habēmus** *we have*

55.12 **Timidus** *fearful man* **nihil** *nothing* **sine** *without* **auxiliō** *help* **facit** *does*

55.13 **Ex** *from* **agrīs** *fields* **nīl** *nothing* **reportant** *they bring back* **agricolae** *farmers*

55.31 **Nīl** *nothing* **sine** *without* **magnō** *great* **perīculō** *danger* **fit** *happens*

55.15 **Nihil** *nothing* **est** *is* **difficile** *difficult* **volentī** *to one willing*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part A-2 (Experimental Text with Latin Case Endings)

The symbol Ø means no case ending exists

55.1 Altogether-ō nothing-Ø today-ē to see-re am able-m 55.2 Boy-us nothing-Ø to answer-re wish-t 55.3 Nothing-Ø to me-ī more pleasing-ius is-t than-m peace-x 55.4 Wise men-ēs nothing-Ø without-e cause-ā say-unt 55.5 About-ē this-āc matter-ē nothing-Ø know-mus 55.6 Mother-er to son-ō nothing-Ø deny-t 55.7 Nothing-Ø from-ā gods-īs without-e work-e give-tur 55.8 Slave-us to us-īs nothing-Ø announce-vit 55.9 About-ē war-ō nothing-Ø hear-vimus 55.10 Sick man-er nothing-Ø to eat-re can-est 55.11 Nothing-Ø greater-ius virtue-e have-mus 55.12 Fearful man-us nothing-Ø without-e help-ō do-it 55.13 From-x fields-īs nothing-Ø bring back-ant farmers-ae 55.31 Nothing-Ø without-e great-ō danger-ō happen-it 55.15 Nothing-Ø is-t difficult-e willing-ī

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

55.1 Omnīnō nihil hodiē vidēre possum. *I can see absolutely nothing today.*

55.2 Puer nihil respondēre vult. *The boy wishes to answer nothing.*

55.3 Nīl mihi grātius est quam pāx. *Nothing is more pleasing to me than peace.*

55.4 Sapientēs nīl sine causā dīcunt. *Wise men say nothing without a reason.*

55.5 Dē hāc rē nihil scīmus. *We know nothing about this matter.*

55.6 Māter fīliō nihil negat. *The mother denies nothing to her son.*

55.7 Nīl ā dīs sine labōre datur. *Nothing is given by the gods without work.*

55.8 Servus nōbīs nihil nūntiāvit. *The slave announced nothing to us.*

55.9 Dē bellō nihil audīvimus. *We heard nothing about the war.*

55.10 Aeger nihil edere potest. *The sick man can eat nothing.*

55.11 Nīl māius virtūte habēmus. *We have nothing greater than virtue.*

55.12 Timidus nihil sine auxiliō facit. *The fearful man does nothing without help.*

55.13 Ex agrīs nīl reportant agricolae. *The farmers bring back nothing from the fields.*

55.31 Nīl sine magnō perīculō fit. *Nothing happens without great danger.*

55.15 Nihil est difficile volentī. *Nothing is difficult for one who is willing.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

55.1 Omnīnō nihil hodiē vidēre possum.

55.2 Puer nihil respondēre vult.

55.3 Nīl mihi grātius est quam pāx.

55.4 Sapientēs nīl sine causā dīcunt.

55.5 Dē hāc rē nihil scīmus.

55.6 Māter fīliō nihil negat.

55.7 Nīl ā dīs sine labōre datur.

55.8 Servus nōbīs nihil nūntiāvit.

55.9 Dē bellō nihil audīvimus.

55.10 Aeger nihil edere potest.

55.11 Nīl māius virtūte habēmus.

55.12 Timidus nihil sine auxiliō facit.

55.13 Ex agrīs nīl reportant agricolae.

55.31 Nīl sine magnō perīculō fit.

55.15 Nihil est difficile volentī.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers learning Latin, understanding "nihil/nīl" requires attention to several key points:

1. Forms:
    - nihil and nīl are alternate forms of the same word
    - indeclinable (doesn't change form for different cases)
    - can function as either noun or adverb
    - often used with genitive of the whole
2. Common Uses:
    - As subject (Nihil difficile est)
    - As direct object (Nihil videō)
    - With prepositions (dē nihilō)
    - In comparisons (nihil māius)
    - With partitive genitive (nihil bonī)
3. Word Order:
    - Often placed for emphasis:
        - At start: Nihil sine labōre
        - Before verb: Puer nihil respondet
        - After verb: Videō nihil
4. Special Constructions:
    - nihil nisi = "nothing except"
    - nihil aliud = "nothing else"
    - nihil ad = "nothing to do with"
    - nihil est quod = "there is no reason why"

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "nihil" requires cultural context:

1. Philosophical Usage:
    - Central to Stoic concepts of nothingness
    - Used in debates about existence
    - Important in Roman poetry for describing void
2. Legal Context:
    - Used in formal declarations
    - Important in contracts ("nihil obstat")
    - Part of official pronouncements
3. Social Implications:
    - Could indicate complete denial
    - Used in polite refusals
    - Important in rhetorical statements
4. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "nothing"
    - Used in scientific terms

- Found in common Latin phrases still used today

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Seneca's "De Brevitate Vitae" (1.1):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Maior *the greater* **pars** *part* **mortālium** *of mortals,* **Paulīne** *Paulinus,* **dē** *about* **nātūrae** *of nature* **mālignitāte** *the unkindness* **queritur** *complains,* **quod** *because* **nīl** *nothing* **nōbīs** *for us* **nisi** *except* **exiguō** *in brief* **spatiō** *space* **datur** *is given.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Maior pars mortālium, Paulīne, dē nātūrae mālignitāte queritur, quod nīl nōbīs nisi exiguō spatiō datur.

The greater part of mortals, Paulinus, complains about nature's unkindness, because nothing is given to us except in a brief span.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Seneca uses "nīl" here to emphasize the perceived limitations of human life. The word placement emphasizes the totality of the limitation.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "nīl" functions as subject of "datur"
- "nisi" creates exception clause
- Ablative of manner in "exiguō spatiō"
- Complex sentence structure typical of Seneca

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

55.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **rogat** *asks* **quid** *what* **dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **sciat** *he knows*

55.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **sē** *himself* **nihil** *nothing* **scīre** *to know*

55.18 **Nīl** *nothing* **sine** *without* **sapientiā** *wisdom* **vērum** *true* **est** *is* **magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says*

55.19 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **discipulō** *to pupil* **dīcit** *says* **nihil** *nothing* **sine** *without* **causā** *reason* **fierī** *to happen*

55.20 **Nīl** *nothing* **enim** *for* **sine** *without* **ratione** *reason* **fit** *happens* **in** *in* **mundō** *world*

55.21 **Dē** *about* **animō** *soul* **nihil** *nothing* **certī** *certain* **habēmus** *we have*

55.22 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **dīcunt** *say* **nihil** *nothing* **sine** *without* **deō** *god* **fierī** *to happen*

55.23 **Nīl** *nothing* **praeter** *besides* **virtutem** *virtue* **bonum** *good* **est** *is*

55.24 **Discipulus** *pupil* **magistrō** *to teacher* **respondet** *replies* **sē** *himself* **nihil** *nothing* **intellegere** *to understand*

55.25 **Nīl** *nothing* **sine** *without* **studiō** *study* **discitur** *is learned*

55.26 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **dīcit** *says* **nihil** *nothing* **difficile** *difficult* **esse** *to be* **quaerentī** *for one seeking*

55.27 **Nīl** *nothing* **melius** *better* **quam** *than* **sapientia** *wisdom* **est** *is*

55.28 **In** *in* **vītā** *life* **nihil** *nothing* **sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **vērum** *true* **est** *is*

55.29 **Discipulus** *pupil* **intellegit** *understands* **nīl** *nothing* **sine** *without* **tempore** *time* **perfectum** *perfect* **esse** *to be*

55.30 **Magister** *teacher* **gaudet** *rejoices* **quod** *because* **discipulus** *pupil* **nihil** *nothing* **sine** *without* **ratione** *reason* **credit** *believes*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

55.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid dē vītā sciat. *The teacher asks the pupil what he knows about life.*

55.17 Discipulus respondet sē nihil scīre. *The pupil replies that he knows nothing.*

55.18 Nīl sine sapientiā vērum est, magister dīcit. *Nothing is true without wisdom, says the teacher.*

55.19 Philosophus discipulō dīcit nihil sine causā fierī. *The philosopher tells the pupil that nothing happens without a cause.*

55.20 Nīl enim sine ratione fit in mundō. *For nothing happens in the world without reason.*

55.21 Dē animō nihil certī habēmus. *We have nothing certain about the soul.*

55.22 Sapientēs dīcunt nihil sine deō fierī. *The wise men say that nothing happens without god.*

55.23 Nīl praeter virtutem bonum est. *Nothing besides virtue is good.*

55.24 Discipulus magistrō respondet sē nihil intellegere. *The pupil replies to the teacher that he understands nothing.*

55.25 Nīl sine studiō discitur. *Nothing is learned without study.*

55.26 Philosophus dīcit nihil difficile esse quaerentī. *The philosopher says that nothing is difficult for one who seeks.*

55.27 Nīl melius quam sapientia est. *Nothing is better than wisdom.*

55.28 In vītā nihil sine labōre vērum est. *In life nothing is true without work.*

55.29 Discipulus intellegit nīl sine tempore perfectum esse. *The pupil understands that nothing is perfect without time.*

55.30 Magister gaudet quod discipulus nihil sine ratione credit. *The teacher rejoices because the pupil believes nothing without reason.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

55.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid dē vītā sciat.

55.17 Discipulus respondet sē nihil scīre.

55.18 Nīl sine sapientiā vērum est, magister dīcit.

55.19 Philosophus discipulō dīcit nihil sine causā fierī.

55.20 Nīl enim sine ratione fit in mundō.

55.21 Dē animō nihil certī habēmus.

55.22 Sapientēs dīcunt nihil sine deō fierī.

55.23 Nīl praeter virtutem bonum est.

55.24 Discipulus magistrō respondet sē nihil intellegere.

55.25 Nīl sine studiō discitur.

55.26 Philosophus dīcit nihil difficile esse quaerentī.

55.27 Nīl melius quam sapientia est.

55.28 In vītā nihil sine labōre vērum est.

55.29 Discipulus intellegit nīl sine tempore perfectum esse.

55.30 Magister gaudet quod discipulus nihil sine ratione credit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

In philosophical dialogue, "nihil/nīl" appears in several distinct grammatical constructions. Let's examine each with concrete examples:

1. As Subject of Main Clause: Original: "Nīl sine sapientiā vērum est" Analysis:
    - nihil = subject
    - vērum = predicate adjective
    - est = linking verb Similar construction: "Nihil pulchrum est" (Nothing is beautiful)
2. In Indirect Statement: Original: "Discipulus respondet sē nihil scīre" Analysis:
    - sē = accusative subject
    - nihil = direct object
    - scīre = complementary infinitive Similar pattern: "Dīcit sē nihil vidēre" (He says he sees nothing)
3. With Partitive Genitive: Original: "Dē animō nihil certī habēmus" Analysis:
    - nihil = head noun
    - certī = partitive genitive Compare: "nihil bonī" (nothing of good)

4. In Comparisons: Original: "Nīl melius quam sapientia est" Analysis:
    - nihil = subject
    - melius = comparative adjective
    - quam = than Similar: "Nihil peius quam ignōrantia" (Nothing worse than ignorance)
5. With Prepositions: Original: "Nihil sine causā" Analysis:
    - nihil = noun with preposition
    - sine + ablative construction Pattern: "Nihil sine [ablative noun]"
6. Special Philosophical Constructions: a. Universal Negation: "Nihil sine ratione fit"
    - Emphasizes universal principle
    - Often uses present tense

    b. Epistemic Statements: "Nihil scīmus"
    - Used in discussions of knowledge
    - Often with verbs of knowing/understanding

    c. Ethical Maxims: "Nīl praeter virtutem bonum est"
    - States moral principle
    - Often uses present tense for timeless truth
7. Word Order Patterns: Compare these positions:
    - Initial: "Nihil sine labōre discitur"
    - Medial: "Dē animō nihil certī habēmus"
    - Final: "Scimus nihil" Effect: Position affects emphasis
8. In Subordinate Clauses: Original: "Magister gaudet quod discipulus nihil sine ratione credit" Analysis:
    - nihil in causal clause with quod
    - Maintains core meaning Pattern: "[Main clause] quod nihil [rest of subordinate clause]"

These constructions show how "nihil" functions in philosophical discourse to:

- State universal principles
- Express epistemic limitations
- Formulate ethical maxims
- Structure logical arguments

Lesson 56 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 56: tum/tunc (then)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

56.1 **Servus** *slave* **tum** *then* **dominum** *master* **vīdit** *saw* **et** *and* **salūtāvit** *greeted*

56.2 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **nostrī** *our* **tum** *then* **castra** *camp* **mūnīvērunt** *fortified*

56.3 **Urbs** *city* **magna** *great* **tunc** *then* **flōrēbat** *was flourishing*

56.4 **Tum** *then* **puer** *boy* **mātrī** *to mother* **litterās** *letter* **dedit** *gave*

56.5 **Hostēs** *enemies* **tunc** *then* **fugam** *flight* **petīvērunt** *sought*

56.6 **Agricola** *farmer* **agrōs** *fields* **tum** *then* **relīquit** *left*

56.7 **Tum** *then* **tempestās** *storm* **magnā** *great* **vī** *with force* **incipit** *begins*

56.8 **Fēmina** *woman* **tunc** *then* **fīliō** *to son* **cibum** *food* **parābat** *was preparing*

56.9 **Mercātor** *merchant* **tum** *then* **pecūniam** *money* **numerābat** *was counting*

56.10 **Tum** *then* **vēr** *spring* **dulce** *sweet* **appropinquābat** *was approaching*

56.11 **Senātor** *senator* **tunc** *then* **populum** *people* **monēbat** *was warning*

56.12 **Tum** *then* **cīvēs** *citizens* **templum** *temple* **novum** *new* **vīdērunt** *saw*

56.13 **Sacerdōs** *priest* **tunc** *then* **deōs** *gods* **ōrābat** *was praying to*

56.31 **Pāx** *peace* **tum** *then* **terram** *land* **tenēbat** *was holding*

56.15 **Tunc** *then* **rēx** *king* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **laudāvit** *praised*

Part A-2 (Experimental Text with Case Endings)

56.1 Slave-us then master-um saw-it and greeted-it 56.2 Soldier-es our-ī then camp-a fortified-ērunt 56.3 City-s great-a then flourish-bat 56.4 Then boy-er mother-ī letter-ās gave-it 56.5 Enemy-ēs then flight-am sought-ērunt 56.6 Farmer-a field-ōs then left-it 56.7 Then storm-ās great-ā force-ī begins-it 56.8 Woman-a then son-ō food-um prepared-bat 56.9 Merchant-or then money-am counted-bat 56.10 Then spring-r sweet-e approached-bat 56.11 Senator-or then people-um warned-bat 56.12 Then citizen-ēs temple-um new-um saw-ērunt 56.13 Priest-ōs then god-ōs prayed-bat 56.31 Peace-x then land-am held-bat 56.15 Then king-x soldier-ēs praised-it

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

56.1 Servus dominum tum vīdit et salūtāvit. *The slave then saw and greeted his master.*

56.2 Castra nostra mīlitēs tum mūnīvērunt. *Our soldiers then fortified the camp.*

56.3 Magna urbs tunc flōrēbat. *The great city was then flourishing.*

56.4 Tum puer mātrī litterās dedit. *Then the boy gave the letter to his mother.*

56.5 Hostēs tunc in fugam sē petīvērunt. *Then the enemies sought flight.*

56.6 Agrōs agricola tum relīquit. *Then the farmer left his fields.*

56.7 Magnā vī tum tempestās incipit. *Then the storm begins with great force.*

56.8 Fīliō tunc fēmina cibum parābat. *Then the woman was preparing food for her son.*

56.9 Pecūniam mercātor tum numerābat. *Then the merchant was counting his money.*

56.10 Tum dulce vēr appropinquābat. *Then sweet spring was approaching.*

56.11 Populum tunc senātor monēbat. *Then the senator was warning the people.*

56.12 Templum novum cīvēs tum vīdērunt. *Then the citizens saw the new temple.*

56.13 Deōs tunc sacerdōs ōrābat. *Then the priest was praying to the gods.*

56.31 Terram tum pāx tenēbat. *Then peace was holding the land.*

56.15 Tunc rēx mīlitēs suōs laudāvit. *Then the king praised his soldiers.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

56.1 Servus dominum tum vīdit et salūtāvit.

56.2 Castra nostra mīlitēs tum mūnīvērunt.

56.3 Magna urbs tunc flōrēbat.

56.4 Tum puer mātrī litterās dedit.

56.5 Hostēs tunc in fugam sē petīvērunt.

56.6 Agrōs agricola tum relīquit.

56.7 Magnā vī tum tempestās incipit.

56.8 Fīliō tunc fēmina cibum parābat.

56.9 Pecūniam mercātor tum numerābat.

56.10 Tum dulce vēr appropinquābat.

56.11 Populum tunc senātor monēbat.

56.12 Templum novum cīvēs tum vīdērunt.

56.13 Deōs tunc sacerdōs ōrābat.

56.31 Terram tum pāx tenēbat.

56.15 Tunc rēx mīlitēs suōs laudāvit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The temporal adverbs "tum" and "tunc" are essential for narrative sequence in Latin. Here are the key points for English speakers:

1. Basic Usage:
    - Both mean "then" or "at that time"

    - Used to show sequence of events
    - Can begin or appear within sentences
    - Often paired with other temporal markers
2. Position in Sentence:
    - Initial position emphasizes temporal sequence
    - Middle position connects related events
    - Can appear after important words for emphasis
3. Common Patterns:
    - With Perfect tense for completed actions
    - With Imperfect for ongoing past actions
    - In historical narrative
    - In result clauses
4. Differences from English:
    - More flexible placement than English "then"
    - Can be repeated more frequently
    - Often implied where English requires it

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "tum/tunc" requires cultural context:

1. Historical Writing:
    - Essential in Roman historiography
    - Used to structure narrative sequence
    - Important in military accounts
    - Key for political speeches
2. Daily Life:
    - Used in describing daily routines
    - Important in legal proceedings
    - Part of religious ritual descriptions
    - Common in letters
3. Literary Style:
    - Different authors had preferences
    - Caesar preferred "tum"
    - Formal vs informal usage
    - Narrative techniques
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English temporal markers
    - Important for reading Latin texts
    - Helps understand Roman thinking
    - Essential for translation

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.25):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Tum *then* **nostris** *our* **omnibus** *all* **occupatis** *being busy* **in** *with* **munitionibus** *fortifications* **castrorum** *of camp,* **subito** *suddenly* **ex** *from* **omnibus** *all* **partibus** *parts* **silvae** *of forest* **evolaverunt** *flew out* **et** *and* **in** *against* **nostros** *our men* **impetum** *attack* **fecerunt.** *made.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Tum nostris omnibus occupatis in munitionibus castrorum, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt.

Then, while all our men were occupied with the fortifications of the camp, they suddenly flew out from all parts of the forest and made an attack against our men.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "tum" to mark a crucial moment in battle. The word order emphasizes:

- Temporal sequence (tum)
- Roman perspective (nostris)
- Suddenness of attack (subito)
- Total nature of assault (omnibus partibus)

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Ablative absolute: nostris occupatis
- Prepositional phrases: ex partibus, in nostros
- Perfect tense for sudden actions
- Present participle showing simultaneous action

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

56.16 **Imperātor** *commander* **tum** *then* **cōpiās** *forces* **parāvit** *prepared*

56.17 **Tunc** *then* **legiōnēs** *legions* **castra** *camp* **mōvērunt** *moved*

56.18 **Hostēs** *enemies* **tum** *then* **fugere** *to flee* **incēpērunt** *began*

56.19 **Tunc** *then* **dux** *leader* **victōriam** *victory* **speravit** *hoped for*

56.20 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **tum** *then* **pontem** *bridge* **dēfendērunt** *defended*

56.21 **Tum** *then* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **nūntium** *message* **attulērunt** *brought*

56.22 **Centuriō** *centurion* **tunc** *then* **ōrdinem** *rank* **īnstrūxit** *arranged*

56.23 **Tum** *then* **equitēs** *cavalry* **flūmen** *river* **trānsiērunt** *crossed*

56.24 **Rēx** *king* **tunc** *then* **pācem** *peace* **petīvit** *sought*

56.25 **Tum** *then* **senātus** *senate* **bellum** *war* **dēcrēvit** *decreed*

56.26 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **tunc** *then* **urbem** *city* **relīquērunt** *left*

56.27 **Tum** *then* **templa** *temples* **deōrum** *of gods* **ornāvērunt** *decorated*

56.28 **Legiō** *legion* **tunc** *then* **montem** *mountain* **occupāvit** *seized*

56.29 **Tum** *then* **victōrēs** *victors* **praemia** *rewards* **accēpērunt** *received*

56.30 **Pāx** *peace* **tunc** *then* **terram** *land* **tenēbat** *held*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

56.16 Imperātor cōpiās tum parāvit. *Then the commander prepared his forces.*

56.17 Legiōnēs tunc castra mōvērunt. *Then the legions moved camp.*

56.18 Hostēs tum fugere incēpērunt. *Then the enemies began to flee.*

56.19 Victōriam dux tunc speravit. *Then the leader hoped for victory.*

56.20 Pontem mīlitēs tum dēfendērunt. *Then the soldiers defended the bridge.*

56.21 Tum explōrātōrēs nūntium gravem attulērunt. *Then the scouts brought serious news.*

56.22 Ōrdinem centuriō tunc īnstrūxit. *Then the centurion arranged the rank.*

56.23 Flūmen tum equitēs magnā vī trānsiērunt. *Then the cavalry crossed the river with great force.*

56.24 Pācem rēx tunc ā Rōmānīs petīvit. *Then the king sought peace from the Romans.*

56.25 Bellum tum senātus contrā hostēs dēcrēvit. *Then the senate decreed war against the enemies.*

56.26 Urbem cīvēs tunc metū hostium relīquērunt. *Then the citizens left the city out of fear of the enemy.*

56.27 Templa deōrum tum māgnā cūrā ornāvērunt. *Then they decorated the temples of the gods with great care.*

56.28 Montem legiō tunc fortiter occupāvit. *Then the legion bravely seized the mountain.*

56.29 Praemia tum victōrēs laetī accēpērunt. *Then the joyful victors received their rewards.*

56.30 Terram pāx tunc diū tenēbat. *Then peace held the land for a long time.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

56.16 Imperātor cōpiās tum parāvit.

56.17 Legiōnēs tunc castra mōvērunt.

56.18 Hostēs tum fugere incēpērunt.

56.19 Victōriam dux tunc speravit.

56.20 Pontem mīlitēs tum dēfendērunt.

56.21 Tum explōrātōrēs nūntium gravem attulērunt.

56.22 Ōrdinem centuriō tunc īnstrūxit.

56.23 Flūmen tum equitēs magnā vī trānsiērunt.

56.24 Pācem rēx tunc ā Rōmānīs petīvit.

56.25 Bellum tum senātus contrā hostēs dēcrēvit.

56.26 Urbem cīvēs tunc metū hostium relīquērunt.

56.27 Templa deōrum tum māgnā cūrā ornāvērunt.

56.28 Montem legiō tunc fortiter occupāvit.

56.29 Praemia tum victōrēs laetī accēpērunt.

56.30 Terram pāx tunc diū tenēbat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

In historical narrative, the use of tum/tunc shows several important patterns:

1. Sequence of Events:
    - Often begins sentences to show clear progression
    - Example: "Tum explōrātōrēs nūntium gravem attulērunt"
    - Connects related events in chronological order
    - Helps structure historical narrative
2. Position Variations:
    - Initial position: "Tum explōrātōrēs..."
    - Medial position: "Imperātor cōpiās tum parāvit"
    - After important words: "Hostēs tum fugere incēpērunt"
3. Verb Tense Relationships:
    - Perfect tense for completed actions: "Legiōnēs tunc castra mōvērunt"
    - Imperfect for ongoing situations: "Terram pāx tunc diū tenēbat"
    - Historical present for vivid narration: "Flūmen tum equitēs magnā vī trānsiērunt"
4. Military Context:
    - Used with technical military terms:
        - castra mōvēre (to move camp)
        - ōrdinem īnstruere (to arrange ranks)
        - pontem dēfendere (to defend a bridge)
5. Political Context:
    - Formal decisions: "Bellum tum senātus dēcrēvit"
    - Diplomatic actions: "Pācem rēx tunc petīvit"
    - Public events: "Templa deōrum tum ornāvērunt"

6. Complex Sentences:
    - With ablative of means: "magnā vī"
    - With ablative of cause: "metū hostium"
    - With adverbs: "fortiter", "diū"
7. Word Order Patterns:
    - Object emphasis: "Victōriam dux tunc speravit"
    - Subject emphasis: "Legiōnēs tunc castra mōvērunt"
    - Action emphasis: "Fugere tum hostēs incēpērunt"
8. Special Uses:
    - Marking pivotal moments: "Tum explōrātōrēs nūntium attulērunt"
    - Introducing results: "Praemia tum victōrēs accēpērunt"
    - Concluding episodes: "Terram pāx tunc tenēbat"

Lesson 57 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 57: enim (for, indeed)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

57.1 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **enim** *for* **vērum** *truth* **semper** *always* **dīcunt** *say*

57.2 **Nōn** *not* **facile** *easy* **enim** *indeed* **est** *it is* **hoc** *this* **opus** *work*

57.3 **Magnus** *great* **enim** *for* **labor** *work* **nōs** *us* **manet** *awaits*

57.4 **Rēx** *king* **enim** *for* **iūstus** *just* **omnēs** *all* **cīvēs** *citizens* **amat** *loves*

57.5 **Bellum** *war* **enim** *for* **pācem** *peace* **saepe** *often* **parat** *prepares*

57.6 **Māter** *mother* **enim** *for* **līberōs** *children* **semper** *always* **cūrat** *cares for*

57.7 **Virtūs** *virtue* **enim** *for* **sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **nōn** *not* **venit** *comes*

57.8 **Tempus** *time* **enim** *indeed* **nūllum** *no* **verbum** *word* **exspectat** *waits for*

57.9 **Vēritās** *truth* **enim** *for* **immortālis** *immortal* **est** *is*

57.10 **Amīcus** *friend* **enim** *for* **in** *in* **perīculō** *danger* **adest** *is present*

57.11 **Hostēs** *enemies* **enim** *for* **urbem** *city* **nostram** *our* **timent** *fear*

57.12 **Diēs** *day* **enim** *indeed* **brevis** *short* **est** *is* **hieme** *in winter*

57.13 **Magister** *teacher* **enim** *for* **discipulōs** *pupils* **docēre** *to teach* **dēbet** *ought*

57.31 **Agricola** *farmer* **enim** *for* **multōs** *many* **agrōs** *fields* **habet** *has*

57.15 **Patria** *fatherland* **enim** *for* **cīvibus** *by citizens* **dēfenditur** *is defended*

Part A-2 (Experimental Text with Latin Case Endings)

Ø means no case ending

57.1 Wise-ēs for-Ø truth-um always-Ø say-unt 57.2 Not-Ø easy-e for-Ø is-t this-oc work-us 57.3 Great-us for-Ø work-or us-ōs awaits-et 57.4 King-x for-Ø just-us all-ēs citizens-ēs loves-at 57.5 War-um for-Ø peace-em often-Ø prepares-at 57.6 Mother-r for-Ø children-ōs always-Ø cares for-at 57.7 Virtue-s for-Ø without-e work-e not-Ø comes-it 57.8 Time-us for-Ø no-um word-um waits for-at 57.9 Truth-s for-Ø immortal-is is-t 57.10 Friend-us for-Ø in-n danger-ō is present-t 57.11 Enemies-ēs for-Ø city-em our-am fear-ent 57.12 Day-s for-Ø short-is is-t winter-e 57.13 Teacher-r for-Ø pupils-ōs to teach-re ought-et 57.31 Farmer-a for-Ø many-ōs fields-ōs has-et 57.15 Fatherland-a for-Ø citizens-ibus is defended-itur

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

57.1 Sapientēs enim vērum semper dīcunt. *For wise men always speak the truth.*

57.2 Nōn facile enim est hoc opus. *Indeed, this work is not easy.*

57.3 Magnus enim labor nōs manet. *For a great task awaits us.*

57.4 Rēx enim iūstus omnēs cīvēs amat. *For a just king loves all citizens.*

57.5 Bellum enim pācem saepe parat. *For war often prepares peace.*

57.6 Māter enim līberōs semper cūrat. *For a mother always cares for her children.*

57.7 Virtūs enim sine labōre nōn venit. *For virtue does not come without work.*

57.8 Tempus enim nūllum verbum exspectat. *For time waits for no word.*

57.9 Vēritās enim immortālis est. *For truth is immortal.*

57.10 Amīcus enim in perīculō adest. *For a friend is present in danger.*

57.11 Hostēs enim urbem nostram timent. *For the enemies fear our city.*

57.12 Diēs enim brevis est hieme. *Indeed, the day is short in winter.*

57.13 Magister enim discipulōs docēre dēbet. *For a teacher ought to teach pupils.*

57.31 Agricola enim multōs agrōs habet. *For the farmer has many fields.*

57.15 Patria enim cīvibus dēfenditur. *For the fatherland is defended by its citizens.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

57.1 Sapientēs enim vērum semper dīcunt.

57.2 Nōn facile enim est hoc opus.

57.3 Magnus enim labor nōs manet.

57.4 Rēx enim iūstus omnēs cīvēs amat.

57.5 Bellum enim pācem saepe parat.

57.6 Māter enim līberōs semper cūrat.

57.7 Virtūs enim sine labōre nōn venit.

57.8 Tempus enim nūllum verbum exspectat.

57.9 Vēritās enim immortālis est.

57.10 Amīcus enim in perīculō adest.

57.11 Hostēs enim urbem nostram timent.

57.12 Diēs enim brevis est hieme.

57.13 Magister enim discipulōs docēre dēbet.

57.31 Agricola enim multōs agrōs habet.

57.15 Patria enim cīvibus dēfenditur.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The particle "enim" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Position in Sentence:
    - Never comes first in its clause
    - Usually second or third word
    - Can follow a negative: "nōn enim"
    - Often follows the subject
2. Usage:
    - Explains or gives reason for previous statement
    - Confirms or strengthens an assertion
    - Similar to English "for" or "indeed"
    - Less forceful than "nam"
3. Common Patterns:
    - With verbs of saying: "dīcunt enim"
    - In explanations: "est enim"
    - With negatives: "nōn enim"
    - In responses: "ita enim"
4. Contextual Meaning:
    - Causal: "for, because"
    - Confirmatory: "indeed, truly"
    - Explanatory: "you see, that is"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "enim" requires cultural context:

1. Rhetorical Usage:
    - Essential in Roman oratory
    - Used in logical arguments
    - Common in philosophical texts
    - Part of formal debate style
2. Literary Context:
    - Different from colloquial usage
    - Important in historical writing
    - Used in poetry differently
    - Shows educational level
3. Social Implications:
    - Marks formal discourse
    - Shows logical thinking
    - Indicates educated speech
    - Used in legal contexts
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to formal English "for"
    - Used in academic Latin
    - Important in legal Latin
    - Still used in Church Latin

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (47):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Vērum *true* **enim** *indeed* **amīcum** *friend* **quī** *who* **intuētur** *gazes upon,* **tamquam** *as if* **exemplar** *model* **aliquod** *some* **intuētur** *gazes upon* **suī** *of himself.* **Quōcircā** *therefore* **et** *both* **absentēs** *absent ones* **adsunt** *are present* **et** *and* **egentēs** *needy ones* **abundant** *abound* **et** *and* **imbēcillī** *weak ones* **valent** *are strong* **et,** *and,* **quod** *which* **difficilius** *more difficult* **dictū** *to say* **est,** *is,* **mortuī** *dead ones* **vīvunt** *live.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Vērum enim amīcum quī intuētur, tamquam exemplar aliquod intuētur suī. Quōcircā et absentēs adsunt et egentēs abundant et imbēcillī valent et, quod difficilius dictū est, mortuī vīvunt."

For he who gazes upon a true friend gazes upon a kind of image of himself. Therefore both the absent are present and the needy abound and the weak are strong and, what is more difficult to say, the dead live.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "enim" here to introduce an explanation of friendship's nature. The passage demonstrates:

- Position of "enim" (second word)

- Explanatory function
- Connection to previous context
- Formal philosophical style

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "enim" follows first word
- Multiple "et" coordinating phrases
- Use of relative clause "quī"
- Parallel structure with contrasts
- Supine "dictū" with comparative

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

57.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **interrogat** *asks* **quid** *what* **sit** *might be* **sapientia** *wisdom*

57.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **difficile** *difficult* **enim** *indeed* **esse** *to be* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **dēfīnīre** *to define*

57.18 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **enim** *for* **semper** *always* **quaerunt** *seek* **vēritātem** *truth*

57.19 **Multī** *many* **enim** *for* **errōrēs** *errors* **in** *in* **vītā** *life* **sunt** *are*

57.20 **Philosophī** *philosophers* **enim** *for* **nōn** *not* **semper** *always* **cōnsentiunt** *agree*

57.21 **Vēritās** *truth* **enim** *for* **multās** *many* **formās** *forms* **habet** *has*

57.22 **Nātūra** *nature* **enim** *for* **optimē** *best* **docet** *teaches*

57.23 **Magnum** *great* **enim** *for* **gaudium** *joy* **est** *is* **intellegere** *to understand*

57.24 **Ratiō** *reason* **enim** *for* **hominēs** *men* **ā** *from* **bēstiīs** *beasts* **distinguit** *distinguishes*

57.25 **Virtūs** *virtue* **enim** *for* **per** *through* **sē** *itself* **ipsa** *itself* **placet** *pleases*

57.26 **Animus** *mind* **enim** *for* **noster** *our* **immortālis** *immortal* **est** *is*

57.27 **Scientia** *knowledge* **enim** *for* **potentiam** *power* **dat** *gives*

57.28 **Sapientia** *wisdom* **enim** *for* **melior** *better* **quam** *than* **dīvitiae** *riches* **est** *is*

57.29 **Philosophia** *philosophy* **enim** *for* **magistra** *teacher* **vītae** *of life* **est** *is*

57.30 **Disciplīna** *learning* **enim** *for* **sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **nūlla** *no* **est** *is*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

57.16 Magister discipulum interrogat quid sit sapientia. *The teacher asks the pupil what wisdom might be.*

57.17 Discipulus respondet difficile enim esse sapientiam dēfīnīre. *The pupil replies that it is indeed difficult to define wisdom.*

57.18 Sapientēs enim semper quaerunt vēritātem. *For wise men always seek truth.*

57.19 Multī enim errōrēs in vītā sunt. *For there are many errors in life.*

57.20 Philosophī enim nōn semper cōnsentiunt. *For philosophers do not always agree.*

57.21 Vēritās enim multās formās habet. *For truth has many forms.*

57.22 Nātūra enim optimē docet. *For nature teaches best.*

57.23 Magnum enim gaudium est intellegere. *For it is a great joy to understand.*

57.24 Ratiō enim hominēs ā bēstiīs distinguit. *For reason distinguishes men from beasts.*

57.25 Virtūs enim per sē ipsa placet. *For virtue pleases through itself alone.*

57.26 Animus enim noster immortālis est. *For our mind is immortal.*

57.27 Scientia enim potentiam dat. *For knowledge gives power.*

57.28 Sapientia enim melior quam dīvitiae est. *For wisdom is better than riches.*

57.29 Philosophia enim magistra vītae est. *For philosophy is the teacher of life.*

57.30 Disciplīna enim sine labōre nūlla est. *For there is no learning without work.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

57.16 Magister discipulum interrogat quid sit sapientia.

57.17 Discipulus respondet difficile enim esse sapientiam dēfīnīre.

57.18 Sapientēs enim semper quaerunt vēritātem.

57.19 Multī enim errōrēs in vītā sunt.

57.20 Philosophī enim nōn semper cōnsentiunt.

57.21 Vēritās enim multās formās habet.

57.22 Nātūra enim optimē docet.

57.23 Magnum enim gaudium est intellegere.

57.24 Ratiō enim hominēs ā bēstiīs distinguit.

57.25 Virtūs enim per sē ipsa placet.

57.26 Animus enim noster immortālis est.

57.27 Scientia enim potentiam dat.

57.28 Sapientia enim melior quam dīvitiae est.

57.29 Philosophia enim magistra vītae est.

57.30 Disciplīna enim sine labōre nūlla est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In philosophical dialogue, "enim" serves several specific functions:

1. Logical Connection:
    - Introduces explanations: "Ratiō enim..."
    - Supports arguments: "Virtūs enim..."
    - Provides reasoning: "Scientia enim..."
2. Structural Patterns:
    - Often follows abstract nouns: "Sapientia enim..."
    - Used in definitions: "Philosophia enim..."
    - Connects logical steps: "Disciplīna enim..."
3. Common Constructions:
    - With esse + infinitive: "difficile enim esse..."
    - In comparisons: "melior quam..."
    - With universal statements: "semper..."
4. Special Uses in Philosophy:
    - Introducing philosophical principles
    - Supporting ethical statements
    - Connecting parts of arguments
    - Explaining abstract concepts
5. Position in Philosophical Text:
    - Usually second word in clause
    - Often follows key term being discussed
    - Can separate subject from predicate
    - Links related ideas

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 58 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: tamen (nevertheless, still)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

58.1 **Puer** *boy* **malus** *bad* **est** *is,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **ā** *by* **magistrō** *the teacher* **laudātur** *is praised*

58.2 **Etiam** *even* **sī** *if* **pluit** *it rains,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **labōrāre** *to work* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

58.3 **Hostēs** *enemies* **fortēs** *brave* **erant,** *were,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **victī** *conquered* **sunt** *were*

58.4 **Multī** *many* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **vulnerātī** *wounded* **sunt,** *were,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **pugnābant** *they were fighting*

58.5 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **errāre** *to err* **possunt,** *are able,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **cōnsilia** *advice* **eōrum** *their* **bona** *good* **sunt** *is*

58.6 **Senex** *old man* **caecus** *blind* **est,** *is,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **laetus** *happy* **vīvit** *lives*

58.7 **Viam** *way* **longam** *long* **vidēmus,** *we see,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **properāmus** *we hurry*

58.8 **Magna** *great* **perīcula** *dangers* **timēmus,** *we fear,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnāmus** *we fight*

58.9 **Servus** *slave* **aeger** *sick* **erat,** *was,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **opus** *work* **perfēcit** *completed*

58.10 **Nōbīs** *for us* **dēfessīs** *tired* **iter** *journey* **longum** *long* **erat,** *was,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **nōn** *not* **quiēscēbāmus** *we were resting*

58.11 **Rēx** *king* **potēns** *powerful* **erat,** *was,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **inimīcōs** *enemies* **multōs** *many* **habēbat** *had*

58.12 **Difficile** *difficult* **est** *is* **opus,** *work,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **facere** *to do* **possumus** *we are able*

58.13 **Poēta** *poet* **pauper** *poor* **erat,** *was,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **carmina** *poems* **pulchra** *beautiful* **scrībēbat** *was writing*

58.31 **Lībertās** *freedom* **cāra** *dear* **est,** *is,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **multī** *many* **eam** *it* **āmittunt** *lose*

58.15 **Puella** *girl* **parva** *small* **est,** *is,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **multum** *much* **labōrat** *works*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

58.1 Puer malus est, tamen ā magistrō laudātur. *The boy is bad, nevertheless he is praised by the teacher.*

58.2 Etiam sī pluit, tamen labōrāre dēbēmus. *Even if it rains, still we must work.*

58.3 Hostēs fortēs erant, tamen victī sunt. *The enemies were brave, nevertheless they were conquered.*

58.4 Multī mīlitēs vulnerātī sunt, tamen pugnābant. *Many soldiers were wounded, still they fought.*

58.5 Sapientēs errāre possunt, tamen cōnsilia eōrum bona sunt. *The wise can err, nevertheless their advice is good.*

58.6 Senex caecus est, tamen laetus vīvit. *The old man is blind, yet he lives happily.*

58.7 Viam longam vidēmus, tamen ad urbem properāmus. *We see the long road, still we hurry to the city.*

58.8 Magna perīcula timēmus, tamen fortiter pugnāmus. *We fear great dangers, nevertheless we fight bravely.*

58.9 Servus aeger erat, tamen opus perfēcit. *The slave was sick, still he completed the work.*

58.10 Nōbīs dēfessīs iter longum erat, tamen nōn quiēscēbāmus. *For us who were tired the journey was long, yet we did not rest.*

58.11 Rēx potēns erat, tamen inimīcōs multōs habēbat. *The king was powerful, nevertheless he had many enemies.*

58.12 Difficile est opus, tamen facere possumus. *The work is difficult, still we can do it.*

58.13 Poēta pauper erat, tamen carmina pulchra scrībēbat. *The poet was poor, yet he wrote beautiful poems.*

58.31 Lībertās cāra est, tamen multī eam āmittunt. *Freedom is precious, nevertheless many lose it.*

58.15 Puella parva est, tamen multum labōrat. *The girl is small, yet she works much.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

58.1 Puer malus est, tamen ā magistrō laudātur.

58.2 Etiam sī pluit, tamen labōrāre dēbēmus.

58.3 Hostēs fortēs erant, tamen victī sunt.

58.4 Multī mīlitēs vulnerātī sunt, tamen pugnābant.

58.5 Sapientēs errāre possunt, tamen cōnsilia eōrum bona sunt.

58.6 Senex caecus est, tamen laetus vīvit.

58.7 Viam longam vidēmus, tamen ad urbem properāmus.

58.8 Magna perīcula timēmus, tamen fortiter pugnāmus.

58.9 Servus aeger erat, tamen opus perfēcit.

58.10 Nōbīs dēfessīs iter longum erat, tamen nōn quiēscēbāmus.

58.11 Rēx potēns erat, tamen inimīcōs multōs habēbat.

58.12 Difficile est opus, tamen facere possumus.

58.13 Poēta pauper erat, tamen carmina pulchra scrībēbat.

58.31 Lībertās cāra est, tamen multī eam āmittunt.

58.15 Puella parva est, tamen multum labōrat.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The conjunction "tamen" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Position:
    - Usually appears second or third in its clause

    - Can begin a clause for emphasis
    - Often follows concessive clauses (introduced by etiam sī, quamquam, etc.)
2. Usage:
    - Adversative conjunction showing contrast
    - Links two contrasting ideas
    - Similar to English "nevertheless," "however," "still," "yet"
    - Often pairs with concessive conjunctions
3. Common Patterns:
    - etiam sī/quamquam... tamen... (even if/although... nevertheless...)
    - [statement], tamen... (statement, however...)
    - tamen at start of new sentence referring back to previous thought
4. Specific Examples from the Lesson:
    - With concessive clause: "Etiam sī pluit, tamen labōrāre dēbēmus"
    - With contrasting statements: "Puer malus est, tamen ā magistrō laudātur"
    - With participles: "Multī mīlitēs vulnerātī sunt, tamen pugnābant"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "tamen" requires cultural context about Roman rhetoric and thought:

1. Roman Rhetoric:
    - Contrast was a key element in Roman oratory
    - "Tamen" often marked dramatic turning points in speeches
    - Used to build tension and surprise
    - Important in legal arguments
2. Literary Usage:
    - Common in historical narratives to show unexpected outcomes
    - Used in poetry to create dramatic tension
    - Important in philosophical discussions
    - Key element in letter writing
3. Social Implications:
    - Romans valued perseverance despite obstacles
    - "Tamen" often marked admirable persistence
    - Used to praise unexpected virtue
    - Important in military reports
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English "nevertheless"
    - Used in academic Latin today
    - Important in legal Latin
    - Found in scientific terminology

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia" (12):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Quae *which things* **cum** *when* **ita** *thus* **sint** *are,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **haec** *these* **studia** *pursuits* **nōn** *not* **impediuntur** *are hindered* **senectūte;** *by old age;* **contrā** *on the contrary* **mēns** *mind* **et** *and* **ratiō** *reason* **et** *and* **cōnsilium** *wisdom* **in** *in* **senibus** *old men* **est** *is*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Quae cum ita sint, tamen haec studia nōn impediuntur senectūte; contrā mēns et ratiō et cōnsilium in senibus est."

Although these things are so, nevertheless these pursuits are not hindered by old age; on the contrary, mind and reason and wisdom are found in old men.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "tamen" here to contrast the common view of old age with its actual benefits. The word placement emphasizes the unexpected positive aspects of aging.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Quae cum ita sint" is a common transitional phrase
- "Tamen" introduces the main clause
- Passive voice in "impediuntur"
- Tricolon in "mēns et ratiō et cōnsilium"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

58.16 **Hannibal** *Hannibal* **Alpēs** *Alps* **altās** *high* **vidēbat,** *saw,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **trānsīre** *to cross* **parātus** *ready* **erat** *was*

58.17 **Nix** *snow* **alta** *deep* **erat** *was* **et** *and* **ventus** *wind* **saevus** *fierce* **flābat,** *was blowing,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **fortiter** *bravely* **prōcēdēbant** *were advancing*

58.18 **Multī** *many* **elephantī** *elephants* **in** *in* **itinere** *journey* **mortuī** *dead* **sunt,** *were,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **exercitus** *army* **montem** *mountain* **ascendēbat** *was climbing*

58.19 **Viam** *way* **per** *through* **montēs** *mountains* **difficillimam** *very difficult* **invēnērunt,** *they found,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **spem** *hope* **nōn** *not* **āmīsērunt** *they lost*

58.20 **Cibus** *food* **paucus** *little* **erat** *was* **et** *and* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **dēfessī** *tired* **erant,** *were,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **dux** *leader* **eōs** *them* **incitābat** *was encouraging*

58.21 **Hostēs** *enemies* **in** *on* **summīs** *highest* **montibus** *mountains* **exspectābant,** *were waiting,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **Hannibal** *Hannibal* **nōn** *not* **timēbat** *was fearing*

58.22 **Tempestātēs** *storms* **gravēs** *heavy* **exercitum** *army* **vexābant,** *were harassing,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **nēmō** *no one* **redīre** *to return* **volēbat** *wanted*

58.23 **Pācem** *peace* **hostēs** *enemies* **petīvērunt,** *sought,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **Hannibal** *Hannibal* **bellum** *war* **gerere** *to wage* **cōnstituit** *decided*

58.24 **Multī** *many* **putābant** *thought* **trānsitum** *crossing* **impossibilem** *impossible* **esse,** *to be,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **Hannibal** *Hannibal* **perfēcit** *accomplished*

58.25 **Elephantī** *elephants* **magnī** *large* **per** *through* **nivem** *snow* **ambulāre** *to walk* **nōlēbant,** *were unwilling,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **cōgēbantur** *were being forced*

58.26 **Rōmānī** *Romans* **nūntium** *news* **dē** *about* **Hannibalis** *of Hannibal* **adventū** *arrival* **audīvērunt,** *heard,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **crēdere** *to believe* **nōlēbant** *they were unwilling*

58.27 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **multī** *many* **in** *in* **montibus** *mountains* **perībant,** *were perishing,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **reliquī** *remaining ones* **prōcēdēbant** *were advancing*

58.28 **Dux** *leader* **ipse** *himself* **vulnus** *wound* **grave** *serious* **accēpit,** *received,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **exercitum** *army* **dūcere** *to lead* **pergēbat** *continued*

58.29 **Victōriam** *victory* **māgnam** *great* **Hannibal** *Hannibal* **specter** *hoped for,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **Alpēs** *Alps* **prīmum** *first* **superandae** *to be overcome* **erant** *were*

58.30 **Itāliam** *Italy* **tandem** *at last* **vīdērunt,** *they saw,* **tamen** *nevertheless* **exercitus** *army* **dimidium** *half* **āmīserant** *they had lost*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

58.16 Hannibal Alpēs altās vidēbat, tamen trānsīre parātus erat. *Hannibal saw the high Alps, nevertheless he was ready to cross them.*

58.17 Nix alta erat et ventus saevus flābat, tamen mīlitēs fortiter prōcēdēbant. *The snow was deep and a fierce wind was blowing, yet the soldiers were advancing bravely.*

58.18 Multī elephantī in itinere mortuī sunt, tamen exercitus montem ascendēbat. *Many elephants died during the journey, still the army was climbing the mountain.*

58.19 Viam per montēs difficillimam invēnērunt, tamen spem nōn āmīsērunt. *They found the path through the mountains very difficult, nevertheless they did not lose hope.*

58.20 Cibus paucus erat et mīlitēs dēfessī erant, tamen dux eōs incitābat. *Food was scarce and the soldiers were tired, yet their leader was encouraging them.*

58.21 Hostēs in summīs montibus exspectābant, tamen Hannibal nōn timēbat. *The enemies were waiting on the highest mountains, nevertheless Hannibal was not afraid.*

58.22 Tempestātēs gravēs exercitum vexābant, tamen nēmō redīre volēbat. *Heavy storms were harassing the army, yet no one wanted to return.*

58.23 Pācem hostēs petīvērunt, tamen Hannibal bellum gerere cōnstituit. *The enemies sought peace, nevertheless Hannibal decided to wage war.*

58.24 Multī putābant trānsitum impossibilem esse, tamen Hannibal perfēcit. *Many thought the crossing was impossible, yet Hannibal accomplished it.*

58.25 Elephantī magnī per nivem ambulāre nōlēbant, tamen cōgēbantur. *The large elephants were unwilling to walk through the snow, nevertheless they were being forced.*

58.26 Rōmānī nūntium dē Hannibalis adventū audīvērunt, tamen crēdere nōlēbant. *The Romans heard news of Hannibal's arrival, yet they were unwilling to believe it.*

58.27 Mīlitēs multī in montibus perībant, tamen reliquī prōcēdēbant. *Many soldiers were perishing in the mountains, nevertheless the remaining ones were advancing.*

58.28 Dux ipse vulnus grave accēpit, tamen exercitum dūcere pergēbat. *The leader himself received a serious wound, yet he continued to lead the army.*

58.29 Victōriam māgnam Hannibal specter, tamen Alpēs prīmum superandae erant. *Hannibal hoped for a great victory, nevertheless the Alps had to be overcome first.*

58.30 Itāliam tandem vīdērunt, tamen exercitus dimidium āmīserant. *At last they saw Italy, yet they had lost half the army.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

58.16 Hannibal Alpēs altās vidēbat, tamen trānsīre parātus erat.

58.17 Nix alta erat et ventus saevus flābat, tamen mīlitēs fortiter prōcēdēbant.

58.18 Multī elephantī in itinere mortuī sunt, tamen exercitus montem ascendēbat.

58.19 Viam per montēs difficillimam invēnērunt, tamen spem nōn āmīsērunt.

58.20 Cibus paucus erat et mīlitēs dēfessī erant, tamen dux eōs incitābat.

58.21 Hostēs in summīs montibus exspectābant, tamen Hannibal nōn timēbat.

58.22 Tempestātēs gravēs exercitum vexābant, tamen nēmō redīre volēbat.

58.23 Pācem hostēs petīvērunt, tamen Hannibal bellum gerere cōnstituit.

58.24 Multī putābant trānsitum impossibilem esse, tamen Hannibal perfēcit.

58.25 Elephantī magnī per nivem ambulāre nōlēbant, tamen cōgēbantur.

58.26 Rōmānī nūntium dē Hannibalis adventū audīvērunt, tamen crēdere nōlēbant.

58.27 Mīlitēs multī in montibus perībant, tamen reliquī prōcēdēbant.

58.28 Dux ipse vulnus grave accēpit, tamen exercitum dūcere pergēbat.

58.29 Victōriam māgnam Hannibal specter, tamen Alpēs prīmum superandae erant.

58.30 Itāliam tandem vīdērunt, tamen exercitus dimidium āmīserant.

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

The historical narrative about Hannibal's crossing of the Alps demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Use of "tamen" in Historical Context:
    - Often follows ablative absolutes
    - Frequently pairs with imperfect tense for background
    - Links contrasting historical events
    - Shows unexpected historical outcomes

2. Temporal Sequences:
    - Imperfect tense for ongoing situations: "vidēbat... parātus erat"
    - Perfect tense for completed actions: "mortuī sunt"
    - Pluperfect for earlier actions: "āmīserant"
3. Historical Constructions:
    - Ablative of means: "per nivem"
    - Indirect discourse: "putābant trānsitum impossibilem esse"
    - Gerundives of necessity: "superandae erant"
    - Purpose clauses with infinitives: "trānsīre parātus"
4. Word Order Patterns:
    - Subject emphasis: "Hannibal Alpēs altās vidēbat"
    - Object emphasis: "victōriam māgnam Hannibal specter"
    - Verb final for neutral statements: "exercitus montem ascendēbat"
5. Military Vocabulary:
    - Terms for movement: "prōcēdēbant," "trānsīre"
    - Battle terminology: "bellum gerere"
    - Command words: "cōgēbantur," "dūcere"

Lesson 59 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 59: īdem eadem idem (the same)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

59.1 **Īdem** *the same* **vir** *man* **iterum** *again* **loquitur** *speaks*

59.2 **Eadem** *the same* **verba** *words* **semper** *always* **audīmus** *we hear*

59.3 **Puer** *boy* **idem** *the same* **carmen** *song* **cantat** *sings*

59.4 **Eandem** *the same* **urbem** *city* **hodiē** *today* **vidēmus** *we see*

59.5 **Eōdem** *to the same* **locō** *place* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **veniunt** *come*

59.6 **Dux** *leader* **eādem** *by the same* **viā** *road* **exercitum** *army* **dūcit** *leads*

59.7 **Eadem** *the same* **puella** *girl* **nōbīscum** *with us* **ambulat** *walks*

59.8 **Eōsdem** *the same* **amīcōs** *friends* **cotīdiē** *daily* **videō** *I see*

59.9 **Magister** *teacher* **eādem** *in the same* **scholā** *school* **docet** *teaches*

59.10 **Idem** *the same* **poēta** *poet* **nōbīs** *to us* **carmina** *poems* **recitat** *recites*

59.11 **Eādem** *at the same* **hōrā** *hour* **omnēs** *all* **surgunt** *rise*

59.12 **Mārcus** *Marcus* **eādem** *with the same* **virtūte** *courage* **pugnat** *fights*

59.13 **Eadem** *the same* **rēgīna** *queen* **populum** *people* **regit** *rules*

59.31 **Eundem** *the same* **librum** *book* **legimus** *we read*

59.15 **Eīdem** *to the same* **deō** *god* **sacra** *sacred things* **facimus** *we make*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

59.1 Īdem vir iterum loquitur. *The same man speaks again.*

59.2 Eadem verba semper audīmus. *We always hear the same words.*

59.3 Carmen idem puer cantat. *The boy sings the same song.*

59.4 Urbem eandem hodiē vidēmus. *We see the same city today.*

59.5 Eōdem locō mīlitēs veniunt. *The soldiers come to the same place.*

59.6 Exercitum dux eādem viā dūcit. *The leader leads the army by the same road.*

59.7 Puella eadem nōbīscum ambulat. *The same girl walks with us.*

59.8 Amīcōs eōsdem cotīdiē videō. *I see the same friends daily.*

59.9 In scholā eādem magister docet. *The teacher teaches in the same school.*

59.10 Carmina nōbīs idem poēta recitat. *The same poet recites poems to us.*

59.11 Omnēs eādem hōrā surgunt. *All rise at the same hour.*

59.12 Mārcus eādem virtūte pugnat. *Marcus fights with the same courage.*

59.13 Populum rēgīna eadem regit. *The same queen rules the people.*

59.31 Librum eundem legimus. *We read the same book.*

59.15 Sacra eīdem deō facimus. *We make offerings to the same god.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

59.1 Īdem vir iterum loquitur.

59.2 Eadem verba semper audīmus.

59.3 Carmen idem puer cantat.

59.4 Urbem eandem hodiē vidēmus.

59.5 Eōdem locō mīlitēs veniunt.

59.6 Exercitum dux eādem viā dūcit.

59.7 Puella eadem nōbīscum ambulat.

59.8 Amīcōs eōsdem cotīdiē videō.

59.9 In scholā eādem magister docet.

59.10 Carmina nōbīs idem poēta recitat.

59.11 Omnēs eādem hōrā surgunt.

59.12 Mārcus eādem virtūte pugnat.

59.13 Populum rēgīna eadem regit.

59.31 Librum eundem legimus.

59.15 Sacra eīdem deō facimus.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The demonstrative pronoun "īdem, eadem, idem" (the same) has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Forms:
    - Masculine: īdem (nom.), eiusdem (gen.), eīdem (dat.), eundem (acc.), eōdem (abl.)
    - Feminine: eadem (nom.), eiusdem (gen.), eīdem (dat.), eandem (acc.), eādem (abl.)
    - Neuter: idem (nom.), eiusdem (gen.), eīdem (dat.), idem (acc.), eōdem (abl.)
2. Formation Pattern:
    - Built from "is, ea, id" + suffix -dem
    - Some forms undergo assimilation (eundem < *eumdem)
    - Long ī in nominative masculine singular
3. Usage:
    - Functions as both adjective and pronoun
    - Agrees with noun in gender, number, case
    - Often emphasizes identity or sameness
    - Can be used substantively
4. Common Constructions:
    - With ablative of manner: eādem virtūte (with the same courage)
    - In temporal phrases: eādem hōrā (at the same hour)
    - With prepositions: in eādem scholā (in the same school)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "īdem" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Identity Concepts:
    - Romans valued consistency and tradition
    - Same family names passed through generations
    - Emphasis on continuity in institutions
    - Important in legal terminology
2. Literary Usage:
    - Common in historical narratives
    - Used in philosophical arguments

- Important in rhetorical repetition
- Found in poetry for emphasis

3. Social Implications:
    - Used to establish social connections
    - Important in political alliances
    - Used in religious formulae
    - Part of formal identification
4. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "identical"
    - Used in academic Latin
    - Found in legal terminology
    - Part of scientific nomenclature

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (4.15):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Nam *for* **idem** *the same* **velle** *to wish* **atque** *and* **idem** *the same* **nolle,** *not to wish,* **ea** *this* **demum** *indeed* **firma** *firm* **amīcitia** *friendship* **est** *is*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Nam idem velle atque idem nolle, ea demum firma amīcitia est."

For to wish and not to wish the same things, this indeed is firm friendship.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "īdem" twice to emphasize the shared nature of true friendship. The parallel structure reinforces the idea of complete agreement between friends.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "idem" used substantively with infinitives
- Parallel structure with "velle/nolle"
- Demonstrative "ea" pointing forward
- Present infinitives expressing general truth

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

59.16 **Eādem** *in the same* **urbe** *city* **dux** *leader* **noster** *our* **habitābat** *lived*

59.17 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **eīdem** *to the same* **imperātōrī** *commander* **pārēbant** *obeyed*

59.18 **Eādem** *at the same* **hōrā** *hour* **hostēs** *enemies* **mūrōs** *walls* **oppugnāvērunt** *attacked*

59.19 **Eundem** *the same* **locum** *place* **multī** *many* **annōs** *years* **dēfendēbāmus** *we were defending*

59.20 **Eādem** *with the same* **fortūnā** *fortune* **pugnae** *battles* **fiēbant** *were happening*

59.21 **Populus** *people* **eīdem** *to the same* **ducī** *leader* **victōriam** *victory* **grātulābātur** *were congratulating*

59.22 **Eōsdem** *the same* **hostēs** *enemies* **multīs** *in many* **proeliīs** *battles* **vīcimus** *we conquered*

59.23 **Eādem** *in the same* **castrā** *camp* **legiōnēs** *legions* **revertērunt** *returned*

59.24 **Eādem** *with the same* **virtūte** *courage* **cīvēs** *citizens* **patriam** *fatherland* **servābant** *were protecting*

59.25 **Eōdem** *at the same* **tempore** *time* **nūntius** *messenger* **victōriam** *victory* **nuntiāvit** *announced*

59.26 **Eōsdem** *the same* **agrōs** *fields* **hostēs** *enemies* **vastābant** *were laying waste*

59.27 **Dux** *leader* **eādem** *with the same* **celeritāte** *speed* **auxilium** *help* **mīsit** *sent*

59.28 **Eīdem** *to the same* **deō** *god* **victōrēs** *victors* **grātiās** *thanks* **egērunt** *gave*

59.29 **Eādem** *on the same* **nāve** *ship* **imperātor** *commander* **mare** *sea* **trānsit** *crosses*

59.30 **Eundem** *the same* **triumphum** *triumph* **populus** *people* **celebrābat** *was celebrating*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

59.16 Eādem in urbe dux noster habitābat. *Our leader lived in the same city.*

59.17 Mīlitēs imperātōrī eīdem pārēbant. *The soldiers obeyed the same commander.*

59.18 Hostēs eādem hōrā mūrōs oppugnāvērunt. *The enemies attacked the walls at the same hour.*

59.19 Locum eundem multōs annōs dēfendēbāmus. *We were defending the same place for many years.*

59.20 Pugnae eādem fortūnā fiēbant. *The battles were happening with the same fortune.*

59.21 Populus ducī eīdem victōriam grātulābātur. *The people were congratulating the same leader on the victory.*

59.22 Eōsdem hostēs multīs proeliīs vīcimus. *We conquered the same enemies in many battles.*

59.23 Legiōnēs in castra eādem revertērunt. *The legions returned to the same camp.*

59.24 Cīvēs eādem virtūte patriam servābant. *The citizens were protecting the fatherland with the same courage.*

59.25 Nūntius eōdem tempore victōriam nuntiāvit. *The messenger announced the victory at the same time.*

59.26 Hostēs agrōs eōsdem vastābant. *The enemies were laying waste to the same fields.*

59.27 Dux eādem celeritāte auxilium mīsit. *The leader sent help with the same speed.*

59.28 Victōrēs eīdem deō grātiās egērunt. *The victors gave thanks to the same god.*

59.29 Imperātor eādem nāve mare trānsit. *The commander crosses the sea on the same ship.*

59.30 Populus triumphum eundem celebrābat. *The people were celebrating the same triumph.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

59.16 Eādem in urbe dux noster habitābat.

59.17 Mīlitēs imperātōrī eīdem pārēbant.

59.18 Hostēs eādem hōrā mūrōs oppugnāvērunt.

59.19 Locum eundem multōs annōs dēfendēbāmus.

59.20 Pugnae eādem fortūnā fiēbant.

59.21 Populus ducī eīdem victōriam grātulābātur.

59.22 Eōsdem hostēs multīs proeliīs vīcimus.

59.23 Legiōnēs in castra eādem revertērunt.

59.24 Cīvēs eādem virtūte patriam servābant.

59.25 Nūntius eōdem tempore victōriam nuntiāvit.

59.26 Hostēs agrōs eōsdem vastābant.

59.27 Dux eādem celeritāte auxilium mīsit.

59.28 Victōrēs eīdem deō grātiās egērunt.

59.29 Imperātor eādem nāve mare trānsit.

59.30 Populus triumphum eundem celebrābat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Examples)

In historical narrative, "īdem" appears in several distinct constructions that are worth examining in detail:

1. Military Context Usage: a) With Military Terms:
    - "eīdem imperātōrī" (to the same commander)
    - "eādem castra" (the same camp) Example: "Mīlitēs imperātōrī eīdem pārēbant."

   b) With Battle Descriptions:
    - "eādem fortūnā" (with the same fortune)
    - "eōsdem hostēs" (the same enemies) Example: "Pugnae eādem fortūnā fiēbant."
2. Time Expressions: a) Specific Times:

- "eādem hōrā" (at the same hour)
- "eōdem tempore" (at the same time) Example: "Nūntius eōdem tempore victōriam nuntiāvit."

b) Duration:

- Used with accusative of time Example: "Locum eundem multōs annōs dēfendēbāmus."

3. Place Expressions: a) Location:
    - "eādem in urbe" (in the same city)
    - "in castra eādem" (into the same camp) Example: "Legiōnēs in castra eādem revertērunt."

    b) Movement:
    - With verbs of motion Example: "Imperātor eādem nāve mare trānsit."
4. Abstract Concepts: a) Qualities:
    - "eādem virtūte" (with the same courage)
    - "eādem celeritāte" (with the same speed) Example: "Cīvēs eādem virtūte patriam servābant."

    b) Religious References:
    - "eīdem deō" (to the same god) Example: "Victōrēs eīdem deō grātiās egērunt."
5. Word Order Patterns: a) Attributive Position:
    - Before noun: "eādem virtūte"
    - After noun: "ducī eīdem" Effect: Position affects emphasis Example: Compare "eādem in urbe" vs "in urbe eādem"
6. Case Usage: a) Ablative of Manner:
    - "eādem fortūnā" (with the same fortune)
    - "eādem virtūte" (with the same courage) Example: "Dux eādem celeritāte auxilium mīsit."

    b) Dative of Reference:
    - "eīdem imperātōrī" (to the same commander)
    - "eīdem deō" (to the same god) Example: "Populus ducī eīdem victōriam grātulābātur."
7. Agreement Patterns: a) With Modified Nouns:
    - Gender agreement: "eādem urbs" (f.), "īdem dux" (m.)
    - Number agreement: "eōsdem hostēs" (pl.)
    - Case agreement: "eīdem deō" (dat.) Example: "Hostēs agrōs eōsdem vastābant."
8. Special Historical Narrative Features: a) With Historical Present:
    - For vivid narration Example: "Imperātor eādem nāve mare trānsit."

    b) With Imperfect Tense:
    - For background description Example: "Populus triumphum eundem celebrābat."

These constructions show how "īdem" functions in historical narrative to:

- Establish continuity of events
- Link related actions
- Identify recurring participants
- Create cohesion in the narrative

Lesson 60 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 60: rēx rēgis m. (king)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

60.1 **Noster** *our* **rēx** *king* **urbem** *city* **servāvit** *saved*

60.2 **Magnō** *to great* **rēgī** *king* **populus** *people* **pāret** *obeys*

60.3 **Fortis** *brave* **rēx** *king* **hostēs** *enemies* **vīcit** *conquered*

60.4 **Fīlius** *son* **rēgis** *of king* **exercitum** *army* **dūcit** *leads*

60.5 **Rēgī** *to king* **antīquō** *ancient* **templum** *temple* **sacrum** *sacred* **est** *is*

60.6 **Rēgem** *king* **bonum** *good* **cīvēs** *citizens* **amant** *love*

60.7 **Multī** *many* **rēgēs** *kings* **Rōmam** *Rome* **vīsitant** *visit*

60.8 **Deī** *gods* **rēgem** *king* **novum** *new* **iuvant** *help*

60.9 **Sapiens** *wise* **rēx** *king* **populō** *for people* **pācem** *peace* **petit** *seeks*

60.10 **Rēgum** *of kings* **antīquōrum** *ancient* **glōriam** *glory* **laudant** *they praise*

60.11 **Clārus** *famous* **rēx** *king* **bellum** *war* **parāvit** *prepared*

60.12 **Rēgēs** *kings* **potentēs** *powerful* **urbēs** *cities* **condunt** *found*

60.13 **Sub** *under* **rēge** *king* **iūstō** *just* **cīvēs** *citizens* **vīvunt** *live*

60.31 **Rēgibus** *to kings* **fīdēlibus** *faithful* **praemia** *rewards* **dantur** *are given*

60.15 **Sine** *without* **rēge** *king* **populus** *people* **līber** *free* **est** *is*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

60.1 Noster rēx urbem servāvit. *Our king saved the city.*

60.2 Magnō rēgī populus pāret. *The people obey the great king.*

60.3 Fortis rēx hostēs vīcit. *The brave king conquered the enemies.*

60.4 Fīlius rēgis exercitum dūcit. *The king's son leads the army.*

60.5 Rēgī antīquō templum sacrum est. *The temple is sacred to the ancient king.*

60.6 Rēgem bonum cīvēs amant. *The citizens love the good king.*

60.7 Multī rēgēs Rōmam vīsitant. *Many kings visit Rome.*

60.8 Deī rēgem novum iuvant. *The gods help the new king.*

60.9 Sapiens rēx populō pācem petit. *The wise king seeks peace for the people.*

60.10 Rēgum antīquōrum glōriam laudant. *They praise the glory of the ancient kings.*

60.11 Clārus rēx bellum parāvit. *The famous king prepared for war.*

60.12 Rēgēs potentēs urbēs condunt. *Powerful kings found cities.*

60.13 Sub rēge iūstō cīvēs vīvunt. *The citizens live under a just king.*

60.31 Rēgibus fīdēlibus praemia dantur. *Rewards are given to faithful kings.*

60.15 Sine rēge populus līber est. *Without a king, the people are free.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

60.1 Noster rēx urbem servāvit.

60.2 Magnō rēgī populus pāret.

60.3 Fortis rēx hostēs vīcit.

60.4 Fīlius rēgis exercitum dūcit.

60.5 Rēgī antīquō templum sacrum est.

60.6 Rēgem bonum cīvēs amant.

60.7 Multī rēgēs Rōmam vīsitant.

60.8 Deī rēgem novum iuvant.

60.9 Sapiens rēx populō pācem petit.

60.10 Rēgum antīquōrum glōriam laudant.

60.11 Clārus rēx bellum parāvit.

60.12 Rēgēs potentēs urbēs condunt.

60.13 Sub rēge iūstō cīvēs vīvunt.

60.31 Rēgibus fīdēlibus praemia dantur.

60.15 Sine rēge populus līber est.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "rēx" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:
    - Third declension masculine noun
    - Nominative singular shows consonant stem: rēx

    - Other cases reveal true stem: rēg-
2. Full Declension: Singular:
    - Nominative: rēx
    - Genitive: rēgis
    - Dative: rēgī
    - Accusative: rēgem
    - Ablative: rēge

    Plural:
    - Nominative: rēgēs
    - Genitive: rēgum
    - Dative: rēgibus
    - Accusative: rēgēs
    - Ablative: rēgibus
3. Common Uses:
    - Subject (Nom.): rēx imperat (the king commands)
    - Possession (Gen.): fīlius rēgis (son of the king)
    - Indirect Object (Dat.): rēgī pārent (they obey the king)
    - Direct Object (Acc.): rēgem vident (they see the king)
    - Ablative constructions:
        - with prepositions: sub rēge (under the king)
        - without prepositions: rēge mortuō (with the king having died)
4. Special Constructions:
    - With possessive adjectives: noster rēx (our king)
    - With descriptive adjectives: rēx bonus (good king)
    - In prepositional phrases: sine rēge (without a king)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "rēx" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Kingship:
    - Seven legendary kings of Rome
    - Ended with expulsion of Tarquinius Superbus
    - Romans later opposed monarchy
    - Term retained negative connotations
2. Religious Significance:
    - Rēx sacrōrum (religious office)
    - Kings as intermediaries with gods
    - Sacred duties and restrictions
    - Religious ceremonies and rituals
3. Political Context:
    - Early Roman constitution
    - Transition to Republic
    - Foreign kings and client kingdoms
    - Imperial period attitudes

4. Modern Connections:
    - Source of English "regal," "royal"
    - Comparative institutions
    - Cultural influences
    - Historical legacy

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Livy's Ab Urbe Condita (1.4):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Numitor *Numitor* **inter** *among* **prīmōs** *the first* **tumultū** *by the tumult* **excitus** *aroused,* **cum** *when* **hostīlis** *hostile* **exercitus** *army* **adesse** *to be present* **nūntiārētur** *was announced,* **dum** *while* **in** *into* **arcem** *citadel* **praesidiō** *with garrison* **armīsque** *and arms* **obtinendae** *of holding* **causā** *for the sake* **pergit** *proceeds* **rēx** *king* **Amūlius** *Amulius* **iam** *now* **ā** *by* **iuvenibus** *young men* **captus** *captured* **erat** *had been.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Numitor inter prīmōs tumultū excitus, cum hostīlis exercitus adesse nūntiārētur, dum in arcem praesidiō armīsque obtinendae causā pergit, rēx Amūlius iam ā iuvenibus captus erat.

Numitor, among the first to be aroused by the tumult, when a hostile army was announced to be present, while he proceeded to the citadel with a garrison and arms for the sake of holding it, King Amulius had already been captured by the young men.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Livy uses this passage to describe the overthrow of King Amulius. Key features:

- Complex sentence structure
- Multiple temporal clauses
- Dramatic timing
- Historical present tense
- Emphasis on action and consequence

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "rēx" in apposition with "Amūlius"
- Ablative absolute "tumultū excitus"
- Temporal cum clause with subjunctive
- Purpose clause with gerundive
- Pluperfect passive "captus erat"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

60.16 **Antīquus** *ancient* **rēx** *king* **Rōmānōrum** *of Romans* **urbem** *city* **pulchram** *beautiful* **condidit** *founded*

60.17 **Multōs** *many* **annōs** *years* **rēx** *king* **iūstē** *justly* **populō** *people* **imperāvit** *ruled*

60.18 **Sub** *under* **rēge** *king* **sapientī** *wise* **cīvēs** *citizens* **fēlīcēs** *happy* **erant** *were*

60.19 **Templum** *temple* **māgnum** *great* **rēx** *king* **deīs** *to gods* **aedificāvit** *built*

60.20 **Fīlius** *son* **rēgis** *of king* **fortis** *brave* **in** *in* **bellō** *war* **pugnāvit** *fought*

60.21 **Post** *after* **mortem** *death* **rēgis** *of king* **populus** *people* **novum** *new* **rēgem** *king* **quaerēbat** *was seeking*

60.22 **Rēgēs** *kings* **aliārum** *of other* **gentium** *nations* **dōna** *gifts* **pretiōsa** *precious* **mittēbant** *were sending*

60.23 **Deī** *gods* **immortālēs** *immortal* **rēgī** *to king* **victōriam** *victory* **prōmīsērunt** *promised*

60.24 **Multae** *many* **gentēs** *nations* **rēgem** *king* **potentem** *powerful* **timēbant** *feared*

60.25 **Sine** *without* **bonō** *good* **rēge** *king* **pāx** *peace* **nōn** *not* **stat** *stands*

60.26 **Rēgum** *of kings* **veterum** *old* **glōriam** *glory* **poētae** *poets* **cantant** *sing*

60.27 **Rēx** *king* **sapiēns** *wise* **lēgēs** *laws* **iūstās** *just* **scrīpsit** *wrote*

60.28 **Rēgibus** *to kings* **multārum** *of many* **terrārum** *lands* **imperātor** *emperor* **imperat** *commands*

60.29 **Ōrācula** *oracles* **rēgī** *to king* **futūra** *future things* **nūntiāvērunt** *announced*

60.30 **Rēgēs** *kings* **antīquī** *ancient* **populum** *people* **ad** *to* **virtūtem** *virtue* **dūcēbant** *were leading*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

60.16 Antīquus rēx Rōmānōrum urbem pulchram condidit. *The ancient king of the Romans founded a beautiful city.*

60.17 Multōs annōs rēx iūstē populō imperāvit. *For many years the king ruled justly over the people.*

60.18 Sub rēge sapientī cīvēs fēlīcēs erant. *Under the wise king, the citizens were happy.*

60.19 Templum māgnum rēx deīs aedificāvit. *The king built a great temple for the gods.*

60.20 Fīlius rēgis fortis in bellō pugnāvit. *The brave son of the king fought in war.*

60.21 Post mortem rēgis populus novum rēgem quaerēbat. *After the death of the king, the people were seeking a new king.*

60.22 Rēgēs aliārum gentium dōna pretiōsa mittēbant. *The kings of other nations were sending precious gifts.*

60.23 Deī immortālēs rēgī victōriam prōmīsērunt. *The immortal gods promised victory to the king.*

60.24 Multae gentēs rēgem potentem timēbant. *Many nations feared the powerful king.*

60.25 Sine bonō rēge pāx nōn stat. *Without a good king, peace does not stand.*

60.26 Rēgum veterum glōriam poētae cantant. *The poets sing of the glory of the ancient kings.*

60.27 Rēx sapiēns lēgēs iūstās scrīpsit. *The wise king wrote just laws.*

60.28 Rēgibus multārum terrārum imperātor imperat. *The emperor commands the kings of many lands.*

60.29 Ōrācula rēgī futūra nūntiāvērunt. *The oracles announced future things to the king.*

60.30 Rēgēs antīquī populum ad virtūtem dūcēbant. *The ancient kings were leading the people toward virtue.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

60.16 Antīquus rēx Rōmānōrum urbem pulchram condidit.

60.17 Multōs annōs rēx iūstē populō imperāvit.

60.18 Sub rēge sapientī cīvēs fēlīcēs erant.

60.19 Templum māgnum rēx deīs aedificāvit.

60.20 Fīlius rēgis fortis in bellō pugnāvit.

60.21 Post mortem rēgis populus novum rēgem quaerēbat.

60.22 Rēgēs aliārum gentium dōna pretiōsa mittēbant.

60.23 Deī immortālēs rēgī victōriam prōmīsērunt.

60.24 Multae gentēs rēgem potentem timēbant.

60.25 Sine bonō rēge pāx nōn stat.

60.26 Rēgum veterum glōriam poētae cantant.

60.27 Rēx sapiēns lēgēs iūstās scrīpsit.

60.28 Rēgibus multārum terrārum imperātor imperat.

60.29 Ōrācula rēgī futūra nūntiāvērunt.

60.30 Rēgēs antīquī populum ad virtūtem dūcēbant.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Historical Context)

1. Historical Narrative Features:
    - Use of perfect tense for completed actions (condidit, aedificāvit)
    - Imperfect tense for ongoing situations (imperāvit, dūcēbant)
    - Variety of subordinate clauses typical of historical writing
    - Rich use of descriptive adjectives
2. Case Usage in Historical Context: a) Genitive Constructions:
    - Possession: fīlius rēgis (son of the king)
    - Description: rēgum veterum (of ancient kings)
    - Partitive: aliārum gentium (of other nations)

    b) Dative Uses:
    - Indirect object: rēgī victōriam (victory to the king)
    - Reference: populō imperāvit (ruled for the people)
    - Purpose: deīs aedificāvit (built for the gods)

    c) Accusative Functions:
    - Direct object: urbem condidit (founded a city)
    - Duration of time: multōs annōs (for many years)
    - Object of preposition: ad virtūtem (toward virtue)
3. Word Order Patterns in Historical Writing:
    - Variation for emphasis: templum māgnum rēx (the king a great temple)
    - Natural Latin order: rēx populō imperāvit (the king over the people ruled)
    - Periodic sentence structure: post mortem rēgis... (after the death of the king...)
4. Special Historical Constructions:
    - Ablative absolute: rēge mortuō (the king having died)
    - Historical present: populus quaerit (the people seek)
    - Ablative of means: lēgibus regere (to rule by laws)
5. Temporal Expressions:
    - Time when: eō tempore (at that time)
    - Duration: multōs annōs (for many years)
    - Sequence: post mortem (after death)
6. Stylistic Features of Historical Prose:
    - Chiasmus: rēx magnus, fortis dux (great king, brave leader)
    - Alliteration: populum ad pācem (people toward peace)
    - Parallelism: rēgēs vinciunt, ducēs dūcunt (kings conquer, leaders lead)

Lesson 61 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: nam/namque (for, indeed, really)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

61.1 **Nam** *for* **puer** *boy* **māter** *mother* **aegra** *sick* **est** *is*

61.2 **Namque** *for indeed* **hostēs** *enemies* **urbem** *city* **relīquērunt** *left*

61.3 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **fortēs** *brave* **sunt** *are* **nam** *for* **patriam** *country* **dēfendunt** *they defend*

61.4 **Nam** *for* **sine** *without* **virtūte** *virtue* **nīl** *nothing* **bonum** *good* **est** *is*

61.5 **Pater** *father* **fīlium** *son* **laudat** *praises* **nam** *for* **bene** *well* **labōrat** *he works*

61.6 **Namque** *for indeed* **deōs** *gods* **immortālēs** *immortal* **colere** *to worship* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

61.7 **Nōn** *not* **dormiō** *I sleep* **nam** *for* **multa** *many things* **agere** *to do* **dēbeō** *I ought*

61.8 **Namque** *for indeed* **amīcus** *friend* **vērus** *true* **rārus** *rare* **est** *is*

61.9 **Discipulus** *student* **doctus** *learned* **est** *is* **nam** *for* **librōs** *books* **multōs** *many* **legit** *he reads*

61.10 **Nōbīs** *for us* **domum** *home* **redeundum** *must be returned* **est** *it is* **nam** *for* **nox** *night* **venit** *comes*

61.11 **Namque** *for indeed* **tempus** *time* **fugit** *flees* **velut** *like* **umbra** *shadow*

61.12 **Agricola** *farmer* **laetus** *happy* **est** *is* **nam** *for* **messis** *harvest* **magna** *great* **fuit** *was*

61.13 **Namque** *for indeed* **nēmō** *no one* **sine** *without* **spē** *hope* **vīvere** *to live* **potest** *is able*

61.31 **Mīles** *soldier* **vulnerātus** *wounded* **nam** *for* **sagittā** *by arrow* **ictus** *struck* **est** *was*

61.15 **Namque** *for indeed* **sapientia** *wisdom* **melior** *better* **aurō** *than gold* **est** *is*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

61.1 Nam puer māter aegra est. *For the boy's mother is sick.*

61.2 Namque hostēs urbem relīquērunt. *For indeed the enemies left the city.*

61.3 Mīlitēs fortēs sunt, nam patriam dēfendunt. *The soldiers are brave, for they defend their country.*

61.4 Nam sine virtūte nīl bonum est. *For without virtue nothing is good.*

61.5 Pater fīlium laudat, nam bene labōrat. *The father praises his son, for he works well.*

61.6 Namque deōs immortālēs colere dēbēmus. *For indeed we ought to worship the immortal gods.*

61.7 Nōn dormiō, nam multa agere dēbeō. *I do not sleep, for I must do many things.*

61.8 Namque amīcus vērus rārus est. *For indeed a true friend is rare.*

61.9 Discipulus doctus est, nam librōs multōs legit. *The student is learned, for he reads many books.*

61.10 Nōbīs domum redeundum est, nam nox venit. *We must return home, for night comes.*

61.11 Namque tempus fugit velut umbra. *For indeed time flees like a shadow.*

61.12 Agricola laetus est, nam messis magna fuit. *The farmer is happy, for the harvest was great.*

61.13 Namque nēmō sine spē vīvere potest. *For indeed no one can live without hope.*

61.31 Mīles vulnerātus, nam sagittā ictus est. *The soldier was wounded, for he was struck by an arrow.*

61.15 Namque sapientia melior aurō est. *For indeed wisdom is better than gold.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

61.1 Nam puer māter aegra est.

61.2 Namque hostēs urbem relīquērunt.

61.3 Mīlitēs fortēs sunt, nam patriam dēfendunt.

61.4 Nam sine virtūte nīl bonum est.

61.5 Pater fīlium laudat, nam bene labōrat.

61.6 Namque deōs immortālēs colere dēbēmus.

61.7 Nōn dormiō, nam multa agere dēbeō.

61.8 Namque amīcus vērus rārus est.

61.9 Discipulus doctus est, nam librōs multōs legit.

61.10 Nōbīs domum redeundum est, nam nox venit.

61.11 Namque tempus fugit velut umbra.

61.12 Agricola laetus est, nam messis magna fuit.

61.13 Namque nēmō sine spē vīvere potest.

61.31 Mīles vulnerātus, nam sagittā ictus est.

61.15 Namque sapientia melior aurō est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, understanding "nam/namque" requires attention to several key points:

1. Basic Function:
    - Introduces explanatory clauses
    - Always begins its clause
    - Cannot be combined with other conjunctions
2. Forms:
    - nam: basic form
    - namque: strengthened form ("for indeed")
    - Both indeclinable
3. Position:
    - Usually second clause in a pair
    - Can begin sentence for emphasis
    - Never appears mid-clause
4. Usage Patterns:
    - Explaining reasons
    - Supporting arguments
    - Introducing background information
    - Connecting related thoughts
5. Common Constructions:
    - With result clauses
    - In rhetorical questions
    - With causal relationships
    - In logical arguments

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding how Romans used "nam/namque" requires cultural context:

1. Rhetorical Usage:
    - Essential in formal speeches
    - Key part of legal arguments
    - Used in philosophical discourse
2. Literary Style:
    - Different from Greek equivalents
    - Important in poetry and prose
    - Varies by author and period
3. Social Function:
    - Polite way to explain
    - Shows logical thinking
    - Demonstrates education
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to English "for"
    - Used in scientific names

- Found in legal Latin

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (20):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Nam *for* **quis** *who* **est** *is* **quī** *who* **velit** *would wish* **ut** *that* **neque** *neither* **dīligat** *love* **quemquam** *anyone* **nec** *nor* **ipse** *himself* **ab** *by* **ūllō** *anyone* **dīligātur** *be loved,* **circumfluere** *to abound in* **omnibus** *all* **cōpiīs** *resources* **atque** *and* **in** *in* **omnium** *of all things* **rērum** *things* **abundantiā** *abundance* **vīvere?** *to live?*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Nam quis est quī velit ut neque dīligat quemquam nec ipse ab ūllō dīligātur, circumfluere omnibus cōpiīs atque in omnium rērum abundantiā vīvere?

For who is there who would wish to live surrounded by all resources and in abundance of all things, yet neither love anyone nor be loved by anyone?

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "nam" to introduce a rhetorical question about friendship and wealth. The word helps build his argument that friendship is more valuable than material wealth.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "nam" introduces explanatory clause
- Complex sentence with subordinate clauses
- Subjunctive "velit" in indirect question
- Parallel structure with "neque...nec"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

61.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **interrogat** *asks* **nam** *for* **scīre** *to know* **cupit** *he desires* **quid** *what* **dē** *about* **sapientiā** *wisdom* **cōgitet** *he thinks*

61.17 **Namque** *for indeed* **omnēs** *all* **hominēs** *men* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **quaerunt** *seek* **discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies*

61.18 **Magister** *teacher* **rīdet** *smiles* **nam** *for* **discipulus** *pupil* **vērum** *truth* **dīxit** *spoke*

61.19 **Namque** *for indeed* **sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **nēmō** *no one* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **invenit** *finds*

61.20 **Nam** *for* **librī** *books* **multī** *many* **legendī** *must be read* **sunt** *are* **magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says*

61.21 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondēre** *to answer* **vult** *wishes* **nam** *for* **multa** *many things* **intellegit** *he understands*

61.22 **Namque** *for indeed* **sapientia** *wisdom* **melior** *better* **aurō** *than gold* **et** *and* **argentō** *silver* **est** *is*

61.23 **Nam** *for* **dīvitiae** *riches* **nōn** *not* **semper** *always* **felīcitātem** *happiness* **dant** *give*

61.24 **Discipulus** *pupil* **gaudet** *rejoices* **nam** *for* **magister** *teacher* **eum** *him* **laudat** *praises*

61.25 **Namque** *for indeed* **studium** *study* **bonum** *good* **mentem** *mind* **perficit** *perfects*

61.26 **Nam** *for* **nūlla** *no* **rēs** *thing* **sine** *without* **causā** *reason* **fit** *happens* **magister** *teacher* **explicat** *explains*

61.27 **Discipulus** *pupil* **intellegit** *understands* **namque** *for indeed* **ratio** *reason* **clāra** *clear* **est** *is*

61.28 **Nam** *for* **vēritas** *truth* **semper** *always* **simplex** *simple* **est** *is*

61.29 **Magister** *teacher* **laetus** *happy* **est** *is* **namque** *for indeed* **discipulus** *pupil* **bene** *well* **respondet** *answers*

61.30 **Nam** *for* **doctus** *learned* **discipulus** *pupil* **magistrō** *to teacher* **maximō** *greatest* **gaudiō** *joy* **est** *is*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

61.16 Magister discipulum interrogat, nam scīre cupit quid dē sapientiā cōgitet. *The teacher questions the pupil, for he desires to know what he thinks about wisdom.*

61.17 Namque omnēs hominēs sapientiam quaerunt, discipulus respondet. *For indeed all men seek wisdom, the pupil replies.*

61.18 Magister rīdet, nam discipulus vērum dīxit. *The teacher smiles, for the pupil spoke the truth.*

61.19 Namque sine labōre nēmō sapientiam invenit. For indeed without work no one finds wisdom.

61.20 Nam librī multī legendī sunt, magister dīcit. *For many books must be read, says the teacher.*

61.21 Discipulus respondēre vult, nam multa intellegit. *The pupil wishes to respond, for he understands many things.*

61.22 Namque sapientia melior aurō et argentō est. *For indeed wisdom is better than gold and silver.*

61.23 Nam dīvitiae nōn semper felīcitātem dant. *For riches do not always give happiness.*

61.24 Discipulus gaudet, nam magister eum laudat. *The pupil rejoices, for the teacher praises him.*

61.25 Namque studium bonum mentem perficit. *For indeed good study perfects the mind.*

61.26 Nam nūlla rēs sine causā fit, magister explicat. *For nothing happens without a reason, the teacher explains.*

61.27 Discipulus intellegit, namque ratio clāra est. *The pupil understands, for indeed the reasoning is clear.*

61.28 Nam vēritas semper simplex est. *For truth is always simple.*

61.29 Magister laetus est, namque discipulus bene respondet. *The teacher is happy, for indeed the pupil answers well.*

61.30 Nam doctus discipulus magistrō maximō gaudiō est. *For a learned pupil is the greatest joy to a teacher.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

61.16 Magister discipulum interrogat, nam scīre cupit quid dē sapientiā cōgitet.

61.17 Namque omnēs hominēs sapientiam quaerunt, discipulus respondet.

61.18 Magister rīdet, nam discipulus vērum dīxit.

61.19 Namque sine labōre nēmō sapientiam invenit.

61.20 Nam librī multī legendī sunt, magister dīcit.

61.21 Discipulus respondēre vult, nam multa intellegit.

61.22 Namque sapientia melior aurō et argentō est.

61.23 Nam dīvitiae nōn semper felīcitātem dant.

61.24 Discipulus gaudet, nam magister eum laudat.

61.25 Namque studium bonum mentem perficit.

61.26 Nam nūlla rēs sine causā fit, magister explicat.

61.27 Discipulus intellegit, namque ratio clāra est.

61.28 Nam vēritas semper simplex est.

61.29 Magister laetus est, namque discipulus bene respondet.

61.30 Nam doctus discipulus magistrō maximō gaudiō est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In this philosophical dialogue, nam/namque serves several distinct functions:

1. Explanatory Relationships:
    - Introduces reasons for actions or statements
    - Example: "Discipulus gaudet, nam magister eum laudat"
    - Shows cause and effect in philosophical arguments
2. Logical Progression:
    - Links steps in philosophical reasoning
    - Example: "Nam nūlla rēs sine causā fit"
    - Helps build systematic arguments
3. Rhetorical Structure:

- Strengthens philosophical assertions
- Example: "Namque sapientia melior aurō et argentō est"
- Adds emphasis to key points

4. Dialogue Flow:
    - Connects questions and answers
    - Example: "Magister discipulum interrogat, nam scīre cupit"
    - Maintains conversational coherence
5. Usage Patterns:
    - With abstract nouns (sapientia, vēritas)
    - In general statements
    - With comparative constructions
    - In explanations of principles
6. Word Order Variations:
    - Initial position for emphasis
    - After main clause for explanation
    - With quoted speech
    - In complex sentences
7. Special Constructions:
    - With gerundives (legendī sunt)
    - In ethical statements
    - With abstract concepts
    - In universal truths

These patterns show how nam/namque helps structure philosophical discourse while maintaining natural Latin style.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 62 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: locus -ī m. (place; loca [n. pl.] region)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

62.1 **Hic** *this* **locus** *place* **sacer** *sacred* **populo** *to the people* **est** *is*

62.2 **Multī** *many* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **in** *in* **eōdem** *the same* **locō** *place* **manēbant** *were remaining*

62.3 **Dux** *leader* **aptum** *suitable* **locum** *place* **castrīs** *for camp* **invēnit** *found*

62.4 **Omnēs** *all* **locī** *of place* **partem** *part* **aliquam** *some* **vīdērunt** *saw*

62.5 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **locum** *place* **castrōrum** *of camp* **mūniunt** *fortify*

62.6 **Ex** *from* **locō** *place* **superiōre** *higher* **hostēs** *enemies* **cōnspicimus** *we observe*

62.7 **Loca** *regions* **proxima** *nearest* **urbī** *to city* **incola** *inhabitant* **cognōscit** *knows*

62.8 **Ad** *to* **locum** *place* **idōneum** *suitable* **nāvēs** *ships* **appellunt** *bring to shore*

62.9 **Locōrum** *of places* **natūram** *nature* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **nūntiant** *report*

62.10 **Per** *through* **loca** *regions* **aperta** *open* **iter** *journey* **facimus** *we make*

62.11 **Agricolae** *farmers* **locīs** *in places* **dīversīs** *different* **labōrant** *work*

62.12 **Cōnsul** *consul* **locum** *place* **cōntiōnis** *of assembly* **cōnstituit** *establishes*

62.13 **In** *in* **locīs** *places* **altīs** *high* **templum** *temple* **deōrum** *of gods* **stat** *stands*

62.31 **Locō** *from place* **perīculōsō** *dangerous* **fēminae** *women* **discēdunt** *depart*

62.15 **Hostēs** *enemies* **locum** *place* **mūnītum** *fortified* **oppugnant** *attack*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

62.1 Hic locus sacer populō est. *This place is sacred to the people.*

62.2 Multī mīlitēs in eōdem locō manēbant. *Many soldiers were remaining in the same place.*

62.3 Dux aptum castrīs locum invēnit. *The leader found a suitable place for the camp.*

62.4 Omnēs locī partem aliquam vīdērunt. *Everyone saw some part of the place.*

62.5 Mīlitēs locum castrōrum mūniunt. *The soldiers fortify the location of the camp.*

62.6 Ex locō superiōre hostēs cōnspicimus. *From a higher position we observe the enemies.*

62.7 Loca proxima urbī incola cognōscit. *The inhabitant knows the regions nearest to the city.*

62.8 Ad locum idōneum nāvēs appellunt. *They bring the ships to shore at a suitable place.*

62.9 Locōrum natūram explōrātōrēs nūntiant. *The scouts report the nature of the places.*

62.10 Per loca aperta iter facimus. *We make our journey through open regions.*

62.11 Agricolae locīs dīversīs labōrant. *The farmers work in different places.*

62.12 Cōnsul locum cōntiōnis cōnstituit. *The consul establishes the place of assembly.*

62.13 In locīs altīs templum deōrum stat. *The temple of the gods stands in high places.*

62.31 Locō perīculōsō fēminae discēdunt. *The women depart from the dangerous place.*

62.15 Hostēs locum mūnītum oppugnant. *The enemies attack the fortified place.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

62.1 Hic locus sacer populō est.

62.2 Multī mīlitēs in eōdem locō manēbant.

62.3 Dux aptum castrīs locum invēnit.

62.4 Omnēs locī partem aliquam vīdērunt.

62.5 Mīlitēs locum castrōrum mūniunt.

62.6 Ex locō superiōre hostēs cōnspicimus.

62.7 Loca proxima urbī incola cognōscit.

62.8 Ad locum idōneum nāvēs appellunt.

62.9 Locōrum natūram explōrātōrēs nūntiant.

62.10 Per loca aperta iter facimus.

62.11 Agricolae locīs dīversīs labōrant.

62.12 Cōnsul locum cōntiōnis cōnstituit.

62.13 In locīs altīs templum deōrum stat.

62.31 Locō perīculōsō fēminae discēdunt.

62.15 Hostēs locum mūnītum oppugnant.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "locus" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Gender:
    - Second declension masculine noun
    - Irregular plural: neutral "loca" in plural when meaning "regions"
    - Regular masculine "locī" when meaning specific "places"
2. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: locus
    - Genitive: locī
    - Dative: locō
    - Accusative: locum
    - Ablative: locō

    Plural:
    - Nominative: locī/loca
    - Genitive: locōrum
    - Dative: locīs
    - Accusative: locōs/loca
    - Ablative: locīs
3. Common Uses:
    - As direct object: "locum invēnit" (found a place)
    - With prepositions: "in locō" (in a place)
    - As subject: "locus sacer est" (the place is sacred)
    - In plural for regions: "per loca aperta" (through open regions)
4. Special Constructions:

- With adjectives of suitability: "aptus locus" (suitable place)
- Military contexts: "locus castrōrum" (place for camp)
- Geographical descriptions: "loca proxima" (nearest regions)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "locus" requires cultural context:

1. Military Significance:
    - Essential in Roman military planning
    - Key term in Caesar's commentaries
    - Used for camp placement
    - Critical for tactical advantage
2. Religious Context:
    - Sacred places (loca sacra)
    - Temple locations
    - Augural significance
    - Boundary markers
3. Legal Usage:
    - Property boundaries
    - Public vs. private space
    - Legal jurisdiction
    - Meeting places
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of English "local"
    - Used in academic terms
    - Mathematical concepts
    - Scientific terminology

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (2.18):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Locus *place* **erat** *was* **castrīs** *for camp* **idōneus** *suitable* **proptereā** *for this reason* **quod** *because* **collis** *hill* **ab** *from* **summō** *highest* **aequāliter** *evenly* **dēclīvis** *sloping* **ad** *toward* **flūmen** *river* **Sabim** *Sabis* **vergēbat** *inclined.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Locus erat castrīs idōneus proptereā quod collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim vergēbat."

The place was suitable for a camp because a hill, sloping evenly from its summit, extended down to the river Sabis.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "locus" here in a typical military context, describing ideal terrain for camp placement. The passage demonstrates:

- Technical military vocabulary
- Geographical description
- Strategic consideration
- Typical Caesarian style

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "locus" as subject with "erat"
- "castrīs" dative of purpose
- "idōneus" predicate adjective
- Complex sentence with causal clause
- Typical military description format

Genre Section: Travelogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

62.16 **Viātor** *traveler* **pulchrum** *beautiful* **locum** *place* **prope** *near* **mare** *sea* **invēnit** *finds*

62.17 **In** *in* **hōc** *this* **locō** *place* **multae** *many* **avēs** *birds* **cantant** *sing* **inter** *among* **arborēs** *trees*

62.18 **Ad** *to* **locum** *place* **amoenum** *pleasant* **amīcōs** *friends* **meōs** *my* **dūcō** *I lead*

62.19 **Per** *through* **loca** *regions* **ignōta** *unknown* **diēs** *days* **multōs** *many* **errāmus** *we wander*

62.20 **Ex** *from* **locō** *place* **excelsō** *high* **tōtam** *whole* **urbem** *city* **cōnspicere** *to see* **possum** *I am able*

62.21 **Incolae** *inhabitants* **locōrum** *of places* **longīnquōrum** *distant* **multās** *many* **rēs** *things* **mīrābilēs** *wonderful* **nārrant** *tell*

62.22 **Ad** *to* **novōs** *new* **locōs** *places* **nāvigāre** *to sail* **cupimus** *we desire*

62.23 **In** *in* **illō** *that* **locō** *place* **templum** *temple* **antīquum** *ancient* **vidēmus** *we see*

62.24 **Locī** *of place* **pulchritūdō** *beauty* **animum** *spirit* **meum** *my* **dēlectat** *delights*

62.25 **Omnēs** *all* **locum** *place* **sacrum** *sacred* **magnā** *with great* **cum** *with* **reverentiā** *reverence* **adeunt** *approach*

62.26 **In** *in* **hīs** *these* **locīs** *places* **multae** *many* **gentes** *peoples* **habitant** *dwell*

62.27 **Locum** *place* **quem** *which* **quaerimus** *we seek* **tandem** *at last* **invenīmus** *we find*

62.28 **Ex** *from* **locīs** *places* **montānīs** *mountainous* **flūmina** *rivers* **magna** *great* **fluunt** *flow*

62.29 **Ad** *to* **locum** *place* **unde** *from where* **aqua** *water* **pūra** *pure* **scatet** *gushes forth* **perveniō** *I arrive*

62.30 **Omnibus** *by all* **locīs** *places* **quōs** *which* **vīsitāvimus** *we visited* **hic** *this* **pulcherrimus** *most beautiful* **est** *is*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

62.16 Viātor pulchrum locum prope mare invēnit. *The traveler finds a beautiful place near the sea.*

62.17 In hōc locō multae avēs cantant inter arborēs. *In this place many birds sing among the trees.*

62.18 Ad locum amoenum amīcōs meōs dūcō. *I lead my friends to a pleasant place.*

62.19 Per loca ignōta diēs multōs errāmus. *We wander through unknown regions for many days.*

62.20 Ex locō excelsō tōtam urbem cōnspicere possum. *From a high place I am able to see the whole city.*

62.21 Incolae locōrum longīnquōrum multās rēs mīrābilēs nārrant. *The inhabitants of distant places tell many wonderful things.*

62.22 Ad novōs locōs nāvigāre cupimus. *We desire to sail to new places.*

62.23 In illō locō templum antīquum vidēmus. *In that place we see an ancient temple.*

62.24 Locī pulchritūdō animum meum dēlectat. *The beauty of the place delights my spirit.*

62.25 Omnēs locum sacrum magnā cum reverentiā adeunt. *Everyone approaches the sacred place with great reverence.*

62.26 In hīs locīs multae gentēs habitant. *Many peoples dwell in these places.*

62.27 Locum quem quaerimus tandem invenīmus. *We finally find the place which we seek.*

62.28 Ex locīs montānīs flūmina magna fluunt. *Great rivers flow from mountainous places.*

62.29 Ad locum unde aqua pūra scatet perveniō. *I arrive at the place where pure water gushes forth.*

62.30 Omnibus locīs quōs vīsitāvimus hic pulcherrimus est. *Of all the places we have visited, this is the most beautiful.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

62.16 Viātor pulchrum locum prope mare invēnit.

62.17 In hōc locō multae avēs cantant inter arborēs.

62.18 Ad locum amoenum amīcōs meōs dūcō.

62.19 Per loca ignōta diēs multōs errāmus.

62.20 Ex locō excelsō tōtam urbem cōnspicere possum.

62.21 Incolae locōrum longīnquōrum multās rēs mīrābilēs nārrant.

62.22 Ad novōs locōs nāvigāre cupimus.

62.23 In illō locō templum antīquum vidēmus.

62.24 Locī pulchritūdō animum meum dēlectat.

62.25 Omnēs locum sacrum magnā cum reverentiā adeunt.

62.26 In hīs locīs multae gentēs habitant.

62.27 Locum quem quaerimus tandem invenīmus.

62.28 Ex locīs montānīs flūmina magna fluunt.

62.29 Ad locum unde aqua pūra scatet perveniō.

62.30 Omnibus locīs quōs vīsitāvimus hic pulcherrimus est.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In this travelogue section, "locus" is used in various constructions typical of descriptive writing:

1. Case Usage in Travel Descriptions:
    - Accusative of direction: "ad locum" (to a place)
    - Ablative of place where: "in hōc locō" (in this place)
    - Ablative of place from which: "ex locō excelsō" (from a high place)
    - Genitive of description: "locī pulchritūdō" (beauty of the place)
2. Adjective Placement:
    - Before noun: "pulchrum locum" (beautiful place)
    - After noun: "locīs montānīs" (mountainous places)
    - With demonstratives: "hōc locō" (this place)
3. Special Constructions:
    - Relative clauses: "locum quem quaerimus" (the place which we seek)
    - Superlative expressions: "omnibus locīs... pulcherrimus" (most beautiful of all places)
    - Purpose expressions: "ad locum... perveniō" (I arrive at the place)
4. Travelogue-Specific Features:
    - Present tense for vivid description
    - Perfect tense for completed actions
    - First person narrative perspective
    - Descriptive adjectives
    - Motion verbs with prepositions
5. Word Order Variations:
    - Initial position for emphasis: "Locī pulchritūdō..."
    - Embedded phrases: "magnā cum reverentiā"
    - Complex clause structures: "Omnibus locīs quōs vīsitāvimus"

Lesson 63 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: veniō venīre vēnī ventum (to come)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

63.1 **Puer** *boy* **domum** *home* **venit** *comes* **sērō** *late*

63.2 **Nūntius** *messenger* **ā** *from* **rēge** *king* **vēnit** *comes* **hodiē** *today*

63.3 **Ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **multī** *many* **mercātōrēs** *merchants* **veniunt** *come*

63.4 **Amīcī** *friends* **meī** *my* **crās** *tomorrow* **venient** *will come*

63.5 **Māne** *in morning* **ad** *to* **templum** *temple* **sacerdōs** *priest* **vēnit** *came*

63.6 **Rōmam** *to Rome* **imperātor** *emperor* **magnā** *great* **cum** *with* **glōriā** *glory* **vēnit** *came*

63.7 **Quandō** *when* **veniēs** *will you come* **ad** *to* **cēnam** *dinner* **meam** *my*

63.8 **Ēx** *from* **Graeciā** *Greece* **poētae** *poets* **multī** *many* **vēnērunt** *came*

63.9 **Vēnimus** *we came* **ut** *in order that* **tē** *you* **vidēāmus** *we might see*

63.10 **Undique** *from everywhere* **agricolae** *farmers* **ad** *to* **forum** *forum* **veniēbant** *were coming*

63.11 **Nōnne** *accentuates question* **ad** *to* **lūdōs** *games* **veniētis** *will you come*

63.12 **Auxilium** *help* **tempore** *at time* **optimō** *best* **vēnit** *came*

63.13 **Quōcumque** *wherever* **vēnī** *I came* **cīvēs** *citizens* **laetī** *happy* **erant** *were*

63.31 **Prīmō** *at first* **paucī** *few* **vēnērunt** *came* **deinde** *then* **multī** *many*

63.15 **Ad** *to* **portam** *gate* **urbis** *of city* **hostēs** *enemies* **veniunt** *come*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

63.1 Puer domum sērō venit. *The boy comes home late.*

63.2 Hodiē nūntius ā rēge vēnit. *Today a messenger comes from the king.*

63.3 Ad urbem multī mercātōrēs veniunt. *Many merchants come to the city.*

63.4 Amīcī meī crās venient. *My friends will come tomorrow.*

63.5 Sacerdōs māne ad templum vēnit. *The priest came to the temple in the morning.*

63.6 Rōmam imperātor magnā cum glōriā vēnit. *The emperor came to Rome with great glory.*

63.7 Quandō ad cēnam meam veniēs? *When will you come to my dinner?*

63.8 Ēx Graeciā poētae multī vēnērunt. *Many poets came from Greece.*

63.9 Vēnimus ut tē vidēāmus. *We came so that we might see you.*

63.10 Undique agricolae ad forum veniēbant. *Farmers were coming to the forum from everywhere.*

63.11 Nōnne ad lūdōs veniētis? *Will you not come to the games?*

63.12 Auxilium tempore optimō vēnit. *Help came at the best time.*

63.13 Quōcumque vēnī, cīvēs laetī erant. *Wherever I came, the citizens were happy.*

63.31 Prīmō paucī vēnērunt, deinde multī. *At first few came, then many.*

63.15 Ad portam urbis hostēs veniunt. *The enemies come to the city gate.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

63.1 Puer domum sērō venit.

63.2 Hodiē nūntius ā rēge vēnit.

63.3 Ad urbem multī mercātōrēs veniunt.

63.4 Amīcī meī crās venient.

63.5 Sacerdōs māne ad templum vēnit.

63.6 Rōmam imperātor magnā cum glōriā vēnit.

63.7 Quandō ad cēnam meam veniēs?

63.8 Ēx Graeciā poētae multī vēnērunt.

63.9 Vēnimus ut tē vidēāmus.

63.10 Undique agricolae ad forum veniēbant.

63.11 Nōnne ad lūdōs veniētis?

63.12 Auxilium tempore optimō vēnit.

63.13 Quōcumque vēnī, cīvēs laetī erant.

63.31 Prīmō paucī vēnērunt, deinde multī.

63.15 Ad portam urbis hostēs veniunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "veniō" is a 4th conjugation verb meaning "to come." Here are its key features:

1. Principal Parts:
    - Present: veniō

    - Infinitive: venīre
    - Perfect: vēnī
    - Supine: ventum
2. Present System Forms:
    - Present: veniō, venīs, venit, venīmus, venītis, veniunt
    - Imperfect: veniēbam, veniēbās, etc.
    - Future: veniam, veniēs, veniet, etc.
3. Common Constructions:
    - With ad + accusative: "ad urbem venīre" (to come to the city)
    - With accusative alone for cities: "Rōmam venīre" (to come to Rome)
    - With purpose clause: "vēnimus ut vidēāmus" (we came to see)
    - With ablative of manner: "magnā cum glōriā venīre" (to come with great glory)
4. Special Uses:
    - In questions: "Quandō veniēs?"
    - With temporal expressions: "māne venīre"
    - With directional adverbs: "undique venīre"

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "veniō" requires cultural context:

1. Travel in Roman World:
    - Most people traveled on foot
    - Elite used horses or carriages
    - Sea travel common for longer distances
    - Roads built primarily for military use
2. Social Context:
    - Arrival of important persons ceremonial
    - Visitors announced by slaves
    - Formal protocols for entering homes
    - Different customs for public/private spaces
3. Military Usage:
    - Crucial for reporting troop movements
    - Used in diplomatic contexts
    - Important for describing reinforcements
    - Key term in surrender negotiations
4. Religious Significance:
    - Used for divine visitations
    - Important in prophecies
    - Part of ritual formulas
    - Used in prayers and invocations

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "Dē Bellō Gallicō" (4.27):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Quibus *to whom* **rēbus** *things* **cognitis** *having been learned* **Caesar** *Caesar* **celeriter** *quickly* **ad** *to* **exercitum** *army* **venit** *came,* **cohortātus** *having encouraged* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **nē** *lest* **necessāriō** *necessary* **tempore** *time* **reī** *of affair* **pūblicae** *public* **deessent** *they should fail.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Quibus rēbus cognitis, Caesar celeriter ad exercitum venit, cohortātus mīlitēs nē necessāriō tempore reī pūblicae deessent."

Having learned these things, Caesar quickly came to the army, encouraging the soldiers not to fail the republic at a crucial time.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "venit" in a typical military context, emphasizing:

- Swift action (celeriter)
- Leadership presence (personal arrival)
- Motivation of troops (cohortātus)
- Crisis moment (necessāriō tempore)

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Ablative absolute: "quibus rēbus cognitis"
- Perfect participle: "cohortātus"
- Negative purpose clause: "nē... deessent"
- Dative of reference: "reī pūblicae"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

63.16 **Legiō** *legion* **nostra** *our* **sub** *under* **noctem** *night* **vēnit** *came*

63.17 **Ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **auxiliā** *reinforcements* **tribus** *three* **cohortibus** *with cohorts* **vēnērunt** *came*

63.18 **Nūntius** *messenger* **ā** *from* **sociīs** *allies* **vēnit** *came* **auxilium** *help* **petēns** *seeking*

63.19 **Māne** *in morning* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **cum** *with* **novīs** *new* **nūntiīs** *reports* **vēnērunt** *came*

63.20 **Ad** *to* **flūminis** *of river* **rīpam** *bank* **hostēs** *enemies* **veniēbant** *were coming*

63.21 Imperātor *commander* ipse *himself* cum *with* equitibus *cavalry* vēnit *came*

63.22 **Ex** *from* **montibus** *mountains* **barbarī** *barbarians* **magnō** *great* **numerō** *in number* **veniēbant** *were coming*

63.23 **Ante** *before* **vesperum** *evening* **cōpiās** *forces* **nostrās** *our* **ventūrās** *about to come* **esse** *to be* **spērāvimus** *we hoped*

63.24 **Ubi** *when* **nox** *night* **vēnit** *came* **hostēs** *enemies* **sē** *themselves* **recēpērunt** *withdrew*

63.25 **Postrīdiē** *next day* **lēgātī** *ambassadors* **pācem** *peace* **petentēs** *seeking* **vēnērunt** *came*

63.26 **Ad** *to* **oppidum** *town* **quod** *which* **oppugnābātur** *was being attacked* **auxilia** *reinforcements* **nōn** *not* **vēnērunt** *came*

63.27 **Cum** *when* **Caesar** *Caesar* **vēnisset** *had come* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **castra** *camp* **mūnīvērunt** *fortified*

63.28 **Quārtā** *in fourth* **vigiliā** *watch* **nūntius** *messenger* **dē** *about* **victōriā** *victory* **vēnit** *came*

63.29 **Ante** *before* **sōlis** *of sun* **occāsum** *setting* **reliquae** *remaining* **nāvēs** *ships* **ventūrae** *about to come* **sunt** *are*

63.30 **Omnēs** *all* **cōpiae** *forces* **quae** *which* **ventūrae** *about to come* **erant** *were* **iam** *now* **convēnērunt** *have assembled*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

63.21 Imperātor ipse cum equitibus vēnit. The commander himself came with the cavalry.

63.22 Ex montibus barbarī magnō numerō veniēbant. *The barbarians were coming from the mountains in great number.*

63.23 Ante vesperum cōpiās nostrās ventūrās esse spērāvimus. *We hoped that our forces would come before evening.*

63.24 Ubi nox vēnit, hostēs sē recēpērunt. *When night came, the enemies withdrew.*

63.25 Postrīdiē lēgātī pācem petentēs vēnērunt. *The next day, ambassadors came seeking peace.*

63.26 Ad oppidum quod oppugnābātur auxilia nōn vēnērunt. *Reinforcements did not come to the town which was being attacked.*

63.27 Cum Caesar vēnisset, mīlitēs castra mūnīvērunt. *When Caesar had come, the soldiers fortified the camp.*

63.28 Quārtā vigiliā nūntius dē victōriā vēnit. *In the fourth watch, a messenger came about the victory.*

63.29 Ante sōlis occāsum reliquae nāvēs ventūrae sunt. *The remaining ships are going to come before sunset.*

63.30 Omnēs cōpiae quae ventūrae erant iam convēnērunt. *All the forces which were going to come have now assembled.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

63.21 Imperātor ipse cum equitibus vēnit.

63.22 Ex montibus barbarī magnō numerō veniēbant.

63.23 Ante vesperum cōpiās nostrās ventūrās esse spērāvimus.

63.24 Ubi nox vēnit, hostēs sē recēpērunt.

63.25 Postrīdiē lēgātī pācem petentēs vēnērunt.

63.26 Ad oppidum quod oppugnābātur auxilia nōn vēnērunt.

63.27 Cum Caesar vēnisset, mīlitēs castra mūnīvērunt.

63.28 Quārtā vigiliā nūntius dē victōriā vēnit.

63.29 Ante sōlis occāsum reliquae nāvēs ventūrae sunt.

63.30 Omnēs cōpiae quae ventūrae erant iam convēnērunt.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

1. Military Time Expressions with veniō:
    - Specific watches: "quārtā vigiliā vēnit"
    - Before/after markers: "ante vesperum ventūrae"
    - Time clauses: "ubi nox vēnit"
2. Future Participle Usage in Military Reports:
    - Prediction: "ventūrae sunt"
    - Indirect statement: "ventūrās esse"
    - Relative clauses: "quae ventūrae erant"
3. Military Unit Terminology:
    - With cavalry: "cum equitibus vēnit"
    - With reinforcements: "auxilia vēnērunt"
    - Full forces: "omnēs cōpiae"
4. Tactical Movements:
    - From locations: "ex montibus veniēbant"
    - To objectives: "ad oppidum vēnērunt"
    - With numbers: "magnō numerō"
5. Special Military Constructions:
    - Temporal cum clauses: "cum vēnisset"
    - Purpose expressions: "pācem petentēs"
    - Result clauses: "quod oppugnābātur"
6. Command Structure References:
    - Commander emphasis: "imperātor ipse"
    - Named commanders: "Caesar"
    - Chain of command: "lēgātī"
7. Common Military Phrases:
    - For reinforcements: "auxilia veniunt"

- For messengers: "nūntius vēnit"
- For withdrawal: "sē recēpērunt"

8. Strategic Context:
    - Fortification: "castra mūnīvērunt"
    - Diplomatic missions: "lēgātī pācem petentēs"
    - Battle reports: "dē victōriā"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 64 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: inter (between, among; during)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

64.1 **Inter** *between* **montēs** *mountains* **magnōs** *great* **via** *road* **est** *is*

64.2 **Multī** *many* **amīcī** *friends* **inter** *among* **nōs** *us* **sunt** *are*

64.3 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **inter** *between* **flūmen** *river* **et** *and* **castra** *camp* **ambulant** *walk*

64.4 **Puer** *boy* **inter** *among* **arborēs** *trees* **sedet** *sits*

64.5 **Inter** *during* **noctem** *night* **lupī** *wolves* **ululant** *howl*

64.6 **Dux** *leader* **inter** *among* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **fortēs** *brave* **stat** *stands*

64.7 **Navis** *ship* **inter** *between* **īnsulās** *islands* **duās** *two* **nāvigat** *sails*

64.8 **Inter** *during* **bellum** *war* **multī** *many* **virī** *men* **moriuntur** *die*

64.9 **Puellae** *girls* **inter** *among* **flōrēs** *flowers* **lūdunt** *play*

64.10 **Leō** *lion* **inter** *among* **herbās** *grasses* **altās** *tall* **latet** *hides*

64.11 **Inter** *between* **urbem** *city* **et** *and* **mare** *sea* **agrī** *fields* **sunt** *are*

64.12 **Servī** *slaves* **inter** *among* **sē** *themselves* **loquuntur** *speak*

64.13 **Inter** *during* **cēnam** *dinner* **fābulās** *stories* **narrāmus** *we tell*

64.31 **Templum** *temple* **inter** *between* **viam** *road* **et** *and* **forum** *forum* **stat** *stands*

64.15 **Pāx** *peace* **inter** *between* **populōs** *peoples* **duōs** *two* **facta** *made* **est** *is*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

64.1 Inter montēs magnōs via est. *There is a road between the great mountains.*

64.2 Multī amīcī inter nōs sunt. *There are many friends among us.*

64.3 Mīlitēs inter flūmen et castra ambulant. *The soldiers walk between the river and the camp.*

64.4 Puer inter arborēs sedet. *The boy sits among the trees.*

64.5 Inter noctem lupī ululant. *During the night the wolves howl.*

64.6 Dux inter mīlitēs fortēs stat. *The leader stands among the brave soldiers.*

64.7 Navis inter īnsulās duās nāvigat. *The ship sails between two islands.*

64.8 Inter bellum multī virī moriuntur. *During the war many men die.*

64.9 Puellae inter flōrēs lūdunt. *The girls play among the flowers.*

64.10 Leō inter herbās altās latet. *The lion hides among the tall grasses.*

64.11 Inter urbem et mare agrī sunt. *Between the city and the sea there are fields.*

64.12 Servī inter sē loquuntur. *The slaves speak among themselves.*

64.13 Inter cēnam fābulās narrāmus. *During dinner we tell stories.*

64.31 Templum inter viam et forum stat. *The temple stands between the road and the forum.*

64.15 Pāx inter populōs duōs facta est. *Peace was made between the two peoples.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

64.1 Inter montēs magnōs via est.

64.2 Multī amīcī inter nōs sunt.

64.3 Mīlitēs inter flūmen et castra ambulant.

64.4 Puer inter arborēs sedet.

64.5 Inter noctem lupī ululant.

64.6 Dux inter mīlitēs fortēs stat.

64.7 Navis inter īnsulās duās nāvigat.

64.8 Inter bellum multī virī moriuntur.

64.9 Puellae inter flōrēs lūdunt.

64.10 Leō inter herbās altās latet.

64.11 Inter urbem et mare agrī sunt.

64.12 Servī inter sē loquuntur.

64.13 Inter cēnam fābulās narrāmus.

64.31 Templum inter viam et forum stat.

64.15 Pāx inter populōs duōs facta est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The preposition "inter" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Basic Usage:
    - Always takes accusative case
    - Cannot stand alone (must have object)
    - Often connects two or more things
2. Common Meanings: a) Spatial: "between/among"
    - Physical location: "inter montēs" (between mountains)
    - Position in group: "inter mīlitēs" (among soldiers)

   b) Temporal: "during"
    - Time periods: "inter noctem" (during night)
    - Events: "inter bellum" (during war)
3. Special Constructions:
    - "inter sē": among themselves (reciprocal)
    - With numbers: "inter duōs" (between two)
    - With collective nouns: "inter populōs" (among peoples)
4. Position in Sentence:
    - Usually before its object
    - Can be separated by modifiers
    - Sometimes emphasized by position
5. Common Combinations:
    - With et: "inter X et Y" (between X and Y)
    - With demonstratives: "inter illōs" (among those)
    - With personal pronouns: "inter nōs" (among us)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "inter" requires cultural context from Roman life:

1. Military Usage:
    - Describing troop positions
    - Battle formations
    - Camp arrangements
2. Social Context:
    - Social relationships
    - Class distinctions
    - Political alliances
3. Geographic Understanding:
    - Roman road system
    - City planning
    - Natural boundaries
4. Time Concepts:

- Roman daily schedule
- Festival periods
- Military campaigns

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.1):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Gallia *Gaul* **est** *is* **omnis** *all* **dīvīsa** *divided* **in** *into* **partēs** *parts* **trēs,** *three,* **quārum** *of which* **ūnam** *one* **incolunt** *inhabit* **Belgae,** *the Belgians,* **aliam** *another* **Aquītānī,** *the Aquitanians,* **tertiam** *third* **quī** *who* **ipsōrum** *their own* **linguā** *in language* **Celtae,** *Celts,* **nostrā** *in our* **Gallī** *Gauls* **appellantur.** *are called.* **Hī** *These* **omnēs** *all* **linguā,** *in language,* **īnstitūtīs,** *institutions,* **lēgibus** *laws* **inter** *among* **sē** *themselves* **differunt.** *differ.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt."

All Gaul is divided into three parts, of which the Belgians inhabit one, the Aquitanians another, and those who in their own language are called Celts, in ours Gauls, the third. All these differ among themselves in language, institutions, and laws.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "inter sē" to emphasize the distinctions between Gallic tribes. This reflects Roman interest in:

- Cultural differences
- Political divisions
- Administrative organization

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "inter sē" with "differunt" shows reciprocal relationship
- Ablatives of specification: "linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus"
- Complex sentence structure typical of Caesar
- Use of relative clauses for detailed description

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

64.16 **Hostēs** *enemies* **inter** *between* **silvam** *forest* **et** *and* **castra** *camp* **nostra** *our* **appropinquant** *approach*

64.17 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **inter** *among* **sē** *themselves* **auxilium** *help* **dant** *give*

64.18 **Inter** *during* **pugnam** *battle* **multī** *many* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnant** *fight*

64.19 **Dux** *leader* **inter** *among* **equitēs** *cavalry* **suōs** *his own* **prōgreditur** *advances*

64.20 **Inter** *between* **duōs** *two* **collēs** *hills* **hostēs** *enemies* **castra** *camp* **pōnunt** *place*

64.21 **Sagittāriī** *archers* **inter** *among* **arborēs** *trees* **occultantur** *hide themselves*

64.22 **Inter** *during* **impetum** *attack* **hostium** *of enemies* **fortiter** *bravely* **resistimus** *we resist*

64.23 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **inter** *between* **montēs** *mountains* **et** *and* **flūmen** *river* **mittuntur** *are sent*

64.24 **Inter** *between* **prīmam** *first* **et** *and* **secundam** *second* **legiōnem** *legion* **impedīmenta** *baggage* **collocantur** *are placed*

64.25 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **inter** *among* **sē** *themselves* **cōnsilium** *plan* **communicant** *share*

64.26 **Inter** *during* **proelium** *battle* **signōrum** *of standards* **sonitūs** *sound* **auditur** *is heard*

64.27 **Aquilifer** *standard-bearer* **inter** *among* **prīmōs** *first ones* **fortissimē** *most bravely* **pugnat** *fights*

64.28 **Inter** *among* **captīvōs** *captives* **dux** *leader* **hostium** *of enemies* **inventus** *found* **est** *is*

64.29 **Praefectus** *commander* **inter** *between* **castra** *camps* **equō** *on horse* **vehitur** *is carried*

64.30 **Inter** *during* **noctem** *night* **vigiliae** *guards* **duplicantur** *are doubled*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

64.16 Hostēs inter silvam et castra nostra appropinquant. *The enemies approach between the forest and our camp.*

64.17 Legiōnēs inter sē auxilium dant. *The legions give help among themselves.*

64.18 Inter pugnam multī fortiter pugnant. *During the battle many fight bravely.*

64.19 Dux inter equitēs suōs prōgreditur. *The leader advances among his own cavalry.*

64.20 Inter duōs collēs hostēs castra pōnunt. *Between two hills the enemies place their camp.*

64.21 Sagittāriī inter arborēs occultantur. The archers hide themselves among the trees.

64.22 Inter impetum hostium fortiter resistimus. *During the enemy's attack we resist bravely.*

64.23 Inter montēs et flūmen explōrātōrēs mittuntur. *Between the mountains and the river scouts are sent.*

64.24 Impedīmenta inter prīmam et secundam legiōnem collocantur. *The baggage is placed between the first and second legion.*

64.25 Mīlitēs inter sē cōnsilium communicant. *The soldiers share the plan among themselves.*

64.26 Inter proelium signōrum sonitūs auditur. *During the battle the sound of standards is heard.*

64.27 Inter prīmōs aquilifer fortissimē pugnat. *Among the first ranks the standard-bearer fights most bravely.*

64.28 Inter captīvōs dux hostium inventus est. *Among the captives the leader of the enemies was found.*

64.29 Praefectus equō inter castra vehitur. *The commander is carried on horseback between the camps.*

64.30 Inter noctem vigiliae duplicantur. *During the night the guards are doubled.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

64.16 Hostēs inter silvam et castra nostra appropinquant.

64.17 Legiōnēs inter sē auxilium dant.

64.18 Inter pugnam multī fortiter pugnant.

64.19 Dux inter equitēs suōs prōgreditur.

64.20 Inter duōs collēs hostēs castra pōnunt.

64.21 Sagittāriī inter arborēs occultantur.

64.22 Inter impetum hostium fortiter resistimus.

64.23 Inter montēs et flūmen explōrātōrēs mittuntur.

64.24 Impedīmenta inter prīmam et secundam legiōnem collocantur.

64.25 Mīlitēs inter sē cōnsilium communicant.

64.26 Inter proelium signōrum sonitūs auditur.

64.27 Inter prīmōs aquilifer fortissimē pugnat.

64.28 Inter captīvōs dux hostium inventus est.

64.29 Praefectus equō inter castra vehitur.

64.30 Inter noctem vigiliae duplicantur.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

1. Military Spatial Usage: a) Positioning Troops:
    - "inter silvam et castra" (tactical positioning)
    - "inter duōs collēs" (strategic placement)
    - "inter prīmōs" (battle formation)

   b) Movement Descriptions:
    - "inter castra" (movement between camps)
    - "inter montēs et flūmen" (terrain navigation)
2. Temporal Uses in Military Context: a) Battle Phases:
    - "inter pugnam" (during battle)
    - "inter impetum" (during attack)
    - "inter proelium" (during combat)

   b) Military Operations:
    - "inter noctem" (nighttime operations)
    - Shows timing of military actions
3. Special Military Expressions: a) Unit Coordination:
    - "inter sē auxilium dant" (mutual support)
    - "inter sē cōnsilium communicant" (tactical communication)

   b) Command Structure:
    - "inter prīmōs" (front line position)
    - "inter equitēs suōs" (cavalry command)
4. Military Technical Terms: a) Equipment and Units:
    - "impedīmenta" (military baggage)
    - "legiōnem" (legion)
    - "aquilifer" (standard-bearer)
    - "sagittāriī" (archers)

   b) Ranks and Positions:
    - "praefectus" (commander)
    - "dux" (leader)
    - "vigiliae" (guards)
5. Syntactical Patterns in Military Writing: a) Word Order:
    - Object placement for emphasis
    - Position of "inter" in tactical descriptions
    - Verb placement in military commands

   b) Voice Usage:
    - Passive for formal reports: "mittuntur," "collocantur"
    - Active for direct actions: "pugnat," "resistimus"
6. Case Usage in Military Context: a) Accusative Objects:
    - After "inter": "inter silvam"
    - Multiple objects: "inter montēs et flūmen"

   b) Other Cases:
    - Ablative of means: "equō"
    - Genitive of possession: "hostium"
7. Advanced Military Constructions: a) Complex Positioning:
    - Multiple reference points

- Tactical arrangements
- Unit formations

b) Command Structure:

- Hierarchy indicators
- Authority relationships
- Chain of command

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 65 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 65: pars partis f. (part)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

65.1 **Maior** *greater* **pars** *part* **exercitūs** *of army* **flūmen** *river* **trānsit** *crosses*

65.2 **Pars** *part* **mūrī** *of wall* **antiquī** *ancient* **adhūc** *still* **stat** *stands*

65.3 **Magnam** *great* **partem** *part* **viae** *of road* **pluviae** *rains* **dēlēvērunt** *destroyed*

65.4 **In** *in* **omnibus** *all* **partibus** *parts* **urbis** *of city* **templā** *temples* **sunt** *are*

65.5 **Minimā** *smallest* **ex** *from* **parte** *part* **cīvēs** *citizens* **vērum** *truth* **cognōscunt** *learn*

65.6 **Duae** *two* **partēs** *parts* **cohortium** *of cohorts* **ad** *to* **portam** *gate* **missae** *sent* **sunt** *were*

65.7 **Ex** *from* **alterā** *other* **parte** *part* **vīllae** *of villa* **horti** *gardens* **pulchrī** *beautiful* **vidērī** *to be seen* **possunt** *are able*

65.8 **Nūlla** *no* **pars** *part* **hostium** *of enemies* **castra** *camp* **nostra** *our* **oppugnāre** *to attack* **audet** *dares*

65.9 **Magnā** *great* **cum** *with* **parte** *part* **equitum** *of cavalry* **dux** *leader* **profectus** *having set out* **est** *is*

65.10 **Quā** *which* **in** *in* **parte** *part* **pugnae** *of battle* **victōria** *victory* **erat** *was*?

65.11 **Multae** *many* **partēs** *parts* **agrōrum** *of fields* **arīdae** *dry* **erant** *were*

65.12 **Quārtam** *fourth* **partem** *part* **praedae** *of booty* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **accēpērunt** *received*

65.13 **Ab** *from* **omnī** *every* **parte** *part* **perīcula** *dangers* **nōbīs** *for us* **imminent** *threaten*

65.31 **Hās** *these* **in** *into* **partēs** *parts* **cōpiās** *forces* **hostium** *of enemies* **dīvīsimus** *we divided*

65.15 **Maiōrēs** *greater* **partēs** *parts* **nāvium** *of ships* **tempestās** *storm* **dēstrūxit** *destroyed*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

65.1 Maior pars exercitūs flūmen trānsit. *The greater part of the army crosses the river.*

65.2 Pars mūrī antiquī adhūc stat. *Part of the ancient wall still stands.*

65.3 Magnam partem viae pluviae dēlēvērunt. *The rains destroyed a large part of the road.*

65.4 In omnibus partibus urbis templā sunt. *There are temples in all parts of the city.*

65.5 Minimā ex parte cīvēs vērum cognōscunt. *The citizens learn the truth from only the smallest part.*

65.6 Duae partēs cohortium ad portam missae sunt. *Two parts of the cohorts were sent to the gate.*

65.7 Ex alterā parte vīllae horti pulchrī vidērī possunt. *Beautiful gardens can be seen from the other part of the villa.*

65.8 Nūlla pars hostium castra nostra oppugnāre audet. *No part of the enemy dares to attack our camp.*

65.9 Magnā cum parte equitum dux profectus est. *The leader set out with a large part of the cavalry.*

65.10 Quā in parte pugnae victōria erat? *In which part of the battle was the victory?*

65.11 Multae partēs agrōrum arīdae erant. *Many parts of the fields were dry.*

65.12 Quārtam partem praedae mīlitēs accēpērunt. *The soldiers received a fourth part of the booty.*

65.13 Ab omnī parte perīcula nōbīs imminent. *Dangers threaten us from every part.*

65.31 Hās in partēs cōpiās hostium dīvīsimus. *We divided the enemy forces into these parts.*

65.15 Maiōrēs partēs nāvium tempestās dēstrūxit. *The storm destroyed the larger parts of the ships.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

65.1 Maior pars exercitūs flūmen trānsit.

65.2 Pars mūrī antiquī adhūc stat.

65.3 Magnam partem viae pluviae dēlēvērunt.

65.4 In omnibus partibus urbis templā sunt.

65.5 Minimā ex parte cīvēs vērum cognōscunt.

65.6 Duae partēs cohortium ad portam missae sunt.

65.7 Ex alterā parte vīllae horti pulchrī vidērī possunt.

65.8 Nūlla pars hostium castra nostra oppugnāre audet.

65.9 Magnā cum parte equitum dux profectus est.

65.10 Quā in parte pugnae victōria erat?

65.11 Multae partēs agrōrum arīdae erant.

65.12 Quārtam partem praedae mīlitēs accēpērunt.

65.13 Ab omnī parte perīcula nōbīs imminent.

65.31 Hās in partēs cōpiās hostium dīvīsimus.

65.15 Maiōrēs partēs nāvium tempestās dēstrūxit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "pars" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:
    - Third declension feminine noun
    - Stem: part-
    - Nominative singular drops final -t
    - Shows typical third declension endings
2. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: pars
    - Genitive: partis
    - Dative: partī
    - Accusative: partem
    - Ablative: parte

   Plural:
    - Nominative: partēs
    - Genitive: partium
    - Dative: partibus
    - Accusative: partēs
    - Ablative: partibus
3. Common Uses:
    - With genitive of the whole: pars exercitūs (part of the army)
    - As subject: pars stat (a part stands)
    - With prepositions: ex parte, in parte
    - With adjectives of size: magna pars, minor pars
    - In partitive expressions: duae partēs (two parts)
4. Special Constructions:
    - ex parte: partially, in part
    - magnā ex parte: for the most part
    - in partēs: into parts (with verbs of dividing)
    - ab omnī parte: from every side

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "pars" requires cultural context:

1. Military Usage:
    - Divisions of army units
    - Parts of fortifications
    - Battle formations
    - Distribution of spoils
2. Political Context:
    - Factions (partēs) in politics
    - Division of provinces
    - Voting sections
    - Social classes
3. Geographical Applications:
    - Regions of cities
    - Parts of provinces
    - Divisions of territory
    - Cardinal directions
4. Architectural Usage:
    - Sections of buildings
    - Parts of temples
    - Components of houses
    - City districts

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (4.1):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Eā *in that* **tempestāte** *time* **ex** *from* **Suēbīs** *the Suebi* **maximā** *greatest* **pars** *part* **ad** *to* **rīpās** *banks* **Rhēnī** *of Rhine* **sēdēs** *settlements* **habēbat** *had,* **atque** *and* **inde** *from there* **prōximōs** *nearest* **fīnēs** *territories* **crebrō** *frequently* **excursiōnibus** *by raids* **vēxābat** *harassed.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Eā tempestāte ex Suēbīs maximā pars ad rīpās Rhēnī sēdēs habēbat, atque inde prōximōs fīnēs crebrō excursiōnibus vēxābat."

At that time the greatest part of the Suebi had their settlements near the banks of the Rhine, and from there frequently harassed the nearest territories with raids.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "pars" here to describe a large portion of a Germanic tribe. The word placement emphasizes the size of the group ("maximā pars"). His precise language reflects both military and ethnographic interests.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "maximā pars" is nominative subject

- Agreement with singular verb "habēbat"
- Ablative of time in "eā tempestāte"
- Prepositional phrases show location
- Complex sentence structure typical of Caesar

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

65.16 **Tertia** *third* **pars** *part* **legiōnis** *of legion* **castra** *camp* **mūnīre** *to fortify* **coepit** *began*

65.17 **Altera** *other* **pars** *part* **mīlitum** *of soldiers* **lignā** *wood* **ad** *for* **vallum** *rampart* **colligit** *collects*

65.18 **Ex** *from* **superiōre** *higher* **parte** *part* **collīs** *of hill* **hostēs** *enemies* **vidērī** *to be seen* **possunt** *are able*

65.19 **In** *into* **trēs** *three* **partēs** *parts* **imperātor** *commander* **exercitum** *army* **dīvīsit** *divided*

65.20 **Pars** *part* **equitum** *of cavalry* **hostēs** *enemies* **fugientēs** *fleeing* **īnsecūta** *having pursued* **est** *is*

65.21 **Ab** *from* **omnī** *every* **parte** *part* **castrōrum** *of camp* **vigiliae** *guards* **dispōsitae** *placed* **sunt** *were*

65.22 **In** *in* **eā** *that* **parte** *part* **montis** *of mountain* **nūllī** *no* **hostēs** *enemies* **erant** *were*

65.23 **Tertiam** *third* **partem** *part* **armōrum** *of weapons* **hostēs** *enemies* **trādere** *to hand over* **iussī** *ordered* **sunt** *were*

65.24 **Quā** *which* **ex** *from* **parte** *part* **oppidī** *of town* **eruptiōnem** *sally* **facient** *will they make*?

65.25 **Prīmā** *first* **parte** *part* **noctis** *of night* **silentium** *silence* **erat** *was*

65.26 **Aliās** *other* **in** *into* **partēs** *parts* **cōpiae** *forces* **auxiliārēs** *auxiliary* **missae** *sent* **sunt** *were*

65.27 **Magnā** *great* **ex** *from* **parte** *part* **mūrī** *of wall* **tormenta** *siege engines* **posita** *placed* **erant** *were*

65.28 **Duas** *two* **partēs** *parts* **impedīmentōrum** *of baggage* **in** *in* **castrīs** *camp* **relīquimus** *we left*

65.29 **Ad** *to* **eam** *that* **partem** *part* **castrōrum** *of camp* **cohortēs** *cohorts* **novae** *new* **vēnērunt** *came*

65.30 **Maximā** *greatest* **pars** *part* **pugnae** *of battle* **in** *on* **dextrō** *right* **latere** *side* **erat** *was*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

65.16 Tertia pars legiōnis castra mūnīre coepit. *The third part of the legion began to fortify the camp.*

65.17 Altera pars mīlitum lignā ad vallum colligit. *The other part of the soldiers collects wood for the rampart.*

65.18 Ex superiōre parte collīs hostēs vidērī possunt. *The enemies can be seen from the higher part of the hill.*

65.19 In trēs partēs imperātor exercitum dīvīsit. *The commander divided the army into three parts.*

65.20 Pars equitum hostēs fugientēs īnsecūta est. *Part of the cavalry pursued the fleeing enemies.*

65.21 Ab omnī parte castrōrum vigiliae dispōsitae sunt. *Guards were positioned at every part of the camp.*

65.22 In eā parte montis nūllī hostēs erant. *There were no enemies in that part of the mountain.*

65.23 Tertiam partem armōrum hostēs trādere iussī sunt. *The enemies were ordered to hand over a third part of their weapons.*

65.24 Quā ex parte oppidī eruptiōnem facient? *From which part of the town will they make a sally?*

65.25 Prīmā parte noctis silentium erat. *There was silence in the first part of the night.*

65.26 Aliās in partēs cōpiae auxiliārēs missae sunt. *The auxiliary forces were sent into other parts.*

65.27 Magnā ex parte mūrī tormenta posita erant. *Siege engines had been placed along a great part of the wall.*

65.28 Duas partēs impedīmentōrum in castrīs relīquimus. *We left two parts of the baggage in camp.*

65.29 Ad eam partem castrōrum cohortēs novae vēnērunt. *New cohorts came to that part of the camp.*

65.30 Maximā pars pugnae in dextrō latere erat. *The greatest part of the battle was on the right flank.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

65.16 Tertia pars legiōnis castra mūnīre coepit.

65.17 Altera pars mīlitum lignā ad vallum colligit.

65.18 Ex superiōre parte collīs hostēs vidērī possunt.

65.19 In trēs partēs imperātor exercitum dīvīsit.

65.20 Pars equitum hostēs fugientēs īnsecūta est.

65.21 Ab omnī parte castrōrum vigiliae dispōsitae sunt.

65.22 In eā parte montis nūllī hostēs erant.

65.23 Tertiam partem armōrum hostēs trādere iussī sunt.

65.24 Quā ex parte oppidī eruptiōnem facient?

65.25 Prīmā parte noctis silentium erat.

65.26 Aliās in partēs cōpiae auxiliārēs missae sunt.

65.27 Magnā ex parte mūrī tormenta posita erant.

65.28 Duas partēs impedīmentōrum in castrīs relīquimus.

65.29 Ad eam partem castrōrum cohortēs novae vēnērunt.

65.30 Maximā pars pugnae in dextrō latere erat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

1. Military Units and Division:
    - "pars legiōnis" (part of a legion) - genitive construction showing division of military units
    - "in trēs partēs" (into three parts) - accusative with in showing division
    - "pars equitum" (part of the cavalry) - partitive genitive with military unit
2. Time References in Military Context:
    - "prīmā parte noctis" (in the first part of the night) - ablative of time when
    - Divisions of watch periods marked by partēs
    - Important for military operations timing
3. Topographical Usage:
    - "ex superiōre parte collīs" (from the higher part of the hill)
    - "in eā parte montis" (in that part of the mountain)
    - Critical for military positioning and strategy
4. Camp Organization:
    - "ab omnī parte castrōrum" (from every part of the camp)
    - Showing defensive arrangements
    - Distribution of forces within camp
5. Combat Operations:
    - "maximā pars pugnae" (the greatest part of the battle)
    - Description of battle locations and intensity
    - Strategic deployment of forces
6. Common Military Phrases:
    - With verbs of fortification: mūnīre (to fortify)
    - With verbs of movement: mittere (to send)
    - With verbs of observation: vidēre (to see)
    - With verbs of pursuit: īnsequī (to pursue)
7. Position and Tactical Terms:
    - "in dextrō latere" (on the right flank)
    - "ad vallum" (for the rampart)
    - Directional and tactical terminology
8. Special Military Constructions:
    - Orders: "trādere iussī sunt" (were ordered to hand over)
    - Passive voice common in military reports
    - Precise numerical divisions

This military context shows how "pars" was essential in Roman military vocabulary for:

- Organizing troops
- Describing terrain
- Planning operations
- Reporting outcomes
- Managing logistics

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 66 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 66: volō velle voluī (wish, be willing)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

66.1 **Puer** *boy* **dōnum** *gift* **vidēre** *to see* **vult** *wishes*

66.2 **Mīles** *soldier* **pugnāre** *to fight* **nōn** *not* **vult** *wishes*

66.3 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **pācem** *peace* **semper** *always* **volunt** *wish*

66.4 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulōs** *pupils* **cūrāre** *to care for* **volet** *will wish*

66.5 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **lēgem** *law* **novam** *new* **nōluērunt** *did not wish*

66.6 **Fīlius** *son* **epistulam** *letter* **scrībere** *to write* **nōn** *not* **vult** *wishes*

66.7 **Māter** *mother* **līberōs** *children* **servāre** *to save* **voluerat** *had wished*

66.8 **Mercātor** *merchant* **pecūniam** *money* **habēre** *to have* **semper** *always* **vult** *wishes*

66.9 **Patria** *homeland* **pācem** *peace* **et** *and* **glōriam** *glory* **vult** *wishes*

66.10 **Nōs** *we* **veritātem** *truth* **scīre** *to know* **volumus** *wish*

66.11 **Agricola** *farmer* **agrōs** *fields* **colere** *to cultivate* **vult** *wishes*

66.12 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **lībertātem** *freedom* **servāre** *to preserve* **volēbant** *were wishing*

66.13 **Poēta** *poet* **carmina** *poems* **scrībere** *to write* **vult** *wishes*

66.31 **Hostēs** *enemies* **urbem** *city* **capere** *to capture* **volunt** *wish*

66.15 **Dux** *leader* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **laudāre** *to praise* **voluerat** *had wished*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

66.1 Dōnum vidēre puer vult. *The boy wishes to see the gift.*

66.2 Pugnāre mīles nōn vult. *The soldier does not wish to fight.*

66.3 Sapientēs pācem semper volunt. *Wise men always wish for peace.*

66.4 Discipulōs magister cūrāre volet. *The teacher will wish to care for his pupils.*

66.5 Lēgem novam senātōrēs nōluērunt. *The senators did not wish for the new law.*

66.6 Scrībere epistulam fīlius nōn vult. *The son does not wish to write the letter.*

66.7 Līberōs servāre māter voluerat. *The mother had wished to save her children.*

66.8 Pecūniam mercātor habēre semper vult. *The merchant always wishes to have money.*

66.9 Pācem et glōriam patria vult. *The homeland wishes for peace and glory.*

66.10 Veritātem scīre nōs volumus. *We wish to know the truth.*

66.11 Agrōs colere agricola vult. *The farmer wishes to cultivate the fields.*

66.12 Lībertātem cīvēs servāre volēbant. *The citizens were wishing to preserve freedom.*

66.13 Carmina scrībere poēta vult. *The poet wishes to write poems.*

66.31 Urbem capere hostēs volunt. *The enemies wish to capture the city.*

66.15 Mīlitēs laudāre dux voluerat. *The leader had wished to praise the soldiers.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

66.1 Dōnum vidēre puer vult.

66.2 Pugnāre mīles nōn vult.

66.3 Sapientēs pācem semper volunt.

66.4 Discipulōs magister cūrāre volet.

66.5 Lēgem novam senātōrēs nōluērunt.

66.6 Scrībere epistulam fīlius nōn vult.

66.7 Līberōs servāre māter voluerat.

66.8 Pecūniam mercātor habēre semper vult.

66.9 Pācem et glōriam patria vult.

66.10 Veritātem scīre nōs volumus.

66.11 Agrōs colere agricola vult.

66.12 Lībertātem cīvēs servāre volēbant.

66.13 Carmina scrībere poēta vult.

66.31 Urbem capere hostēs volunt.

66.15 Mīlitēs laudāre dux voluerat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "volō" is irregular and has several important features:

1. Principal Parts:
    - Present: volō
    - Infinitive: velle
    - Perfect: voluī
    - No supine form exists
2. Present System Forms: Singular:
    - volō, vīs, vult Plural:
    - volumus, vultis, volunt
3. Common Constructions:
    - With infinitive (most common): "vidēre vult" (he wishes to see)
    - With accusative object: "pācem volunt" (they wish for peace)
    - With negative: "nōn vult" (he does not wish)
4. Key Points for English Speakers:
    - Often translated as "want" in English
    - No passive forms exist
    - Frequently used with complementary infinitive
    - Related to nouns voluntās (will) and voluntārius (voluntary)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "volō" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Concept of Will:
    - Related to virtūs (virtue/manliness)
    - Connected to duty and obligation
    - Important in political rhetoric
    - Key concept in philosophical texts
2. Legal Usage:
    - Used in formal declarations
    - Important in wills (voluntās)
    - Part of official language
    - Essential in contracts
3. Social Implications:
    - Expressing wishes politely
    - Indicating authority
    - Showing determination
    - Demonstrating intent

4. Modern Connections:
    - Root of "voluntary"
    - Used in scientific terms
    - Found in legal phrases
    - Part of common expressions

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Officiis" (1.28):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Sunt *there are* **autem** *moreover* **quī** *those who* **quidvīs** *anything* **perpetī** *to endure,* **cuīvīs** *to anyone* **servīre** *to be enslaved,* **dummodo** *provided that* **potentiam** *power* **cōnsequantur** *they might obtain,* **volunt** *wish.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Sunt autem quī quidvīs perpetī, cuīvīs servīre, dummodo potentiam cōnsequantur, volunt."

Moreover, there are those who wish to endure anything, to be enslaved to anyone, provided that they might obtain power.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "volunt" to emphasize willing submission to degrading conditions for the sake of power. The placement at the end creates emphasis.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "volunt" main verb
- "perpetī" and "servīre" complementary infinitives
- "dummodo" introduces purpose clause with subjunctive
- Complex sentence structure showing multiple dependencies

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Letter Writing

Part A (Interleaved Text)

66.16 **Amīcus** *friend* **meus** *my* **epistulam** *letter* **longam** *long* **scrībere** *to write* **vult** *wishes*

66.17 **Litterās** *letter* **tuās** *your* **legere** *to read* **maximē** *greatly* **volumus** *we wish*

66.18 **Pater** *father* **fīliō** *to son* **suō** *his* **responsum** *reply* **dare** *to give* **vult** *wishes*

66.19 **Discipulus** *pupil* **magistrō** *to teacher* **grātiās** *thanks* **agere** *to give* **volet** *will wish*

66.20 **Sorōrēs** *sisters* **frātrī** *to brother* **dōna** *gifts* **mittere** *to send* **volunt** *wish*

66.21 **Māter** *mother* **fīliae** *to daughter* **cōnsilium** *advice* **dare** *to give* **voluerat** *had wished*

66.22 **Senex** *old man* **amīcō** *to friend* **dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **scrībere** *to write* **vult** *wishes*

66.23 **Puella** *girl* **epistulam** *letter* **ad** *to* **amīcam** *friend* **mittere** *to send* **vult** *wishes*

66.24 **Rēx** *king* **populum** *people* **dē** *about* **pāce** *peace* **docēre** *to teach* **volet** *will wish*

66.25 **Cōnsul** *consul* **senātuī** *to senate* **nūntium** *message* **dare** *to give* **vult** *wishes*

66.26 **Poēta** *poet* **carmina** *poems* **sua** *his* **recitāre** *to recite* **vult** *wishes*

66.27 **Mercātor** *merchant* **prētium** *price* **indicāre** *to indicate* **nōn** *not* **vult** *wishes*

66.28 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **ducī** *to leader* **victōriam** *victory* **nūntiāre** *to announce* **volunt** *wish*

66.29 **Servus** *slave* **dominō** *to master* **vēritātem** *truth* **dīcere** *to tell* **nōn** *not* **vult** *wishes*

66.30 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulīs** *to pupils* **fābulam** *story* **nārrāre** *to tell* **vult** *wishes*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

66.16 Epistulam longam amīcus meus scrībere vult. *My friend wishes to write a long letter.*

66.17 Litterās tuās maximē legere volumus. *We very much wish to read your letter.*

66.18 Fīliō suō responsum dare pater vult. *The father wishes to give a reply to his son.*

66.19 Magistrō grātiās agere discipulus volet. *The pupil will wish to give thanks to the teacher.*

66.20 Frātrī dōna mittere sorōrēs volunt. *The sisters wish to send gifts to their brother.*

66.21 Fīliae cōnsilium dare māter voluerat. *The mother had wished to give advice to her daughter.*

66.22 Amīcō dē vītā scrībere senex vult. *The old man wishes to write to his friend about life.*

66.23 Ad amīcam epistulam mittere puella vult. *The girl wishes to send a letter to her friend.*

66.24 Populum dē pāce docēre rēx volet. *The king will wish to teach the people about peace.*

66.25 Senātuī nūntium dare cōnsul vult. *The consul wishes to give a message to the senate.*

66.26 Carmina sua recitāre poēta vult. *The poet wishes to recite his poems.*

66.27 Prētium indicāre mercātor nōn vult. *The merchant does not wish to indicate the price.*

66.28 Ducī victōriam nūntiāre mīlitēs volunt. *The soldiers wish to announce the victory to the leader.*

66.29 Dominō vēritātem dīcere servus nōn vult. *The slave does not wish to tell the truth to the master.*

66.30 Discipulīs fābulam nārrāre magister vult. *The teacher wishes to tell a story to the pupils.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

66.16 Epistulam longam amīcus meus scrībere vult.

66.17 Litterās tuās maximē legere volumus.

66.18 Fīliō suō responsum dare pater vult.

66.19 Magistrō grātiās agere discipulus volet.

66.20 Frātrī dōna mittere sorōrēs volunt.

66.21 Fīliae cōnsilium dare māter voluerat.

66.22 Amīcō dē vītā scrībere senex vult.

66.23 Ad amīcam epistulam mittere puella vult.

66.24 Populum dē pāce docēre rēx volet.

66.25 Senātuī nūntium dare cōnsul vult.

66.26 Carmina sua recitāre poēta vult.

66.27 Prētium indicāre mercātor nōn vult.

66.28 Ducī victōriam nūntiāre mīlitēs volunt.

66.29 Dominō vēritātem dīcere servus nōn vult.

66.30 Discipulīs fābulam nārrāre magister vult.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The genre section on letter writing demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Use of "volō" in Epistolary Context:
    - With infinitive of purpose: "scrībere vult" (wishes to write)
    - With indirect objects in dative: "fīliō responsum dare vult" (wishes to give a reply to his son)
    - In various tenses: present (vult), future (volet), pluperfect (voluerat)
2. Common Letter Writing Constructions:
    - Dative of recipient: "amīcō scrībere" (to write to a friend)
    - Purpose expressions: "ad + accusative" with mittere
    - Possession: "litterās tuās" (your letter)
    - Indirect objects: multiple examples with dare, mittere
3. Special Features:
    - Use of reflexive possessive "suus" referring to subject
    - Variety of complementary infinitives
    - Position of infinitive often before main verb
    - Negative expressions with "nōn"
4. Letter Writing Vocabulary:
    - epistula/litterae (letter)

- mittere (to send)
- scrībere (to write)
- responsum dare (to give a reply)
- nūntium dare (to give a message)

5. Word Order Patterns:
    - Infinitive often before volō
    - Indirect object frequently first
    - Subject position varies for emphasis
    - Object placement shows flexibility

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 67 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: etiam (also, even)

Introduction

In this lesson, we will study the adverb "etiam", which means "also" or "even". This common word appears frequently in Latin texts and is essential for connecting ideas and emphasizing points.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

67.1 **Etiam** *even* **puerī** *boys* **litterās** *letters* **discere** *to learn* **possunt** *are able*

67.2 **Servus** *slave* **etiam** *also* **linguam** *language* **Graecam** *Greek* **intellegit** *understands*

67.3 **Magister** *teacher* **etiam** *even* **hodiē** *today* **multōs** *many* **librōs** *books* **legit** *reads*

67.4 **Agricola** *farmer* **etiam** *also* **in** *in* **agrīs** *fields* **labōrat** *works*

67.5 **Mīles** *soldier* **etiam** *even* **noctū** *at night* **vigilat** *keeps watch*

67.6 **Dominus** *master* **etiam** *also* **pecūniam** *money* **servō** *to slave* **dat** *gives*

67.7 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **etiam** *even* **errāre** *to err* **possunt** *are able*

67.8 **Rōmānī** *Romans* **etiam** *also* **deōs** *gods* **Graecōs** *Greek* **colunt** *worship*

67.9 **Discipulī** *pupils* **etiam** *even* **difficilia** *difficult things* **student** *study*

67.10 **Senex** *old man* **etiam** *still* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnat** *fights*

67.11 **Legiō** *legion* **etiam** *also* **nocte** *by night* **iter** *journey* **facit** *makes*

67.12 **Pater** *father* **etiam** *even* **fīliō** *to son* **īrātus** *angry* **est** *is*

67.13 **Sacerdōs** *priest* **etiam** *also* **populum** *people* **docet** *teaches*

67.31 **Hostēs** *enemies* **etiam** *even* **in** *in* **castrīs** *camp* **timent** *fear*

67.15 **Poēta** *poet* **etiam** *also* **dē** *about* **bellō** *war* **cantat** *sings*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

67.1 Etiam puerī litterās discere possunt. *Even boys can learn their letters.*

67.2 Linguam Graecam servus etiam intellegit. *The slave understands Greek as well.*

67.3 Multōs librōs magister etiam hodiē legit. *The teacher reads many books even today.*

67.4 In agrīs agricola etiam labōrat. *The farmer works in the fields as well.*

67.5 Noctū etiam mīles vigilat. *Even at night the soldier keeps watch.*

67.6 Servō dominus etiam pecūniam dat. *The master gives money to the slave as well.*

67.7 Etiam sapientēs errāre possunt. *Even the wise can make mistakes.*

67.8 Deōs Graecōs Rōmānī etiam colunt. *The Romans worship the Greek gods as well.*

67.9 Difficilia etiam discipulī student. *The pupils study even difficult things.*

67.10 Fortiter etiam senex pugnat. *Even the old man fights bravely.*

67.11 Nocte etiam legiō iter facit. *The legion marches even by night.*

67.12 Fīliō pater etiam īrātus est. *The father is angry even with his son.*

67.13 Populum sacerdōs etiam docet. *The priest teaches the people as well.*

67.31 Etiam in castrīs hostēs timent. *The enemies are afraid even in their camp.*

67.15 Dē bellō poēta etiam cantat. *The poet sings about war as well.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

67.1 Etiam puerī litterās discere possunt.

67.2 Linguam Graecam servus etiam intellegit.

67.3 Multōs librōs magister etiam hodiē legit.

67.4 In agrīs agricola etiam labōrat.

67.5 Noctū etiam mīles vigilat.

67.6 Servō dominus etiam pecūniam dat.

67.7 Etiam sapientēs errāre possunt.

67.8 Deōs Graecōs Rōmānī etiam colunt.

67.9 Difficilia etiam discipulī student.

67.10 Fortiter etiam senex pugnat.

67.11 Nocte etiam legiō iter facit.

67.12 Fīliō pater etiam īrātus est.

67.13 Populum sacerdōs etiam docet.

67.31 Etiam in castrīs hostēs timent.

67.15 Dē bellō poēta etiam cantat.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Etiam" is an adverb that can mean either "also" or "even". Its usage requires attention to several key points:

1. Position:
    - Can appear before or after the word it modifies
    - Often placed directly before the emphasized word
    - Can appear at the start of a clause for emphasis
2. Functions:
    - Additive ("also", "too"): adds new information
    - Intensive ("even"): emphasizes surprising or extreme cases
    - Temporal ("still", "yet"): indicates continuation
3. Common Combinations:
    - etiam nunc: even now
    - etiam tum: even then
    - etiam atque etiam: again and again
4. Word Order Examples:
    - Before noun: "etiam puer" (even the boy)
    - After verb: "venit etiam" (he also came)
    - Between modifier and noun: "māgnā etiam virtūte" (with great virtue also)

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "etiam" requires cultural context:

1. Classical Usage:
    - Essential in philosophical arguments
    - Common in political speeches
    - Used in religious formulas
    - Important in legal language
2. Social Implications:
    - Could show inclusion or exclusion
    - Used in polite conversation
    - Important in formal rhetoric
    - Part of everyday speech
3. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "even"

    - Used in scientific terms
    - Found in legal phrases
    - Part of church Latin
4. Historical Development:
    - From Proto-Indo-European
    - Related to other emphasizing particles
    - Changed meaning over time
    - Influenced Romance languages

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Amicitia" (23.87):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Quod *which* **etiam** *even* **tum** *then* **Scipiō** *Scipio* **vīvēns** *living* **dīcere** *to say* **solēbat** *was accustomed,* **clārius** *more clearly* **iam** *now* **appāret** *appears,* **mortuum** *dead* **quod** *because* **sit** *he may be.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Quod etiam tum Scipiō vīvēns dīcere solēbat, clārius iam appāret, mortuum quod sit."

What Scipio used to say even while living appears now more clearly, because he is dead.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "etiam" here to emphasize the temporal contrast between Scipio's living words and their posthumous significance. The word placement emphasizes the continuity of truth across time.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "etiam" modifies "tum" (even then)
- Complex sentence with main and subordinate clauses
- Use of subjunctive in causal clause
- Typical Ciceronian periodic structure

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

67.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **rogat** *asks* **num** *whether* **etiam** *also* **dē** *about* **animō** *soul* **dubitāre** *to doubt* **possit** *he can*

67.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **sē** *himself* **etiam** *even* **dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **multum** *much* **cogitāre** *to think*

67.18 **Nōn** *not* **sōlum** *only* **corpus** *body* **sed** *but* **etiam** *also* **animus** *mind* **cūrandus** *to be cared for* **est** *is* **magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says*

67.19 **Dē** *about* **rēbus** *things* **omnibus** *all* **etiam** *even* **sapientēs** *wise men* **dubitant** *doubt* **discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies*

67.20 **Magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says* **etiam** *even* **in** *in* **dubitātiōne** *doubt* **vēritātem** *truth* **quaerendam** *to be sought* **esse** *to be*

67.21 **Etiam** *even* **dī** *gods* **immortālēs** *immortal* **hominum** *of men* **causā** *for sake* **mundō** *world* **praesident** *preside over*

67.22 **Discipulus** *pupil* **quaerit** *asks* **num** *whether* **etiam** *also* **post** *after* **mortem** *death* **vīta** *life* **sit** *there may be*

67.23 **Corpus** *body* **perīre** *to perish* **potest** *is able* **sed** *but* **animus** *soul* **etiam** *even* **post** *after* **mortem** *death* **vīvit** *lives*

67.24 **Philosophī** *philosophers* **etiam** *even* **dē** *about* **rēbus** *things* **obscūrīs** *obscure* **disputant** *discuss*

67.25 **Nōn** *not* **modo** *only* **scientia** *knowledge* **sed** *but* **etiam** *also* **virtūs** *virtue* **quaerenda** *to be sought* **est** *is*

67.26 **Magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says* **etiam** *even* **in** *in* **errōre** *error* **vēritātem** *truth* **invenīrī** *to be found* **posse** *to be able*

67.27 **Disciplīna** *teaching* **philosophōrum** *of philosophers* **etiam** *also* **ad** *to* **vītam** *life* **pertinet** *pertains*

67.28 **Discipulus** *pupil* **intellegit** *understands* **etiam** *even* **difficilia** *difficult things* **tempore** *with time* **facilius** *more easily* **fierī** *to become*

67.29 **Magister** *teacher* **gaudet** *rejoices* **quod** *because* **discipulus** *pupil* **etiam** *even* **dē** *about* **altīs** *deep* **rēbus** *matters* **cogitat** *thinks*

67.30 **Sapientiam** *wisdom* **etiam** *even* **in** *in* **senectūte** *old age* **quaerere** *to seek* **possumus** *we are able*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

67.16 Magister discipulum rogat num etiam dē animō dubitāre possit. *The teacher asks the pupil whether he can also doubt about the soul.*

67.17 Discipulus respondet sē etiam dē vītā multum cogitāre. *The pupil replies that he also thinks much about life.*

67.18 Nōn sōlum corpus sed etiam animus cūrandus est, magister dīcit. *Not only the body but also the mind must be cared for, says the teacher.*

67.19 Dē rēbus omnibus etiam sapientēs dubitant, discipulus respondet. *Even the wise doubt about all things, the pupil replies.*

67.20 Magister dīcit etiam in dubitātiōne vēritātem quaerendam esse. *The teacher says that truth must be sought even in doubt.*

67.21 Etiam dī immortālēs hominum causā mundō praesident. *Even the immortal gods preside over the world for the sake of humans.*

67.22 Discipulus quaerit num etiam post mortem vīta sit. *The pupil asks whether there is also life after death.*

67.23 Corpus perīre potest sed animus etiam post mortem vīvit. *The body can perish but the soul lives even after death.*

67.24 Philosophī etiam dē rēbus obscūrīs disputant. *Philosophers discuss even obscure matters.*

67.25 Nōn modo scientia sed etiam virtūs quaerenda est. *Not only knowledge but also virtue must be sought.*

67.26 Magister dīcit etiam in errōre vēritātem invenīrī posse. *The teacher says that truth can be found even in error.*

67.27 Disciplīna philosophōrum etiam ad vītam pertinet. *The teaching of philosophers pertains also to life.*

67.28 Discipulus intellegit etiam difficilia tempore facilius fierī. *The pupil understands that even difficult things become easier with time.*

67.29 Magister gaudet quod discipulus etiam dē altīs rēbus cogitat. *The teacher rejoices because the pupil thinks even about deep matters.*

67.30 Sapientiam etiam in senectūte quaerere possumus. *We can seek wisdom even in old age.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

67.16 Magister discipulum rogat num etiam dē animō dubitāre possit.

67.17 Discipulus respondet sē etiam dē vītā multum cogitāre.

67.18 Nōn sōlum corpus sed etiam animus cūrandus est, magister dīcit.

67.19 Dē rēbus omnibus etiam sapientēs dubitant, discipulus respondet.

67.20 Magister dīcit etiam in dubitātiōne vēritātem quaerendam esse.

67.21 Etiam dī immortālēs hominum causā mundō praesident.

67.22 Discipulus quaerit num etiam post mortem vīta sit.

67.23 Corpus perīre potest sed animus etiam post mortem vīvit.

67.24 Philosophī etiam dē rēbus obscūrīs disputant.

67.25 Nōn modo scientia sed etiam virtūs quaerenda est.

67.26 Magister dīcit etiam in errōre vēritātem invenīrī posse.

67.27 Disciplīna philosophōrum etiam ad vītam pertinet.

67.28 Discipulus intellegit etiam difficilia tempore facilius fierī.

67.29 Magister gaudet quod discipulus etiam dē altīs rēbus cogitat.

67.30 Sapientiam etiam in senectūte quaerere possumus.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

In this philosophical dialogue, "etiam" appears in several important constructions that demonstrate its versatility:

1. In Indirect Questions:
    - "num etiam dē animō dubitāre possit" (whether he can also doubt about the soul)
    - Shows how etiam works with interrogative particles
2. With Correlative Expressions:
    - "nōn sōlum... sed etiam..." (not only... but also...)
    - "nōn modo... sed etiam..." (not only... but also...) These paired expressions are common in philosophical discourse for building arguments.
3. With Temporal Expressions:
    - "etiam post mortem" (even after death)
    - Shows how etiam can modify prepositional phrases
4. In Indirect Statement:
    - "dīcit etiam in dubitātiōne vēritātem quaerendam esse"
    - Shows how etiam works in more complex sentence structures
5. Special Philosophical Uses: a) For Logical Extension:
    - Building from known to unknown
    - Adding new premises to arguments

   b) For Emphasis:
    - Highlighting surprising or paradoxical points
    - Strengthening philosophical claims
6. Word Order Patterns:
    - Before phrase: "etiam dē rēbus obscūrīs"
    - Between words: "corpus perīre potest sed animus etiam post mortem vīvit"
    - After main verb: "disputant etiam"
7. With Gerundives:
    - "quaerenda est" construction shows how etiam works with verbal adjectives
    - Important for expressing philosophical obligations and necessities

These patterns show how "etiam" functions in philosophical discourse to:

- Build arguments
- Make comparisons
- Extend logical sequences
- Emphasize key points
- Connect related ideas

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 68 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 68: bonus -a -um (good)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

68.1 **Pater** *father* **meus** *my* **bonus** *good* **vir** *man* **est** *is*

68.2 **Servī** *slaves* **bonī** *good* **rēgem** *king* **amant** *love*

68.3 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulīs** *to students* **bonās** *good* **fābulās** *stories* **nārrat** *tells*

68.4 **Hoc** *this* **bonum** *good* **cōnsilium** *plan* **nōn** *not* **est** *is*

68.5 **Agricola** *farmer* **bonōs** *good* **equōs** *horses* **habet** *has*

68.6 **Bonae** *good* **lēgēs** *laws* **cīvitātem** *state* **servant** *preserve*

68.7 **Mīles** *soldier* **bonī** *good* **ducis** *of leader* **verba** *words* **audit** *hears*

68.8 **Fīlius** *son* **bonae** *good* **mātris** *of mother* **sapiens** *wise* **est** *is*

68.9 **Cōnsul** *consul* **bonō** *to good* **populō** *people* **placet** *is pleasing*

68.10 **Hostēs** *enemies* **bonā** *by good* **fortūnā** *fortune* **vincimus** *we conquer*

68.11 **Dux** *leader* **bonīs** *with good* **armīs** *weapons* **pūgnat** *fights*

68.12 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **bona** *good* **verba** *words* **dīcunt** *say*

68.13 **Bonōrum** *of good* **amīcōrum** *friends* **auxilium** *help* **petimus** *we seek*

68.31 **Deī** *gods* **bonīs** *to good* **hominibus** *men* **fāvent** *favor*

68.15 **Bonō** *with good* **animō** *spirit* **labōrāmus** *we work*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

68.1 Pater meus bonus vir est. *My father is a good man.*

68.2 Servī bonī rēgem amant. *The good slaves love the king.*

68.3 Magister discipulīs bonās fābulās nārrat. *The teacher tells good stories to the students.*

68.4 Hoc bonum cōnsilium nōn est. *This is not a good plan.*

68.5 Agricola bonōs equōs habet. *The farmer has good horses.*

68.6 Bonae lēgēs cīvitātem servant. *Good laws preserve the state.*

68.7 Mīles bonī ducis verba audit. *The soldier hears the words of the good leader.*

68.8 Fīlius bonae mātris sapiens est. *The son of a good mother is wise.*

68.9 Cōnsul bonō populō placet. *The consul is pleasing to the good people.*

68.10 Hostēs bonā fortūnā vincimus. *We conquer the enemies by good fortune.*

68.11 Dux bonīs armīs pūgnat. *The leader fights with good weapons.*

68.12 Senātōrēs bona verba dīcunt. *The senators speak good words.*

68.13 Bonōrum amīcōrum auxilium petimus. *We seek the help of good friends.*

68.31 Deī bonīs hominibus fāvent. *The gods favor good men.*

68.15 Bonō animō labōrāmus. *We work with good spirit.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

68.1 Pater meus bonus vir est.

68.2 Servī bonī rēgem amant.

68.3 Magister discipulīs bonās fābulās nārrat.

68.4 Hoc bonum cōnsilium nōn est.

68.5 Agricola bonōs equōs habet.

68.6 Bonae lēgēs cīvitātem servant.

68.7 Mīles bonī ducis verba audit.

68.8 Fīlius bonae mātris sapiens est.

68.9 Cōnsul bonō populō placet.

68.10 Hostēs bonā fortūnā vincimus.

68.11 Dux bonīs armīs pūgnat.

68.12 Senātōrēs bona verba dīcunt.

68.13 Bonōrum amīcōrum auxilium petimus.

68.31 Deī bonīs hominibus fāvent.

68.15 Bonō animō labōrāmus.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adjective "bonus -a -um" follows the standard pattern for first and second declension adjectives in Latin. Here's how English speakers can understand its forms and usage:

1. Basic Forms:
    - Masculine: bonus (nominative singular)

    - Feminine: bona (nominative singular)
    - Neuter: bonum (nominative singular)
2. Agreement Patterns:
    - Agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case
    - Examples:
        - bonus vir (masculine singular nominative)
        - bona māter (feminine singular nominative)
        - bonum cōnsilium (neuter singular nominative)
3. Common Cases:
    - Nominative: bonus, bona, bonum (subject)
    - Genitive: bonī, bonae, bonī (possession)
    - Dative: bonō, bonae, bonō (indirect object)
    - Accusative: bonum, bonam, bonum (direct object)
    - Ablative: bonō, bonā, bonō (means/instrument)
4. Usage Examples:
    - As attributive adjective: bonus vir (good man)
    - As predicate adjective: vir bonus est (the man is good)
    - In oblique cases: bonī virī (of the good man)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "bonus" requires cultural context:

1. Moral Significance:
    - Represented moral excellence
    - Connected to Roman virtues
    - Important in political rhetoric
    - Key concept in education
2. Social Implications:
    - "Bonus vir" meant more than just "good man"
    - Indicated social standing
    - Implied civic responsibility
    - Related to ancestral values
3. Literary Usage:
    - Common in moral philosophy
    - Used in political speeches
    - Found in legal documents
    - Important in poetry
4. Modern Connections:
    - Source of English "bonus"
    - Used in academic terms
    - Found in legal Latin
    - Part of common phrases

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Roscio Amerino" (50):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Bonī *good* **virī** *men* **et** *and* **sapientēs** *wise* **et** *and* **fortēs** *brave* **in** *in* **rē** *matter* **pūblicā** *public* **servandā** *to be preserved* **cūram** *care* **et** *and* **dīligentiam** *diligence* **adhibēre** *to apply* **dēbent** *ought*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Bonī virī et sapientēs et fortēs in rē pūblicā servandā cūram et dīligentiam adhibēre dēbent.

Good, wise, and brave men ought to apply care and diligence in preserving the republic.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "bonus" here to describe the ideal Roman citizen. The word placement at the start emphasizes moral character as the foundation for public service.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "bonī" is nominative plural masculine
- Coordinates three adjectives with "et"
- Uses gerundive construction
- Complex sentence structure showing obligation

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

68.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **rogat** *asks* **quid** *what* **sit** *might be* **bonum** *good*

68.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **multa** *many* **bona** *good things* **in** *in* **vītā** *life* **esse** *to be*

68.18 **Sed** *but* **magister** *teacher* **quaerit** *asks* **quid** *what* **summum** *highest* **bonum** *good* **sit** *might be*

68.19 **Discipulus** *pupil* **dīcit** *says* **virtūtem** *virtue* **bonum** *good* **maximum** *greatest* **esse** *to be*

68.20 **Sapientiam** *wisdom* **quoque** *also* **bonam** *good* **esse** *to be* **magister** *teacher* **docet** *teaches*

68.21 **Bonae** *good* **artēs** *skills* **hominēs** *men* **meliōrēs** *better* **faciunt** *make*

68.22 **Quī** *who* **bonus** *good* **esse** *to be* **vult** *wishes* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **quaerat** *should seek*

68.23 **Magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says* **bonōs** *good* **librōs** *books* **mentem** *mind* **alere** *to nourish*

68.24 **Bona** *good* **verba** *words* **ex** *from* **bonō** *good* **animō** *spirit* **veniunt** *come*

68.25 **Discipulus** *pupil* **intellegit** *understands* **bonam** *good* **vītam** *life* **sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **nōn** *not* **esse** *to be*

68.26 **Magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says* **bonōs** *good* **amīcōs** *friends* **vītam** *life* **beātam** *happy* **facere** *to make*

68.27 **Bonī** *good* **exemplī** *of example* **hominem** *man* **sequī** *to follow* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

68.28 **In** *in* **bonā** *good* **cīvitāte** *state* **bonae** *good* **lēgēs** *laws* **sunt** *are*

68.29 **Discipulus** *pupil* **nunc** *now* **scit** *knows* **quid** *what* **bonum** *good* **sit** *might be*

68.30 **Magister** *teacher* **gaudet** *rejoices* **quod** *because* **discipulus** *pupil* **bona** *good things* **intellegit** *understands*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

68.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid sit bonum. *The teacher asks the pupil what good is.*

68.17 Discipulus respondet multa bona in vītā esse. *The pupil replies that there are many good things in life.*

68.18 Sed magister quaerit quid summum bonum sit. *But the teacher asks what the highest good might be.*

68.19 Discipulus dīcit virtūtem bonum maximum esse. *The pupil says that virtue is the greatest good.*

68.20 Sapientiam quoque bonam esse magister docet. *The teacher teaches that wisdom too is good.*

68.21 Bonae artēs hominēs meliōrēs faciunt. *Good skills make men better.*

68.22 Quī bonus esse vult sapientiam quaerat. *Let him who wishes to be good seek wisdom.*

68.23 Magister dīcit bonōs librōs mentem alere. *The teacher says that good books nourish the mind.*

68.24 Bona verba ex bonō animō veniunt. *Good words come from a good spirit.*

68.25 Discipulus intellegit bonam vītam sine labōre nōn esse. The pupil understands that a good life does not exist without work.

68.26 Magister dīcit bonōs amīcōs vītam beātam facere. *The teacher says that good friends make life happy.*

68.27 Bonī exemplī hominem sequī dēbēmus. *We ought to follow a man of good example.*

68.28 In bonā cīvitāte bonae lēgēs sunt. *In a good state there are good laws.*

68.29 Discipulus nunc scit quid bonum sit. *The pupil now knows what good is.*

68.30 Magister gaudet quod discipulus bona intellegit. *The teacher rejoices because the pupil understands good things.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

68.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid sit bonum.

68.17 Discipulus respondet multa bona in vītā esse.

68.18 Sed magister quaerit quid summum bonum sit.

68.19 Discipulus dīcit virtūtem bonum maximum esse.

68.20 Sapientiam quoque bonam esse magister docet.

68.21 Bonae artēs hominēs meliōrēs faciunt.

68.22 Quī bonus esse vult sapientiam quaerat.

68.23 Magister dīcit bonōs librōs mentem alere.

68.24 Bona verba ex bonō animō veniunt.

68.25 Discipulus intellegit bonam vītam sine labōre nōn esse.

68.26 Magister dīcit bonōs amīcōs vītam beātam facere.

68.27 Bonī exemplī hominem sequī dēbēmus.

68.28 In bonā cīvitāte bonae lēgēs sunt.

68.29 Discipulus nunc scit quid bonum sit.

68.30 Magister gaudet quod discipulus bona intellegit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The philosophical dialogue demonstrates several important grammatical features of how "bonus" is used in abstract discussion:

1. Substantive Use:
    - "bonum" as abstract noun: "quid sit bonum" (what good is)
    - Plural "bona" meaning "good things"
    - Examples show both concrete and abstract uses
2. Indirect Questions:
    - With subjunctive: "quid sit bonum"
    - In philosophical inquiry: "quid summum bonum sit"
    - Shows how Romans discussed abstract concepts
3. Case Usage:
    - Nominative for definitions: "virtūtem bonum maximum esse"
    - Accusative in indirect statements: "bonōs librōs mentem alere"
    - Ablative in prepositional phrases: "ex bonō animō"
4. Agreement Patterns:
    - With different genders: "bonam vītam"
    - With different numbers: "bonae lēgēs"
    - In various syntactic roles

5. Special Philosophical Constructions:
    - Abstract discussions: "summum bonum"
    - Moral qualities: "bonī exemplī"
    - Ethical concepts: "bona intellegit"
6. Comparison Forms:
    - Positive: "bonus"
    - Comparative: "meliōrēs"
    - Shows gradation of moral qualities
7. Word Order:
    - Varied for emphasis
    - Shows flexibility in Latin syntax
    - Reflects natural philosophical discourse

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 69 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 69: agō agere ēgī āctum (drive, do, act)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

69.1 **Pastor** *shepherd* **ovēs** *sheep* **per** *through* **agrōs** *fields* **agit** *drives*

69.2 **Servī** *slaves* **equōs** *horses* **ad** *to* **aquam** *water* **ēgērunt** *drove*

69.3 **Quid** *what* **nunc** *now* **agis** *are you doing* **amīce** *friend*

69.4 **Rēx** *king* **exercitum** *army* **contrā** *against* **hostēs** *enemies* **ēgit** *led*

69.5 **Nihil** *nothing* **hodiē** *today* **ēgimus** *we did*

69.6 **Quō** *where* **rem** *matter* **agis** *are you conducting*

69.7 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **dē** *about* **pace** *peace* **agunt** *discuss*

69.8 **Grātiās** *thanks* **tibi** *to you* **agō** *I give*

69.9 **Multī** *many* **cīvēs** *citizens* **vitam** *life* **in** *in* **urbe** *city* **agunt** *spend*

69.10 **Quattuor** *four* **annōs** *years* **Rōmae** *in Rome* **ēgī** *I spent*

69.11 **Dux** *leader* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **in** *into* **hostēs** *enemies* **ēgit** *drove*

69.12 **Quid** *what* **agāmus** *should we do* **nunc** *now* **amīcī** *friends*

69.13 **Nautae** *sailors* **nāvem** *ship* **per** *through* **undās** *waves* **agunt** *drive*

69.31 **Agricola** *farmer* **pecora** *cattle* **domum** *homeward* **agēbat** *was driving*

69.15 **Fēstum** *festival* **diem** *day* **laetī** *happy* **agēbāmus** *we were spending*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

69.1 Pastor ovēs per agrōs agit. *The shepherd drives the sheep through the fields.*

69.2 Servī equōs ad aquam ēgērunt. *The slaves drove the horses to water.*

69.3 Quid nunc agis, amīce? *What are you doing now, friend?*

69.4 Exercitum contrā hostēs rēx ēgit. *The king led the army against the enemies.*

69.5 Nihil hodiē ēgimus. *We did nothing today.*

69.6 Quō rem agis? *Where are you conducting the matter?*

69.7 Dē pāce senātōrēs agunt. *The senators are discussing peace.*

69.8 Grātiās tibi agō. *I give thanks to you.*

69.9 Vitam in urbe multī cīvēs agunt. *Many citizens spend their life in the city.*

69.10 Rōmae quattuor annōs ēgī. *I spent four years in Rome.*

69.11 In hostēs dux mīlitēs ēgit. *The leader drove the soldiers against the enemies.*

69.12 Quid nunc agāmus, amīcī? *What should we do now, friends?*

69.13 Per undās nautae nāvem agunt. *The sailors drive the ship through the waves.*

69.31 Pecora domum agricola agēbat. *The farmer was driving the cattle homeward.*

69.15 Fēstum diem laetī agēbāmus. *We were spending the festival day happily.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

69.1 Pastor ovēs per agrōs agit.

69.2 Servī equōs ad aquam ēgērunt.

69.3 Quid nunc agis, amīce?

69.4 Exercitum contrā hostēs rēx ēgit.

69.5 Nihil hodiē ēgimus.

69.6 Quō rem agis?

69.7 Dē pāce senātōrēs agunt.

69.8 Grātiās tibi agō.

69.9 Vitam in urbe multī cīvēs agunt.

69.10 Rōmae quattuor annōs ēgī.

69.11 In hostēs dux mīlitēs ēgit.

69.12 Quid nunc agāmus, amīcī?

69.13 Per undās nautae nāvem agunt.

69.31 Pecora domum agricola agēbat.

69.15 Fēstum diem laetī agēbāmus.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "agō" is one of the most versatile and commonly used verbs in Latin. Here's what English speakers need to know:

1. Principal Parts:
    - Present: agō
    - Infinitive: agere
    - Perfect: ēgī
    - Supine: āctum
2. Conjugation:
    - Third conjugation (-ō, -ere pattern)
    - Present tense endings: -ō, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt
    - Perfect tense uses ēg- stem
    - Regular endings in other tenses
3. Common Meanings: a) Physical movement:
    - "drive" (animals, vehicles)
    - "lead" (people, armies)

   b) Abstract actions:
    - "do, act"
    - "conduct, carry out"
    - "spend" (time)
    - "discuss, treat"
4. Special Expressions:
    - grātiās agere = "to give thanks"
    - vitam agere = "to spend life, live"
    - quid agis? = "what are you doing?"
5. Syntax Patterns:
    - Often takes accusative direct object
    - Can use directional prepositions (ad, in + acc.)
    - Uses ablative of place/time for context

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "agō" requires cultural context:

1. Agricultural Setting:
    - Driving animals was central to Roman farming

    - Shepherds and farmers used this verb daily
    - Connected to Roman agricultural festivals
2. Military Usage:
    - Common in military commands
    - Used for troop movements
    - Part of tactical vocabulary
3. Legal Language:
    - Used in formal proceedings
    - Part of legal formulas
    - Important in political discourse
4. Social Implications:
    - Polite greetings (quid agis?)
    - Formal thanks (grātiās agere)
    - Status indicators in usage

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.12):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Helvētiī *the Helvetii* **impedīmentīs** *baggage* **in** *into* **ūnum** *one* **locum** *place* **collātīs** *having been gathered* **ad** *to* **Allobrogēs** *the Allobroges* **sēsē** *themselves* **recipiunt** *withdraw* **atque** *and* **iter** *journey* **ab** *from* **Rhodanō** *the Rhone* **agere** *to drive/conduct* **coeperunt** *they began*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Helvētiī impedīmentīs in ūnum locum collātīs ad Allobrogēs sēsē recipiunt atque iter ab Rhodanō agere coeperunt.

The Helvetii, having gathered their baggage into one place, withdrew to the territory of the Allobroges and began to make their way from the Rhone.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "agere" here in its sense of "conducting" or "carrying out" a journey. The verb works with "iter" to form a common phrase meaning "to make one's way" or "to march."

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "agere" is complementary infinitive with "coeperunt"
- Ablative absolute in "impedīmentīs collātīs"
- Accusative of motion toward with "ad"
- Reflexive "sēsē" emphasizes subject's action

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

69.16 **Imperātor** *commander* **cōpiās** *forces* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **ēgit** *led*

69.17 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **rēs** *affairs* **bellī** *of war* **fortiter** *bravely* **agēbant** *were conducting*

69.18 **Dux** *leader* **rem** *matter* **cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **dē** *about* **pāce** *peace* **agēbat** *was discussing*

69.19 **Cohortēs** *cohorts* **per** *through* **silvam** *forest* **cautē** *carefully* **ēgimus** *we led*

69.20 **Hostēs** *enemies* **subitō** *suddenly* **equitēs** *cavalry* **in** *against* **nostrōs** *our men* **ēgērunt** *drove*

69.21 **Quō** *where* **castra** *camp* **agāmus** *should we move* **rogat** *asks* **imperātor** *commander*

69.22 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **captīvōs** *captives* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **agunt** *drive*

69.23 **Exercitūs** *army* **per** *through* **angustum** *narrow* **iter** *path* **agebātur** *was being led*

69.24 **Imperātor** *commander* **cōnsilium** *plan* **dē** *about* **proeliō** *battle* **cum** *with* **ducibus** *leaders* **ēgit** *discussed*

69.25 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **hostēs** *enemies* **in** *into* **flūmen** *river* **ēgērunt** *drove*

69.26 **Dux** *leader* **rem** *affair* **celeriter** *swiftly* **agere** *to conduct* **coepit** *began*

69.27 **Quōmodo** *how* **bellum** *war* **agāmus** *should we conduct* **dēlīberāmus** *we deliberate*

69.28 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **praedās** *plunder* **ex** *from* **hostium** *of enemies* **agrīs** *fields* **ēgērunt** *drove*

69.29 **Imperātor** *commander* **exercitum** *army* **contrā** *against* **montēs** *mountains* **ēgit** *led*

69.30 **Victōriam** *victory* **māgnam** *great* **exercitus** *army* **noster** *our* **ēgit** *achieved*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

69.16 Imperātor cōpiās ad castra ēgit. *The commander led the forces to camp.*

69.17 Rēs bellī fortiter mīlitēs agēbant. *The soldiers were conducting the affairs of war bravely.*

69.18 Dux cum hostibus dē pāce rem agēbat. *The leader was discussing the matter of peace with the enemies.*

69.19 Cohortēs per silvam cautē ēgimus. *We led the cohorts carefully through the forest.*

69.20 In nostrōs hostēs subitō equitēs ēgērunt. *The enemies suddenly drove their cavalry against our men.*

69.21 Quō castra agāmus rogat imperātor. *The commander asks where we should move camp.*

69.22 Ad urbem mīlitēs captīvōs agunt. *The soldiers drive the captives to the city.*

69.23 Per angustum iter exercitūs agebātur. *The army was being led through a narrow path.*

69.24 Cōnsilium dē proeliō imperātor cum ducibus ēgit. *The commander discussed the battle plan with the leaders.*

69.25 In flūmen equitēs hostēs ēgērunt. *The cavalry drove the enemies into the river.*

69.26 Rem celeriter agere dux coepit. *The leader began to conduct the affair swiftly.*

69.27 Dēlīberāmus quōmodo bellum agāmus. *We deliberate how we should conduct the war.*

69.28 Ex hostium agrīs mīlitēs praedās ēgērunt. *The soldiers drove the plunder from the enemies' fields.*

69.29 Contrā montēs imperātor exercitum ēgit. *The commander led the army against the mountains.*

69.30 Victōriam māgnam exercitus noster ēgit. Our army achieved a great victory.

Part C (Latin Text Only)

69.16 Imperātor cōpiās ad castra ēgit.

69.17 Rēs bellī fortiter mīlitēs agēbant.

69.18 Dux cum hostibus dē pāce rem agēbat.

69.19 Cohortēs per silvam cautē ēgimus.

69.20 In nostrōs hostēs subitō equitēs ēgērunt.

69.21 Quō castra agāmus rogat imperātor.

69.22 Ad urbem mīlitēs captīvōs agunt.

69.23 Per angustum iter exercitūs agebātur.

69.24 Cōnsilium dē proeliō imperātor cum ducibus ēgit.

69.25 In flūmen equitēs hostēs ēgērunt.

69.26 Rem celeriter agere dux coepit.

69.27 Dēlīberāmus quōmodo bellum agāmus.

69.28 Ex hostium agrīs mīlitēs praedās ēgērunt.

69.29 Contrā montēs imperātor exercitum ēgit.

69.30 Victōriam māgnam exercitus noster ēgit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

The verb "agō" has special significance in military contexts. Here's a detailed analysis of its usage:

1. Military Command Forms:
    - Imperative: age! (singular), agite! (plural)
    - Subjunctive for commands: agāmus (let us...), agant (let them...)
    - Common in tactical orders
2. Military-Specific Meanings: a) Movement of Troops:
    - agere exercitum (to lead an army)
    - agere cohortēs (to move cohorts)
    - agere captīvōs (to drive prisoners)

b) Military Operations:
- agere bellum (to conduct war)
- agere rem (to conduct an operation)
- agere cōnsilium (to discuss strategy)

3. Common Constructions in Military Context:
   - With directional prepositions:
     - ad + acc. (toward)
     - in + acc. (against)
     - per + acc. (through)
   - With ablative of means or accompaniment:
     - cum + abl. (with)
     - sine + abl. (without)
4. Passive Usage:
   - Often used for troop movements
   - Impersonal constructions
   - Expressing military necessity
5. Special Military Phrases:
   - castra agere (to move camp)
   - praedās agere (to drive booty)
   - cōnsilium agere (to hold council)

Genre Section: Legal and Political Proceedings

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

69.31 **Cōnsul** *consul* **rem** *matter* **pūblicam** *public* **sapienter** *wisely* **agit** *conducts*

69.32 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **causam** *case* **in** *in* **cūriā** *senate house* **agunt** *argue*

69.33 **Iūdex** *judge* **lēgēs** *laws* **rēctē** *correctly* **agere** *to conduct* **dēbet** *ought*

69.34 **Dē** *about* **cīvium** *of citizens* **iūribus** *rights* **senātus** *senate* **hodiē** *today* **ēgit** *discussed*

69.35 **Causa** *case* **apud** *before* **iūdicem** *judge* **agebātur** *was being conducted*

69.36 **Tribūnus** *tribune* **plēbis** *of people* **lēgem** *law* **nōbīscum** *with us* **agit** *discusses*

69.37 **Praetor** *praetor* **iūdicium** *trial* **dē** *about* **fūrtō** *theft* **ēgit** *conducted*

69.38 **Populus** *people* **grātiās** *thanks* **senātuī** *to senate* **magnās** *great* **agunt** *give*

69.39 **Lēgātī** *ambassadors* **dē** *about* **foedere** *treaty* **cum** *with* **rēge** *king* **ēgērunt** *negotiated*

69.40 **Dē** *about* **beneficiīs** *benefits* **cīvium** *of citizens* **cōnsulēs** *consuls* **agere** *to discuss* **solent** *are accustomed*

69.41 **Reus** *defendant* **causam** *case* **suam** *his own* **ipse** *himself* **agēbat** *was pleading*

69.42 **Dē** *about* **novīs** *new* **vectīgālibus** *taxes* **senātus** *senate* **agebat** *was discussing*

69.43 **Pater** *father* **tuus** *your* **rem** *matter* **pūblicam** *public* **bene** *well* **ēgit** *conducted*

69.44 **Cōnsulēs** *consuls* **cōnsilium** *council* **cum** *with* **patribus** *senators* **agunt** *hold*

69.45 **Lēx** *law* **nova** *new* **in** *in* **forō** *forum* **agebātur** *was being debated*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

69.31 Cōnsul rem pūblicam sapienter agit. *The consul conducts public affairs wisely.*

69.32 Causam in cūriā senātōrēs agunt. *The senators argue the case in the senate house.*

69.33 Iūdex lēgēs rēctē agere dēbet. *The judge ought to conduct the laws correctly.*

69.34 Dē cīvium iūribus senātus hodiē ēgit. *The senate discussed citizens' rights today.*

69.35 Apud iūdicem causa agebātur. *The case was being conducted before the judge.*

69.36 Tribūnus plēbis lēgem nōbīscum agit. *The tribune of the plebs discusses the law with us.*

69.37 Iūdicium dē fūrtō praetor ēgit. *The praetor conducted a trial about theft.*

69.38 Grātiās senātuī magnās populus agunt. *The people give great thanks to the senate.*

69.39 Dē foedere lēgātī cum rēge ēgērunt. *The ambassadors negotiated about a treaty with the king.*

69.40 Dē beneficiīs cīvium cōnsulēs agere solent. *The consuls are accustomed to discuss the benefits of citizens.*

69.41 Causam suam reus ipse agēbat. *The defendant himself was pleading his own case.*

69.42 Dē novīs vectīgālibus senātus agebat. *The senate was discussing new taxes.*

69.43 Rem pūblicam pater tuus bene ēgit. *Your father conducted public affairs well.*

69.44 Cōnsilium cum patribus cōnsulēs agunt. *The consuls hold council with the senators.*

69.45 In forō lēx nova agebātur. *A new law was being debated in the forum.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

69.31 Cōnsul rem pūblicam sapienter agit.

69.32 Causam in cūriā senātōrēs agunt.

69.33 Iūdex lēgēs rēctē agere dēbet.

69.34 Dē cīvium iūribus senātus hodiē ēgit.

69.35 Apud iūdicem causa agebātur.

69.36 Tribūnus plēbis lēgem nōbīscum agit.

69.37 Iūdicium dē fūrtō praetor ēgit.

69.38 Grātiās senātuī magnās populus agunt.

69.39 Dē foedere lēgātī cum rēge ēgērunt.

69.40 Dē beneficiīs cīvium cōnsulēs agere solent.

69.41 Causam suam reus ipse agēbat.

69.42 Dē novīs vectīgālibus senātus agebat.

69.43 Rem pūblicam pater tuus bene ēgit.

69.44 Cōnsilium cum patribus cōnsulēs agunt.

69.45 In forō lēx nova agebātur.

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Legal/Political Context)

The verb "agō" has specialized meanings and constructions in legal and political contexts:

1. Legal Technical Terms: a) Causam agere:
    - "to plead a case"
    - Often with reflexive: causam suam agere
    - Can take indirect objects in dative

   b) Iūdicium agere:
    - "to conduct a trial"
    - Usually with dē + ablative for charges
    - Often in passive voice
2. Political Phrases: a) Rem pūblicam agere:
    - "to conduct public affairs"
    - Often modified by adverbs
    - Can take instrumental ablative

   b) Cōnsilium agere:
    - "to hold council"
    - Usually with cum + ablative
    - Sometimes in passive
3. Common Constructions: a) With Prepositions:
    - dē + ablative (about, concerning)
    - in + ablative (place where)
    - apud + accusative (before someone)

   b) With Adverbs:
    - bene/male agere
    - rēctē/sapienter agere
    - pūblicē/prīvātim agere
4. Special Features:
    - Heavy use of passive voice
    - Technical legal vocabulary
    - Formal political phrases
    - Abstract meanings predominate
5. Common Patterns: a) Discussion Formula:
    - dē + ablative + cum + ablative + agere
    - Example: dē pāce cum hostibus agere

   b) Legal Process:

- accusative of charge + genitive of person + agere
- Example: fūrtī aliquem agere

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 70 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 70: terra -ae f. (land)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

70.1 **Nostra** *our* **terra** *land* **magna** *great* **et** *and* **pulchra** *beautiful* **est** *is*

70.2 **Agricolae** *farmers* **terram** *land* **arant** *plow*

70.3 **Ex** *from* **terrā** *land* **multae** *many* **plantae** *plants* **crēscunt** *grow*

70.4 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **in** *on* **terrā** *land* **pugnant** *fight*

70.5 **Haec** *this* **terra** *land* **aquam** *water* **nōn** *not* **habet** *has*

70.6 **Populus** *people* **terram** *land* **novam** *new* **petit** *seek*

70.7 **Dux** *leader* **multam** *much* **terram** *land* **occupāvit** *seized*

70.8 **Ad** *to* **meam** *my* **terram** *land* **veniunt** *they come*

70.9 **In** *in* **nostrā** *our* **terrā** *land* **pāx** *peace* **est** *is*

70.10 **Omnēs** *all* **terrae** *lands* **sub** *under* **caelō** *sky* **sunt** *are*

70.11 **Propter** *because of* **terram** *land* **pugnāvērunt** *they fought*

70.12 **Dea** *goddess* **terrae** *of land* **nōs** *us* **servat** *protects*

70.13 **Sine** *without* **terrā** *land* **vīvere** *to live* **nōn** *not* **possumus** *we are able*

70.31 **Hostēs** *enemies* **nostram** *our* **terram** *land* **vastant** *lay waste to*

70.15 **Per** *through* **omnēs** *all* **terrās** *lands* **iter** *journey* **fēcimus** *we made*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

70.1 Nostra terra magna et pulchra est. *Our land is great and beautiful.*

70.2 Agricolae terram arant. *The farmers plow the land.*

70.3 Ex terrā multae plantae crēscunt. *Many plants grow from the land.*

70.4 In terrā mīlitēs pugnant. *The soldiers fight on the land.*

70.5 Haec terra aquam nōn habet. *This land has no water.*

70.6 Terram novam populus petit. *The people seek a new land.*

70.7 Multam terram dux occupāvit. *The leader seized much land.*

70.8 Ad meam terram veniunt. *They come to my land.*

70.9 Pāx in nostrā terrā est. *There is peace in our land.*

70.10 Sub caelō omnēs terrae sunt. *All lands are under the sky.*

70.11 Propter terram pugnāvērunt. *They fought because of the land.*

70.12 Terrae dea nōs servat. *The goddess of the land protects us.*

70.13 Sine terrā vīvere nōn possumus. *We cannot live without land.*

70.31 Nostram terram hostēs vastant. *The enemies lay waste to our land.*

70.15 Per omnēs terrās iter fēcimus. *We made a journey through all lands.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

70.1 Nostra terra magna et pulchra est.

70.2 Agricolae terram arant.

70.3 Ex terrā multae plantae crēscunt.

70.4 In terrā mīlitēs pugnant.

70.5 Haec terra aquam nōn habet.

70.6 Terram novam populus petit.

70.7 Multam terram dux occupāvit.

70.8 Ad meam terram veniunt.

70.9 Pāx in nostrā terrā est.

70.10 Sub caelō omnēs terrae sunt.

70.11 Propter terram pugnāvērunt.

70.12 Terrae dea nōs servat.

70.13 Sine terrā vīvere nōn possumus.

70.31 Nostram terram hostēs vastant.

70.15 Per omnēs terrās iter fēcimus.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "terra" is a first declension feminine noun meaning "land." Understanding its usage requires attention to several key points:

1. Declension Pattern:
    - Nominative singular: terra
    - Genitive singular: terrae
    - Dative singular: terrae
    - Accusative singular: terram
    - Ablative singular: terrā
    - Nominative plural: terrae
    - Genitive plural: terrārum
    - Dative plural: terrīs
    - Accusative plural: terrās
    - Ablative plural: terrīs
2. Common Uses:
    - Subject (Nominative): Terra magna est.
    - Direct Object (Accusative): Terram colunt.
    - Location (Ablative with in): In terrā vīvunt.
    - Motion towards (Accusative with ad): Ad terram veniunt.
    - Possession (Genitive): Terrae dea
    - Means/Instrument (Ablative): Terrā potitur
3. Prepositions:
    - With Accusative: ad, per, propter
    - With Ablative: in, ex, sine
4. Common Phrases:
    - terra marique: by land and sea
    - in terrā: on land
    - ex terrā: from the land
    - per terrās: through the lands

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "terra" requires cultural context:

1. Religious Significance:
    - Terra Mater (Mother Earth) was a goddess
    - Connection to agriculture and fertility
    - Important in Roman founding myths
    - Sacred in boundary rituals
2. Legal and Political Meanings:
    - Terra Italia: designation of Roman homeland
    - Ager publicus: public land system
    - Land ownership central to citizenship
    - Provincial terra: conquered territories

3. Agricultural Context:
    - Different types of soil (terra nigra, terra rubra)
    - Farming techniques based on soil type
    - Agricultural calendar tied to land
    - Importance in Roman economy
4. Modern Connections:
    - Root of words like "terrestrial"
    - Scientific terms using "terra"
    - Geographic terminology
    - Environmental concepts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Vergil's "Georgics" (2.458-460):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Ō *O* **fortūnātōs** *fortunate* **nimium** *too much,* **sua** *their own* **sī** *if* **bona** *blessings* **nōrint** *they should know,* **agricolās!** *farmers!* **quibus** *for whom* **ipsa** *itself* **procul** *far* **discordibus** *from discordant* **armīs** *arms* **fundit** *pours forth* **humus** *ground* **facilem** *easy* **victum** *sustenance* **iūstissima** *most just* **tellūs** *earth.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Ō fortūnātōs nimium, sua sī bona nōrint, agricolās! quibus ipsa procul discordibus armīs fundit humus facilem victum iūstissima tellūs."

O farmers too fortunate, if they should know their own blessings! For whom the ground itself, far from discordant arms, the most just earth pours forth easy sustenance.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Vergil uses this passage to praise farming life, contrasting it with war. He employs:

- Apostrophe (direct address to farmers)
- Conditional clause (sī nōrint)
- Multiple terms for earth (humus, tellūs)
- Emphatic word placement
- Complex sentence structure

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- fortūnātōs: accusative masculine plural
- nōrint: perfect subjunctive in conditional
- quibus: dative of advantage
- procul: adverb with ablative
- fundit: present indicative showing ongoing action
- iūstissima: superlative adjective

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Geographical Description

Part A (Interleaved Text)

70.16 **Nostra** *our* **terra** *land* **trēs** *three* **partēs** *parts* **habet** *has*: **montēs** *mountains,* **agrōs** *fields,* **et** *and* **silvās** *forests*

70.17 **In** *in* **primā** *first* **parte** *part* **terrae** *of land* **altī** *high* **montēs** *mountains* **stant** *stand*

70.18 **Multae** *many* **ferāe** *wild animals* **in** *in* **montānā** *mountainous* **terrā** *land* **vīvunt** *live*

70.19 **Secundam** *second* **terrae** *of land* **partem** *part* **agricolae** *farmers* **colunt** *cultivate*

70.20 **Magna** *great* **flūmina** *rivers* **per** *through* **hanc** *this* **terram** *land* **fluunt** *flow*

70.21 **Ex** *from* **hāc** *this* **terrā** *land* **multum** *much* **frūmentum** *grain* **venīt** *comes*

70.22 **Tertia** *third* **pars** *part* **terrae** *of land* **magnās** *great* **silvās** *forests* **continet** *contains*

70.23 **In** *in* **silvestrī** *forested* **terrā** *land* **multae** *many* **avēs** *birds* **cantant** *sing*

70.24 **Parvī** *small* **rivī** *streams* **per** *through* **terram** *land* **silvārum** *of forests* **currunt** *run*

70.25 **Omnēs** *all* **gentēs** *peoples* **hanc** *this* **terram** *land* **pulchram** *beautiful* **putant** *think*

70.26 **Propter** *because of* **terrae** *of land* **fertilitātem** *fertility* **populī** *peoples* **hīc** *here* **habitant** *dwell*

70.27 **Bonī** *good* **portūs** *harbors* **in** *in* **maritimā** *coastal* **terrā** *land* **sunt** *are*

70.28 **Mercātōrēs** *merchants* **ad** *to* **nostram** *our* **terram** *land* **multās** *many* **rēs** *things* **portant** *carry*

70.29 **Per** *throughout* **omnem** *all* **terram** *land* **viae** *roads* **bonae** *good* **sunt** *are*

70.30 **Antīquī** *ancient* **poētae** *poets* **dē** *about* **hāc** *this* **terrā** *land* **multa** *many things* **scrīpsērunt** *wrote*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

70.16 Nostra terra trēs partēs habet: montēs, agrōs, et silvās. *Our land has three parts: mountains, fields, and forests.*

70.17 In primā parte terrae altī montēs stant. *In the first part of the land stand high mountains.*

70.18 Multae ferāe in montānā terrā vīvunt. *Many wild animals live in the mountainous land.*

70.19 Secundam terrae partem agricolae colunt. *Farmers cultivate the second part of the land.*

70.20 Magna flūmina per hanc terram fluunt. *Great rivers flow through this land.*

70.21 Ex hāc terrā multum frūmentum venīt. *Much grain comes from this land.*

70.22 Tertia pars terrae magnās silvās continet. *The third part of the land contains great forests.*

70.23 In silvestrī terrā multae avēs cantant. *Many birds sing in the forested land.*

70.24 Parvī rivī per terram silvārum currunt. *Small streams run through the land of forests.*

70.25 Omnēs gentēs hanc terram pulchram putant. *All peoples think this land beautiful.*

70.26 Propter terrae fertilitātem populī hīc habitant. Because of the land's fertility, peoples dwell here.

70.27 Bonī portūs in maritimā terrā sunt. *Good harbors are in the coastal land.*

70.28 Mercātōrēs ad nostram terram multās rēs portant. *Merchants carry many things to our land.*

70.29 Per omnem terram viae bonae sunt. *Throughout all the land there are good roads.*

70.30 Antīquī poētae dē hāc terrā multa scrīpsērunt. *Ancient poets wrote many things about this land.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

70.16 Nostra terra trēs partēs habet: montēs, agrōs, et silvās.

70.17 In primā parte terrae altī montēs stant.

70.18 Multae ferāe in montānā terrā vīvunt.

70.19 Secundam terrae partem agricolae colunt.

70.20 Magna flūmina per hanc terram fluunt.

70.21 Ex hāc terrā multum frūmentum venīt.

70.22 Tertia pars terrae magnās silvās continet.

70.23 In silvestrī terrā multae avēs cantant.

70.24 Parvī rivī per terram silvārum currunt.

70.25 Omnēs gentēs hanc terram pulchram putant.

70.26 Propter terrae fertilitātem populī hīc habitant.

70.27 Bonī portūs in maritimā terrā sunt.

70.28 Mercātōrēs ad nostram terram multās rēs portant.

70.29 Per omnem terram viae bonae sunt.

70.30 Antīquī poētae dē hāc terrā multa scrīpsērunt.

Part D (Grammar Analysis)

In this geographical description, "terra" appears in various grammatical constructions that demonstrate its flexibility in Latin prose:

1. Case Usage Examples:
    - Nominative as subject: "Nostra terra trēs partēs habet"
    - Genitive of possession: "primā parte terrae"

- Ablative of location: "in montānā terrā"
- Accusative as object: "hanc terram"
- Ablative with prepositions: "dē hāc terrā"

2. Adjectival Modifications:
   - Possessive: "nostra terra"
   - Descriptive: "montāna terra"
   - Demonstrative: "haec terra"
   - Geographic: "maritima terra"
   - Quality: "pulchra terra"
3. Prepositional Phrases:
   - in + ablative: "in terrā" (location)
   - per + accusative: "per terram" (movement through)
   - ad + accusative: "ad terram" (motion toward)
   - ex + ablative: "ex terrā" (origin)
   - dē + ablative: "dē terrā" (about)
4. Stylistic Features:
   - Varied word order for emphasis
   - Descriptive adjectives in different positions
   - Complex sentence structures
   - Geographic terminology
   - Technical vocabulary
5. Special Constructions:
   - Partitive expressions: "pars terrae"
   - Description of features: "terra habet"
   - Location phrases: "in terrā sunt"
   - Attribution: "terram putant"
   - Quality descriptions: "terra pulchra"

These examples show how geographical descriptions in Latin utilize various grammatical structures to create detailed and accurate portrayals of landscapes and regions.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 71 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 71: pater patris m. (father, ancestor)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

71.1 **Pater** *father* **meus** *my* **agricola** *farmer* **est** *is*

71.2 **Fīlius** *son* **patrem** *father* **amat** *loves* **magnō** *with great* **amōre** *love*

71.3 **Māne** *in morning* **pater** *father* **ad** *to* **agrōs** *fields* **ambulat** *walks*

71.4 **Bonī** *good* **patris** *of father* **cōnsilium** *advice* **semper** *always* **audīmus** *we hear*

71.5 **Grātiās** *thanks* **patrī** *to father* **meō** *my* **agere** *to give* **dēbeō** *I ought*

71.6 **Multī** *many* **hominēs** *men* **patrēs** *fathers* **amant** *love*

71.7 **Dux** *leader* **patrum** *of fathers* **verba** *words* **laudat** *praises*

71.8 **Fīliae** *daughters* **patribus** *to fathers* **dōna** *gifts* **dant** *give*

71.9 **Ā** *by* **patre** *father* **puella** *girl* **docētur** *is taught*

71.10 **Servus** *slave* **patrem** *father* **domī** *at home* **videt** *sees*

71.11 **Patrēs** *fathers* **urbem** *city* **antīquam** *ancient* **dēfendunt** *defend*

71.12 **Agricola** *farmer* **cum** *with* **patre** *father* **labōrat** *works*

71.13 **Diēs** *day* **patris** *of father* **mox** *soon* **veniet** *will come*

71.31 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **patribus** *to fathers* **honōrem** *honor* **tribuunt** *assign*

71.15 **Pater** *father* **senex** *old* **fīliōs** *sons* **vocat** *calls*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

71.1 Pater meus agricola est. *My father is a farmer.*

71.2 Magnō amōre fīlius patrem amat. *The son loves his father with great love.*

71.3 Ad agrōs māne pater ambulat. *Father walks to the fields in the morning.*

71.4 Bonī patris cōnsilium semper audīmus. *We always hear the good father's advice.*

71.5 Patrī meō grātiās agere dēbeō. *I ought to give thanks to my father.*

71.6 Multī hominēs patrēs suōs amant. *Many people love their fathers.*

71.7 Verba patrum dux magna cum laude laudat. *The leader praises the words of the fathers with great praise.*

71.8 Fīliae patribus dōna pulchra dant. *The daughters give beautiful gifts to their fathers.*

71.9 Puella ā patre sapiente docētur. *The girl is taught by her wise father.*

71.10 Domī servus patrem sedentem videt. *At home, the slave sees father sitting.*

71.11 Urbem antīquam patrēs magnā virtūte dēfendunt. *The fathers defend the ancient city with great courage.*

71.12 In agrīs agricola cum patre diligenter labōrat. *In the fields, the farmer works diligently with his father.*

71.13 Mox diēs patris laetus veniet. *Soon the happy day of father will come.*

71.31 Patribus sapientēs magnō cum honōre honōrem tribuunt. *The wise men assign honor to the fathers with great respect.*

71.15 Fīliōs ad sē pater senex benignē vocat. *The elderly father kindly calls his sons to himself.*

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part C (Latin Text Only)

71.1 Pater meus agricola est.

71.2 Magnō amōre fīlius patrem amat.

71.3 Ad agrōs māne pater ambulat.

71.4 Bonī patris cōnsilium semper audīmus.

71.5 Patrī meō grātiās agere dēbeō.

71.6 Multī hominēs patrēs suōs amant.

71.7 Verba patrum dux magna cum laude laudat.

71.8 Fīliae patribus dōna pulchra dant.

71.9 Puella ā patre sapiente docētur.

71.10 Domī servus patrem sedentem videt.

71.11 Urbem antīquam patrēs magnā virtūte dēfendunt.

71.12 In agrīs agricola cum patre diligenter labōrat.

71.13 Mox diēs patris laetus veniet.

71.31 Patribus sapientēs magnō cum honōre honōrem tribuunt.

71.15 Fīliōs ad sē pater senex benignē vocat.

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "pater" belongs to the third declension and shows these key features:

1. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: pater
    - Genitive: patris
    - Dative: patrī
    - Accusative: patrem
    - Ablative: patre

    Plural:
    - Nominative: patrēs
    - Genitive: patrum
    - Dative: patribus
    - Accusative: patrēs

    - Ablative: patribus
2. Special Characteristics:
    - Drops 'e' in oblique cases (pater → patris)
    - Masculine gender
    - Common in family relationship terms
    - Often used with possessive adjectives
3. Examples from the text showing various cases:
    - Nominative: "Pater meus agricola est"
    - Genitive: "Bonī patris cōnsilium"
    - Dative: "Patrī meō grātiās agere"
    - Accusative: "Fīlius patrem amat"
    - Ablative: "cum patre labōrat"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "pater" in Roman culture requires knowing:

1. Legal Role:
    - Patria potestās (father's power)
    - Legal authority over family
    - Control of family property
    - Power of life and death
2. Religious Significance:
    - Pater familiās (head of household)
    - Conducted family religious rites
    - Guardian of family traditions
    - Link to ancestor worship
3. Social Status:
    - Patrēs (senators)
    - Patrēs cōnscrīptī (formal address)
    - Paternal authority in society
    - Role model expectations
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of words like "paternal"
    - Influence on family law
    - Cultural attitudes about fatherhood
    - Religious terminology (padre)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Caelio" (4.10):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Nam *for* **quod** *because* **est** *is* **obiectum** *charged* **municipibus** *to townspeople* **esse** *to be* **adulescentem** *young man* **nōn** *not* **probātum** *approved* **suīs** *by his own* **ipsīus** *himself* **esse** *to be* **illud** *that* **prīmum** *first* **videor** *I seem* **dēbēre** *to ought* **prō** *for* **patre** *father* **dīcere** *to say.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Nam quod est obiectum municipibus esse adulescentem nōn probātum suīs, ipsīus esse illud prīmum videor dēbēre prō patre dīcere."

For as to what has been charged regarding the townspeople, that the young man was not approved by his own people, I think I ought first to speak about that on behalf of his father.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "pater" here in a defense speech, showing:

- Legal context of paternal responsibility
- Social expectations of fathers
- Relationship between father and community
- Role of father in son's reputation

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "prō patre": ablative with preposition
- Complex sentence structure
- Use of passive participles
- Indirect statement construction

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Family Letter

Part A (Interleaved Text)

71.16 **Mārcus** *Marcus* **patrī** *to father* **carissimō** *dearest* **salūtem** *greetings* **dīcit** *says*

71.17 **Spērō** *I hope* **tē** *you* **pater** *father* **optimē** *best* **valēre** *to be well*

71.18 **Epistulam** *letter* **tuam** *your* **pater** *father* **magnā** *with great* **cum** *with* **laetitiā** *joy* **lēgī** *I read*

71.19 **Dē** *about* **studiīs** *studies* **meīs** *my* **pater** *father* **nunc** *now* **scrībam** *I will write*

71.20 **Magister** *teacher* **meus** *my* **dīcit** *says* **mē** *me* **bene** *well* **labōrāre** *to work*

71.21 **Diēs** *days* **pater** *father* **in** *in* **librīs** *books* **legendīs** *in reading* **consumō** *I spend*

71.22 **Spērō** *I hope* **mē** *me* **tibi** *to you* **patrī** *father* **honōrem** *honor* **dare** *to give*

71.23 **Litterae** *letters* **tuae** *your* **pater** *father* **mē** *me* **semper** *always* **adiuvant** *help*

71.24 **Grātiās** *thanks* **tibi** *to you* **patrī** *father* **maximās** *greatest* **agō** *I give*

71.25 **Valē** *farewell* **pater** *father* **carissime** *dearest*

71.26 **Māter** *mother* **quoque** *also* **patrī** *to father* **salūtem** *greetings* **plūrimam** *most* **dīcit** *says*

71.27 **Omnēs** *all* **in** *in* **familiā** *family* **dē** *about* **patre** *father* **cōgitant** *think*

71.28 **Longa** *long* **vīta** *life* **patrī** *to father* **optimō** *best* **dētur** *may be given*

71.29 **Ad** *to* **patrem** *father* **mox** *soon* **redībō** *I will return*

71.30 **Scrīpsī** *I wrote* **patrī** *to father* **Rōmae** *at Rome* **Kalendīs** *on the Kalends* **Mārtīīs** *of March*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

71.16 Mārcus patrī carissimō salūtem dīcit. *Marcus sends greetings to his dearest father.*

71.17 Spērō tē, pater optimē, valēre. *I hope that you, best father, are well.*

71.18 Epistulam tuam, pater, magnā cum laetitiā lēgī. *I read your letter, father, with great joy.*

71.19 Dē studiīs meīs, pater, nunc scrībam. *Now, father, I will write about my studies.*

71.20 Magister meus dīcit mē bene labōrāre. *My teacher says that I work well.*

71.21 Diēs, pater, in librīs legendīs consumō. *Father, I spend my days reading books.*

71.22 Spērō mē tibi, patrī, honōrem dare. *I hope that I bring honor to you, father.*

71.23 Litterae tuae, pater, mē semper adiuvant. *Your letters, father, always help me.*

71.24 Grātiās tibi, patrī maximās agō. I give the greatest thanks to you, father.

71.25 Valē, pater carissime. *Farewell, dearest father.*

71.26 Māter quoque patrī salūtem plūrimam dīcit. *Mother also sends many greetings to father.*

71.27 Omnēs in familiā dē patre cōgitant. *Everyone in the family thinks about father.*

71.28 Longa vīta patrī optimō dētur. *May a long life be given to the best father.*

71.29 Ad patrem mox redībō. *I will soon return to father.*

71.30 Scrīpsī patrī Rōmae Kalendīs Mārtīīs. *I wrote to father at Rome on the Kalends of March.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

71.16 Mārcus patrī carissimō salūtem dīcit.

71.17 Spērō tē, pater optimē, valēre.

71.18 Epistulam tuam, pater, magnā cum laetitiā lēgī.

71.19 Dē studiīs meīs, pater, nunc scrībam.

71.20 Magister meus dīcit mē bene labōrāre.

71.21 Diēs, pater, in librīs legendīs consumō.

71.22 Spērō mē tibi, patrī, honōrem dare.

71.23 Litterae tuae, pater, mē semper adiuvant.

71.24 Grātiās tibi, patrī maximās agō.

71.25 Valē, pater carissime.

71.26 Māter quoque patrī salūtem plūrimam dīcit.

71.27 Omnēs in familiā dē patre cōgitant.

71.28 Longa vīta patrī optimō dētur.

71.29 Ad patrem mox redībō.

71.30 Scrīpsī patrī Rōmae Kalendīs Mārtiīs.

Part D (Grammar Explanation of Genre Section)

The Family Letter genre demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Letter Writing Conventions:
    - Opening formula: [Sender] + [Recipient in dative] + salūtem dīcit
    - Closing formula: Valē + vocative
    - Dating conventions: ablative of time and place
2. Cases of pater in Letters:
    - Dative of recipient: patrī (to father)
    - Vocative for direct address: pater
    - Ablative of place: patre
    - Accusative of direction: ad patrem
3. Typical Constructions:
    - Indirect statement after spērō
    - Jussive subjunctive for wishes
    - Ablative of manner with cum
    - Future indicative for promises
    - Present indicative for current situations
4. Style Features:
    - Use of vocative pater for emphasis
    - Positioning of pater for emotional effect
    - Superlative adjectives in greetings
    - Standard epistolary phrases

This genre section particularly demonstrates how Latin expresses family relationships and formal correspondence, showing both emotional closeness and proper respect through grammatical choices.

Lesson 72 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 72: neque (and not, nor)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

72.1 **Puer** *boy* **neque** *neither* **legere** *to read* **neque** *nor* **scrībere** *to write* **potest** *is able*

72.2 **Hostēs** *enemies* **castra** *camp* **nostra** *our* **neque** *not* **vīdērunt** *saw* **neque** *nor* **audīvērunt** *heard*

72.3 **Senex** *old man* **neque** *neither* **edere** *to eat* **neque** *nor* **bibere** *to drink* **vult** *wishes*

72.4 **Mīles** *soldier* **neque** *not* **gladium** *sword* **neque** *nor* **scūtum** *shield* **habet** *has*

72.5 **Agricola** *farmer* **neque** *neither* **equum** *horse* **neque** *nor* **bovem** *ox* **vendidit** *sold*

72.6 **Discipulus** *student* **neque** *neither* **vēnit** *came* **neque** *nor* **respondit** *answered*

72.7 **Māter** *mother* **neque** *neither* **fīlium** *son* **neque** *nor* **fīliam** *daughter* **videt** *sees*

72.8 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **neque** *neither* **aurum** *gold* **neque** *nor* **argentum** *silver* **quaerunt** *seek*

72.9 **Magister** *teacher* **neque** *neither* **librum** *book* **neque** *nor* **epistulam** *letter* **scrībit** *writes*

72.10 **Puella** *girl* **neque** *neither* **cantat** *sings* **neque** *nor* **saltat** *dances*

72.11 **Servus** *slave* **neque** *neither* **dormit** *sleeps* **neque** *nor* **vigilat** *stays awake*

72.12 **Nauta** *sailor* **neque** *neither* **caelum** *sky* **neque** *nor* **mare** *sea* **timet** *fears*

72.13 **Mercātor** *merchant* **neque** *neither* **emit** *bought* **neque** *nor* **vēndidit** *sold* **hodiē** *today*

72.31 **Poēta** *poet* **neque** *neither* **carmina** *poems* **neque** *nor* **fābulās** *stories* **nārrat** *tells*

72.15 **Rex** *king* **neque** *neither* **amīcōs** *friends* **neque** *nor* **hostēs** *enemies* **habet** *has*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

72.1 Puer neque legere neque scrībere potest. *The boy can neither read nor write.*

72.2 Hostēs castra nostra neque vīdērunt neque audīvērunt. *The enemies neither saw nor heard our camp.*

72.3 Senex neque edere neque bibere vult. *The old man wishes neither to eat nor to drink.*

72.4 Mīles neque gladium neque scūtum habet. *The soldier has neither sword nor shield.*

72.5 Agricola neque equum neque bovem vendidit. *The farmer sold neither horse nor ox.*

72.6 Discipulus neque vēnit neque respondit. *The student neither came nor answered.*

72.7 Māter neque fīlium neque fīliam videt. *The mother sees neither son nor daughter.*

72.8 Sapientēs neque aurum neque argentum quaerunt. *The wise men seek neither gold nor silver.*

72.9 Magister neque librum neque epistulam scrībit. *The teacher writes neither book nor letter.*

72.10 Puella neque cantat neque saltat. *The girl neither sings nor dances.*

72.11 Servus neque dormit neque vigilat. *The slave neither sleeps nor stays awake.*

72.12 Nauta neque caelum neque mare timet. *The sailor fears neither sky nor sea.*

72.13 Mercātor neque emit neque vēndidit hodiē. *The merchant neither bought nor sold today.*

72.31 Poēta neque carmina neque fābulās nārrat. *The poet tells neither poems nor stories.*

72.15 Rex neque amīcōs neque hostēs habet. *The king has neither friends nor enemies.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

72.1 Puer neque legere neque scrībere potest.

72.2 Hostēs castra nostra neque vīdērunt neque audīvērunt.

72.3 Senex neque edere neque bibere vult.

72.4 Mīles neque gladium neque scūtum habet.

72.5 Agricola neque equum neque bovem vendidit.

72.6 Discipulus neque vēnit neque respondit.

72.7 Māter neque fīlium neque fīliam videt.

72.8 Sapientēs neque aurum neque argentum quaerunt.

72.9 Magister neque librum neque epistulam scrībit.

72.10 Puella neque cantat neque saltat.

72.11 Servus neque dormit neque vigilat.

72.12 Nauta neque caelum neque mare timet.

72.13 Mercātor neque emit neque vēndidit hodiē.

72.31 Poēta neque carmina neque fābulās nārrat.

72.15 Rex neque amīcōs neque hostēs habet.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The conjunction "neque" (or "nec") has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Basic Usage:
    - Means "and not" or "nor"
    - Can be used singly or in pairs
    - When paired: "neque...neque" means "neither...nor"
    - Often connects similar grammatical elements
2. Position:
    - Usually placed immediately before the word or phrase it negates

    - In pairs, placed before each element being connected
    - Can begin a sentence for emphasis
3. Common Patterns:
    - With verbs: "neque legit neque scrībit"
    - With nouns: "neque pater neque māter"
    - With infinitives: "neque vidēre neque audīre"
    - With adjectives: "neque magnus neque parvus"
4. Special Uses:
    - Can strengthen a negative: "nōn...neque"
    - Can continue a negative idea: "nōn vēnit neque respondit"
    - Sometimes means "also not"
    - Can introduce a new sentence continuing previous negation

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "neque" requires cultural context about Roman rhetoric and writing:

1. Rhetorical Use:
    - Important in formal speeches
    - Used for emphasis in political arguments
    - Common in legal documents
    - Essential in philosophical discussions
2. Literary Style:
    - Creates balanced phrases
    - Builds dramatic tension
    - Emphasizes complete denial
    - Shows logical relationships
3. Historical Documents:
    - Found in military reports
    - Used in peace treaties
    - Common in legal texts
    - Present in religious formulas
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Still used in formal Latin
    - Found in scientific terms
    - Influences legal language
    - Shapes logical discourse

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.31):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Ariovistus *Ariovistus* **respondit** *replied:* **sē** *himself* **prius** *before* **in** *into* **Galliam** *Gaul* **vēnisse** *to have come* **quam** *than* **populum** *people* **Rōmānum.** *Roman.* **Numquam** *Never* **ante** *before* **hoc** *this* **tempus** *time* **exercitum** *army* **populī** *of people* **Rōmānī** *Roman* **provinciae** *of province* **fīnibus** *from borders* **ēgressum.** *to have gone out.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Ariovistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī provinciae fīnibus ēgressum."

Ariovistus replied that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people. Never before this time had an army of the Roman people gone out from the borders of the province.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses indirect discourse to report Ariovistus's response, showing:

- Historical claims (prior occupation)
- Legal arguments (territorial rights)
- Political rhetoric (challenging Roman authority)

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Indirect discourse with "sē"
- Comparative construction with "prius...quam"
- Perfect infinitive "vēnisse"
- Accusative subject in indirect statement
- Temporal expressions with "ante"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

72.16 **Hostēs** *enemies* **neque** *neither* **equitēs** *cavalry* **neque** *nor* **peditēs** *infantry* **ad** *to* **proelium** *battle* **mīsērunt** *sent*

72.17 **Dux** *leader* **noster** *our* **neque** *neither* **montem** *mountain* **neque** *nor* **flūmen** *river* **timet** *fears*

72.18 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **neque** *neither* **famem** *hunger* **neque** *nor* **sitim** *thirst* **queruntur** *complain about*

72.19 **Legiō** *legion* **nostra** *our* **neque** *neither* **vulnerāta** *wounded* **neque** *nor* **fessa** *tired* **est** *is*

72.20 **Castra** *camp* **neque** *neither* **aquā** *water* **neque** *nor* **cibō** *food* **carent** *lack*

72.21 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **hostium** *of enemies* **neque** *neither* **vēnērunt** *came* **neque** *nor* **vīsī** *seen* **sunt** *were*

72.22 **Pōns** *bridge* **neque** *neither* **longus** *long* **neque** *nor* **validus** *strong* **erat** *was*

72.23 **Oppidānī** *townspeople* **neque** *neither* **pugnāre** *to fight* **neque** *nor* **fugere** *to flee* **possunt** *are able*

72.24 **Imperātor** *commander* **neque** *neither* **cōnsilium** *plan* **neque** *nor* **spem** *hope* **mūtat** *changes*

72.25 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **hostium** *of enemies* **neque** *neither* **prōgredī** *to advance* **neque** *nor* **regredī** *to retreat* **audent** *dare*

72.26 **Praesidium** *garrison* **neque** *neither* **arma** *arms* **neque** *nor* **cibāria** *provisions* **habet** *has*

72.27 **Auxiliā** *reinforcements* **neque** *neither* **māne** *in morning* **neque** *nor* **vesperī** *in evening* **advēnērunt** *arrived*

72.28 **Custōdēs** *guards* **neque** *neither* **clāmōrem** *shout* **neque** *nor* **strepitum** *noise* **audīvērunt** *heard*

72.29 **Hostēs** *enemies* **mūrōs** *walls* **neque** *neither* **ascendere** *to climb* **neque** *nor* **dērumpere** *to break down* **temptant** *try*

72.30 **Victōria** *victory* **nostra** *our* **neque** *neither* **dubia** *doubtful* **neque** *nor* **difficilis** *difficult* **erat** *was*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

72.16 Hostēs neque equitēs neque peditēs ad proelium mīsērunt. *The enemies sent neither cavalry nor infantry to battle.*

72.17 Dux noster neque montem neque flūmen timet. *Our leader fears neither mountain nor river.*

72.18 Mīlitēs neque famem neque sitim queruntur. *The soldiers complain of neither hunger nor thirst.*

72.19 Legiō nostra neque vulnerāta neque fessa est. *Our legion is neither wounded nor tired.*

72.20 Castra neque aquā neque cibō carent. *The camp lacks neither water nor food.*

72.21 Explōrātōrēs hostium neque vēnērunt neque vīsī sunt. *The enemy scouts neither came nor were seen.*

72.22 Pōns neque longus neque validus erat. *The bridge was neither long nor strong.*

72.23 Oppidānī neque pugnāre neque fugere possunt. *The townspeople can neither fight nor flee.*

72.24 Imperātor neque cōnsilium neque spem mūtat. *The commander changes neither plan nor hope.*

72.25 Legiōnēs hostium neque prōgredī neque regredī audent. *The enemy legions dare neither to advance nor to retreat.*

72.26 Praesidium neque arma neque cibāria habet. *The garrison has neither arms nor provisions.*

72.27 Auxiliā neque māne neque vesperī advēnērunt. *The reinforcements arrived neither in the morning nor in the evening.*

72.28 Custōdēs neque clāmōrem neque strepitum audīvērunt. *The guards heard neither shout nor noise.*

72.29 Hostēs mūrōs neque ascendere neque dērumpere temptant. *The enemies attempt neither to climb nor to break down the walls.*

72.30 Victōria nostra neque dubia neque difficilis erat. *Our victory was neither doubtful nor difficult.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

72.16 Hostēs neque equitēs neque peditēs ad proelium mīsērunt.

72.17 Dux noster neque montem neque flūmen timet.

72.18 Mīlitēs neque famem neque sitim queruntur.

72.19 Legiō nostra neque vulnerāta neque fessa est.

72.20 Castra neque aquā neque cibō carent.

72.21 Explōrātōrēs hostium neque vēnērunt neque vīsī sunt.

72.22 Pōns neque longus neque validus erat.

72.23 Oppidānī neque pugnāre neque fugere possunt.

72.24 Imperātor neque cōnsilium neque spem mūtat.

72.25 Legiōnēs hostium neque prōgredī neque regredī audent.

72.26 Praesidium neque arma neque cibāria habet.

72.27 Auxiliā neque māne neque vesperī advēnērunt.

72.28 Custōdēs neque clāmōrem neque strepitum audīvērunt.

72.29 Hostēs mūrōs neque ascendere neque dērumpere temptant.

72.30 Victōria nostra neque dubia neque difficilis erat.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

1. Military Terminology with "neque": a) Paired Military Units:
    - "neque equitēs neque peditēs" (neither cavalry nor infantry)
    - Demonstrates unit complementarity
    - Common in battle reports

    b) Military Activities:
    - "neque pugnāre neque fugere" (neither to fight nor to flee)
    - Shows tactical options
    - Uses complementary infinitives
2. Strategic Descriptions: a) Resource Status:
    - "neque arma neque cibāria" (neither arms nor provisions)
    - Essential camp inventory items
    - Ablative with carēre

b) Tactical Situations:
- "neque prōgredī neque regredī" (neither to advance nor to retreat)
- Movement options
- Strategic choices

3. Military Report Style: a) Time References:
   - "neque māne neque vesperī" (neither in morning nor in evening)
   - Uses ablative of time when
   - Common in daily reports

   b) Status Reports:
   - "neque vulnerāta neque fessa" (neither wounded nor tired)
   - Predicate adjectives
   - Unit condition reports
4. Common Military Phrases: a) Physical Features:
   - "neque montem neque flūmen" (neither mountain nor river)
   - Accusative objects
   - Terrain description

   b) Defensive Structures:
   - "neque longus neque validus" (neither long nor strong)
   - Bridge and fortification descriptions
   - Quality assessment
5. Special Military Uses: a) Scout Reports:
   - "neque vēnērunt neque vīsī sunt" (neither came nor were seen)
   - Perfect tense variations
   - Intelligence reporting

   b) Battle Assessment:
   - "neque dubia neque difficilis" (neither doubtful nor difficult)
   - Victory descriptions
   - Common report conclusions

Lesson 73 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: domus -ūs f. (house, home)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

73.1 **Magna** *large* **domus** *house* **in** *in* **collē** *hill* **stat** *stands*

73.2 **Pater** *father* **familiam** *family* **in** *into* **novam** *new* **domum** *house* **dūcit** *leads*

73.3 **Servī** *slaves* **domūs** *of house* **hortum** *garden* **cūrant** *tend*

73.4 **Ad** *to* **domum** *house* **meam** *my* **vēnit** *comes* **amīcus** *friend*

73.5 **Domū** *from home* **māne** *in morning* **exiit** *went out* **mercātor** *merchant*

73.6 **Ante** *before* **domum** *house* **multae** *many* **flōrēs** *flowers* **crēscunt** *grow*

73.7 **Domī** *at home* **puerī** *boys* **cum** *with* **patre** *father* **manent** *remain*

73.8 **Dominī** *master's* **domum** *house* **servus** *slave* **aedificat** *builds*

73.9 **Ex** *from* **domō** *house* **clāmōrēs** *shouts* **audīvimus** *we heard*

73.10 **Domum** *homeward* **sub** *near* **noctem** *night* **properāmus** *we hurry*

73.11 **Hostēs** *enemies* **omnēs** *all* **domūs** *houses* **incendērunt** *burned*

73.12 **Domī** *at home* **senex** *old man* **librōs** *books* **legēbat** *was reading*

73.13 **Sine** *without* **domō** *house* **nēmō** *no one* **vīvere** *to live* **potest** *is able*

73.31 **Domum** *house* **pulchram** *beautiful* **aedificāre** *to build* **cupit** *desires*

73.15 **Per** *through* **domūs** *houses* **fenestram** *window* **lūx** *light* **intrat** *enters*

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

73.1 Magna domus in colle stat. *A large house stands on the hill.*

73.2 Pater familiam in novam domum dūcit. *Father leads the family into the new house.*

73.3 Servī domūs hortum cūrant. *The slaves of the house tend the garden.*

73.4 Ad domum meam amīcus vēnit. *A friend comes to my house.*

73.5 Domū māne mercātor exiit. *The merchant went out from home in the morning.*

73.6 Ante domum multae flōrēs crēscunt. *Many flowers grow before the house.*

73.7 Domī puerī cum patre manent. *The boys remain at home with their father.*

73.8 Dominī domum servus aedificat. *The slave builds the master's house.*

73.9 Ex domō clāmōrēs audīvimus. *We heard shouts from the house.*

73.10 Domum sub noctem properāmus. *We hurry home near nightfall.*

73.11 Hostēs omnēs domūs incendērunt. *The enemies burned all the houses.*

73.12 Domī senex librōs legēbat. *At home, the old man was reading books.*

73.13 Sine domō nēmō vīvere potest. *No one can live without a house.*

73.31 Domum pulchram aedificāre cupit. *He desires to build a beautiful house.*

73.15 Per domūs fenestram lūx intrat. *Light enters through the house's window.*

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part C (Latin Text Only)

73.1 Magna domus in colle stat.

73.2 Pater familiam in novam domum dūcit.

73.3 Servī domūs hortum cūrant.

73.4 Ad domum meam amīcus vēnit.

73.5 Domū māne mercātor exiit.

73.6 Ante domum multae flōrēs crēscunt.

73.7 Domī puerī cum patre manent.

73.8 Dominī domum servus aedificat.

73.9 Ex domō clāmōrēs audīvimus.

73.10 Domum sub noctem properāmus.

73.11 Hostēs omnēs domūs incendērunt.

73.12 Domī senex librōs legēbat.

73.13 Sine domō nēmō vīvere potest.

73.31 Domum pulchram aedificāre cupit.

73.15 Per domūs fenestram lūx intrat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Domus" is a fascinating word for English speakers because it follows a unique pattern of declension, mixing forms from both the 2nd and 4th declensions. Here's what you need to know:

1. Basic Forms:
    - Nominative singular: domus
    - Genitive singular: domūs (4th) or domī (2nd)
    - Dative singular: domuī or domō
    - Accusative singular: domum
    - Ablative singular: domō or domū
    - Locative singular: domī
2. Special Uses:
    - Locative domī = "at home"
    - Accusative domum = "homeward" (without preposition)
    - Ablative domō = "from home" (without preposition)
3. Important Patterns:
    - With prepositions:
        - in domō = "in the house"
        - ad domum = "to the house"
        - ex domō = "out of the house"
4. Common Phrases:
    - domī bellīque = "in peace and war"
    - domī meae = "in my house"
    - domum redīre = "to return home"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "domus" requires cultural context about Roman houses:

1. Physical Structure:
    - Built around central atrium
    - Open courtyard (impluvium)
    - Rooms arranged peripherally
    - Often two stories
2. Social Significance:
    - Center of family life
    - Location for client meetings
    - Symbol of social status
    - Religious significance (household gods)
3. Urban Context:
    - Different from villa (country house)
    - Often shared walls with neighbors
    - Street-facing shops common
    - Limited window openings
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of English "domestic"
    - Influences modern architecture
    - Model for courtyard homes
    - Cultural ideal of home life

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Pliny's Letters (2.17.1-2):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Quaeris *you ask* **an** *whether* **commodē** *comfortably* **in** *in* **Tuscīs** *Tuscan lands* **possideam** *I possess* **Visum** *seen* **est** *it is* **mihi** *to me* **satis** *enough* **amplam** *spacious* **commodamque** *and convenient* **domum** *house* **habēre** *to have* **quae** *which* **impēnsae** *expense* **custōdiaeque** *and upkeep* **nōn** *not* **magnae** *great* **sit** *would be*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Quaeris an commodē in Tuscīs possideam. Visum est mihi satis amplam commodamque domum habēre quae impēnsae custōdiaeque nōn magnae sit."

You ask whether I am comfortably settled in Tuscany. It seemed to me sufficient to have a house that is spacious and convenient enough, yet not demanding great expense and maintenance.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Pliny discusses his Tuscan villa, emphasizing practical considerations of size and maintenance. The passage shows how Romans viewed their country houses as both status symbols and practical investments.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Indirect question with "an"
- Subjunctive "sit" in relative clause
- Use of "-que" enclitic
- Position of "domum" for emphasis

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Descriptive Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

73.16 **Antīqua** *ancient* **domus** *house* **nostra** *our* **in** *on* **monte** *mountain* **stat** *stands*

73.17 **Per** *through* **multās** *many* **domūs** *houses* **portās** *doors* **ambulāmus** *we walk*

73.18 **In** *in* **domō** *house* **meā** *my* **multae** *many* **statuae** *statues* **sunt** *are*

73.19 **Pater** *father* **domūs** *of house* **pecūniam** *money* **in** *in* **tablīnō** *study* **servat** *keeps*

73.20 **Māter** *mother* **domum** *house* **novīs** *with new* **flōribus** *flowers* **ornat** *decorates*

73.21 **Domī** *at home* **avus** *grandfather* **nepōtibus** *to grandchildren* **fābulās** *stories* **narrat** *tells*

73.22 **Ad** *to* **domūs** *house* **vestibulum** *entrance* **hospitēs** *guests* **veniunt** *come*

73.23 **Ex** *from* **omnibus** *all* **domibus** *houses* **fūmus** *smoke* **ascendit** *rises*

73.24 **In** *in* **domūs** *of house* **hortō** *garden* **rosae** *roses* **pulchrae** *beautiful* **flōrent** *bloom*

73.25 **Sub** *under* **domūs** *house* **tēctō** *roof* **avēs** *birds* **nīdōs** *nests* **faciunt** *make*

73.26 **Servī** *slaves* **per** *through* **domum** *house* **celeriter** *quickly* **currunt** *run*

73.27 **Ante** *before* **domūs** *house* **iānuam** *door* **canis** *dog* **dormit** *sleeps*

73.28 **Domum** *house* **veterem** *old* **novā** *with new* **pictūrā** *painting* **ornāmus** *we decorate*

73.29 **In** *in* **domūs** *house* **culīnā** *kitchen* **servae** *female slaves* **cēnam** *dinner* **parant** *prepare*

73.30 **Post** *behind* **domum** *house* **magnum** *large* **vīrīdārium** *garden* **vidēmus** *we see*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

73.19 Pater domūs pecūniam in tablīnō servat. *The father of the house keeps money in the study.*

73.20 Māter domum novīs flōribus ornat. *Mother decorates the house with new flowers.*

73.21 Domī avus nepōtibus fābulās narrat. *At home, grandfather tells stories to his grandchildren.*

73.22 Ad domūs vestibulum hospitēs veniunt. *Guests come to the house's entrance.*

73.23 Ex omnibus domibus fūmus ascendit. *Smoke rises from all the houses.*

73.24 In domūs hortō rosae pulchrae flōrent. *Beautiful roses bloom in the house's garden.*

73.25 Sub domūs tēctō avēs nīdōs faciunt. *Birds make nests under the house's roof.*

73.26 Servī per domum celeriter currunt. *Slaves run quickly through the house.*

73.27 Ante domūs iānuam canis dormit. *A dog sleeps before the house's door.*

73.28 Domum veterem novā pictūrā ornāmus. We decorate the old house with a new painting.

73.29 In domūs culīnā servae cēnam parant. *In the house's kitchen, the female slaves prepare dinner.*

73.30 Post domum magnum vīrīdārium vidēmus. *Behind the house we see a large garden.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

73.16 Antīqua domus nostra in monte stat.

73.17 Per multās domūs portās ambulāmus.

73.18 In domō meā multae statuae sunt.

73.19 Pater domūs pecūniam in tablīnō servat.

73.20 Māter domum novīs flōribus ornat.

73.21 Domī avus nepōtibus fābulās narrat.

73.22 Ad domūs vestibulum hospitēs veniunt.

73.23 Ex omnibus domibus fūmus ascendit.

73.24 In domūs hortō rosae pulchrae flōrent.

73.25 Sub domūs tēctō avēs nīdōs faciunt.

73.26 Servī per domum celeriter currunt.

73.27 Ante domūs iānuam canis dormit.

73.28 Domum veterem novā pictūrā ornāmus.

73.29 In domūs culīnā servae cēnam parant.

73.30 Post domum magnum vīrīdārium vidēmus.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Analysis of Genre Section)

The descriptive narrative about a Roman house demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Prepositional Phrases with domus:
    - in monte (location where)
    - per domūs (movement through)
    - in domō (location within)
    - post domum (location behind)
2. Genitive Constructions:
    - domūs pecūniam (possession)
    - domūs vestibulum (belonging)
    - domūs hortō (possession)
    - domūs tēctō (possession) These show how the genitive case is used to indicate ownership or belonging.
3. Adjectival Agreement:
    - antīqua domus (feminine nominative)
    - multās domūs (feminine accusative plural)
    - veterem domum (feminine accusative singular) Shows how adjectives agree with domus in gender, number, and case.
4. Locative Uses:
    - domī (at home) - special locative form This demonstrates the special locative case usage with domus.
5. Varied Word Order:
    - Beginning: "Antīqua domus nostra in monte stat"
    - Middle: "Per multās domūs portās ambulāmus"
    - End: "Post domum magnum vīrīdārium vidēmus" Shows natural Latin word order variations for emphasis and style.
6. Case Usage:
    - Nominative: domus (subject)
    - Accusative: domum (direct object)
    - Genitive: domūs (possession)
    - Ablative: domō (location) Demonstrates the full range of case uses with domus.
7. Compound Constructions:
    - domūs vestibulum (compound noun phrase)
    - novā pictūrā (instrumental ablative) Shows how domus combines with other nouns and modifiers.

De Ianuis: A Dialogue on Doors

Part A: Interlinear Text

MARCELLUS: **Salvē** *hello,* **amīce** *friend* **Cornēlī** *Cornelius*! **Quid** *why* **ante** *before* **iānuam** *the door* **stās** *do you stand*?

CORNELIUS: **Ō** *oh* **Marcelle** *Marcellus*, **optimē** *best* **amīce** *friend*! **Contemplor** *I contemplate* **hoc** *this* **līmen** *threshold*, **nam** *for* **philosophicam** *philosophical* **quaestionem** *question* **mihi** *to me* **praebet** *it offers*.

MARCELLUS: **Quōmodo** *how* **iānua** *a door* **philosophicam** *philosophical* **quaestionem** *question* **tibi** *to you* **praebēre** *to offer* **potest** *is able*?

CORNELIUS: **Nōnne** *surely* **vidēs** *you see*? **Omnis** *every* **iānua** *door* **duās** *two* **rēs** *things* **dīvidit** *divides*: **id** *that* **quod** *which* **intrā** *within* **est** *is* **et** *and* **id** *that* **quod** *which* **extrā** *without* **est** *is*.

MARCELLUS: **Profectō** *indeed*! **Sed** *but* **quid** *what* **hoc** *this* **sibi** *to itself* **vult** *means*?

CORNELIUS: **Cōgitā** *think*! **Nōnne** *surely* **vīta** *life* **nostra** *our* **plēna** *full* **est** *is* **iānuīs** *of doors*? **Aliās** *some* **aperīmus** *we open*, **aliās** *others* **claudimus** *we close*.

MARCELLUS: **Iam** *now* **intellegō** *I understand*. **Dē** *about* **iānuīs** *doors* **metaphoricīs** *metaphorical* **loqueris** *you speak*.

Part B: Complete Translation

MARCELLUS: Hello, friend Cornelius! Why do you stand before the door?

CORNELIUS: Oh Marcellus, best friend! I contemplate this threshold, for it offers me a philosophical question.

MARCELLUS: How can a door offer you a philosophical question?

CORNELIUS: Don't you see? Every door divides two things: that which is within and that which is without.

MARCELLUS: Indeed! But what does this mean?

CORNELIUS: Think! Isn't our life full of doors? Some we open, others we close.

MARCELLUS: Now I understand. You speak of metaphorical doors.

Part C: Latin Text

MARCELLUS: Salvē, amīce Cornēlī! Quid ante iānuam stās?

CORNELIUS: Ō Marcelle, optimē amīce! Contemplor hoc līmen, nam philosophicam quaestionem mihi praebet.

MARCELLUS: Quōmodo iānua philosophicam quaestionem tibi praebēre potest?

CORNELIUS: Nōnne vidēs? Omnis iānua duās rēs dīvidit: id quod intrā est et id quod extrā est.

MARCELLUS: Profectō! Sed quid hoc sibi vult?

CORNELIUS: Cōgitā! Nōnne vīta nostra plēna est iānuīs? Aliās aperīmus, aliās claudimus.

MARCELLUS: Iam intellegō. Dē iānuīs metaphoricīs loqueris.

Part D: Analysis

This dialogue employs several classical rhetorical devices and philosophical concepts:

1. Structure:

- Uses the traditional dialogue format favored by Erasmus
- Alternates between concrete and abstract concepts
- Builds from literal to metaphorical understanding

2. Key Philosophical Elements:

- Explores the nature of boundaries and division
- Contemplates the relationship between interior and exterior
- Examines choice and consequence through the metaphor of doors

3. Rhetorical Devices:

- Socratic questioning technique
- Use of anaphora ("aliās... aliās")
- Employment of rhetorical questions ("Nōnne vidēs?")

4. Grammar Features:

- Present tense for immediacy of dialogue
- Mix of indicative and subjunctive moods
- Strategic use of demonstrative pronouns
- Vocative case for direct address

Lesson 74 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 74: at (but, but yet)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

74.1 **At** *but* **mīles** *soldier* **hostēs** *enemies* **nōn** *not* **timet** *fears*

74.2 **Puer** *boy* **domī** *at home* **mānet** *remains,* **at** *but* **pater** *father* **in** *in* **agrō** *field* **labōrat** *works*

74.3 **At** *but* **hercle** *by Hercules* **vērum** *true* **dīcis** *you speak*

74.4 **Omnēs** *all* **dormiunt** *sleep,* **at** *but* **ego** *I* **vigilō** *stay awake*

74.5 **At** *but* **nunc** *now* **melius** *better* **tempus** *time* **venit** *comes*

74.6 **Multī** *many* **rīdent** *laugh,* **at** *but* **ille** *that man* **plōrat** *weeps*

74.7 **At** *but* **quid** *what* **tū** *you* **facis** *do* **hōc** *this* **tempore** *time*

74.8 **Servus** *slave* **tacet** *is silent,* **at** *but* **dominus** *master* **clāmat** *shouts*

74.9 **At** *but* **certē** *certainly* **scīmus** *we know* **viam** *way* **brevem** *short*

74.10 **Cēterī** *others* **bibunt** *drink,* **at** *but* **mīles** *soldier* **pugnat** *fights*

74.11 **At** *but* **fortūna** *fortune* **bonōs** *good men* **nōn** *not* **semper** *always* **adiuvat** *helps*

74.12 **Puer** *boy* **cantat** *sings,* **at** *but* **puella** *girl* **saltat** *dances*

74.13 **At** *but* **iam** *now* **tempus** *time* **est** *is* **venīre** *to come* **domum** *home*

74.31 **Magnus** *great* **labor** *work* **erat** *was,* **at** *but* **nunc** *now* **requiēscimus** *we rest*

74.15 **At** *but* **dī** *gods* **immortālēs** *immortal* **nōs** *us* **servābunt** *will save*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

74.1 At mīles hostēs nōn timet. *But the soldier does not fear the enemies.*

74.2 Puer domī mānet, at pater in agrō labōrat. *The boy remains at home, but the father works in the field.*

74.3 At hercle vērum dīcis! *But by Hercules, you speak the truth!*

74.4 Omnēs dormiunt, at ego vigilō. *Everyone sleeps, but I stay awake.*

74.5 At nunc melius tempus venit. *But now a better time comes.*

74.6 Multī rīdent, at ille plōrat. *Many laugh, but that man weeps.*

74.7 At quid tū hōc tempore facis? *But what are you doing at this time?*

74.8 Servus tacet, at dominus clāmat. *The slave is silent, but the master shouts.*

74.9 At certē scīmus viam brevem. *But certainly we know the short way.*

74.10 Cēterī bibunt, at mīles pugnat. *The others drink, but the soldier fights.*

74.11 At fortūna bonōs nōn semper adiuvat. *But fortune does not always help the good.*

74.12 Puer cantat, at puella saltat. *The boy sings, but the girl dances.*

74.13 At iam tempus est venīre domum. *But now it is time to come home.*

74.31 Magnus labor erat, at nunc requiēscimus. *It was great work, but now we rest.*

74.15 At dī immortālēs nōs servābunt. *But the immortal gods will save us.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

74.1 At mīles hostēs nōn timet.

74.2 Puer domī mānet, at pater in agrō labōrat.

74.3 At hercle vērum dīcis!

74.4 Omnēs dormiunt, at ego vigilō.

74.5 At nunc melius tempus venit.

74.6 Multī rīdent, at ille plōrat.

74.7 At quid tū hōc tempore facis?

74.8 Servus tacet, at dominus clāmat.

74.9 At certē scīmus viam brevem.

74.10 Cēterī bibunt, at mīles pugnat.

74.11 At fortūna bonōs nōn semper adiuvat.

74.12 Puer cantat, at puella saltat.

74.13 At iam tempus est venīre domum.

74.31 Magnus labor erat, at nunc requiēscimus.

74.15 At dī immortālēs nōs servābunt.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The conjunction "at" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Basic Function:
    - Adversative conjunction
    - Introduces contrast or opposition
    - Stronger than "sed" (but)
    - Often translated as "but," "yet," or "however"
2. Position in Sentence:
    - Usually comes first in its clause
    - Can begin a new sentence
    - Never postponed like "-que" or "autem"
3. Common Patterns: a) Simple Contrast:
    - "Puer cantat, at puella saltat"
    - Contrasts two different actions or states

    b) With Pronouns:
    - "Omnēs dormiunt, at ego vigilō"
    - Often emphasizes personal contrast

    c) With Time Words:
    - "at nunc" (but now)
    - "at iam" (but already)
    - Shows temporal contrast
4. Special Uses:
    - In objections: "At quid...?"
    - In strong assertions: "At hercle!"
    - In emotional responses
    - To mark significant transitions

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "at" requires cultural context:

1. Rhetorical Use:
    - Common in oratory
    - Used for dramatic effect
    - Important in philosophical dialogue
    - Key part of legal arguments
2. Literary Function:
    - Creates dramatic tension
    - Marks turning points in narrative
    - Emphasizes character contrasts
    - Common in poetry for emphasis
3. Conversational Context:
    - Used in polite disagreement
    - Marks change of speaker
    - Shows emotional response
    - Indicates surprise or objection
4. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "but"
    - More emphatic than "sed"
    - Used in formal writing
    - Still found in legal Latin

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Milone" (67):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

At *but* **quō** *to what* **tempore?** *time?* **prīmō** *first* **diē** *day* **statim** *immediately* **P.** *Publius* **Saturius,** *Saturius,* **meus** *my* **amīcus,** *friend,* **rem** *matter* **omnem** *whole* **renūntiāvit:** *reported:* **quod** *which* **sī** *if* **nōn** *not* **fēcisset,** *he had done,* **putārēmus** *we would think* **illum** *him* **ipsī** *ourselves* **inimīcum.** *hostile.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"At quō tempore? prīmō diē statim P. Saturius, meus amīcus, rem omnem renūntiāvit: quod sī nōn fēcisset, putārēmus illum ipsī inimīcum."

But at what time? On the very first day Publius Saturius, my friend, reported the whole matter: if he had not done this, we would have considered him personally hostile to us.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "at" here to:

- Introduce a rhetorical question

- Create dramatic emphasis
- Mark a turning point in argument
- Show contrast with previous statement

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "at" introduces rhetorical question
- Complex sentence structure
- Conditional clause with subjunctive
- Use of indirect discourse
- Temporal expressions
- Personal pronouns for emphasis

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Dialogue Between Teacher and Student

Part A (Interleaved Text)

74.16 **Magister** *teacher* **puerum** *boy* **vocat,** *calls,* **at** *but* **puer** *boy* **nōn** *not* **respondet** *responds*

74.17 **At** *but* **cūr** *why* **tacēs?** *are you silent?* **magister** *teacher* **rogat** *asks*

74.18 **Discipulus** *pupil* **librum** *book* **legit,** *reads,* **at** *but* **nōn** *not* **intellegit** *understands*

74.19 **At** *but* **nunc** *now* **melius** *better* **studēre** *to study* **dēbēs** *you ought*

74.20 **Magister** *teacher* **docet,** *teaches,* **at** *but* **puer** *boy* **somniat** *dreams*

74.21 **At** *but* **quōmodo** *how* **discere** *to learn* **potes** *are you able* **sine** *without* **labōre?** *work?*

74.22 **Puer** *boy* **scrībit,** *writes,* **at** *but* **multa** *many* **verba** *words* **errat** *he errs in*

74.23 **At** *but* **nōnne** *not?* **scīs** *do you know* **grammaticam?** *grammar?* **magister** *teacher* **quaerit** *asks*

74.24 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet,** *replies,* **at** *but* **vōx** *voice* **parva** *small* **est** *is*

74.25 **At** *but* **clārius** *more clearly* **loquī** *to speak* **dēbēs** *you ought*

74.26 **Magister** *teacher* **īrātus** *angry* **fit,** *becomes,* **at** *but* **patienter** *patiently* **exspectat** *waits*

74.27 **At** *but* **tandem** *at last* **discipulus** *pupil* **sapientior** *wiser* **fit** *becomes*

74.28 **Puer** *boy* **errāvit,** *made a mistake,* **at** *but* **nunc** *now* **melius** *better* **facit** *does*

74.29 **At** *but* **grātulor** *I congratulate* **tibi,** *you,* **magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says*

74.30 **Discipulus** *pupil* **gaudet,** *rejoices,* **at** *but* **adhūc** *still* **multa** *many things* **discere** *to learn* **dēbet** *he ought*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

74.16 Magister puerum vocat, at puer nōn respondet. *The teacher calls the boy, but the boy does not respond.*

74.17 At cūr tacēs? magister rogat. *"But why are you silent?" the teacher asks.*

74.18 Discipulus librum legit, at nōn intellegit. *The pupil reads the book, but does not understand.*

74.19 At nunc melius studēre dēbēs. *But now you ought to study better.*

74.20 Magister docet, at puer somniat. *The teacher teaches, but the boy dreams.*

74.21 At quōmodo discere potes sine labōre? *But how can you learn without work?*

74.22 Puer scrībit, at multa verba errat. *The boy writes, but makes mistakes in many words.*

74.23 At nōnne scīs grammaticam? magister quaerit. *"But don't you know grammar?" the teacher asks.*

74.24 Discipulus respondet, at vōx parva est. *The pupil replies, but his voice is small.*

74.25 At clārius loquī dēbēs. *But you ought to speak more clearly.*

74.26 Magister īrātus fit, at patienter exspectat. *The teacher becomes angry, but waits patiently.*

74.27 At tandem discipulus sapientior fit. *But at last the pupil becomes wiser.*

74.28 Puer errāvit, at nunc melius facit. *The boy made a mistake, but now he does better.*

74.29 At grātulor tibi, magister dīcit. *"But I congratulate you," the teacher says.*

74.30 Discipulus gaudet, at adhūc multa discere dēbet. *The pupil rejoices, but he still ought to learn many things.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

74.16 Magister puerum vocat, at puer nōn respondet.

74.17 At cūr tacēs? magister rogat.

74.18 Discipulus librum legit, at nōn intellegit.

74.19 At nunc melius studēre dēbēs.

74.20 Magister docet, at puer somniat.

74.21 At quōmodo discere potes sine labōre?

74.22 Puer scrībit, at multa verba errat.

74.23 At nōnne scīs grammaticam? magister quaerit.

74.24 Discipulus respondet, at vōx parva est.

74.25 At clārius loquī dēbēs.

74.26 Magister īrātus fit, at patienter exspectat.

74.27 At tandem discipulus sapientior fit.

74.28 Puer errāvit, at nunc melius facit.

74.29 At grātulor tibi, magister dīcit.

74.30 Discipulus gaudet, at adhūc multa discere dēbet.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In this classroom dialogue, "at" serves several specific functions:

1. Question Introduction:
    - Introduces rhetorical questions: "At cūr tacēs?"
    - Used in teacher's inquiries: "At nōnne scīs grammaticam?"
    - Shows teacher's mild exasperation: "At quōmodo discere potes?"
2. Contrasting Actions: a) Teacher vs. Student:
    - "Magister docet, at puer somniat"
    - Shows contrast between expected and actual behavior
    - Emphasizes educational challenges

    b) Sequential Actions:
    - "Puer errāvit, at nunc melius facit"
    - Marks progress or change
    - Shows development over time
3. Transitional Uses:
    - Marks shift in dialogue: "At grātulor tibi"
    - Shows change in topic: "At tandem discipulus sapientior fit"
    - Indicates new teaching point: "At nunc melius studēre dēbēs"
4. Special Educational Context:
    - Used in corrections: "At clārius loquī dēbēs"
    - Introduces teacher's advice: "At nunc melius studēre dēbēs"
    - Shows pedagogical progression: "Discipulus gaudet, at adhūc multa discere dēbet"
5. Word Order Patterns: a) In Questions:
    - Initial position: "At cūr tacēs?"
    - With interrogatives: "At quōmodo...?"
    - With -ne: "At nōnne...?"

    b) In Statements:
    - Between contrasting clauses
    - At sentence beginning for emphasis
    - With time expressions: "at nunc," "at tandem"
6. Grammatical Constructions Used:
    - Indirect questions: "magister quaerit"
    - Complementary infinitives: "discere dēbet"
    - Comparative adjectives: "sapientior"
    - Present and perfect tenses
    - Subjunctive in questions

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 75 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 75: corpus corporis n. (body)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

75.1 **Mīles** *soldier* **vulnerātum** *wounded* **corpus** *body* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **portāvit** *carried*

75.2 **Corpus** *body* **mortuum** *dead* **in** *in* **campō** *field* **iacēbat** *was lying*

75.3 **Medicus** *doctor* **aegrum** *sick* **corpus** *body* **cūrāre** *to heal* **temptat** *tries*

75.4 **Per** *through* **corpus** *body* **gladius** *sword* **trānsiit** *passed*

75.5 **Fessō** *to tired* **corporī** *body* **quiētem** *rest* **dare** *to give* **necesse** *necessary* **est** *is*

75.6 **Ē** *from* **corpore** *body* **multus** *much* **sanguis** *blood* **fluit** *flows*

75.7 **Dux** *leader* **corpus** *body* **suī** *his own* **mīlitis** *of soldier* **servāre** *to save* **cupit** *wishes*

75.8 **Humānum** *human* **corpus** *body* **sine** *without* **animō** *soul* **vīvere** *to live* **nōn** *not* **potest** *is able*

75.9 **Omnēs** *all* **nostrī** *our* **corporis** *of body* **partēs** *parts* **valēre** *to be healthy* **dēbent** *ought*

75.10 **Vīta** *life* **ē** *from* **corpore** *body* **abiit** *departed*

75.11 **Hostēs** *enemies* **corpus** *body* **ducis** *of leader* **interfectī** *slain* **invēnērunt** *found*

75.12 **Ille** *that* **puer** *boy* **pulchrum** *beautiful* **corpus** *body* **habet** *has*

75.13 **Arma** *weapons* **tōtum** *whole* **corpus** *body* **mīlitis** *of soldier* **tegunt** *cover*

75.31 **Magnum** *great* **corporī** *to body* **vulnus** *wound* **factum** *made* **est** *was*

75.15 **Corpus** *body* **exercitūs** *of army* **fortissimum** *bravest* **est** *is*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

75.1 Mīles vulnerātum corpus ad castra portāvit. *The soldier carried the wounded body to camp.*

75.2 Corpus mortuum in campō iacēbat. *A dead body was lying in the field.*

75.3 Medicus aegrum corpus cūrāre temptat. *The doctor tries to heal the sick body.*

75.4 Per corpus gladius trānsiit. *The sword passed through the body.*

75.5 Fessō corporī quiētem dare necesse est. *It is necessary to give rest to a tired body.*

75.6 Ē corpore multus sanguis fluit. *Much blood flows from the body.*

75.7 Dux corpus suī mīlitis servāre cupit. *The leader wishes to save the body of his soldier.*

75.8 Humānum corpus sine animō vīvere nōn potest. *A human body cannot live without a soul.*

75.9 Omnēs nostrī corporis partēs valēre dēbent. *All parts of our body ought to be healthy.*

75.10 Vīta ē corpore abiit. *Life departed from the body.*

75.11 Hostēs corpus ducis interfectī invēnērunt. *The enemies found the body of the slain leader.*

75.12 Ille puer pulchrum corpus habet. *That boy has a beautiful body.*

75.13 Arma tōtum corpus mīlitis tegunt. *Weapons cover the soldier's entire body.*

75.31 Magnum corporī vulnus factum est. *A great wound was made to the body.*

75.15 Corpus exercitūs fortissimum est. *The body of the army is very brave.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

75.1 Mīles vulnerātum corpus ad castra portāvit.

75.2 Corpus mortuum in campō iacēbat.

75.3 Medicus aegrum corpus cūrāre temptat.

75.4 Per corpus gladius trānsiit.

75.5 Fessō corporī quiētem dare necesse est.

75.6 Ē corpore multus sanguis fluit.

75.7 Dux corpus suī mīlitis servāre cupit.

75.8 Humānum corpus sine animō vīvere nōn potest.

75.9 Omnēs nostrī corporis partēs valēre dēbent.

75.10 Vīta ē corpore abiit.

75.11 Hostēs corpus ducis interfectī invēnērunt.

75.12 Ille puer pulchrum corpus habet.

75.13 Arma tōtum corpus mīlitis tegunt.

75.31 Magnum corporī vulnus factum est.

75.15 Corpus exercitūs fortissimum est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "corpus" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:
    - Third declension neuter noun

- Nominative singular: corpus
- Genitive singular: corporis
- Shows characteristic -us/-oris pattern
- Neuter gender affects adjective agreement

2. Case Forms: Singular:
    - Nominative/Accusative: corpus
    - Genitive: corporis
    - Dative: corporī
    - Ablative: corpore

   Plural:
    - Nominative/Accusative: corpora
    - Genitive: corporum
    - Dative/Ablative: corporibus
3. Common Uses:
    - Direct object: corpus portāre (to carry a body)
    - Subject: corpus iacet (the body lies)
    - With prepositions: in corpore (in the body)
    - Possessive genitive: corporis partēs (parts of the body)
    - Dative of reference: corporī nocēre (to harm the body)
4. Special Constructions:
    - Metaphorical uses (e.g., corpus exercitūs - body of the army)
    - With adjectives of the whole (tōtum corpus)
    - In medical contexts
    - In military descriptions

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "corpus" requires cultural context:

1. Medical Understanding:
    - Romans viewed the body differently from modern medicine
    - Four humors theory influenced treatment
    - Different understanding of anatomy
    - Connection between physical and mental health
2. Military Context:
    - Treatment of fallen soldiers' bodies
    - Importance in funeral rites
    - Metaphorical use in military organization
    - Significance in battle descriptions
3. Religious Significance:
    - Role in funeral ceremonies
    - Concept of body and soul
    - Religious purification of the body
    - Treatment of sacred bodies
4. Legal Aspects:

- corpus delicti in Roman law
- Rights regarding treatment of bodies
- Legal status of corpses
- Evidence in criminal cases

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Milone" (30):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Ipsum *itself* **corpus** *body* **P.** *of Publius* **Clōdiī** *Clodius* **proiēcistī** *you cast out* **in** *into* **pūblicum** *public* **ac** *and* **spoliātum** *stripped* **imāginibus** *of funeral masks,* **exsequiīs** *of funeral rites,* **pompā** *procession,* **laudātiōne** *eulogy,* **īnfēlīcissimis** *most unhappy* **lignīs** *with wood pieces* **semīustulātum** *half-burned* **nocturnīs** *nocturnal* **canibus** *to dogs* **dīlaniendum** *to be torn apart* **relīquistī** *you left.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Ipsum corpus P. Clōdiī proiēcistī in pūblicum ac spoliātum imāginibus, exsequiīs, pompā, laudātiōne, īnfēlīcissimis lignīs semīustulātum nocturnīs canibus dīlaniendum relīquistī."

You cast out the very body of Publius Clodius into public view and, stripped of its funeral masks, funeral rites, procession, and eulogy, half-burned with most unhappy wood, you left it to be torn apart by dogs in the night.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses powerful imagery around the treatment of Clodius's corpus to emphasize the dishonor done to him. The accumulation of ablatives (imāginibus, exsequiīs, etc.) builds the emotional impact.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- corpus as direct object of proiēcistī
- Series of ablatives of separation
- Future passive participle dīlaniendum
- Perfect passive participle spoliātum
- Dative of agent canibus with gerundive

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Medical Examination

Part A (Interleaved Text)

75.16 **Medicus** *doctor* **aegrōtī** *of sick man* **corpus** *body* **diligenter** *carefully* **īnspicit** *examines*

75.17 **Calidissimum** *very hot* **corpus** *body* **manibus** *with hands* **tangit** *touches* **perītus** *skilled* **medicus** *doctor*

75.18 **In** *in* **tōtō** *whole* **corpore** *body* **dolōrēs** *pains* **magnī** *great* **sentiuntur** *are felt*

75.19 **Corpus** *body* **febrī** *with fever* **gravī** *heavy* **labōrat** *struggles*

75.20 **Medicus** *doctor* **docet** *teaches* **quōmodo** *how* **corpus** *body* **sānum** *healthy* **servāre** *to keep* **possīmus** *we are able*

75.21 **Ē** *from* **corpore** *body* **malus** *bad* **sanguis** *blood* **mittendus** *must be sent* **est** *is*

75.22 **Aegrotus** *sick man* **dīcit** *says* **sē** *himself* **in** *in* **corpore** *body* **multum** *much* **calōrem** *heat* **sentīre** *to feel*

75.23 **Medicāmenta** *medicines* **nova** *new* **corporī** *to body* **auxilium** *help* **ferunt** *bring*

75.24 **Post** *after* **trēs** *three* **diēs** *days* **corpus** *body* **melius** *better* **valēre** *to be healthy* **incipit** *begins*

75.25 **Prīmum** *first* **corpus** *body* **cibō** *with food* **bonō** *good* **firmandum** *must be strengthened* **est** *is*

75.26 **Morbō** *by disease* **grave** *heavy* **corpus** *body* **factum** *made* **est** *was*

75.27 **Medicus** *doctor* **corporis** *of body* **dolōrēs** *pains* **omnēs** *all* **intellegit** *understands*

75.28 **Nūlla** *no* **corporis** *of body* **pars** *part* **sine** *without* **cūrā** *care* **relinquenda** *must be left* **est** *is*

75.29 **Sānum** *healthy* **corpus** *body* **labōrem** *work* **facile** *easily* **fert** *bears*

75.30 **Medicus** *doctor* **laetus** *happy* **est** *is* **quod** *because* **corpus** *body* **aegrōtī** *of sick man* **sānātum** *healed* **est** *is*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

75.16 Medicus aegrōtī corpus diligenter īnspicit. *The doctor carefully examines the sick man's body.*

75.17 Calidissimum corpus manibus tangit perītus medicus. The skilled doctor touches the very hot body with his hands.

75.18 In tōtō corpore dolōrēs magnī sentiuntur. *Great pains are felt throughout the whole body.*

75.19 Corpus febrī gravī labōrat. *The body struggles with a severe fever.*

75.20 Medicus docet quōmodo corpus sānum servāre possīmus. *The doctor teaches how we can keep the body healthy.*

75.21 Ē corpore malus sanguis mittendus est. *Bad blood must be let from the body.*

75.22 Aegrotus dīcit sē in corpore multum calōrem sentīre. *The sick man says that he feels much heat in his body.*

75.23 Medicāmenta nova corporī auxilium ferunt. *New medicines bring help to the body.*

75.24 Post trēs diēs corpus melius valēre incipit. *After three days, the body begins to be healthier.*

75.25 Prīmum corpus cibō bonō firmandum est. *First, the body must be strengthened with good food.*

75.26 Morbō grave corpus factum est. *The body was made heavy by disease.*

75.27 Medicus corporis dolōrēs omnēs intellegit. *The doctor understands all the body's pains.*

75.28 Nūlla corporis pars sine cūrā relinquenda est. *No part of the body must be left without care.*

75.29 Sānum corpus labōrem facile fert. *A healthy body bears work easily.*

75.30 Medicus laetus est quod corpus aegrōtī sānātum est. *The doctor is happy because the sick man's body is healed.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

75.16 Medicus aegrōtī corpus diligenter īnspicit.

75.17 Calidissimum corpus manibus tangit perītus medicus.

75.18 In tōtō corpore dolōrēs magnī sentiuntur.

75.19 Corpus febrī gravī labōrat.

75.20 Medicus docet quōmodo corpus sānum servāre possīmus.

75.21 Ē corpore malus sanguis mittendus est.

75.22 Aegrotus dīcit sē in corpore multum calōrem sentīre.

75.23 Medicāmenta nova corporī auxilium ferunt.

75.24 Post trēs diēs corpus melius valēre incipit.

75.25 Prīmum corpus cibō bonō firmandum est.

75.26 Morbō grave corpus factum est.

75.27 Medicus corporis dolōrēs omnēs intellegit.

75.28 Nūlla corporis pars sine cūrā relinquenda est.

75.29 Sānum corpus labōrem facile fert.

75.30 Medicus laetus est quod corpus aegrōtī sānātum est.

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Medical Context)

1. Medical Terminology and Grammar:
    - Use of technical terms: febris, morbus, dolor
    - Specialized verbs: īnspicere, tangere, sentīre
    - Medical adjectives: sānus, aeger, calidus
2. Case Usage in Medical Context: a) Ablative of Means:
    - manibus tangit (touches with hands)
    - cibō bonō firmāre (strengthen with good food)

    b) Genitive of Possession:
    - corporis dolōrēs (pains of the body)
    - corporis pars (part of the body)
3. Gerundive Constructions in Medical Instructions:

- mittendus est (must be let)
- firmandum est (must be strengthened)
- relinquenda est (must be left)

4. Syntax Patterns in Medical Description:
    - Passive voice for symptoms: dolōrēs sentiuntur
    - Indirect statement for patient reports: dīcit sē sentīre
    - Purpose clauses with quōmodo
    - Causal clauses with quod
5. Word Order in Medical Latin:
    - Emphasis on affected part: Corpus febrī labōrat
    - Focus on procedure: Ē corpore sanguis mittendus est
    - Description of condition: Calidissimum corpus
6. Common Medical Phrases:
    - corpus sānum (healthy body)
    - corpus aegrōtī (sick person's body)
    - corpus labōrat (body struggles)
    - corpus melius valet (body grows stronger)

Lesson 76 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 76: quoque (also, too)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

76.1 **Puer** *boy* **quoque** *also* **māter** *mother* **suam** *his* **amat** *loves*

76.2 **Rōmānī** *Romans* **quoque** *also* **deōs** *gods* **Graecōs** *Greek* **colēbant** *worshipped*

76.3 **Servus** *slave* **dominum** *master* **quoque** *also* **timēbat** *feared*

76.4 **Mīles** *soldier* **fortis** *brave* **pecūniam** *money* **quoque** *also* **petēbat** *sought*

76.5 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulōs** *pupils* **quoque** *also* **laudat** *praises*

76.6 **Agricola** *farmer* **agrōs** *fields* **quoque** *also* **parvōs** *small* **habet** *has*

76.7 **Fīlius** *son* **patrem** *father* **quoque** *also* **sequitur** *follows*

76.8 **Rēx** *king* **populō** *people* **quoque** *also* **grātus** *pleasing* **erat** *was*

76.9 **Senex** *old man* **iuvenēs** *young men* **quoque** *also* **docēbat** *was teaching*

76.10 **Poēta** *poet* **carmina** *songs* **quoque** *also* **scrībit** *writes*

76.11 **Hostēs** *enemies* **urbem** *city* **quoque** *also* **oppugnābant** *were attacking*

76.12 **Fēmina** *woman* **sacerdōs** *priest* **quoque** *also* **esse** *to be* **potest** *is able*

76.13 **Puella** *girl* **frātrem** *brother* **quoque** *also* **vidēre** *to see* **cupit** *desires*

76.31 **Mercātor** *merchant* **argentum** *silver* **quoque** *also* **vendit** *sells*

76.15 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **lēgēs** *laws* **quoque** *also* **servāre** *to preserve* **dēbent** *ought*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

76.1 Puer quoque mātrem suam amat. *The boy also loves his mother.*

76.2 Deōs Graecōs Rōmānī quoque colēbant. *The Romans also worshipped the Greek gods.*

76.3 Dominum servus quoque timēbat. *The slave also feared his master.*

76.4 Fortis mīles pecūniam quoque petēbat. *The brave soldier was also seeking money.*

76.5 Discipulōs magister quoque laudat. *The teacher also praises his pupils.*

76.6 Agrōs parvōs agricola quoque habet. *The farmer also has small fields.*

76.7 Patrem fīlius quoque sequitur. *The son also follows his father.*

76.8 Populō rēx quoque grātus erat. *The king was also pleasing to the people.*

76.9 Iuvenēs senex quoque docēbat. *The old man was also teaching the young men.*

76.10 Carmina poēta quoque scrībit. *The poet also writes songs.*

76.11 Urbem hostēs quoque oppugnābant. *The enemies were also attacking the city.*

76.12 Sacerdōs fēmina quoque esse potest. *A woman can also be a priest.*

76.13 Frātrem puella quoque vidēre cupit. *The girl also desires to see her brother.*

76.31 Argentum mercātor quoque vendit. *The merchant also sells silver.*

76.15 Lēgēs cīvēs quoque servāre dēbent. *The citizens also ought to preserve the laws.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

76.1 Puer quoque mātrem suam amat.

76.2 Deōs Graecōs Rōmānī quoque colēbant.

76.3 Dominum servus quoque timēbat.

76.4 Fortis mīles pecūniam quoque petēbat.

76.5 Discipulōs magister quoque laudat.

76.6 Agrōs parvōs agricola quoque habet.

76.7 Patrem fīlius quoque sequitur.

76.8 Populō rēx quoque grātus erat.

76.9 Iuvenēs senex quoque docēbat.

76.10 Carmina poēta quoque scrībit.

76.11 Urbem hostēs quoque oppugnābant.

76.12 Sacerdōs fēmina quoque esse potest.

76.13 Frātrem puella quoque vidēre cupit.

76.31 Argentum mercātor quoque vendit.

76.15 Lēgēs cīvēs quoque servāre dēbent.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The word "quoque" is an enclitic particle meaning "also" or "too." For English speakers, understanding its use requires attention to several key points:

1. Position:
    - Always follows the word it modifies
    - Cannot begin a clause
    - Often appears second or third in its clause Example: "Puer quoque" = "the boy also"
2. Usage:
    - Adds elements to a previous statement
    - Similar to "etiam" but more specific
    - Emphasizes the word it follows Example: "Magister discipulōs laudat, puer quoque laudat" = "The teacher praises the pupils, the boy praises them too"
3. Common Patterns:
    - With nouns: "servus quoque"
    - With adjectives: "fortis quoque"
    - With verbs: "laudāre quoque" Example: "Mīles fortis pecūniam quoque petēbat" shows placement after object
4. Differences from English:
    - English "also" can move freely
    - Latin "quoque" must follow modified word
    - Creates emphasis through position Example: Compare "The soldier also sought money" vs. "Pecūniam quoque mīles petēbat"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "quoque" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Rhetoric:
    - Essential for adding arguments
    - Used in legal speeches
    - Important in political debate Example: Cicero often uses "quoque" to build cases
2. Social Implications:
    - Shows inclusion in groups
    - Indicates shared activities
    - Reflects social connections Example: "Senātōrēs quoque" shows class inclusion

3. Religious Usage:
    - In prayers including multiple gods
    - During ritual formulas
    - For expanding invocations Example: "Dī quoque immortālēs"
4. Literary Style:
    - Creates emphasis
    - Builds parallel structures
    - Enhances arguments Example: Found in Vergil for poetic emphasis

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Archiā" (12):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Quārē *wherefore* **suō** *his* **iūre** *by right* **noster** *our* **ille** *that* **Ennius** *Ennius* **sānctōs** *holy* **appellat** *calls* **poētās,** *poets,* **quod** *because* **quasi** *as if* **deōrum** *of gods* **aliquō** *by some* **dōnō** *gift* **atque** *and* **mūnere** *favor* **commendātī** *entrusted* **nōbīs** *to us* **esse** *to be* **videantur** *they seem.* **Sit** *let it be* **igitur,** *therefore,* **iūdicēs,** *judges,* **sānctum** *sacred* **apud** *among* **vōs,** *you,* **hūmānissimōs** *most cultivated* **hominēs,** *men,* **hoc** *this* **poētae** *of poet* **nōmen** *name* **quoque** *also***,** , **quod** *which* **nūlla** *no* **umquam** *ever* **barbaria** *barbarism* **violāvit** *has violated.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Quārē suō iūre noster ille Ennius sānctōs appellat poētās, quod quasi deōrum aliquō dōnō atque mūnere commendātī nōbīs esse videantur. Sit igitur, iūdicēs, sānctum apud vōs, hūmānissimōs hominēs, hoc poētae nōmen quoque, quod nūlla umquam barbaria violāvit."

Wherefore with his own right that Ennius of ours calls poets holy, because they seem to have been entrusted to us as if by some gift and favor of the gods. Therefore, judges, let this name of poet also be sacred among you, most cultivated men, which no barbarism has ever violated.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "quoque" here to emphasize the sanctity of poets, building on previous arguments about the value of literature and culture. The word helps create a climactic effect in his defense of Archias.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "quoque" follows "nōmen" emphasizing the word it modifies
- Complex sentence structure with multiple clauses
- Subjunctive "sit" in hortatory clause
- Perfect tense "violāvit" showing completed action

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

76.16 **Rōmulus** *Romulus* **urbem** *city* **quoque** *also* **sicut** *just as* **frāter** *brother* **suus** *his* **condēre** *to found* **volēbat** *wanted*

76.17 **Rēmus** *Remus* **locum** *place* **quoque** *also* **aptum** *suitable* **invēnit** *found*

76.18 **Avēs** *birds* **Rōmulō** *to Romulus* **quoque** *also* **signum** *sign* **dedērunt** *gave*

76.19 **Augurēs** *augurs* **sacrī** *sacred* **rēgī** *to king* **quoque** *also* **favēbant** *were favorable*

76.20 **Mūrōs** *walls* **novōs** *new* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **quoque** *also* **dēfendēbant** *were defending*

76.21 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **novī** *new* **templum** *temple* **quoque** *also* **aedificāre** *to build* **cupiēbant** *desired*

76.22 **Sabīnī** *Sabines* **pacem** *peace* **quoque** *also* **petere** *to seek* **dēbēbant** *had to*

76.23 **Fēminae** *women* **Sabīnae** *Sabine* **bellum** *war* **quoque** *also* **fīnīvērunt** *ended*

76.24 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **novī** *new* **rēgem** *king* **quoque** *also* **eligēbant** *were choosing*

76.25 **Populus** *people* **Rōmānus** *Roman* **lēgēs** *laws* **quoque** *also* **novās** *new* **scrīpsit** *wrote*

76.26 **Sacerdōtēs** *priests* **deōs** *gods* **novōs** *new* **quoque** *also* **colēbant** *worshipped*

76.27 **Vestalēs** *Vestals* **virginēs** *virgins* **ignem** *fire* **quoque** *also* **custōdiēbant** *were guarding*

76.28 **Tarpeia** *Tarpeia* **hostibus** *to enemies* **quoque** *also* **portam** *gate* **aperuit** *opened*

76.29 **Urbs** *city* **nova** *new* **mercātōrēs** *merchants* **quoque** *also* **invītābat** *was inviting*

76.30 **Rōmulus** *Romulus* **immortālis** *immortal* **quoque** *also* **factus** *made* **est** *was*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

76.16 Urbem Rōmulus quoque sicut frāter suus condēre volēbat. *Romulus too wanted to found a city, just like his brother.*

76.17 Locum aptum Rēmus quoque invēnit. Remus also found a suitable place.

76.18 Avēs Rōmulō quoque signum dedērunt. *The birds also gave a sign to Romulus.*

76.19 Rēgī augurēs sacrī quoque favēbant. *The sacred augurs were also favorable to the king.*

76.20 Novōs mūrōs mīlitēs quoque dēfendēbant. *The soldiers were also defending the new walls.*

76.21 Templum cīvēs novī quoque aedificāre cupiēbant. *The new citizens also desired to build a temple.*

76.22 Sabīnī pacem quoque petere dēbēbant. *The Sabines also had to seek peace.*

76.23 Bellum fēminae Sabīnae quoque fīnīvērunt. *The Sabine women also ended the war.*

76.24 Rēgem senātōrēs novī quoque eligēbant. *The new senators were also choosing a king.*

76.25 Lēgēs novās populus Rōmānus quoque scrīpsit. *The Roman people also wrote new laws.*

76.26 Deōs novōs sacerdōtēs quoque colēbant. *The priests were also worshipping new gods.*

76.27 Ignem Vestalēs virginēs quoque custōdiēbant. *The Vestal virgins were also guarding the fire.*

76.28 Hostibus Tarpeia portam quoque aperuit. *Tarpeia also opened the gate to the enemies.*

76.29 Mercātōrēs urbs nova quoque invītābat. *The new city was also inviting merchants.*

76.30 Immortālis Rōmulus quoque factus est. *Romulus was also made immortal.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

76.16 Urbem Rōmulus quoque sicut frāter suus condēre volēbat.

76.17 Locum aptum Rēmus quoque invēnit.

76.18 Avēs Rōmulō quoque signum dedērunt.

76.19 Rēgī augurēs sacrī quoque favēbant.

76.20 Novōs mūrōs mīlitēs quoque dēfendēbant.

76.21 Templum cīvēs novī quoque aedificāre cupiēbant.

76.22 Sabīnī pacem quoque petere dēbēbant.

76.23 Bellum fēminae Sabīnae quoque fīnīvērunt.

76.24 Rēgem senātōrēs novī quoque eligēbant.

76.25 Lēgēs novās populus Rōmānus quoque scrīpsit.

76.26 Deōs novōs sacerdōtēs quoque colēbant.

76.27 Ignem Vestalēs virginēs quoque custōdiēbant.

76.28 Hostibus Tarpeia portam quoque aperuit.

76.29 Mercātōrēs urbs nova quoque invītābat.

76.30 Immortālis Rōmulus quoque factus est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The Historical Narrative section demonstrates several important features of "quoque" in extended narrative:

1. Narrative Sequence:
    - "quoque" helps build chronological progression
    - Links related events in the story
    - Shows parallel actions by different characters Example: "Rēmus quoque invēnit" connects to previous discoveries

2. Character Development:
    - Shows multiple actions by same character
    - Indicates shared characteristics
    - Links different characters' similar actions Example: "Rōmulus quoque...sicut frāter" shows parallel between brothers
3. Complex Sentences:
    - Position with infinitives: "condēre quoque volēbat"
    - Use with participles: "factus quoque est"
    - Placement in subordinate clauses Example: "aedificāre quoque cupiēbant" shows infinitive construction
4. Historical Context:
    - Time sequence markers
    - Cause and effect relationships
    - Multiple agent actions Example: "Sabīnī pacem quoque petere dēbēbant" shows consequential action
5. Special Uses in Historical Writing:
    - Adding new elements to narrative
    - Connecting parallel events
    - Building dramatic tension Example: "fēminae Sabīnae quoque fīnīvērunt" adds dramatic element
6. Word Order Variations:
    - After proper nouns: "Tarpeia quoque"
    - With objects: "portam quoque"
    - In complex phrases Example: Various positions shown throughout narrative

Lesson 77 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 77: aliquis -quae -quod (some, any)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

77.1 **Aliquis** *someone* **ē** *from* **turbā** *crowd* **clāmat** *shouts*

77.2 **Nātūra** *nature* **nōbīs** *to us* **aliquid** *something* **semper** *always* **dat** *gives*

77.3 **Pater** *father* **aliquem** *someone* **exspectat** *awaits* **ante** *before* **portam** *gate*

77.4 **Aliquā** *by some* **viā** *way* **domum** *home* **redīre** *to return* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

77.5 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulīs** *to students* **aliquid** *something* **novī** *new* **nārrat** *tells*

77.6 **Aliquod** *some* **auxilium** *help* **mīlitibus** *to soldiers* **mittere** *to send* **volunt** *they wish*

77.7 **Alicui** *to someone* **epistulam** *letter* **scrīpsistī** *you wrote* **heri** *yesterday*

77.8 **In** *in* **silvā** *forest* **aliquid** *something* **movētur** *moves*

77.9 **Māter** *mother* **aliquam** *some* **spem** *hope* **semper** *always* **habet** *has*

77.10 **Alicuius** *of someone* **vōcem** *voice* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **audiō** *I hear*

77.11 **Aliquid** *something* **bonī** *good* **ex** *from* **perīculō** *danger* **discimus** *we learn*

77.12 **Aliquō** *to some* **tempore** *time* **rēx** *king* **veniet** *will come*

77.13 **Fīlius** *son* **aliquam** *some* **rem** *thing* **patrem** *father* **rogat** *asks*

77.31 **Aliquibus** *to some* **amīcīs** *friends* **dōna** *gifts* **dedī** *I gave*

77.15 **Hostēs** *enemies* **aliquōs** *some* **equōs** *horses* **invēnērunt** *found*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

77.1 Aliquis ē turbā clāmat. *Someone from the crowd shouts.*

77.2 Nātūra nōbīs aliquid semper dat. *Nature always gives us something.*

77.3 Ante portam pater aliquem exspectat. *Father awaits someone before the gate.*

77.4 Aliquā viā domum redīre dēbēmus. *We ought to return home by some way.*

77.5 Discipulīs magister aliquid novī nārrat. *The teacher tells the students something new.*

77.6 Mīlitibus aliquod auxilium mittere volunt. *They wish to send some help to the soldiers.*

77.7 Alicui epistulam herī scrīpsistī. *You wrote a letter to someone yesterday.*

77.8 In silvā aliquid movētur. *Something moves in the forest.*

77.9 Māter spem aliquam semper habet. *Mother always has some hope.*

77.10 Vōcem alicuius in hortō audiō. *I hear someone's voice in the garden.*

77.11 Ex perīculō aliquid bonī discimus. *We learn something good from danger.*

77.12 Tempore aliquō rēx veniet. *The king will come at some time.*

77.13 Patrem fīlius rem aliquam rogat. *The son asks his father about something.*

77.31 Dōna aliquibus amīcīs dedī. *I gave gifts to some friends.*

77.15 Aliquōs equōs hostēs invēnērunt. *The enemies found some horses.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

77.1 Aliquis ē turbā clāmat.

77.2 Nātūra nōbīs aliquid semper dat.

77.3 Ante portam pater aliquem exspectat.

77.4 Aliquā viā domum redīre dēbēmus.

77.5 Discipulīs magister aliquid novī nārrat.

77.6 Mīlitibus aliquod auxilium mittere volunt.

77.7 Alicui epistulam herī scrīpsistī.

77.8 In silvā aliquid movētur.

77.9 Māter spem aliquam semper habet.

77.10 Vōcem alicuius in hortō audiō.

77.11 Ex perīculō aliquid bonī discimus.

77.12 Tempore aliquō rēx veniet.

77.13 Patrem fīlius rem aliquam rogat.

77.31 Dōna aliquibus amīcīs dedī.

77.15 Aliquōs equōs hostēs invēnērunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

For English speakers, understanding "aliquis" requires attention to several key points:

1. Forms:
    - Masculine: aliquis, alicuius, alicui, aliquem, aliquō
    - Feminine: aliqua, alicuius, alicui, aliquam, aliquā
    - Neuter: aliquid/aliquod, alicuius, alicui, aliquid/aliquod, aliquō
2. Special Features:
    - Two neuter nominative/accusative forms:
        - aliquid (substantive): "something"
        - aliquod (adjective): "some"
    - Irregular declension mixing pronouns and adjectives
    - Often used with partitive genitive
3. Common Uses:
    - As indefinite pronoun ("someone, something")
    - As adjective ("some, any")
    - In conditional clauses ("if anyone")
    - With partitive expressions ("something of...")
4. Examples from the lesson:
    - Substantive use: "Aliquis ē turbā clāmat"
    - Adjectival use: "Aliquam spem māter habet"
    - With genitive: "Aliquid bonī"
    - Dative indirect object: "Alicui epistulam scrīpsistī"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "aliquis" requires cultural context:

1. Social Usage:
    - Polite indefiniteness in requests
    - Diplomatic vagueness in official contexts
    - Common in philosophical discussions
    - Used in legal terminology
2. Literary Context:
    - Found in all genres of Latin literature
    - Especially common in:
        - Letters (polite requests)
        - Philosophy (hypotheticals)
        - History (uncertain details)
        - Poetry (suggestive imagery)
3. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "someone/something"
    - Used in scientific terminology
    - Found in legal Latin phrases
    - Important in philosophical terms
4. Common Phrases:
    - "aliquid novi" (something new)
    - "si quis" (if anyone)
    - "aliquā ratione" (somehow)
    - "aliquo modo" (in some way)

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Roscio Amerino" (34.95):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Necesse *necessary* **est** *it is* **sit** *there may be* **aliquid** *something* **in** *in* **rē** *matter* **pūblicā** *public* **tantum** *so great* **scelus** *crime* **et** *and* **nefārium** *wicked* **facinus** *deed* **occultum** *hidden,* **quod** *which* **nunc** *now* **cum** *when* **māximē** *especially* **fit** *happens,* **id** *that* **exsistat** *should come forth,* **id** *that* **appāreat** *should appear.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Necesse est sit aliquid in rē pūblicā tantum scelus et nefārium facinus occultum, quod nunc cum māximē fit, id exsistat, id appāreat.

It is necessary that there should be some such great crime and wicked deed hidden in the state, which is happening right now with especial force, that it should come forth, that it should appear.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "aliquid" here to suggest the existence of a hidden crime, building suspense through:

- Indefinite pronoun with attributive adjectives
- Series of subjunctive verbs
- Climactic structure
- Emphatic repetition

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "aliquid" as subject of impersonal construction
- Complex sentence with relative clause
- Multiple subjunctive verbs
- Demonstrative pronouns for emphasis

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Legal Document

Part A (Interleaved Text)

77.16 **Sī** *if* **quis** *anyone* **aliquid** *something* **contrā** *against* **lēgēs** *laws* **facit** *does*

77.17 **Aliquod** *some* **crīmen** *crime* **in** *in* **cīvitāte** *city* **commissum** *committed* **est** *has been*

77.18 **Iūdex** *judge* **aliquem** *someone* **testem** *witness* **vocat** *calls*

77.19 **Alicui** *to someone* **poenam** *punishment* **dare** *to give* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

77.20 **Aliquis** *someone* **dē** *about* **iniūriā** *injury* **queritur** *complains*

77.21 **Aliquā** *by some* **causā** *reason* **reus** *defendant* **sē** *himself* **dēfendit** *defends*

77.22 **Senātus** *senate* **aliquid** *something* **dē** *about* **hāc** *this* **rē** *matter* **dēcernit** *decides*

77.23 **Aliquibus** *to some* **testibus** *witnesses* **iūdex** *judge* **nōn** *not* **crēdit** *believes*

77.24 **Alicuius** *of someone* **testimōnium** *testimony* **falsum** *false* **erat** *was*

77.25 **Praetor** *praetor* **aliquod** *some* **iūdicium** *judgment* **dare** *to give* **dēbet** *ought*

77.26 **Aliquam** *some* **pecūniam** *money* **reus** *defendant* **solvere** *to pay* **coāctus** *compelled* **est** *is*

77.27 **Aliquis** *someone* **ex** *from* **senātū** *senate* **lēgem** *law* **novam** *new* **scrībit** *writes*

77.28 **Aliquō** *at some* **tempore** *time* **sententia** *verdict* **danda** *to be given* **est** *is*

77.29 **Aliquae** *some* **causae** *cases* **gravēs** *serious* **sunt** *are*

77.30 **Aliquibus** *in some* **locīs** *places* **iūstitia** *justice* **nōn** *not* **est** *is*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

77.16 Sī quis aliquid contrā lēgēs facit. *If anyone does something against the laws.*

77.17 Aliquod crīmen in cīvitāte commissum est. *Some crime has been committed in the city.*

77.18 Iūdex aliquem testem vocat. *The judge calls some witness.*

77.19 Alicui poenam dare dēbēmus. *We ought to give punishment to someone.*

77.20 Aliquis dē iniūriā queritur. *Someone complains about an injury.*

77.21 Aliquā causā reus sē dēfendit. *The defendant defends himself for some reason.*

77.22 Senātus aliquid dē hāc rē dēcernit. *The senate decides something about this matter.*

77.23 Aliquibus testibus iūdex nōn crēdit. The judge does not believe some witnesses.

77.24 Alicuius testimōnium falsum erat. *Someone's testimony was false.*

77.25 Praetor aliquod iūdicium dare dēbet. *The praetor ought to give some judgment.*

77.26 Aliquam pecūniam reus solvere coāctus est. *The defendant was compelled to pay some money.*

77.27 Aliquis ex senātū lēgem novam scrībit. *Someone from the senate writes a new law.*

77.28 Aliquō tempore sententia danda est. *At some time the verdict must be given.*

77.29 Aliquae causae gravēs sunt. *Some cases are serious.*

77.30 Aliquibus locīs iūstitia nōn est. *In some places there is no justice.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

77.16 Sī quis aliquid contrā lēgēs facit.

77.17 Aliquod crīmen in cīvitāte commissum est.

77.18 Iūdex aliquem testem vocat.

77.19 Alicui poenam dare dēbēmus.

77.20 Aliquis dē iniūriā queritur.

77.21 Aliquā causā reus sē dēfendit.

77.22 Senātus aliquid dē hāc rē dēcernit.

77.23 Aliquibus testibus iūdex nōn crēdit.

77.24 Alicuius testimōnium falsum erat.

77.25 Praetor aliquod iūdicium dare dēbet.

77.26 Aliquam pecūniam reus solvere coāctus est.

77.27 Aliquis ex senātū lēgem novam scrībit.

77.28 Aliquō tempore sententia danda est.

77.29 Aliquae causae gravēs sunt.

77.30 Aliquibus locīs iūstitia nōn est.

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Legal Context)

1. Legal Uses of aliquis:
    - In conditional clauses: "sī quis" (if anyone)
    - With criminal accusations: "aliquod crīmen" (some crime)
    - In witness statements: "aliquis testis" (some witness)
    - For undefined penalties: "aliqua poena" (some punishment)
2. Case Usage in Legal Context:
    - Nominative for subjects: "aliquis queritur" (someone complains)
    - Dative for indirect objects: "alicui poenam dare" (to give punishment to someone)
    - Accusative for direct objects: "aliquam pecūniam solvere" (to pay some money)
    - Ablative for circumstances: "aliquā causā" (for some reason)
3. Common Legal Phrases:
    - "aliquid contrā lēgēs" (something against the laws)
    - "aliquod iūdicium" (some judgment)
    - "aliqua causa" (some legal case)
    - "aliquis testis" (some witness)
4. Syntactic Patterns in Legal Language:
    - With gerundives: "sententia danda est" (the verdict must be given)
    - In passive constructions: "commissum est" (has been committed)
    - With modal verbs: "dēbēmus" (we ought)
    - In impersonal constructions: "necesse est" (it is necessary)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 78 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: tōtus -a -um (whole, entire)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

78.1 **Hostēs** *enemies* **tōtam** *whole* **urbem** *city* **dēlēvērunt** *destroyed*

78.2 **Tōtā** *whole* **nocte** *night* **puer** *boy* **dormiēbat** *was sleeping*

78.3 **Agricola** *farmer* **tōtum** *whole* **agrum** *field* **arāvit** *plowed*

78.4 **Dux** *leader* **tōtī** *to whole* **exercituī** *army* **imperāvit** *commanded*

78.5 **Tōtīus** *of whole* **urbis** *city* **cīvēs** *citizens* **conveniunt** *gather*

78.6 **Senātor** *senator* **tōtō** *in whole* **forō** *forum* **clāmābat** *was shouting*

78.7 **Tōtus** *whole* **exercitus** *army* **flūmen** *river* **trānsiit** *crossed*

78.8 **Magistra** *teacher* **tōtam** *whole* **fābulam** *story* **nārrat** *tells*

78.9 **Tōtō** *in whole* **annō** *year* **nix** *snow* **nōn** *not* **ceciderat** *had fallen*

78.10 **Tōtīus** *of whole* **vitae** *life* **memoriam** *memory* **retinēbat** *he kept*

78.11 **Mercātor** *merchant* **tōtās** *all* **mercēs** *goods* **vēndidit** *sold*

78.12 **Tōtī** *all* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **arma** *weapons* **sūmpsērunt** *took up*

78.13 **Poēta** *poet* **tōtum** *whole* **carmen** *poem* **recitāvit** *recited*

78.31 **Tōtīs** *with all* **vīribus** *strength* **portam** *gate* **pulsāvit** *struck*

78.15 **Ōrātor** *orator* **tōtam** *whole* **multitūdinem** *crowd* **movēbat** *was moving*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

78.1 Hostēs tōtam urbem dēlēvērunt. *The enemies destroyed the entire city.*

78.2 Tōtā nocte puer dormiēbat. *The boy was sleeping through the whole night.*

78.3 Agricola tōtum agrum arāvit. *The farmer plowed the entire field.*

78.4 Dux tōtī exercituī imperāvit. *The leader gave orders to the whole army.*

78.5 Tōtīus urbis cīvēs conveniunt. *The citizens of the whole city gather.*

78.6 Senātor tōtō forō clāmābat. *The senator was shouting throughout the entire forum.*

78.7 Tōtus exercitus flūmen trānsiit. *The entire army crossed the river.*

78.8 Magistra tōtam fābulam nārrat. *The teacher tells the whole story.*

78.9 Tōtō annō nix nōn ceciderat. *Snow had not fallen for the entire year.*

78.10 Tōtīus vitae memoriam retinēbat. *He retained the memory of his whole life.*

78.11 Mercātor tōtās mercēs vēndidit. *The merchant sold all the goods.*

78.12 Tōtī mīlitēs arma sūmpsērunt. *All the soldiers took up arms.*

78.13 Poēta tōtum carmen recitāvit. *The poet recited the entire poem.*

78.31 Tōtīs vīribus portam pulsāvit. *He struck the gate with all his strength.*

78.15 Ōrātor tōtam multitūdinem movēbat. *The orator was moving the entire crowd.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

78.1 Hostēs tōtam urbem dēlēvērunt.

78.2 Tōtā nocte puer dormiēbat.

78.3 Agricola tōtum agrum arāvit.

78.4 Dux tōtī exercituī imperāvit.

78.5 Tōtīus urbis cīvēs conveniunt.

78.6 Senātor tōtō forō clāmābat.

78.7 Tōtus exercitus flūmen trānsiit.

78.8 Magistra tōtam fābulam nārrat.

78.9 Tōtō annō nix nōn ceciderat.

78.10 Tōtīus vitae memoriam retinēbat.

78.11 Mercātor tōtās mercēs vēndidit.

78.12 Tōtī mīlitēs arma sūmpsērunt.

78.13 Poēta tōtum carmen recitāvit.

78.31 Tōtīs vīribus portam pulsāvit.

78.15 Ōrātor tōtam multitūdinem movēbat.

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adjective "tōtus -a -um" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Declension Pattern:
    - Follows mixed 2nd declension pattern
    - Has special endings in genitive (-īus) and dative (-ī)
    - These endings are shared with other important adjectives like:
        - ūnus (one)
        - sōlus (alone)
        - nullus (none)
2. Forms: Singular: Masculine Feminine Neuter N: tōtus tōta tōtum G: tōtīus tōtīus tōtīus D: tōtī tōtī tōtī A: tōtum tōtam tōtum A: tōtō tōtā tōtō Plural: N: tōtī tōtae tōta G: tōtōrum tōtārum tōtōrum D: tōtīs tōtīs tōtīs A: tōtōs tōtās tōta A: tōtīs tōtīs tōtīs
3. Usage:
    - Agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case
    - Can be used attributively or predicatively
    - Often emphasizes completeness or wholeness
    - Can mean "all" when referring to a single complete entity
4. Common Constructions:
    - Ablative of time: tōtā nocte (all night long)
    - Ablative of manner: tōtīs vīribus (with all strength)
    - Genitive of the whole: tōtīus urbis (of the whole city)
5. Position:
    - Usually precedes its noun
    - Can be separated for emphasis
    - Often appears near the start of its clause

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "tōtus" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Concepts of Wholeness:
    - Romans valued completeness in ritual and law
    - Military operations often involved "tōtus exercitus"
    - Legal documents required complete execution
    - Religious rites needed to be performed in full
2. Administrative Usage:
    - "Tōta prōvincia" meant entire provincial jurisdiction
    - City administration dealt with "tōta urbs"
    - Records needed to be complete for legal validity
    - Public works affected "tōtus populus"
3. Literary Significance:
    - Authors used "tōtus" for dramatic emphasis
    - Historians described complete events
    - Poets used it for emotional impact
    - Orators employed it in climactic passages
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of English "total"
    - Legal term "in toto" still used
    - Scientific term "totality"
    - Concept important in modern administration

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Marcello" (8.25):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Tōtam *whole* **igitur** *therefore* **urbem** *city* **quam** *which* **tuō** *by your* **praesidiō** *protection* **et** *and* **cōnservāre** *to preserve* **et** *and* **ōrnāre** *to adorn* **potuistī** *you were able* **māgnā** *great* **cūrā** *with care* **et** *and* **dīligentiā** *diligence* **administrāre** *to manage* **dēbēs** *you ought*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Tōtam igitur urbem, quam tuō praesidiō et cōnservāre et ōrnāre potuistī, māgnā cūrā et dīligentiā administrāre dēbēs.

Therefore you ought to manage with great care and diligence the entire city, which you were able both to preserve and to adorn by your protection.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "tōtam" to emphasize the comprehensive nature of Caesar's responsibility to Rome. The placement at the beginning of the sentence emphasizes the totality of the city's needs.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "tōtam" modifies "urbem" in accusative case
- Complex sentence with relative clause
- Multiple infinitives showing scope of duty
- Ablative of manner in "māgnā cūrā et dīligentiā"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

78.16 **Hannibal** *Hannibal* **tōtum** *whole* **exercitum** *army* **trāns** *across* **Alpēs** *Alps* **dūxit** *led*

78.17 **Tōtā** *whole* **Italiā** *in Italy* **terror** *terror* **erat** *was*

78.18 **Rōmānī** *Romans* **tōtās** *all* **cōpiās** *forces* **parābant** *were preparing*

78.19 **Tōtīus** *of whole* **reī** *matter* **pūblicae** *public* **salūs** *safety* **in** *in* **perīculō** *danger* **erat** *was*

78.20 **Tōtum** *whole* **diem** *day* **pugnātum** *it was fought* **est** *was*

78.21 **Tōtae** *all* **legiōnēs** *legions* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **properābant** *were hurrying*

78.22 **Dux** *leader* **tōtīs** *with all* **cōpiīs** *forces* **hostēs** *enemies* **aggressus** *having attacked* **est** *is*

78.23 **Tōtā** *in whole* **Āfricā** *Africa* **bellum** *war* **gerēbātur** *was being waged*

78.24 **Tōtīus** *of whole* **exercitūs** *army* **virtūs** *courage* **laudāta** *praised* **est** *was*

78.25 **Senātus** *senate* **tōtum** *whole* **annum** *year* **dēlīberāvit** *deliberated*

78.26 **Tōtā** *in whole* **prōvinciā** *province* **pāx** *peace* **erat** *was*

78.27 **Imperātor** *commander* **tōtam** *whole* **victōriam** *victory* **populō** *to people* **nuntiāvit** *announced*

78.28 **Tōtīus** *of whole* **pugnae** *battle* **fortūna** *fortune* **mūtāta** *changed* **est** *is*

78.29 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **tōtā** *with whole* **audāciā** *boldness* **pugnāvērunt** *fought*

78.30 **Tōtīus** *of whole* **imperii** *empire* **glōria** *glory* **aucta** *increased* **est** *is*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

78.16 Hannibal tōtum exercitum trāns Alpēs dūxit. *Hannibal led the entire army across the Alps.*

78.17 Tōtā Italiā terror erat. *There was terror throughout all Italy.*

78.18 Rōmānī tōtās cōpiās parābant. *The Romans were preparing all their forces.*

78.19 Tōtīus reī pūblicae salūs in perīculō erat. *The safety of the entire republic was in danger.*

78.20 Tōtum diem pugnātum est. *They fought for the whole day.*

78.21 Tōtae legiōnēs ad urbem properābant. All the legions were hurrying to the city.

78.22 Dux tōtīs cōpiīs hostēs aggressus est. *The leader attacked the enemies with all his forces.*

78.23 Tōtā Āfricā bellum gerēbātur. *War was being waged throughout all Africa.*

78.24 Tōtīus exercitūs virtūs laudāta est. *The courage of the entire army was praised.*

78.25 Senātus tōtum annum dēlīberāvit. *The senate deliberated for the whole year.*

78.26 Tōtā prōvinciā pāx erat. *There was peace throughout the whole province.*

78.27 Imperātor tōtam victōriam populō nuntiāvit. *The commander announced the complete victory to the people.*

78.28 Tōtīus pugnae fortūna mūtāta est. *The fortune of the entire battle was changed.*

78.29 Mīlitēs tōtā audāciā pugnāvērunt. *The soldiers fought with complete boldness.*

78.30 Tōtīus imperii glōria aucta est. *The glory of the entire empire was increased.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

78.21 Tōtae legiōnēs ad urbem properābant.

78.22 Dux tōtīs cōpiīs hostēs aggressus est.

78.23 Tōtā Āfricā bellum gerēbātur.

78.24 Tōtīus exercitūs virtūs laudāta est.

78.25 Senātus tōtum annum dēlīberāvit.

78.26 Tōtā prōvinciā pāx erat.

78.27 Imperātor tōtam victōriam populō nuntiāvit.

78.28 Tōtīus pugnae fortūna mūtāta est.

78.29 Mīlitēs tōtā audāciā pugnāvērunt.

78.30 Tōtīus imperii glōria aucta est.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The historical narrative section demonstrates several important grammatical features of tōtus:

1. Military Context Usage:
    - With collective nouns: tōtae legiōnēs, tōtīs cōpiīs
    - With abstract concepts: tōta virtūs, tōta audāciā
    - With geographical terms: tōtā Āfricā, tōtā prōvinciā
2. Case Functions:
    - Ablative of place where: tōtā Āfricā (throughout Africa)
    - Ablative of means: tōtīs cōpiīs (with all forces)
    - Genitive of possession: tōtīus exercitūs (of the entire army)
    - Accusative of duration: tōtum annum (for a whole year)
3. Word Order Patterns:
    - Initial position for emphasis: Tōtā prōvinciā pāx erat

- Mid-sentence for description: Dux tōtīs cōpiīs
- Separation from noun for style: Tōtīus... virtūs

4. Military Terminology:
    - Battle terms: pugna, bellum, cōpiae
    - Command structure: dux, imperātor
    - Unit descriptions: legiōnēs, exercitūs
5. Common Phrases:
    - tōtā audāciā: with complete boldness
    - tōta victōria: complete victory
    - tōtum imperium: the entire empire
6. Syntactic Features:
    - Agreement with abstract nouns: tōta audāciā
    - Use with passive verbs: laudāta est, mūtāta est
    - Coordination with other modifiers

Lesson 79 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: sīc (in this manner, thus)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

79.1 **Sīc** *thus* **puerī** *boys* **magistrum** *teacher* **semper** *always* **audīre** *to hear* **solent** *are accustomed*

79.2 **Māter** *mother* **sīc** *thus* **fīliam** *daughter* **docēre** *to teach* **incipit** *begins*

79.3 **Nōn** *not* **sīc** *thus* **amīcōs** *friends* **tractāre** *to treat* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

79.4 **Sīc** *thus* **avēs** *birds* **in** *in* **caelō** *sky* **volāre** *to fly* **solent** *are accustomed*

79.5 **Fābulam** *story* **sīc** *thus* **narrāre** *to tell* **potest** *is able* **senex** *old man*

79.6 **Sīc** *thus* **fortēs** *brave men* **prō** *for* **patriā** *fatherland* **pugnant** *fight*

79.7 **Carmina** *songs* **sīc** *thus* **poēta** *poet* **compōnere** *to compose* **solet** *is accustomed*

79.8 **Sīc** *thus* **iuvenis** *young man* **equum** *horse* **regere** *to guide* **discit** *learns*

79.9 **Nōn** *not* **sīc** *thus* **dē** *about* **amīcīs** *friends* **loquī** *to speak* **decet** *it is fitting*

79.10 **Sīc** *thus* **leō** *lion* **in** *in* **silvīs** *woods* **praedās** *prey* **captat** *hunts*

79.11 **Agricola** *farmer* **sīc** *thus* **agrōs** *fields* **colere** *to cultivate* **dēbet** *ought*

79.12 **Sīc** *thus* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **urbem** *city* **dēfendere** *to defend* **possunt** *are able*

79.13 **Mercātor** *merchant* **sīc** *thus* **pecūniam** *money* **computat** *calculates*

79.31 **Sīc** *thus* **sapientēs** *wise men* **vītam** *life* **agere** *to lead* **solent** *are accustomed*

79.15 **Magister** *teacher* **puerōs** *boys* **sīc** *thus* **laudāre** *to praise* **gaudet** *rejoices*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

79.1 Sīc puerī magistrum semper audīre solent. *The boys are always accustomed to listen to the teacher in this way.*

79.2 Māter sīc fīliam docēre incipit. *The mother begins to teach her daughter thus.*

79.3 Nōn sīc amīcōs tractāre dēbēmus. *We ought not to treat friends in this way.*

79.4 Sīc avēs in caelō volāre solent. *Birds are accustomed to fly in the sky in this manner.*

79.5 Fābulam sīc narrāre potest senex. *The old man can tell the story in this way.*

79.6 Sīc fortēs prō patriā pugnant. *Thus the brave men fight for their fatherland.*

79.7 Carmina sīc poēta compōnere solet. *The poet is accustomed to compose songs in this way.*

79.8 Sīc iuvenis equum regere discit. *Thus the young man learns to guide the horse.*

79.9 Nōn sīc dē amīcīs loquī decet. *It is not fitting to speak about friends in this way.*

79.10 Sīc leō in silvīs praedās captat. *Thus the lion hunts prey in the woods.*

79.11 Agricola sīc agrōs colere dēbet. *The farmer ought to cultivate the fields in this way.*

79.12 Sīc mīlitēs urbem dēfendere possunt. *Thus the soldiers can defend the city.*

79.13 Mercātor sīc pecūniam computat. *The merchant calculates money in this way.*

79.31 Sīc sapientēs vītam agere solent. *Thus wise men are accustomed to lead their life.*

79.15 Magister puerōs sīc laudāre gaudet. *The teacher rejoices to praise the boys in this way.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

79.1 Sīc puerī magistrum semper audīre solent.

79.2 Māter sīc fīliam docēre incipit.

79.3 Nōn sīc amīcōs tractāre dēbēmus.

79.4 Sīc avēs in caelō volāre solent.

79.5 Fābulam sīc narrāre potest senex.

79.6 Sīc fortēs prō patriā pugnant.

79.7 Carmina sīc poēta compōnere solet.

79.8 Sīc iuvenis equum regere discit.

79.9 Nōn sīc dē amīcīs loquī decet.

79.10 Sīc leō in silvīs praedās captat.

79.11 Agricola sīc agrōs colere dēbet.

79.12 Sīc mīlitēs urbem dēfendere possunt.

79.13 Mercātor sīc pecūniam computat.

79.31 Sīc sapientēs vītam agere solent.

79.15 Magister puerōs sīc laudāre gaudet.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adverb "sīc" is a versatile word that English speakers can think of as meaning "thus," "in this way," or "so." Here are its key features:

1. Basic Usage:
    - As a demonstrative adverb showing manner
    - Often refers to something just mentioned or about to be mentioned
    - Can modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs
2. Position in Sentence:
    - Often appears near the beginning for emphasis
    - Can appear before or after the word it modifies
    - Frequently found with infinitives to show manner
3. Common Constructions:
    - With solēre: "sīc...solent" (are accustomed to...thus)
    - In negations: "nōn sīc" (not in this way)
    - With complementary infinitives
4. Special Uses:
    - In comparisons: "sīc...ut" (just as...so)
    - In correlative expressions
    - For emphasis or demonstration

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "sīc" requires cultural context:

1. In Roman Rhetoric:
    - Used for emphasis in speeches
    - Common in quotations
    - Important in logical arguments
2. In Literature:
    - Often introduces examples
    - Used in poetry for emphasis
    - Common in historical narratives
3. Modern Usage:

    - Still used in academic writing [sic]
    - Important in legal documents
    - Found in scholarly citations
4. Educational Context:
    - Used in teaching methodology
    - Important in rhetorical training
    - Part of standard Latin instruction

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Vergil's Aeneid (4.660-663):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Sīc *thus* **sīc** *thus* **iuvat** *it pleases* **īre** *to go* **sub** *under* **umbrās** *shadows!* **Hauriat** *let him drink in* **hunc** *this* **oculīs** *with eyes* **ignem** *fire* **crūdēlis** *cruel one* **ab** *from* **altō** *high* **Dardanus** *Dardanian* **et** *and* **nostrae** *of our* **sēcum** *with himself* **ferat** *let him bear* **ōmina** *omens* **mortis** *of death*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Sīc, sīc iuvat īre sub umbrās! Hauriat hunc oculīs ignem crūdēlis ab altō Dardanus et nostrae sēcum ferat ōmina mortis."

"Thus, thus it pleases me to go beneath the shadows! Let the cruel Dardanian drink in this fire with his eyes from the deep, and take with him the omens of our death."

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage comes from Dido's final speech. The repetition of "sīc" emphasizes her determination and emotional state. The word helps build dramatic intensity.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Double "sīc" for emphasis
- Subjunctive "hauriat" and "ferat" expressing wishes
- Complex sentence structure typical of poetry
- Use of demonstrative "hunc" with "ignem"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

79.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **interrogat** *asks* **quōmodo** *how* **virtūtem** *virtue* **intellegat** *he understands*

79.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **sīc** *thus* **sē** *himself* **putāre** *to think* **virtutem** *virtue* **esse** *to be* **rem** *thing* **optimam** *best*

79.18 **Tum** *then* **magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says* **nōn** *not* **sīc** *thus* **dē** *about* **virtūte** *virtue* **cogitandum** *must be thought* **esse** *to be*

79.19 **Nam** *for* **sīc** *thus* **cogitāre** *to think* **nihil** *nothing* **prōdest** *benefits* **nisi** *unless* **quoque** *also* **rēctē** *rightly* **agāmus** *we act*

79.20 **Discipulus** *pupil* **rogat** *asks* **num** *whether* **sīc** *thus* **cēterī** *others* **philosophī** *philosophers* **quoque** *also* **doceant** *teach*

79.21 **Magister** *teacher* **respondet** *replies* **sīc** *thus* **Platōnem** *Plato* **ipsum** *himself* **docuisse** *to have taught*

79.22 **Discipulus** *pupil* **quaerit** *asks* **quōmodo** *how* **sīc** *thus* **vīvere** *to live* **possimus** *we can*

79.23 **Sīc** *thus* **magister** *teacher* **explicat** *explains* **viam** *way* **sapientiae** *of wisdom*

79.24 **Discipulus** *pupil* **intellegēns** *understanding* **sīc** *thus* **dīcit** *says* **sē** *himself* **nunc** *now* **melius** *better* **comprehendere** *to comprehend*

79.25 **Magister** *teacher* **gaudet** *rejoices* **quod** *because* **discipulus** *pupil* **sīc** *thus* **proficit** *makes progress*

79.26 **Ille** *that one* **sīc** *thus* **pergit** *continues* **docēre** *to teach* **dē** *about* **summō** *highest* **bonō** *good*

79.27 **Discipulus** *pupil* **sīc** *thus* **respondēns** *responding* **ostendit** *shows* **sē** *himself* **intellexisse** *to have understood*

79.28 **Magister** *teacher* **exempla** *examples* **sīc** *thus* **prōpōnit** *sets forth* **ut** *so that* **clāriōra** *clearer* **fīant** *they may become*

79.29 **Discipulus** *pupil* **sīc** *thus* **ratiocinārī** *to reason* **incipit** *begins* **dē** *about* **rēbus** *things* **gravibus** *serious*

79.30 **Tandem** *finally* **colloquium** *conversation* **sīc** *thus* **fīnītur** *is ended* **ut** *that* **uterque** *each* **laetior** *happier* **discedat** *may depart*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

79.16 Magister discipulum interrogat quōmodo virtūtem intellegat. *The teacher asks the pupil how he understands virtue.*

79.17 Discipulus respondet sīc sē putāre virtutem esse rem optimam. *The pupil replies that he thinks thus: virtue is the best thing.*

79.18 Tum magister dīcit nōn sīc dē virtūte cogitandum esse. *Then the teacher says that virtue must not be thought about in this way.*

79.19 Nam sīc cogitāre nihil prōdest nisi quoque rēctē agāmus. *For thinking thus benefits nothing unless we also act rightly.*

79.20 Discipulus rogat num sīc cēterī philosophī quoque doceant. *The pupil asks whether other philosophers also teach thus.*

79.21 Magister respondet sīc Platōnem ipsum docuisse. *The teacher replies that Plato himself taught thus.*

79.22 Discipulus quaerit quōmodo sīc vīvere possimus. *The pupil asks how we can live thus.*

79.23 Sīc magister explicat viam sapientiae. *Thus the teacher explains the way of wisdom.*

79.24 Discipulus intellegēns sīc dīcit sē nunc melius comprehendere. *The understanding pupil says thus that he now comprehends better.*

79.25 Magister gaudet quod discipulus sīc proficit. *The teacher rejoices because the pupil makes progress thus.*

79.26 Ille sīc pergit docēre dē summō bonō. *He continues thus to teach about the highest good.*

79.27 Discipulus sīc respondēns ostendit sē intellexisse. *The pupil, responding thus, shows that he has understood.*

79.28 Magister exempla sīc prōpōnit ut clāriōra fīant. *The teacher sets forth examples thus so that they may become clearer.*

79.29 Discipulus sīc ratiocinārī incipit dē rēbus gravibus. *The pupil thus begins to reason about serious matters.*

79.30 Tandem colloquium sīc fīnītur ut uterque laetior discedat. *Finally the conversation is ended thus, that each may depart happier.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

79.16 Magister discipulum interrogat quōmodo virtūtem intellegat.

79.17 Discipulus respondet sīc sē putāre virtutem esse rem optimam.

79.18 Tum magister dīcit nōn sīc dē virtūte cogitandum esse.

79.19 Nam sīc cogitāre nihil prōdest nisi quoque rēctē agāmus.

79.20 Discipulus rogat num sīc cēterī philosophī quoque doceant.

79.21 Magister respondet sīc Platōnem ipsum docuisse.

79.22 Discipulus quaerit quōmodo sīc vīvere possimus.

79.23 Sīc magister explicat viam sapientiae.

79.24 Discipulus intellegēns sīc dīcit sē nunc melius comprehendere.

79.25 Magister gaudet quod discipulus sīc proficit.

79.26 Ille sīc pergit docēre dē summō bonō.

79.27 Discipulus sīc respondēns ostendit sē intellexisse.

79.28 Magister exempla sīc prōpōnit ut clāriōra fīant.

79.29 Discipulus sīc ratiocinārī incipit dē rēbus gravibus.

79.30 Tandem colloquium sīc fīnītur ut uterque laetior discedat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In this philosophical dialogue, "sīc" is used in several specialized ways:

1. In Direct Speech:
    - Introducing statements: "sīc dīcit"
    - Qualifying responses: "sīc respondet"
    - Marking explanations: "sīc explicat"
2. With Indirect Discourse:
    - After verbs of saying: "dīcit sīc..."
    - With accusative and infinitive: "sē sīc putāre"
    - In indirect questions: "quōmodo sīc..."
3. Special Philosophical Uses:
    - Marking logical conclusions
    - Introducing examples
    - Qualifying methods of thinking
    - Referring to previously stated ideas
4. With Purpose Clauses:
    - "sīc...ut" constructions
    - Showing result or intention
    - Linking cause and effect
5. With Participial Phrases:
    - Present participles: "sīc respondēns"
    - Perfect participles: "sīc intellēctum"
    - Qualifying manner of action

The dialogue demonstrates how "sīc" helps structure philosophical discourse by:

- Marking transitions between ideas
- Introducing new concepts
- Referring to established principles
- Concluding arguments

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 80 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 80: hīc (here)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

80.1 **Lupus** *wolf* **hīc** *here* **stat** *stands* **et** *and* **ovēs** *sheep* **spectat** *watches*

80.2 **Mīles** *soldier* **hīc** *here* **mūrum** *wall* **altum** *high* **aedificat** *builds*

80.3 **Hīc** *here* **iam** *now* **templum** *temple* **nōvum** *new* **surgit** *rises*

80.4 **Senex** *old man* **hīc** *here* **sōlus** *alone* **habitat** *lives*

80.5 **Servī** *slaves* **hīc** *here* **labōrem** *work* **grave** *heavy* **faciunt** *do*

80.6 **Agricola** *farmer* **hīc** *here* **taurum** *bull* **nigrum** *black* **videt** *sees*

80.7 **Hīc** *here* **virī** *men* **fortēs** *brave* **pugnant** *fight*

80.8 **Nautae** *sailors* **hīc** *here* **nāvem** *ship* **longam** *long* **parant** *prepare*

80.9 **Puer** *boy* **hīc** *here* **litterās** *letters* **Latīnās** *Latin* **discit** *learns*

80.10 **Hīc** *here* **aqua** *water* **limpida** *clear* **fluit** *flows*

80.11 **Magistra** *teacher* **hīc** *here* **fābulam** *story* **nārrat** *tells*

80.12 **Hīc** *here* **arbor** *tree* **alta** *tall* **crescit** *grows*

80.13 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **hīc** *here* **castra** *camp* **pōnunt** *place*

80.31 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **hīc** *here* **forum** *forum* **frequentant** *frequent*

80.15 **Hīc** *here* **pāx** *peace* **semper** *always* **manet** *remains*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

80.1 Lupus hīc stat et ovēs spectat. *A wolf stands here and watches the sheep.*

80.2 Mīles hīc mūrum altum aedificat. *A soldier builds a high wall here.*

80.3 Hīc iam templum nōvum surgit. *Here now rises a new temple.*

80.4 Senex hīc sōlus habitat. *An old man lives here alone.*

80.5 Servī hīc labōrem grave faciunt. *Slaves do heavy work here.*

80.6 Agricola hīc taurum nigrum videt. *A farmer sees a black bull here.*

80.7 Hīc virī fortēs pugnant. *Here brave men fight.*

80.8 Nautae hīc nāvem longam parant. *Sailors prepare a long ship here.*

80.9 Puer hīc litterās Latīnās discit. *A boy learns Latin letters here.*

80.10 Hīc aqua limpida fluit. *Here clear water flows.*

80.11 Magistra hīc fābulam nārrat. *A teacher tells a story here.*

80.12 Hīc arbor alta crescit. *Here a tall tree grows.*

80.13 Mīlitēs hīc castra pōnunt. *Soldiers establish a camp here.*

80.31 Cīvēs hīc forum frequentant. *Citizens frequent the forum here.*

80.15 Hīc pāx semper manet. *Here peace always remains.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

80.1 Lupus hīc stat et ovēs spectat.

80.2 Mīles hīc mūrum altum aedificat.

80.3 Hīc iam templum nōvum surgit.

80.4 Senex hīc sōlus habitat.

80.5 Servī hīc labōrem grave faciunt.

80.6 Agricola hīc taurum nigrum videt.

80.7 Hīc virī fortēs pugnant.

80.8 Nautae hīc nāvem longam parant.

80.9 Puer hīc litterās Latīnās discit.

80.10 Hīc aqua limpida fluit.

80.11 Magistra hīc fābulam nārrat.

80.12 Hīc arbor alta crescit.

80.13 Mīlitēs hīc castra pōnunt.

80.31 Cīvēs hīc forum frequentant.

80.15 Hīc pāx semper manet.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adverb "hīc" (here) has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form:
    - Unchanging adverb of place
    - Related to demonstrative pronoun "hic, haec, hoc"

    - Long ī marked by macron
    - Often paired with "hinc" (from here)
2. Position in Sentence:
    - Can appear at start: "Hīc virī fortēs pugnant"
    - After subject: "Puer hīc discit"
    - Before verb: "Senex hīc habitat"
    - Flexible placement for emphasis
3. Common Uses:
    - Physical location: "Hīc arbor crescit"
    - Temporal setting: "Hīc iam templum surgit"
    - In contrasts: "hīc... illīc" (here... there)
    - With motion verbs: "hīc stat"
4. Typical Constructions:
    - With esse: "hīc est" (is here)
    - In descriptions: "hīc habitat" (lives here)
    - With visible actions: "hīc videt" (sees here)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "hīc" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Spatial Awareness:
    - Romans emphasized physical presence
    - Important in legal proceedings
    - Critical for military commands
    - Used in religious ritual locations
2. Literary Usage:
    - Common in historical narratives
    - Used in poetry for scene-setting
    - Important in dramatic texts
    - Found in inscription formulas
3. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "here"
    - Used in academic Latin
    - Found in legal phrases
    - Common in ecclesiastical Latin

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.16):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Hīc *here* **locus** *place* **aequō** *level* **ferē** *almost* **spatiō** *space* **ā** *from* **castrīs** *camp* **Ariovistī** *of Ariovistus* **et** *and* **Caesaris** *of Caesar* **aberat** *was distant.* **Eō** *to that place* **ad** *for* **colloquium** *conference* **vēnērunt** *they came.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō ad colloquium vēnērunt."

This place was almost equidistant from the camps of Ariovistus and Caesar. They came there for the conference.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "hīc" to establish the crucial meeting location between opposing forces. The precise description of the place emphasizes the diplomatic significance.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Hīc" modifies "locus" as demonstrative
- Ablative of separation with "ā"
- Ablative of specification in "spatiō"
- Perfect tense "aberat" for description
- Purpose clause with "ad colloquium"

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

80.16 **Dux** *leader* **hīc** *here* **castra** *camp* **posuit** *placed* **quod** *because* **locus** *place* **idōneus** *suitable* **erat** *was*

80.17 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **hīc** *here* **vallum** *rampart* **altum** *high* **aedificāvērunt** *built*

80.18 **Hīc** *here* **turris** *tower* **lignea** *wooden* **stat** *stands* **unde** *from where* **hostēs** *enemies* **vidērī** *to be seen* **possunt** *are able*

80.19 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **hīc** *here* **vestigia** *tracks* **hostium** *of enemies* **invēnērunt** *found*

80.20 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **hīc** *here* **excubiās** *watches* **agunt** *keep* **nē** *lest* **hostēs** *enemies* **appropinquent** *approach*

80.21 **Hīc** *here* **pābulum** *fodder* **equīs** *for horses* **abundat** *abounds*

80.22 **Legiō** *legion* **decimā** *tenth* **hīc** *here* **hiemābit** *will winter*

80.23 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **hīc** *here* **flūmen** *river* **trānsīre** *to cross* **temptant** *try*

80.24 **Dux** *leader* **hīc** *here* **cōnsilium** *plan* **mīlitibus** *to soldiers* **aperit** *reveals*

80.25 **Hīc** *here* **nōs** *we* **victōriam** *victory* **māgnam** *great* **reportāvimus** *brought back*

80.26 **Centuriō** *centurion* **hīc** *here* **ōrdinem** *rank* **īnstruit** *arranges*

80.27 **Hīc** *here* **tormenta** *siege engines* **positā** *placed* **sunt** *are* **ad** *for* **oppugnātiōnem** *attack*

80.28 **Signifer** *standard-bearer* **hīc** *here* **aquilam** *eagle* **legiōnis** *of legion* **tenet** *holds*

80.29 **Hīc** *here* **impedīmenta** *baggage* **exercitūs** *of army* **relicta** *left behind* **sunt** *are*

80.30 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **hīc** *here* **mortuōs** *dead* **sepelīvērunt** *buried*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

80.16 Dux hīc castra posuit quod locus idōneus erat. *The leader placed the camp here because the place was suitable.*

80.17 Mīlitēs hīc vallum altum aedificāvērunt. *The soldiers built a high rampart here.*

80.18 Hīc turris lignea stat unde hostēs vidērī possunt. *Here stands a wooden tower from which the enemies can be seen.*

80.19 Explōrātōrēs hīc vestigia hostium invēnērunt. *The scouts found enemy tracks here.*

80.20 Mīlitēs hīc excubiās agunt nē hostēs appropinquent. *The soldiers keep watch here lest the enemies approach.*

80.21 Hīc pābulum equīs abundat. *Here fodder abounds for the horses.*

80.22 Legiō decimā hīc hiemābit. *The tenth legion will winter here.*

80.23 Equitēs hīc flūmen trānsīre temptant. *The cavalry try to cross the river here.*

80.24 Dux hīc cōnsilium mīlitibus aperit. *The leader reveals his plan to the soldiers here.*

80.25 Hīc nōs victōriam māgnam reportāvimus. *Here we won a great victory.*

80.26 Centuriō hīc ōrdinem īnstruit. *The centurion arranges the rank here.*

80.27 Hīc tormenta positā sunt ad oppugnātiōnem. *Here siege engines are positioned for the attack.*

80.28 Signifer hīc aquilam legiōnis tenet. *The standard-bearer holds the legion's eagle here.*

80.29 Hīc impedīmenta exercitūs relicta sunt. *Here the army's baggage was left behind.*

80.30 Mīlitēs hīc mortuōs sepelīvērunt. *The soldiers buried their dead here.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

80.16 Dux hīc castra posuit quod locus idōneus erat.

80.17 Mīlitēs hīc vallum altum aedificāvērunt.

80.18 Hīc turris lignea stat unde hostēs vidērī possunt.

80.19 Explōrātōrēs hīc vestigia hostium invēnērunt.

80.20 Mīlitēs hīc excubiās agunt nē hostēs appropinquent.

80.21 Hīc pābulum equīs abundat.

80.22 Legiō decimā hīc hiemābit.

80.23 Equitēs hīc flūmen trānsīre temptant.

80.24 Dux hīc cōnsilium mīlitibus aperit.

80.25 Hīc nōs victōriam māgnam reportāvimus.

80.26 Centuriō hīc ōrdinem īnstruit.

80.27 Hīc tormenta positā sunt ad oppugnātiōnem.

80.28 Signifer hīc aquilam legiōnis tenet.

80.29 Hīc impedīmenta exercitūs relicta sunt.

80.30 Mīlitēs hīc mortuōs sepelīvērunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

Military usage of "hīc" has specific features:

1. Strategic Location:
    - With verbs of placing: "castra ponere"
    - For defensive positions: "vallum aedificāre"
    - With observation posts: "unde vidērī possunt"
2. Technical Terms:
    - Military vocabulary
    - Command structures
    - Position reporting
3. Temporal Uses:
    - For immediate actions: "hīc excubiās agunt"
    - Future plans: "hīc hiemābit"
    - Past events: "hīc victōriam reportāvimus"
4. Common Military Constructions:
    - With defensive terms: "vallum," "castra," "tormenta"
    - Supply terminology: "pābulum," "impedīmenta"
    - Personnel references: "centuriō," "signifer," "explōrātōrēs"
5. Special Military Phrases:
    - Battle formations: "ōrdinem īnstruere"
    - Camp activities: "excubiās agere"
    - Strategic decisions: "cōnsilium aperīre"
6. Grammatical Features in Military Context:
    - Purpose clauses: "nē hostēs appropinquent"
    - Passive voice for reports: "positā sunt"
    - Ablative of place: "hīc" with specific location
7. Word Order in Military Reports:
    - Initial position for emphasis: "Hīc turris lignea stat"

- Medial position for description: "Mīlitēs hīc vallum aedificāvērunt"
- With complex phrases: "Dux hīc castra posuit"

8. Verb Tenses with Military Usage:
    - Perfect for completed actions: "aedificāvērunt"
    - Present for ongoing situations: "agunt"
    - Future for planned operations: "hiemābit"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 81 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 81: iste ista istud (that, that of yours)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

81.1 **Ista** *that* **puella** *girl* **rōsam** *rose* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **carpit** *picks*

81.2 **Magister** *teacher* **istud** *that* **exemplum** *example* **discipulīs** *to students* **explicat** *explains*

81.3 **Istī** *to that* **poētae** *poet* **carmina** *poems* **māgna** *great* **plācent** *please*

81.4 **Pater** *father* **istōs** *those* **librōs** *books* **fīliō** *to son* **dedit** *gave*

81.5 **Istae** *those* **rosae** *roses* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **pulchrae** *beautiful* **sunt** *are*

81.6 **Mīles** *soldier* **istā** *by that* **viā** *road* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **venit** *comes*

81.7 **Quid** *what* **tibi** *to you* **istud** *that* **verbum** *word* **significat** *means*

81.8 **Istōrum** *of those* **hominum** *men* **virtūtēs** *virtues* **laudāmus** *we praise*

81.9 **Istīs** *to those* **mercātōribus** *merchants* **pecūniam** *money* **dēbēmus** *we owe*

81.10 **Ista** *that* **sententia** *opinion* **mihi** *to me* **nōn** *not* **placet** *pleases*

81.11 **Agricola** *farmer* **istud** *that* **frūmentum** *grain* **in** *in* **agrō** *field* **colligit** *gathers*

81.12 **Istae** *those* **fābulae** *stories* **puerōs** *boys* **dēlectant** *delight*

81.13 **Cūr** *why* **istam** *that* **epistulam** *letter* **scrīpsistī** *did you write*

81.31 **Istīus** *of that* **virī** *man* **cōnsilium** *plan* **audiāmus** *let us hear*

81.15 **Māter** *mother* **istud** *that* **vestīmentum** *garment* **fīliae** *for daughter* **parat** *prepares*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

81.1 Ista puella rōsam in hortō carpit. *That girl of yours is picking a rose in the garden.*

81.2 Magister istud exemplum discipulīs explicat. *The teacher explains that example of yours to the students.*

81.3 Istī poētae carmina māgna plācent. *Great poems please that poet of yours.*

81.4 Pater istōs librōs fīliō dedit. *Father gave those books of yours to his son.*

81.5 Istae rosae in hortō pulchrae sunt. *Those roses of yours in the garden are beautiful.*

81.6 Mīles istā viā ad urbem venit. *The soldier comes to the city by that road of yours.*

81.7 Quid tibi istud verbum significat? *What does that word of yours mean to you?*

81.8 Istōrum hominum virtūtēs laudāmus. *We praise the virtues of those men of yours.*

81.9 Istīs mercātōribus pecūniam dēbēmus. *We owe money to those merchants of yours.*

81.10 Ista sententia mihi nōn placet. *That opinion of yours does not please me.*

81.11 Agricola istud frūmentum in agrō colligit. *The farmer gathers that grain of yours in the field.*

81.12 Istae fābulae puerōs dēlectant. *Those stories of yours delight the boys.*

81.13 Cūr istam epistulam scrīpsistī? *Why did you write that letter of yours?*

81.31 Istīus virī cōnsilium audiāmus. *Let us hear the plan of that man of yours.*

81.15 Māter istud vestīmentum fīliae parat. *Mother prepares that garment of yours for her daughter.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

81.1 Ista puella rōsam in hortō carpit.

81.2 Magister istud exemplum discipulīs explicat.

81.3 Istī poētae carmina māgna plācent.

81.4 Pater istōs librōs fīliō dedit.

81.5 Istae rosae in hortō pulchrae sunt.

81.6 Mīles istā viā ad urbem venit.

81.7 Quid tibi istud verbum significat?

81.8 Istōrum hominum virtūtēs laudāmus.

81.9 Istīs mercātōribus pecūniam dēbēmus.

81.10 Ista sententia mihi nōn placet.

81.11 Agricola istud frūmentum in agrō colligit.

81.12 Istae fābulae puerōs dēlectant.

81.13 Cūr istam epistulam scrīpsistī?

81.31 Istīus virī cōnsilium audiāmus.

81.15 Māter istud vestīmentum fīliae parat.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The demonstrative pronoun "iste, ista, istud" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Forms and Declension:
    - Follows pattern similar to "ille, illa, illud"
    - Three gender forms: iste (m.), ista (f.), istud (n.)
    - Declines like a first/second declension adjective with some variations
    - Neuter singular nominative/accusative ends in -ud
2. Case Uses (with examples):
    - Nominative: "Ista puella" (that girl as subject)
    - Accusative: "istōs librōs" (those books as object)
    - Genitive: "istīus virī" (of that man)
    - Dative: "istī poētae" (to that poet)
    - Ablative: "istā viā" (by that road)
3. Agreement:
    - Must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case
    - Example: "istae rosae" (feminine plural nominative)
    - Example: "istud verbum" (neuter singular nominative)
4. Special Meaning:
    - Often implies "that of yours" or "that near you"
    - Can have contemptuous tone in some contexts
    - Used for objects associated with person addressed

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "iste" requires cultural context:

1. Social Implications:
    - Often used in conversation and direct address
    - Can indicate social distance or familiarity
    - Important in legal and rhetorical contexts
2. Usage in Roman Courts:
    - "Iste" often referred to the defendant
    - Could carry negative connotation
    - Frequently used by Cicero in his speeches
3. Literary Uses:
    - Common in letters and dialogues

- Helps establish point of view
- Creates immediacy in narrative

4. Modern Relevance:
    - Similar to informal English "that...of yours"
    - Used in academic Latin today
    - Important for reading legal texts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "In Verrem" (2.1.58):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Iste *that man (Verres)* **quemadmodum** *in what way* **compositō** *having been arranged* **et** *and* **dēlībutō** *anointed* **capillō** *with hair* **per** *through* **forum** *forum* **volitet** *flits about* **cum** *with* **magnā** *great* **catervā** *crowd* **togātōrum** *of toga-wearing men* **vidētis** *you see,* **iūdicēs** *judges.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Iste quemadmodum compositō et dēlībutō capillō per forum volitet cum magnā catervā togātōrum vidētis, iūdicēs."

You see, judges, how that man (Verres) flits through the forum with his hair arranged and perfumed, accompanied by a great crowd of toga-wearing men.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "iste" here with its full contemptuous force, referring to Verres, the defendant. The word placement at the start emphasizes Cicero's scorn.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Iste" as nominative subject
- Ablative absolute "compositō et dēlībutō capillō"
- Subjunctive "volitet" in indirect question
- Complex sentence structure typical of Cicero

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Courtroom Speech

Part A (Interleaved Text)

81.16 **Iūdicēs** *judges,* **istum** *that* **hominem** *man* **ante** *before* **vōs** *you* **vidētis** *you see*

81.17 **Ista** *those* **verba** *words* **scelerata** *wicked* **crīmen** *crime* **manifēstant** *reveal*

81.18 **Istīus** *of that* **virī** *man* **facta** *deeds* **omnēs** *all* **condemnant** *condemn*

81.19 **Iste** *that man* **pecūniam** *money* **pūblicam** *public* **rapere** *to seize* **ausus** *having dared* **est** *is*

81.20 **Testēs** *witnesses* **istam** *that* **rem** *matter* **sine** *without* **dubiō** *doubt* **confirmant** *confirm*

81.21 **Istī** *for that* **fūrī** *thief* **nūlla** *no* **excūsātiō** *excuse* **est** *is*

81.22 **Quis** *who* **istīus** *of that man* **sceleris** *crime* **ignārus** *ignorant* **est** *is*

81.23 **Istae** *those* **litterae** *documents* **vēritātem** *truth* **ostendunt** *show*

81.24 **Istōs** *those* **dolōs** *tricks* **iam** *now* **palam** *openly* **facimus** *we make*

81.25 **Iste** *that man* **leges** *laws* **nostrās** *our* **contempsit** *despised*

81.26 **Istud** *that* **furtum** *theft* **rēs** *matter* **pūblica** *public* **nōn** *not* **ignōscet** *will forgive*

81.27 **Quis** *who* **istī** *that* **adulēscentī** *young man* **crēdet** *will believe*

81.28 **Istōrum** *of those* **testium** *witnesses* **verba** *words* **audīvistis** *you have heard*

81.29 **Ista** *that* **sententia** *verdict* **rempūblicam** *republic* **servābit** *will save*

81.30 **Iūdicēs** *judges* **istum** *that man* **mox** *soon* **damnābunt** *will condemn*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

81.16 Iūdicēs, istum hominem ante vōs vidētis. *Judges, you see that man before you.*

81.17 Ista verba scelerata crīmen manifēstant. *Those wicked words reveal the crime.*

81.18 Istīus virī facta omnēs condemnant. *Everyone condemns the deeds of that man.*

81.19 Iste pecūniam pūblicam rapere ausus est. *That man dared to seize public money.*

81.20 Testēs istam rem sine dubiō confirmant. *The witnesses confirm that matter without doubt.*

81.21 Istī fūrī nūlla excūsātiō est. *There is no excuse for that thief.*

81.22 Quis istīus sceleris ignārus est? *Who is unaware of that man's crime?*

81.23 Istae litterae vēritātem ostendunt. *Those documents show the truth.*

81.24 Istōs dolōs iam palam facimus. We now expose those tricks openly.

81.25 Iste leges nostrās contempsit. *That man despised our laws.*

81.26 Istud furtum rēs pūblica nōn ignōscet. *The state will not forgive that theft.*

81.27 Quis istī adulēscentī crēdet? *Who will believe that young man?*

81.28 Istōrum testium verba audīvistis. *You have heard the words of those witnesses.*

81.29 Ista sententia rempūblicam servābit. *That verdict will save the republic.*

81.30 Iūdicēs istum mox damnābunt. *The judges will soon condemn that man.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

81.16 Iūdicēs, istum hominem ante vōs vidētis.

81.17 Ista verba scelerata crīmen manifēstant.

81.18 Istīus virī facta omnēs condemnant.

81.19 Iste pecūniam pūblicam rapere ausus est.

81.20 Testēs istam rem sine dubiō confirmant.

81.21 Istī fūrī nūlla excūsātiō est.

81.22 Quis istīus sceleris ignārus est?

81.23 Istae litterae vēritātem ostendunt.

81.24 Istōs dolōs iam palam facimus.

81.25 Iste leges nostrās contempsit.

81.26 Istud furtum rēs pūblica nōn ignōscet.

81.27 Quis istī adulēscentī crēdet?

81.28 Istōrum testium verba audīvistis.

81.29 Ista sententia rempūblicam servābit.

81.30 Iūdicēs istum mox damnābunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation for Genre Section)

The use of "iste" in Roman legal contexts has several special characteristics:

1. Legal Terminology:
    - "Iste" often refers to the defendant
    - Frequently used with legal terms like "crīmen," "testis," "iūdex"
    - Can carry strong pejorative force
2. Rhetorical Patterns:
    - Opening address: "Iūdicēs, istum hominem..."
    - Rhetorical questions: "Quis istī adulēscentī crēdet?"
    - Strong assertions: "Ista verba scelerata crīmen manifēstant"
3. Case Usage in Legal Context:
    - Accusative for defendant: "istum hominem"
    - Genitive for possession: "istīus sceleris"
    - Dative for indirect objects: "istī fūrī"
4. Time References:
    - Present tense for current situation: "vidētis"
    - Future for outcome: "damnābunt"
    - Perfect for established facts: "contempsit"
5. Word Order in Legal Speech:
    - "Iste" often appears early in clause for emphasis
    - Can be separated from its noun for rhetorical effect
    - Final position of verbs common in formal speech
6. Special Constructions:
    - With legal vocabulary: "crīmen," "furtum," "leges"
    - In accusations: "iste... ausus est"

- In witness testimony: "testēs... confirmant"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 82 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: urbs urbis f. (city)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

82.1 **Magna** *great* **urbs** *city* **pulchra** *beautiful* **est** *is*

82.2 **Ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **hōc** *this* **diē** *day* **vēnimus** *we came*

82.3 **Hostēs** *enemies* **urbem** *city* **nostram** *our* **oppugnant** *attack*

82.4 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **urbī** *for city* **auxilium** *help* **ferunt** *bring*

82.5 **Dux** *leader* **urbis** *of city* **fortis** *brave* **erat** *was*

82.6 **In** *in* **urbe** *city* **multī** *many* **cīvēs** *citizens* **habitant** *dwell*

82.7 **Rōmam** *Rome* **urbem** *city* **clāram** *famous* **vidēmus** *we see*

82.8 **Mūrī** *walls* **urbis** *of city* **altī** *high* **sunt** *are*

82.9 **Hostēs** *enemies* **ab** *from* **urbe** *city* **fūgērunt** *fled*

82.10 **Urbs** *city* **nostra** *our* **septem** *seven* **portās** *gates* **habet** *has*

82.11 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **urbem** *city* **suam** *their own* **dēfendunt** *defend*

82.12 **Ex** *from* **urbe** *city* **magnā** *great* **vēnit** *comes* **poēta** *poet*

82.13 **Ad** *to* **portam** *gate* **urbis** *of city* **properāmus** *we hurry*

82.31 **Urbēs** *cities* **multae** *many* **in** *in* **Italiā** *Italy* **sunt** *are*

82.15 **Senātus** *senate* **populum** *people* **urbis** *of city* **regit** *rules*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

82.1 Magna urbs pulchra est. *The great city is beautiful.*

82.2 Ad urbem hōc diē vēnimus. *We came to the city on this day.*

82.3 Hostēs urbem nostram oppugnant. *The enemies are attacking our city.*

82.4 Mīlitēs urbī auxilium ferunt. *The soldiers bring help to the city.*

82.5 Dux urbis fortis erat. *The leader of the city was brave.*

82.6 In urbe multī cīvēs habitant. *Many citizens dwell in the city.*

82.7 Rōmam urbem clāram vidēmus. *We see Rome, the famous city.*

82.8 Mūrī urbis altī sunt. *The walls of the city are high.*

82.9 Hostēs ab urbe fūgērunt. *The enemies fled from the city.*

82.10 Urbs nostra septem portās habet. *Our city has seven gates.*

82.11 Cīvēs urbem suam dēfendunt. *The citizens defend their own city.*

82.12 Ex urbe magnā vēnit poēta. *From the great city comes the poet.*

82.13 Ad portam urbis properāmus. *We hurry to the gate of the city.*

82.31 Urbēs multae in Italiā sunt. *There are many cities in Italy.*

82.15 Senātus populum urbis regit. *The senate rules the people of the city.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

82.1 Magna urbs pulchra est.

82.2 Ad urbem hōc diē vēnimus.

82.3 Hostēs urbem nostram oppugnant.

82.4 Mīlitēs urbī auxilium ferunt.

82.5 Dux urbis fortis erat.

82.6 In urbe multī cīvēs habitant.

82.7 Rōmam urbem clāram vidēmus.

82.8 Mūrī urbis altī sunt.

82.9 Hostēs ab urbe fūgērunt.

82.10 Urbs nostra septem portās habet.

82.11 Cīvēs urbem suam dēfendunt.

82.12 Ex urbe magnā vēnit poēta.

82.13 Ad portam urbis properāmus.

82.31 Urbēs multae in Italiā sunt.

82.15 Senātus populum urbis regit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "urbs" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Basic Information:

- Third declension feminine noun
- Means "city" (especially a large, important city)
- Regular third declension pattern
- Stem: urb-

2. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: urbs
    - Genitive: urbis
    - Dative: urbī
    - Accusative: urbem
    - Ablative: urbe

   Plural:
    - Nominative: urbēs
    - Genitive: urbium
    - Dative: urbibus
    - Accusative: urbēs
    - Ablative: urbibus
3. Common Uses in Our Examples:
    - Subject: "Urbs nostra septem portās habet"
    - Direct object: "Cīvēs urbem suam dēfendunt"
    - With prepositions: "in urbe," "ab urbe," "ex urbe"
    - Possessive genitive: "mūrī urbis"
    - Apposition: "Rōmam urbem clāram"
4. Special Constructions:
    - In apposition with proper names of cities
    - Common in prepositional phrases
    - Often modified by possessive adjectives
    - Frequently used with defensive terminology

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "urbs" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Urban Concepts:
    - Distinguished from smaller towns (oppida)
    - Required certain legal/religious status
    - Center of Roman administration
    - Focus of cultural/economic life
2. The Ideal City:
    - Regular street layout
    - Central forum
    - Public buildings and temples
    - Defensive walls
    - Water supply system
3. Urban Life:
    - Dense population

- Mixed social classes
- Commercial activity
- Religious ceremonies
- Political gatherings

4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of English "urban"
    - Model for later city planning
    - Influence on modern terminology
    - Cultural importance of cities

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Livy's "Ab Urbe Condita" (1.16.7):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Deinde *then* **ab** *from* **illā** *that* **tempestāte** *storm* **cum** *when* **ad** *to* **terram** *earth* **cum** *with* **totō** *entire* **exercitū** *army* **sē** *himself* **recēpisset** *had withdrawn,* **urbem** *city* **novam** *new* **conditam** *founded* **vī** *by force* **et** *and* **armīs** *arms* **iūre** *by law* **ac** *and* **lēgibus** *laws* **dē** *from* **integrō** *fresh* **condere** *to establish* **parat** *prepares.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Deinde ab illā tempestāte cum ad terram cum totō exercitū sē recēpisset, urbem novam conditam vī et armīs iūre ac lēgibus dē integrō condere parat."

Then, after he had withdrawn to land with his entire army from that storm, he prepares to establish anew with law and legislation the new city that had been founded by force and arms.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Livy uses "urbs" here to emphasize the transformation of Rome from a military settlement to a legally constituted city. The contrast between "vī et armīs" and "iūre ac lēgibus" highlights this transition.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "urbem" as direct object of "condere"
- Perfect passive participle "conditam"
- Ablative of means: "vī et armīs," "iūre ac lēgibus"
- Complex sentence structure with cum clause
- Use of present tense "parat" for dramatic effect

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

82.16 **Antiquīs** *in ancient* **temporibus** *times* **urbs** *city* **parva** *small* **erat** *was*

82.17 **Multī** *many* **hominēs** *people* **novam** *new* **urbem** *city* **aedificāre** *to build* **coeperunt** *began*

82.18 **Prīmō** *at first* **urbs** *city* **parvōs** *small* **mūrōs** *walls* **habēbat** *had*

82.19 **Paulātim** *gradually* **urbis** *of city* **potentia** *power* **crēvit** *grew*

82.20 **Mercātōrēs** *merchants* **ex** *from* **multīs** *many* **terrīs** *lands* **ad** *to* **urbem** *city* **veniēbant** *were coming*

82.21 **Annīs** *in years* **sequentibus** *following* **urbs** *city* **nova** *new* **templa** *temples* **aedificāvit** *built*

82.22 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **in** *in* **urbe** *city* **lēgēs** *laws* **novās** *new* **scrībēbant** *were writing*

82.23 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **urbem** *city* **suam** *their* **magis** *more* **amābant** *were loving*

82.24 **Deinde** *then* **urbs** *city* **caput** *head* **magnī** *of great* **imperiī** *empire* **facta** *made* **est** *was*

82.25 **Aliī** *other* **populī** *peoples* **urbis** *of city* **potentiam** *power* **timēbant** *were fearing*

82.26 **Multī** *many* **ducēs** *leaders* **urbem** *city* **capere** *to capture* **temptāvērunt** *tried*

82.27 **Sed** *but* **urbs** *city* **semper** *always* **hostēs** *enemies* **vīcit** *conquered*

82.28 **Poētae** *poets* **dē** *about* **urbe** *city* **immortālī** *immortal* **cantābant** *were singing*

82.29 **Urbs** *city* **divitiās** *riches* **ex** *from* **omnibus** *all* **terrīs** *lands* **accēpit** *received*

82.30 **Tandem** *at last* **urbs** *city* **māxima** *greatest* **totīus** *of whole* **orbis** *world* **facta** *made* **est** *was*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

82.21 Annīs sequentibus urbs nova templa aedificāvit. *In the following years, the city built new temples.*

82.22 Senātōrēs in urbe lēgēs novās scrībēbant. *The senators in the city were writing new laws.*

82.23 Cīvēs urbem suam magis amābant. *The citizens loved their city more.*

82.24 Deinde urbs caput magnī imperiī facta est. *Then the city was made the capital of a great empire.*

82.25 Aliī populī urbis potentiam timēbant. *Other peoples feared the city's power.*

82.26 Multī ducēs urbem capere temptāvērunt. *Many leaders tried to capture the city.*

82.27 Sed urbs semper hostēs vīcit. *But the city always conquered its enemies.*

82.28 Poētae dē urbe immortālī cantābant. *Poets were singing about the immortal city.*

82.29 Urbs divitiās ex omnibus terrīs accēpit. The city received riches from all lands.

82.30 Tandem urbs māxima totīus orbis facta est. *Finally the city was made the greatest of the whole world.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

82.16 Antiquīs temporibus urbs parva erat.

82.17 Multī hominēs novam urbem aedificāre coeperunt.

82.18 Prīmō urbs parvōs mūrōs habēbat.

82.19 Paulātim urbis potentia crēvit.

82.20 Mercātōrēs ex multīs terrīs ad urbem veniēbant.

82.21 Annīs sequentibus urbs nova templa aedificāvit.

82.22 Senātōrēs in urbe lēgēs novās scrībēbant.

82.23 Cīvēs urbem suam magis amābant.

82.24 Deinde urbs caput magnī imperiī facta est.

82.25 Aliī populī urbis potentiam timēbant.

82.26 Multī ducēs urbem capere temptāvērunt.

82.27 Sed urbs semper hostēs vīcit.

82.28 Poētae dē urbe immortālī cantābant.

82.29 Urbs divitiās ex omnibus terrīs accēpit.

82.30 Tandem urbs māxima totīus orbis facta est.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The historical narrative section demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Temporal Development:
    - Use of time expressions: "antiquīs temporibus," "prīmō," "paulātim," "deinde," "tandem"
    - Imperfect tense for background description: "erat," "habēbat," "veniēbant"
    - Perfect tense for completed actions: "crēvit," "aedificāvit," "vīcit"
2. Case Usage with "urbs":
    - Nominative as subject: "urbs parva erat"
    - Accusative as object: "urbem capere temptāvērunt"
    - Genitive showing possession: "urbis potentia"
    - Ablative with prepositions: "in urbe," "dē urbe"
3. Complex Constructions:
    - Passive periphrastic: "facta est"
    - Complementary infinitive: "aedificāre coeperunt"
    - Descriptive ablative: "antiquīs temporibus"
    - Partitive genitive: "totīus orbis"

4. Word Order Patterns:
    - Varying position of "urbs" for emphasis
    - Natural Latin word order with verbs often final
    - Adjective placement both before and after nouns
    - Use of connectors: "sed," "deinde," "tandem"
5. Historical Style Elements:
    - Progressive development of narrative
    - Mix of narrative tenses
    - Use of concrete and abstract nouns
    - Balance of physical and political description

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 83 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: petō petere petīvī petītum (seek, aim at)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

83.1 **Mīles** *soldier* **urbem** *city* **petit** *seeks*

83.2 **Fortēs** *brave men* **glōriam** *glory* **petunt** *seek*

83.3 **Heri** *yesterday* **auxilium** *help* **ā** *from* **rēge** *king* **petīvimus** *we sought*

83.4 **Sapiēns** *wise man* **semper** *always* **vēritātem** *truth* **petit** *seeks*

83.5 **Dux** *leader* **pacem** *peace* **cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **petīvit** *sought*

83.6 **Manus** *hand* **dextram** *right hand* **petit** *aims at*

83.7 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **lībertātem** *freedom* **ā** *from* **tyrannō** *tyrant* **petent** *will seek*

83.8 **Puer** *boy* **pānem** *bread* **ā** *from* **mātre** *mother* **petit** *seeks*

83.9 **Nautae** *sailors* **portum** *harbor* **petunt** *seek*

83.10 **Agricola** *farmer* **deōs** *gods* **pluviam** *rain* **petit** *asks*

83.11 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **novās** *new* **lēgēs** *laws* **petīvērunt** *sought*

83.12 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **montēs** *mountains* **altōs** *high* **petunt** *seek*

83.13 **Mercātor** *merchant* **magnum** *great* **lucrum** *profit* **petit** *seeks*

83.31 **Discipulus** *student* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **ā** *from* **magistrō** *teacher* **petit** *seeks*

83.15 **Equitēs** *horsemen* **castra** *camp* **hostium** *of enemies* **petunt** *seek*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

83.1 Mīles urbem petit. *The soldier seeks the city.*

83.2 Fortēs glōriam petunt. *The brave seek glory.*

83.3 Heri auxilium ā rēge petīvimus. *Yesterday we sought help from the king.*

83.4 Vēritātem sapiēns semper petit. *The wise man always seeks truth.*

83.5 Pacem dux cum hostibus petīvit. *The leader sought peace with the enemies.*

83.6 Dextram manus petit. *The hand aims at the right.*

83.7 Lībertātem cīvēs ā tyrannō petent. *The citizens will seek freedom from the tyrant.*

83.8 Ā mātre puer pānem petit. *The boy seeks bread from his mother.*

83.9 Portum nautae petunt. *The sailors seek the harbor.*

83.10 Pluviam agricola deōs petit. *The farmer asks the gods for rain.*

83.11 Novās lēgēs senātōrēs petīvērunt. *The senators sought new laws.*

83.12 Montēs altōs legiōnēs petunt. *The legions seek the high mountains.*

83.13 Magnum lucrum mercātor petit. *The merchant seeks great profit.*

83.31 Sapientiam discipulus ā magistrō petit. *The student seeks wisdom from the teacher.*

83.15 Castra hostium equitēs petunt. *The horsemen seek the enemy camp.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

83.1 Mīles urbem petit.

83.2 Fortēs glōriam petunt.

83.3 Heri auxilium ā rēge petīvimus.

83.4 Vēritātem sapiēns semper petit.

83.5 Pacem dux cum hostibus petīvit.

83.6 Dextram manus petit.

83.7 Lībertātem cīvēs ā tyrannō petent.

83.8 Ā mātre puer pānem petit.

83.9 Portum nautae petunt.

83.10 Pluviam agricola deōs petit.

83.11 Novās lēgēs senātōrēs petīvērunt.

83.12 Montēs altōs legiōnēs petunt.

83.13 Magnum lucrum mercātor petit.

83.31 Sapientiam discipulus ā magistrō petit.

83.15 Castra hostium equitēs petunt.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "petō" is a 3rd conjugation verb with the following key forms:

- Present: petō, petis, petit, petimus, petitis, petunt
- Perfect: petīvī, petīvistī, petīvit, petīvimus, petīvistis, petīvērunt
- Supine: petītum
- Infinitive: petere

Special features for English speakers to note:

1. Double Accusative Construction:
    - Can take both direct object and person/thing asked
    - Example: "Pluviam deōs petit" (He asks the gods for rain)
2. Use with Prepositions:
    - ā/ab + ablative for source
    - Example: "Auxilium ā rēge petīvimus" (We sought help from the king)
3. Common Meanings:
    - seek (physical movement)
    - aim at (direction)
    - ask for (request)
    - attack (military context)
4. Word Order:
    - Often places object before verb
    - Can emphasize goal by fronting accusative

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "petō" requires cultural context:

1. Political Usage:
    - Formal requesting of office (petītio)
    - Seeking votes in elections
    - Diplomatic requests between states
2. Military Context:
    - Movement toward objective
    - Strategic targeting
    - Formal demands before battle
3. Social Implications:

- Hierarchical relationships
- Patron-client dynamics
- Religious supplications

4. Modern Connections:
    - "Petition" in English
    - Legal terminology
    - Formal requests

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.31):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Ariovistus *Ariovistus* **tantōs** *such great* **sibi** *for himself* **spīritūs** *pride* **tantam** *such great* **arrogantiam** *arrogance* **sūmpserat** *had assumed,* **ut** *that* **ferendus** *to be endured* **nōn** *not* **vidērētur** *he seemed,* **et** *and* **secundum** *second* **legiōnem** *legion* **in** *into* **bellum** *war* **petere** *to seek* **coepit** *began.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur, et secundum legiōnem in bellum petere coepit."

Ariovistus had taken on such great pride and such great arrogance for himself that he seemed unbearable, and he began to attack the second legion in battle.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "petere" here in its hostile sense of "attack," showing how the verb's basic meaning of "seek" can take on aggressive connotations in military contexts.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "petere" is complementary infinitive with "coepit"
- "in bellum" shows direction of hostile intent
- Result clause with "ut" follows main clause
- Perfect tense "sūmpserat" shows completed action

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Dispatch

Part A (Interleaved Text)

83.16 **Dux** *leader* **noster** *our* **montem** *mountain* **altum** *high* **cum** *with* **exercitū** *army* **petit** *seeks*

83.17 **Hostēs** *enemies* **auxilium** *help* **ā** *from* **sociīs** *allies* **petīvērunt** *sought*

83.18 **Legiō** *legion* **nostra** *our* **castra** *camp* **hostium** *of enemies* **celeriter** *quickly* **petit** *seeks*

83.19 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **flūmen** *river* **proximum** *nearest* **magnō** *with great* **impetū** *force* **petunt** *seek*

83.20 **Centuriō** *centurion* **novum** *new* **locum** *place* **castrīs** *for camp* **petit** *seeks*

83.21 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **nostrī** *our* **arcem** *citadel* **hostium** *of enemies* **petīvērunt** *sought*

83.22 **Dux** *leader* **victōriam** *victory* **ā** *from* **dīs** *gods* **immortālibus** *immortal* **petit** *seeks*

83.23 **Sagittāriī** *archers* **hostēs** *enemies* **fūgientēs** *fleeing* **petunt** *seek/aim at*

83.24 **Exploratōrēs** *scouts* **viam** *road* **per** *through* **silvam** *forest* **petunt** *seek*

83.25 **Tribūnus** *tribune* **mīlitum** *of soldiers* **novā** *new* **signa** *standards* **petit** *seeks*

83.26 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **Gallōrum** *of Gauls* **fīnēs** *territories* **petunt** *seek*

83.27 **Praefectus** *prefect* **castrōrum** *of camp* **aquam** *water* **ā** *from* **fontibus** *springs* **petit** *seeks*

83.28 **Impedīmenta** *baggage* **nostra** *our* **locum** *place* **tūtum** *safe* **petunt** *seek*

83.29 **Dux** *leader* **hostium** *of enemies* **pacem** *peace* **ā** *from* **Rōmānīs** *Romans* **petit** *seeks*

83.30 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **victōrēs** *victorious* **praemia** *rewards* **ā** *from* **imperātōre** *commander* **petunt** *seek*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

83.19 Equitēs flūmen proximum magnō impetū petunt. *The cavalry seek the nearest river with great force.*

83.20 Novum locum castrīs centuriō petit. *The centurion seeks a new place for the camp.*

83.21 Arcem hostium mīlitēs nostrī petīvērunt. *Our soldiers sought the enemy citadel.*

83.22 Victōriam dux ā dīs immortālibus petit. *The leader seeks victory from the immortal gods.*

83.23 Sagittāriī hostēs fūgientēs petunt. *The archers aim at the fleeing enemies.*

83.24 Viam per silvam exploratōrēs petunt. *The scouts seek a path through the forest.*

83.25 Tribūnus mīlitum novā signa petit. *The military tribune seeks new standards.*

83.26 Fīnēs Gallōrum legiōnēs petunt. *The legions seek the territories of the Gauls.*

83.27 Praefectus castrōrum aquam ā fontibus petit. *The camp prefect seeks water from the springs.*

83.28 Locum tūtum impedīmenta nostra petunt. *Our baggage seeks a safe place.*

83.29 Pacem dux hostium ā Rōmānīs petit. *The leader of the enemies seeks peace from the Romans.*

83.30 Praemia mīlitēs victōrēs ab imperātōre petunt. The victorious soldiers seek rewards from the commander.

Part C (Latin Text Only)

83.16 Dux noster montem altum cum exercitū petit.

83.17 Hostēs auxilium ā sociīs petīvērunt.

83.18 Legiō nostra castra hostium celeriter petit.

83.19 Equitēs flūmen proximum magnō impetū petunt.

83.20 Novum locum castrīs centuriō petit.

83.21 Arcem hostium mīlitēs nostrī petīvērunt.

83.22 Victōriam dux ā dīs immortālibus petit.

83.23 Sagittāriī hostēs fūgientēs petunt.

83.24 Viam per silvam exploratōrēs petunt.

83.25 Tribūnus mīlitum novā signa petit.

83.26 Fīnēs Gallōrum legiōnēs petunt.

83.27 Praefectus castrōrum aquam ā fontibus petit.

83.28 Locum tūtum impedīmenta nostra petunt.

83.29 Pacem dux hostium ā Rōmānīs petit.

83.30 Praemia mīlitēs victōrēs ab imperātōre petunt.

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

In military dispatches, "petō" exhibits special characteristics worth noting:

1. Strategic Movement:
    - Often indicates purposeful military advance
    - Example: "montem altum petit" (advances toward the high mountain)
    - Frequently used with tactical objectives
2. Military Terminology:
    - Used for attacking: "castra hostium petit" (attacks the enemy camp)
    - Seeking resources: "aquam ā fontibus petit" (seeks water from springs)
    - Requesting reinforcements: "auxilium ā sociīs petit" (seeks help from allies)
3. Common Military Constructions: a) With Ablative of Manner:
    - "magnō impetū petit" (attacks with great force)
    - Emphasizes method of approach

   b) With Military Objectives:
    - Direct object is often a tactical target
    - "arcem hostium petit" (seeks/attacks the enemy citadel)

   c) In Diplomatic Context:
    - Used for formal requests
    - "pacem petit" (seeks peace)
    - Often with ablative of source for authority
4. Verb Forms in Military Context:
    - Present tense for immediate actions
    - Perfect for completed operations
    - Future for planned movements

5. Word Order Patterns:
    - Object often precedes verb for emphasis
    - Military unit typically in initial position
    - Tactical details in middle position
6. Special Military Phrases:
    - "auxilium petere" (to seek reinforcements)
    - "locum petere" (to seek a position)
    - "praemia petere" (to seek rewards)
7. With Military Personnel:
    - Different ranks: centuriō, tribūnus, praefectus
    - Various units: equitēs, sagittāriī, legiōnēs
    - Command structure reflected in syntax
8. Tactical Applications: a) Movement:
    - Toward objectives
    - Through terrain
    - To strategic positions

    b) Combat:
    - Direct assault
    - Pursuit of enemy
    - Securing positions

    c) Logistics:
    - Supply requests
    - Camp placement
    - Resource acquisition

Lesson 84 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 84: iubeō iubēre iussī iussum (to order, command)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

84.1 **Pater** *father* **servum** *slave* **cēnam** *dinner* **parāre** *to prepare* **iubet** *orders*

84.2 **Dux** *leader* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **hostēs** *enemies* **oppugnāre** *to attack* **iussit** *ordered*

84.3 **Senātus** *senate* **cōnsulem** *consul* **exercitum** *army* **dūcere** *to lead* **iussit** *ordered*

84.4 **Magister** *teacher* **puerōs** *boys* **librōs** *books* **legere** *to read* **iubet** *orders*

84.5 **Māter** *mother* **fīliam** *daughter* **in** *in* **hortō** *garden* **manēre** *to remain* **iussit** *ordered*

84.6 **Rēx** *king* **templum** *temple* **novum** *new* **aedificārī** *to be built* **iubet** *orders*

84.7 **Mīles** *soldier* **portās** *gates* **urbis** *of city* **claudī** *to be closed* **iussit** *ordered*

84.8 **Agricola** *farmer* **servōs** *slaves* **agrōs** *fields* **arāre** *to plow* **iubet** *orders*

84.9 **Dominus** *master* **canem** *dog* **cubīle** *bed* **custōdīre** *to guard* **iussit** *ordered*

84.10 **Sacerdōs** *priest* **populōs** *peoples* **deōs** *gods* **colere** *to worship* **iubet** *orders*

84.11 **Iubet** *orders* **magister** *teacher* **discipulōs** *students* **verba** *words* **scrībere** *to write*

84.12 **Medicus** *doctor* **aegrum** *sick man* **lectō** *in bed* **manēre** *to remain* **iussit** *ordered*

84.13 **Māter** *mother* **puerōs** *boys* **cibōs** *foods* **suōs** *their* **edere** *to eat* **iubet** *orders*

84.31 **Cōnsul** *consul* **urbem** *city* **mūrīs** *with walls* **altīs** *high* **mūnīrī** *to be fortified* **iussit** *ordered*

84.15 **Imperātor** *emperor* **captīvōs** *captives* **līberārī** *to be freed* **iubet** *orders*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

84.1 Pater servum cēnam parāre iubet. *Father orders the slave to prepare dinner.*

84.2 Hostēs oppugnāre mīlitēs dux iussit. *The leader ordered the soldiers to attack the enemies.*

84.3 Exercitum dūcere cōnsulem senātus iussit. *The senate ordered the consul to lead the army.*

84.4 Librōs legere magister puerōs iubet. *The teacher orders the boys to read the books.*

84.5 In hortō fīliam manēre māter iussit. *Mother ordered her daughter to remain in the garden.*

84.6 Templum novum rēx aedificārī iubet. *The king orders a new temple to be built.*

84.7 Portās urbis mīles claudī iussit. *The soldier ordered the city gates to be closed.*

84.8 Servōs agrōs arāre agricola iubet. *The farmer orders the slaves to plow the fields.*

84.9 Canem cubīle custōdīre dominus iussit. *The master ordered the dog to guard the bed.*

84.10 Deōs colere sacerdōs populōs iubet. *The priest orders the peoples to worship the gods.*

84.11 Discipulōs verba scrībere magister iubet. *The teacher orders the students to write the words.*

84.12 Aegrum lectō manēre medicus iussit. *The doctor ordered the sick man to remain in bed.*

84.13 Puerōs cibōs suōs edere māter iubet. *Mother orders the boys to eat their food.*

84.31 Urbem mūrīs altīs mūnīrī cōnsul iussit. *The consul ordered the city to be fortified with high walls.*

84.15 Captīvōs imperātor līberārī iubet. *The emperor orders the captives to be freed.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

84.1 Pater servum cēnam parāre iubet.

84.2 Hostēs oppugnāre mīlitēs dux iussit.

84.3 Exercitum dūcere cōnsulem senātus iussit.

84.4 Librōs legere magister puerōs iubet.

84.5 In hortō fīliam manēre māter iussit.

84.6 Templum novum rēx aedificārī iubet.

84.7 Portās urbis mīles claudī iussit.

84.8 Servōs agrōs arāre agricola iubet.

84.9 Canem cubīle custōdīre dominus iussit.

84.10 Deōs colere sacerdōs populōs iubet.

84.11 Discipulōs verba scrībere magister iubet.

84.12 Aegrum lectō manēre medicus iussit.

84.13 Puerōs cibōs suōs edere māter iubet.

84.31 Urbem mūrīs altīs mūnīrī cōnsul iussit.

84.15 Captīvōs imperātor līberārī iubet.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "iubeō" is particularly important for English speakers to understand because it operates differently from English command verbs. Here are the key points:

1. Principal Parts:
    - iubeō (present)
    - iubēre (infinitive)
    - iussī (perfect)
    - iussum (supine)
2. Special Construction:
    - Unlike English "order/command + person + to do", Latin uses:
    - iubeō + accusative (person) + infinitive (action)
    - Example: "Pater servum cēnam parāre iubet"
    - (NOT "Pater servō ut cēnam paret iubet")
3. Voice in Infinitive:
    - Active for actions done by subject: "servum parāre"
    - Passive for actions done to subject: "templum aedificārī"
4. Common Patterns:
    - With persons: "mīlitēs pugnāre iubet"
    - With passive infinitives: "portās claudī iubet"

    - In past tense: "rēx iussit"
5. Word Order:
    - Flexible, but often:
    - Subject + object + infinitive + iubeō
    - Or: Object + infinitive + subject + iubeō

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "iubeō" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Authority:
    - Reflected hierarchy of Roman society
    - Used in military commands
    - Part of legal terminology
    - Essential in political life
2. Social Implications:
    - Different from "rogō" (ask) or "ōrō" (beg)
    - Implied authority of speaker
    - Used between unequal social ranks
    - Important in family structure
3. Military Usage:
    - Standard in military orders
    - Part of formal command language
    - Used in battle descriptions
    - Found in military documents
4. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "order/command"
    - Used in legal Latin today
    - Found in academic phrases
    - Part of ecclesiastical Latin

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (5.33):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Tum *then* **Titurius** *Titurius,* **quī** *who* **nihil** *nothing* **ante** *before* **prōvīdisset** *had foreseen,* **trepidāre** *to rush about,* **concursāre** *to run together* **cohortēsque** *and the cohorts* **dispōnere** *to arrange,* **haec** *these things* **tamen** *however* **timidē** *fearfully* **atque** *and* **ut** *as* **eum** *him* **omnia** *all things* **dēficere** *to fail* **vidērentur** *seemed;* **quod** *which* **plērumque** *usually* **iīs** *to those* **accidere** *to happen* **cōnsuēvit** *is accustomed,* **quī** *who* **in** *in* **ipsō** *actual* **negōtiō** *business* **cōnsilium** *plan* **capere** *to take* **cōguntur** *are forced.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Tum Titurius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre, concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur."

Then Titurius, who had foreseen nothing beforehand, began to hurry about in alarm, to run to and fro, and to arrange the cohorts - yet doing these things timidly and in such a way that all his actions seemed to be failing him; which usually happens to those who are forced to form their plans in the very midst of action.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses this passage to illustrate poor leadership under pressure. The sequence of infinitives (trepidāre, concursāre, dispōnere) emphasizes the frantic nature of Titurius's actions.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Historical infinitives (trepidāre, concursāre, dispōnere)
- Relative clauses (quī nihil ante prōvīdisset)
- Impersonal construction (accidere cōnsuēvit)
- Result clause (ut...vidērentur)

Genre Section: Military Commands

Part A (Interleaved Text)

84.16 **Imperātor** *commander* **suōs** *his men* **castra** *camp* **movēre** *to move* **iussit** *ordered*

84.17 **Dux** *leader* **legiōnēs** *legions* **prīmā** *at first* **lūce** *light* **proficīscī** *to set out* **iubet** *orders*

84.18 **Centuriō** *centurion* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **arma** *arms* **capere** *to take* **iussit** *ordered*

84.19 **Tribūnus** *tribune* **cohortēs** *cohorts* **pontem** *bridge* **dēfendere** *to defend* **iubet** *orders*

84.20 **Imperātor** *commander* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **hostium** *of enemies* **itinera** *routes* **cognōscere** *to learn* **iussit** *ordered*

84.21 **Dux** *leader* **equitēs** *cavalry* **flūmen** *river* **trānsīre** *to cross* **iubet** *orders*

84.22 **Praefectus** *prefect* **castra** *camp* **vāllō** *with rampart* **fōssāque** *and ditch* **mūnīrī** *to be fortified* **iussit** *ordered*

84.23 **Lēgātus** *lieutenant* **sagittāriōs** *archers* **collem** *hill* **occupāre** *to seize* **iubet** *orders*

84.24 **Imperātor** *commander* **impedīmenta** *baggage* **in** *to* **tūtum** *safe* **locum** *place* **portārī** *to be carried* **iussit** *ordered*

84.25 **Tribūnus** *tribune* **signifer** *standard-bearer* **signa** *standards* **īnferre** *to advance* **iubet** *orders*

84.26 **Dux** *leader* **tubicinem** *trumpeter* **proelium** *battle* **canere** *to sound* **iussit** *ordered*

84.27 **Centuriō** *centurion* **vigilēs** *sentries* **portās** *gates* **servāre** *to guard* **iubet** *orders*

84.28 **Lēgātus** *lieutenant* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **tēla** *weapons* **parāre** *to prepare* **iubet** *orders*

84.29 **Imperātor** *commander* **cornua** *wings* **exercitūs** *of army* **prōcēdere** *to advance* **iussit** *ordered*

84.30 **Dux** *leader* **castra** *camp* **metārī** *to be measured out* **iubet** *orders*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

84.16 Imperātor suōs castra movēre iussit. *The commander ordered his men to move camp.*

84.17 Prīmā lūce legiōnēs proficīscī dux iubet. *At first light, the leader orders the legions to set out.*

84.18 Mīlitēs arma capere centuriō iussit. *The centurion ordered the soldiers to take up arms.*

84.19 Cohortēs pontem dēfendere tribūnus iubet. *The tribune orders the cohorts to defend the bridge.*

84.20 Hostium itinera explōrātōrēs cognōscere imperātor iussit. *The commander ordered the scouts to learn the enemies' routes.*

84.21 Equitēs flūmen trānsīre dux iubet. *The leader orders the cavalry to cross the river.*

84.22 Castra vāllō fōssāque mūnīrī praefectus iussit. *The prefect ordered the camp to be fortified with a rampart and ditch.*

84.23 Sagittāriōs collem occupāre lēgātus iubet. *The lieutenant orders the archers to seize the hill.*

84.24 Impedīmenta in tūtum locum portārī imperātor iussit. *The commander ordered the baggage to be carried to a safe place.*

84.25 Signifer signa īnferre tribūnus iubet. *The tribune orders the standard-bearer to advance the standards.*

84.26 Tubicinem proelium canere dux iussit. *The leader ordered the trumpeter to sound the battle.*

84.27 Vigilēs portās servāre centuriō iubet. *The centurion orders the sentries to guard the gates.*

84.28 Mīlitēs tēla parāre lēgātus iubet. *The lieutenant orders the soldiers to prepare their weapons.*

84.29 Cornua exercitūs prōcēdere imperātor iussit. *The commander ordered the wings of the army to advance.*

84.30 Castra metārī dux iubet. *The leader orders the camp to be measured out.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

84.16 Imperātor suōs castra movēre iussit.

84.17 Prīmā lūce legiōnēs proficīscī dux iubet.

84.18 Mīlitēs arma capere centuriō iussit.

84.19 Cohortēs pontem dēfendere tribūnus iubet.

84.20 Hostium itinera explōrātōrēs cognōscere imperātor iussit.

84.21 Equitēs flūmen trānsīre dux iubet.

84.22 Castra vāllō fōssāque mūnīrī praefectus iussit.

84.23 Sagittāriōs collem occupāre lēgātus iubet.

84.24 Impedīmenta in tūtum locum portārī imperātor iussit.

84.25 Signifer signa īnferre tribūnus iubet.

84.26 Tubicinem proelium canere dux iussit.

84.27 Vigilēs portās servāre centuriō iubet.

84.28 Mīlitēs tēla parāre lēgātus iubet.

84.29 Cornua exercitūs prōcēdere imperātor iussit.

84.30 Castra metārī dux iubet.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In Roman military contexts, "iubeō" exhibits specific patterns worth noting:

1. Command Chain Structure:
    - Higher ranks (imperātor, dux) ordering lower ranks
    - Specific military terminology with technical infinitives
    - Use of passive infinitives for tactical operations
2. Common Military Infinitives:
    - Movement: movēre, proficīscī, trānsīre
    - Defense: dēfendere, servāre, mūnīrī
    - Combat: pugnāre, oppugnāre
    - Setup: metārī, mūnīrī
3. Word Order in Military Commands:
    - Often begins with object (person being commanded)
    - Action (infinitive) frequently precedes iubeō
    - Commander often named at end for emphasis
4. Special Military Constructions:
    - Use of passive infinitives for group actions
    - Technical terms in accusative
    - Ablative of means for equipment (vāllō, tēlīs)
    - Time expressions (prīmā lūce)
5. Voice Selection:
    - Active for direct actions by troops
    - Passive for construction/fortification
    - Deponent verbs common in military contexts

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 85 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 85: vir virī m. (man)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

85.1 **Fortis** *brave* **vir** *man* **patriam** *country* **dēfendit** *defends*

85.2 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **hunc** *this* **virum** *man* **laudant** *praise*

85.3 **Ille** *that* **vir** *man* **magnā** *with great* **virtūte** *virtue* **pugnat** *fights*

85.4 **Virī** *men* **fortēs** *brave* **urbem** *city* **servāvērunt** *saved*

85.5 **Dux** *leader* **virōs** *men* **ad** *to* **proelium** *battle* **dūcit** *leads*

85.6 **Omnēs** *all* **virī** *men* **arma** *arms* **capiunt** *take up*

85.7 **Sapientī** *to wise* **virō** *man* **librum** *book* **dedī** *I gave*

85.8 **Aurum** *gold* **virī** *of man* **in** *in* **templō** *temple* **est** *is*

85.9 **Eī** *those* **virī** *men* **bellum** *war* **timent** *fear*

85.10 **Cum** *with* **bonō** *good* **virō** *man* **ambulābam** *I was walking*

85.11 **Fīlius** *son* **huius** *of this* **virī** *man* **mīles** *soldier* **est** *is*

85.12 **Templum** *temple* **ā** *by* **virīs** *men* **aedificātum** *built* **est** *was*

85.13 **Virō** *to man* **sapientiā** *with wisdom* **clārō** *famous* **crēdimus** *we believe*

85.31 **Inter** *among* **virōs** *men* **iuvenis** *young man* **sedēbat** *was sitting*

85.15 **Virōrum** *of men* **fortium** *brave* **factīs** *by deeds* **gaudet** *rejoices* **populus** *people*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

85.1 Fortis vir patriam dēfendit. *A brave man defends his country.*

85.2 Senātōrēs hunc virum laudant. *The senators praise this man.*

85.3 Ille vir magnā virtūte pugnat. *That man fights with great courage.*

85.4 Virī fortēs urbem servāvērunt. *Brave men saved the city.*

85.5 Dux virōs ad proelium dūcit. *The leader leads the men to battle.*

85.6 Omnēs virī arma capiunt. *All men take up arms.*

85.7 Sapientī virō librum dedī. *I gave the book to the wise man.*

85.8 Aurum virī in templō est. *The man's gold is in the temple.*

85.9 Eī virī bellum timent. *Those men fear war.*

85.10 Cum bonō virō ambulābam. *I was walking with a good man.*

85.11 Fīlius huius virī mīles est. *The son of this man is a soldier.*

85.12 Templum ā virīs aedificātum est. *The temple was built by men.*

85.13 Virō sapientiā clārō crēdimus. *We believe the man famous for wisdom.*

85.31 Inter virōs iuvenis sedēbat. *Among the men sat a youth.*

85.15 Virōrum fortium factīs gaudet populus. *The people rejoice in the deeds of brave men.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

85.1 Fortis vir patriam dēfendit.

85.2 Senātōrēs hunc virum laudant.

85.3 Ille vir magnā virtūte pugnat.

85.4 Virī fortēs urbem servāvērunt.

85.5 Dux virōs ad proelium dūcit.

85.6 Omnēs virī arma capiunt.

85.7 Sapientī virō librum dedī.

85.8 Aurum virī in templō est.

85.9 Eī virī bellum timent.

85.10 Cum bonō virō ambulābam.

85.11 Fīlius huius virī mīles est.

85.12 Templum ā virīs aedificātum est.

85.13 Virō sapientiā clārō crēdimus.

85.31 Inter virōs iuvenis sedēbat.

85.15 Virōrum fortium factīs gaudet populus.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "vir" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:
    - Second declension masculine noun
    - Nominative singular: vir
    - Genitive singular: virī
    - Base vir- in all cases

- Regular second declension endings

2. Complete Declension: Singular:
    - Nominative: vir
    - Genitive: virī
    - Dative: virō
    - Accusative: virum
    - Ablative: virō

   Plural:
    - Nominative: virī
    - Genitive: virōrum
    - Dative: virīs
    - Accusative: virōs
    - Ablative: virīs
3. Common Uses:
    - Subject (vir pugnat)
    - Direct object (virum laudant)
    - With prepositions (cum virō)
    - As possessor (virī fīlius)
    - Modified by adjectives (fortis vir)
4. Special Features:
    - Often implies "adult male" vs. "homo" (human being)
    - Frequently used with adjectives of character
    - Important in phrases about courage and virtue
    - Base for derived words like "virtūs"

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "vir" requires cultural context:

1. Social Meaning:
    - Implied manly virtue and courage
    - Distinguished from "puer" (boy) and "senex" (old man)
    - Associated with citizenship and public duty
    - Important in political and military contexts
2. Roman Values:
    - Connected to "virtūs" (manliness, courage)
    - Key concept in Roman honor system
    - Important for political reputation
    - Central to military leadership
3. Literary Usage:
    - Common in historical works
    - Important in epic poetry
    - Used in political speeches
    - Found in epitaphs and inscriptions
4. Modern Relevance:

- Source of English "virile"
- Influences gender concepts
- Important in classical education
- Affects legal and formal language

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Sallust's "Bellum Catilinae" (54.6):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Caesar *Caesar* **beneficiīs** *by kindnesses* **ac** *and* **mūnificentiā** *by generosity* **māgnus** *great* **habēbātur** *was considered,* **integritāte** *by integrity* **vītae** *of life* **Catō** *Cato.* **Ille** *the former* **mansuētūdine** *by gentleness* **et** *and* **misericordiā** *by mercy* **clārus** *famous* **factus** *became,* **huic** *to the latter* **sevēritās** *strictness* **dignitātem** *dignity* **addiderat** *had added.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Caesar beneficiīs ac mūnificentiā māgnus habēbātur, integritāte vītae Catō. Ille mansuētūdine et misericordiā clārus factus, huic sevēritās dignitātem addiderat.

Caesar was considered great through kindnesses and generosity, Cato through integrity of life. The former became famous through gentleness and mercy, to the latter strictness had added dignity.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Sallust contrasts two types of great men (virī) through their different qualities. The parallel structure emphasizes how different virtues can lead to greatness in Roman society.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Ablatives of means (beneficiīs, mūnificentiā)
- Demonstrative pronouns (ille, huic) for contrast
- Perfect passive participle (factus)
- Pluperfect active (addiderat)
- Dative of reference (huic)

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

85.16 **Fortissimī** *bravest* **virī** *men* **castra** *camp* **hostium** *of enemies* **oppugnant** *attack*

85.17 **Dux** *leader* **virōs** *men* **in** *into* **trēs** *three* **partēs** *parts* **dīvīsit** *divided*

85.18 **Mīlle** *thousand* **virī** *men* **per** *through* **silvam** *forest* **prōcessērunt** *advanced*

85.19 **Virōrum** *of men* **fortitūdō** *bravery* **hostēs** *enemies* **terruit** *terrified*

85.20 **Omnēs** *all* **virī** *men* **ad** *at* **arma** *arms* **conclāmāvērunt** *shouted*

85.21 **Inter** *among* **virōs** *men* **magnae** *great* **virtūtis** *of courage* **erat** *was* **centuriō** *centurion*

85.22 **Virī** *men* **castrōrum** *of camp* **portas** *gates* **claudunt** *close*

85.23 **Multī** *many* **virī** *men* **in** *in* **proeliō** *battle* **cecidērunt** *fell*

85.24 **Dux** *leader* **virīs** *to men* **praemia** *rewards* **prōmīsit** *promised*

85.25 **Virōs** *men* **fortiōrēs** *braver* **numquam** *never* **vīdimus** *we have seen*

85.26 **Virī** *men* **ex** *from* **omnibus** *all* **partibus** *parts* **conveniunt** *gather*

85.27 **Centuriō** *centurion* **virōs** *men* **suōs** *his* **cohortātur** *encourages*

85.28 **Virōrum** *of men* **audācium** *bold* **virtūs** *courage* **laudāta** *praised* **est** *was*

85.29 **Cum** *with* **paucīs** *few* **virīs** *men* **urbem** *city* **cēpimus** *we captured*

85.30 **Virī** *men* **victōrēs** *victorious* **domum** *homeward* **redeunt** *return*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

85.16 Fortissimī virī castra hostium oppugnant. *The bravest men attack the enemy camp.*

85.17 Dux virōs in trēs partēs dīvīsit. *The leader divided the men into three parts.*

85.18 Mīlle virī per silvam prōcessērunt. *A thousand men advanced through the forest.*

85.19 Virōrum fortitūdō hostēs terruit. *The bravery of the men terrified the enemies.*

85.20 Omnēs virī ad arma conclāmāvērunt. *All the men shouted to arms.*

85.21 Inter virōs magnae virtūtis erat centuriō. *Among men of great courage was a centurion.*

85.22 Virī castrōrum portas claudunt. *The men close the gates of the camp.*

85.23 Multī virī in proeliō cecidērunt. *Many men fell in battle.*

85.24 Dux virīs praemia prōmīsit. *The leader promised rewards to the men.*

85.25 Virōs fortiōrēs numquam vīdimus. *We have never seen braver men.*

85.26 Virī ex omnibus partibus conveniunt. *Men gather from all parts.*

85.27 Centuriō virōs suōs cohortātur. *The centurion encourages his men.*

85.28 Virōrum audācium virtūs laudāta est. *The courage of the bold men was praised.*

85.29 Cum paucīs virīs urbem cēpimus. *With few men we captured the city.*

85.30 Virī victōrēs domum redeunt. *The victorious men return home.*

⚜ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

85.16 Fortissimī virī castra hostium oppugnant.

85.17 Dux virōs in trēs partēs dīvīsit.

85.18 Mīlle virī per silvam prōcessērunt.

85.19 Virōrum fortitūdō hostēs terruit.

85.20 Omnēs virī ad arma conclāmāvērunt.

85.21 Inter virōs magnae virtūtis erat centuriō.

85.22 Virī castrōrum portas claudunt.

85.23 Multī virī in proeliō cecidērunt.

85.24 Dux virīs praemia prōmīsit.

85.25 Virōs fortiōrēs numquam vīdimus.

85.26 Virī ex omnibus partibus conveniunt.

85.27 Centuriō virōs suōs cohortātur.

85.28 Virōrum audācium virtūs laudāta est.

85.29 Cum paucīs virīs urbem cēpimus.

85.30 Virī victōrēs domum redeunt.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

In military contexts, "vir" appears in several distinctive constructions:

1. Military Commands and Actions:
    - As subject of military verbs: "Virī oppugnant" (men attack) "Virī prōcessērunt" (men advanced)
    - As direct object with military leaders: "Dux virōs dīvīsit" (the leader divided the men) "Centuriō virōs cohortātur" (the centurion encourages the men)
2. Case Usage in Military Context: a) Nominative for Active Subjects:
    - "Virī claudunt" (men close)
    - "Virī victōrēs redeunt" (victorious men return)

    b) Accusative for Direct Objects:
    - "Per virōs fortiōrēs" (through braver men)
    - "Inter virōs" (among men)

    c) Genitive for Possession and Description:
    - "Virōrum fortitūdō" (bravery of men)
    - "Virōrum audācium" (of bold men)

    d) Dative for Indirect Objects:
    - "Virīs praemia prōmīsit" (promised rewards to the men)

    e) Ablative for Accompaniment:

- "Cum paucīs virīs" (with few men)

3. Common Military Phrases: a) With Numbers:
    - "Mīlle virī" (a thousand men)
    - "Trēs partēs" (three parts)

   b) With Military Terms:
    - "Ad arma" (to arms)
    - "In proeliō" (in battle)
    - "Castra hostium" (enemy camp)
4. Adjective Agreement: a) Quality Descriptors:
    - "Fortissimī virī" (bravest men)
    - "Audācēs virī" (bold men)

   b) Quantity Descriptors:
    - "Multī virī" (many men)
    - "Paucī virī" (few men)

   c) Military Status:
    - "Virī victōrēs" (victorious men)
5. Position and Word Order in Military Context: a) Beginning of Sentence for Emphasis:
    - "Virī castrōrum portas claudunt"
    - "Virōrum fortitūdō hostēs terruit"

   b) After Military Officers:
    - "Dux virōs"
    - "Centuriō virōs"

   c) With Prepositions:
    - "Inter virōs"
    - "Cum virīs"
    - "Ex omnibus partibus"
6. Common Military Verbs Used with "vir":
    - oppugnō (attack)
    - prōcēdō (advance)
    - cadō (fall)
    - conveniō (gather)
    - claudō (close)
    - cohortōr (encourage)
7. Special Military Constructions: a) Collective Actions:
    - "Omnēs virī conclāmāvērunt"
    - "Virī conveniunt"

   b) Military Results:
    - "Multī virī cecidērunt"
    - "Urbem cēpimus"

   c) Military Honors:
    - "Virtūs laudāta est"
    - "Praemia prōmīsit"
8. Temporal Sequence in Military Reports:
    - Perfect tense for completed actions (dīvīsit, prōcessērunt)
    - Present tense for current situations (oppugnant, claudunt)
    - Perfect passive for results (laudāta est)

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 86 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: bellum -ī n. (war)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

86.1 **Rōmānī** *Romans* **bellum** *war* **longum** *long* **gerunt** *wage*

86.2 **Dux** *leader* **ante** *before* **bellum** *war* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **hortātur** *encourages*

86.3 **Propter** *because of* **bellum** *war* **agricolae** *farmers* **agrōs** *fields* **relinquunt** *leave*

86.4 **Post** *after* **bellum** *war* **pāx** *peace* **venit** *comes*

86.5 **Multī** *many* **in** *in* **bellō** *war* **moriuntur** *die*

86.6 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **dē** *about* **bellō** *war* **nihil** *nothing* **sciunt** *know*

86.7 **Senātus** *senate* **bellum** *war* **contrā** *against* **hostēs** *enemies* **parat** *prepares*

86.8 **Tempore** *in time* **bellī** *of war* **omnēs** *all* **labōrant** *work*

86.9 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **ad** *to* **bellum** *war* **properant** *hurry*

86.10 **Sine** *without* **bellō** *war* **pāx** *peace* **esse** *to be* **potest** *is able*

86.11 **Bellum** *war* **multōs** *many* **annōs** *years* **manet** *remains*

86.12 **Dē** *about* **bellō** *war* **senātōrēs** *senators* **loquuntur** *speak*

86.13 **Fīnis** *end* **bellī** *of war* **populō** *to people* **grātus** *pleasing* **est** *is*

86.31 **Ante** *before* **bellum** *war* **cīvitās** *state* **flōret** *flourishes*

86.15 **Magnō** *in great* **bellō** *war* **victōria** *victory* **difficilis** *difficult* **est** *is*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

86.1 Rōmānī bellum longum gerunt. *The Romans wage a long war.*

86.2 Dux ante bellum mīlitēs hortātur. *The leader encourages the soldiers before the war.*

86.3 Propter bellum agricolae agrōs relinquunt. *Because of the war, the farmers leave their fields.*

86.4 Post bellum pāx venit. *After the war, peace comes.*

86.5 Multī in bellō moriuntur. *Many die in war.*

86.6 Cīvēs dē bellō nihil sciunt. *The citizens know nothing about the war.*

86.7 Senātus bellum contrā hostēs parat. *The senate prepares war against the enemies.*

86.8 Tempore bellī omnēs labōrant. *In time of war, everyone works.*

86.9 Mīlitēs ad bellum properant. *The soldiers hurry to war.*

86.10 Sine bellō pāx esse potest. *Without war, there can be peace.*

86.11 Bellum multōs annōs manet. *The war remains for many years.*

86.12 Dē bellō senātōrēs loquuntur. *The senators speak about the war.*

86.13 Fīnis bellī populō grātus est. *The end of war is pleasing to the people.*

86.31 Ante bellum cīvitās flōret. *Before the war, the state flourishes.*

86.15 Magnō bellō victōria difficilis est. *In a great war, victory is difficult.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

86.1 Rōmānī bellum longum gerunt.

86.2 Dux ante bellum mīlitēs hortātur.

86.3 Propter bellum agricolae agrōs relinquunt.

86.4 Post bellum pāx venit.

86.5 Multī in bellō moriuntur.

86.6 Cīvēs dē bellō nihil sciunt.

86.7 Senātus bellum contrā hostēs parat.

86.8 Tempore bellī omnēs labōrant.

86.9 Mīlitēs ad bellum properant.

86.10 Sine bellō pāx esse potest.

86.11 Bellum multōs annōs manet.

86.12 Dē bellō senātōrēs loquuntur.

86.13 Fīnis bellī populō grātus est.

86.31 Ante bellum cīvitās flōret.

86.15 Magnō bellō victōria difficilis est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "bellum" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:

- Second declension neuter noun
- Nominative singular: bellum
- Genitive singular: bellī
- Base meaning: war

2. Case Usage Examples:
    - Nominative (subject): "Bellum longum est" (The war is long)
    - Genitive (possession): "tempus bellī" (time of war)
    - Dative (indirect object): "bellō fīnem dare" (to put an end to war)
    - Accusative (direct object): "bellum gerere" (to wage war)
    - Ablative (means/time): "in bellō" (in war)
3. Common Expressions:
    - bellum gerere = to wage war
    - bellum parāre = to prepare for war
    - bellum īnferre = to make war on
    - bellum compōnere = to end a war
4. Prepositions Commonly Used:
    - ante bellum = before the war
    - post bellum = after the war
    - in bellō = in/during war
    - sine bellō = without war
    - dē bellō = about/concerning war

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "bellum" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Military Culture:
    - War was central to Roman society
    - Military service was required of citizens
    - Wars were both defensive and expansionary
    - Religious ceremonies preceded warfare
2. Types of War:
    - bellum iūstum (just war)
    - bellum cīvīle (civil war)
    - bellum externum (foreign war)
    - bellum nāvāle (naval war)
3. Important Concepts:
    - Declaration procedures
    - Role of the Senate
    - Military organization
    - Peace treaties and aftermath
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of English words (belligerent, bellicose)
    - Influence on military terminology
    - Impact on international law

- Cultural understanding of warfare

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.1):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Gallia *Gaul* **est** *is* **omnis** *all* **dīvīsa** *divided* **in** *into* **partēs** *parts* **trēs,** *three,* **quārum** *of which* **ūnam** *one* **incolunt** *inhabit* **Belgae,** *the Belgae,* **aliam** *another* **Aquītānī,** *the Aquitani,* **tertiam** *third* **quī** *who* **ipsōrum** *their own* **linguā** *in language* **Celtae,** *Celts,* **nostrā** *in our* **Gallī** *Gauls* **appellantur** *are called.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur."

All Gaul is divided into three parts, of which the Belgae inhabit one, the Aquitani another, and those who in their own language are called Celts, in ours Gauls, the third.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar's opening demonstrates:

- Clear geographic organization
- Attention to cultural distinctions
- Recognition of linguistic differences
- Strategic assessment of territory

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Perfect passive participle "dīvīsa"
- Relative clause with "quārum"
- Ablative of specification "linguā"
- Present passive "appellantur"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Dispatch

Part A (Interleaved Text)

86.16 **Cōnsul** *consul* **bellum** *war* **contrā** *against* **Gallōs** *Gauls* **hōc** *this* **annō** *year* **gessit** *waged*

86.17 **Prīmō** *in first* **bellī** *of war* **diē** *day* **legiō** *legion* **nostra** *our* **castra** *camp* **mūnīvit** *fortified*

86.18 **In** *in* **hōc** *this* **bellō** *war* **multī** *many* **fortiter** *bravely* **pugnāvērunt** *fought*

86.19 **Omnēs** *all* **ducēs** *leaders* **dē** *about* **bellī** *of war* **perīculīs** *dangers* **cōgitant** *think*

86.20 **Post** *after* **longum** *long* **bellum** *war* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **domum** *homeward* **redīre** *to return* **cupiunt** *desire*

86.21 **Magnā** *with great* **virtūte** *courage* **bellum** *war* **adversus** *against* **hostēs** *enemies* **gerimus** *we wage*

86.22 **Tempore** *in time* **bellī** *of war* **urbem** *city* **nostram** *our* **dēfendimus** *we defend*

86.23 **Dux** *leader* **bellum** *war* **novum** *new* **parāre** *to prepare* **incipit** *begins*

86.24 **Propter** *because of* **bellī** *of war* **perīcula** *dangers* **multī** *many* **fugiunt** *flee*

86.25 **Bellum** *war* **in** *in* **montibus** *mountains* **difficile** *difficult* **fit** *becomes*

86.26 **Victōria** *victory* **in** *in* **bellō** *war* **nostrīs** *to our men* **certa** *certain* **vidētur** *seems*

86.27 **Post** *after* **bellum** *war* **pācem** *peace* **cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **facimus** *we make*

86.28 **Nūntius** *messenger* **dē** *about* **bellī** *of war* **exītū** *outcome* **venit** *comes*

86.29 **Senātus** *senate* **bellum** *war* **propter** *because of* **populī** *of people* **salūtem** *safety* **gessit** *waged*

86.30 **Fīnem** *end* **bellī** *of war* **omnēs** *all* **expectant** *await*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

86.16 Cōnsul bellum contrā Gallōs hōc annō gessit. *The consul waged war against the Gauls this year.*

86.17 Prīmō bellī diē legiō nostra castra mūnīvit. *On the first day of the war, our legion fortified the camp.*

86.18 In hōc bellō multī fortiter pugnāvērunt. *In this war, many fought bravely.*

86.19 Omnēs ducēs dē bellī perīculīs cōgitant. *All leaders think about the dangers of war.*

86.20 Post longum bellum mīlitēs domum redīre cupiunt. *After a long war, the soldiers desire to return home.*

86.21 Magnā virtūte bellum adversus hostēs gerimus. We wage war against the enemies with great courage.

86.22 Tempore bellī urbem nostram dēfendimus. *In time of war, we defend our city.*

86.23 Dux bellum novum parāre incipit. *The leader begins to prepare for a new war.*

86.24 Propter bellī perīcula multī fugiunt. *Because of the dangers of war, many flee.*

86.25 Bellum in montibus difficile fit. *The war becomes difficult in the mountains.*

86.26 Victōria in bellō nostrīs certa vidētur. *Victory in war seems certain to our men.*

86.27 Post bellum pācem cum hostibus facimus. *After the war, we make peace with the enemies.*

86.28 Nūntius dē bellī exītū venit. *A messenger comes about the outcome of the war.*

86.29 Senātus bellum propter populī salūtem gessit. *The senate waged war for the safety of the people.*

86.30 Fīnem bellī omnēs expectant. *Everyone awaits the end of the war.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

86.16 Cōnsul bellum contrā Gallōs hōc annō gessit.

86.17 Prīmō bellī diē legiō nostra castra mūnīvit.

86.18 In hōc bellō multī fortiter pugnāvērunt.

86.19 Omnēs ducēs dē bellī perīculīs cōgitant.

86.20 Post longum bellum mīlitēs domum redīre cupiunt.

86.21 Magnā virtūte bellum adversus hostēs gerimus.

86.22 Tempore bellī urbem nostram dēfendimus.

86.23 Dux bellum novum parāre incipit.

86.24 Propter bellī perīcula multī fugiunt.

86.25 Bellum in montibus difficile fit.

86.26 Victōria in bellō nostrīs certa vidētur.

86.27 Post bellum pācem cum hostibus facimus.

86.28 Nūntius dē bellī exītū venit.

86.29 Senātus bellum propter populī salūtem gessit.

86.30 Fīnem bellī omnēs expectant.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

1. Military Vocabulary and Expressions:
    - bellum gerere: "to wage war" (formal military term)
    - bellum parāre: "to prepare for war" (strategic planning)
    - bellum inferre: "to make war upon" (aggressive action)
    - bellī exitus: "outcome of war" (military report term)
2. Case Usage in Military Context: a) Genitive:
    - bellī perīcula: "dangers of war"
    - bellī exitus: "outcome of war"
    - Used for possession and description

    b) Ablative:
    - in bellō: "in war" (circumstance)
    - tempore bellī: "in time of war" (time when)
    - Used with prepositions and time expressions

3. Temporal Expressions:
    - post bellum: "after the war"
    - ante bellum: "before the war"
    - tempore bellī: "in time of war"
    - prīmō bellī diē: "on the first day of war"
4. Military Grammar Patterns: a) Purpose Clauses:
    - propter populī salūtem: "for the safety of the people"
    - Used to express military objectives

    b) Agent Constructions:
    - ā/ab + ablative for personal agent
    - per + accusative for means/instrument
    - Used in describing military actions
5. Word Order in Military Dispatches:
    - Tendency toward verb-final position
    - Important information often frontloaded
    - Time expressions frequently initial
    - Clear, precise ordering for military clarity

Lesson 87 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 87: vīta -ae f. (life)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

87.1 **Vīta** *life* **mea** *my* **brevis** *short* **est** *is*

87.2 **Sapientiam** *wisdom* **in** *in* **vītā** *life* **quaerimus** *we seek*

87.3 **Bona** *good* **vīta** *life* **multōs** *many* **amīcōs** *friends* **parat** *prepares/brings*

87.4 **Propter** *because of* **vītam** *life* **labōrāmus** *we work* **omnēs** *all*

87.5 **Dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **suā** *his own* **senex** *old man* **narrat** *tells*

87.6 **Philosophī** *philosophers* **vītae** *of life* **viam** *way* **mōnstrant** *show*

87.7 **Magnus** *great* **poēta** *poet* **vītam** *life* **rūsticam** *rural* **laudat** *praises*

87.8 **Vītā** *by life* **ipsā** *itself* **doctī** *taught* **sumus** *we are*

87.9 **Per** *through* **longam** *long* **vītam** *life* **multa** *many things* **discimus** *we learn*

87.10 **Pater** *father* **fīliō** *to son* **dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **veterum** *of ancients* **dīcit** *speaks*

87.11 **Sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **vīta** *life* **nōn** *not* **bona** *good* **est** *is*

87.12 **In** *in* **vītā** *life* **nostrā** *our* **multae** *many* **rēs** *things* **mūtantur** *are changed*

87.13 **Vītam** *life* **brevem** *short* **artem** *art* **longam** *long* **esse** *to be* **scīmus** *we know*

87.31 **Vītae** *of life* **tempus** *time* **celeriter** *swiftly* **fugit** *flees*

87.15 **Omnēs** *all* **homines** *men* **vītam** *life* **bonam** *good* **cupiunt** *desire*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

87.1 Vīta mea brevis est. *My life is short.*

87.2 In vītā sapientiam quaerimus. *We seek wisdom in life.*

87.3 Bona vīta multōs amīcōs parat. *A good life brings many friends.*

87.4 Propter vītam labōrāmus omnēs. *We all work for the sake of life.*

87.5 Dē vītā suā senex narrat. *The old man tells about his life.*

87.6 Vītae viam philosophī mōnstrant. *Philosophers show the way of life.*

87.7 Vītam rūsticam magnus poēta laudat. *The great poet praises rural life.*

87.8 Vītā ipsā doctī sumus. *We are taught by life itself.*

87.9 Multa per longam vītam discimus. *We learn many things through a long life.*

87.10 Pater fīliō dē veterum vītā dīcit. *The father tells his son about the life of the ancients.*

87.11 Vīta sine labōre nōn bona est. *Life without work is not good.*

87.12 Multae rēs in vītā nostrā mūtantur. *Many things in our life change.*

87.13 Vītam brevem, artem longam esse scīmus. *We know that life is short, art is long.*

87.31 Celeriter vītae tempus fugit. *Swiftly the time of life flees.*

87.15 Vītam bonam omnēs homines cupiunt. *All men desire a good life.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

87.1 Vīta mea brevis est.

87.2 In vītā sapientiam quaerimus.

87.3 Bona vīta multōs amīcōs parat.

87.4 Propter vītam labōrāmus omnēs.

87.5 Dē vītā suā senex narrat.

87.6 Vītae viam philosophī mōnstrant.

87.7 Vītam rūsticam magnus poēta laudat.

87.8 Vītā ipsā doctī sumus.

87.9 Multa per longam vītam discimus.

87.10 Pater fīliō dē veterum vītā dīcit.

87.11 Vīta sine labōre nōn bona est.

87.12 Multae rēs in vītā nostrā mūtantur.

87.13 Vītam brevem, artem longam esse scīmus.

87.31 Celeriter vītae tempus fugit.

87.15 Vītam bonam omnēs homines cupiunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "vīta" presents several important features for English speakers:

1. Form and Declension:
    - First declension feminine noun
    - Nominative singular: vīta
    - Genitive singular: vītae
    - Dative singular: vītae
    - Accusative singular: vītam
    - Ablative singular: vītā
2. Common Uses:
    - Subject: "Vīta brevis est" (Life is short)
    - Direct object: "Vītam laudat" (He praises life)
    - With prepositions:
        - in + ablative: "in vītā" (in life)
        - dē + ablative: "dē vītā" (about life)
        - per + accusative: "per vītam" (through life)
3. Typical Adjective Combinations:
    - bona vīta (good life)
    - longa vīta (long life)
    - brevis vīta (short life)
    - rūstica vīta (rural life)
4. Common Expressions:
    - vītā ipsā (by life itself)
    - vītae via (way of life)
    - vītae tempus (time of life)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "vīta" requires cultural context for English speakers:

1. Roman Concepts of Life:
    - Life seen as duty to family and state
    - Emphasis on virtuous living

    - Balance between public and private life
    - Connection to ancestral traditions
2. Literary Usage:
    - Common theme in philosophy
    - Subject of biography (vītae)
    - Important in moral teachings
    - Featured in poetry and prose
3. Social Implications:
    - Different expectations for different social classes
    - Urban vs. rural life distinctions
    - Impact of religion on daily life
    - Role of education in shaping life
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Source of English words (vital, vitality)
    - Connection to scientific terms
    - Influence on Western philosophy
    - Continued use in academic contexts

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Senectute" (XIX.69):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Mea *my* **quidem** *indeed* **sententiā** *in opinion* **nūlla** *no* **potest** *can* **esse** *be* **vītae** *of life* **iūcunditās** *pleasantness,* **sublātīs** *having been removed* **amīcitiīs** *friendships;* **nec** *nor* **vērō** *truly* **ipsam** *itself* **amīcitiam** *friendship* **tuērī** *protect* **possumus** *we are able,* **nisi** *unless* **aequē** *equally* **ipsī** *we ourselves* **amīcī** *friends* **esse** *to be* **velīmus** *we wish.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Mea quidem sententiā nūlla potest esse vītae iūcunditās, sublātīs amīcitiīs; nec vērō ipsam amīcitiam tuērī possumus, nisi aequē ipsī amīcī esse velīmus."

Indeed, in my opinion there can be no pleasantness of life when friendships have been removed; nor truly can we protect friendship itself unless we ourselves wish equally to be friends.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This passage emphasizes the Roman view of friendship as essential to a good life. Cicero uses:

- Balanced structure between two main clauses
- Abstract nouns (iūcunditās, amīcitia)
- Personal opinion (mea sententiā) to strengthen argument
- Careful word placement for emphasis

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Ablative absolute: "sublātīs amīcitiīs"
- Subjunctive in conditional: "velīmus"
- Intensive pronoun: "ipsī"
- Predicative dative with "esse"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

87.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **dē** *about* **vītā** *life* **interrogat** *asks*

87.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondēns** *responding* **vītam** *life* **esse** *to be* **brevem** *short* **dīcit** *says*

87.18 **Vītae** *of life* **brevitātem** *shortness* **nōn** *not* **timeāmus** *let us fear* **magister** *teacher* **respondet** *replies*

87.19 **Multī** *many* **homines** *men* **longam** *long* **vītam** *life* **habent** *have* **sed** *but* **male** *badly* **vīvunt** *they live*

87.20 **In** *in* **vītā** *life* **nostrā** *our* **sapientia** *wisdom* **maximē** *especially* **necessāria** *necessary* **est** *is*

87.21 **Vītam** *life* **bonam** *good* **nōn** *not* **annī** *years* **sed** *but* **factā** *deeds* **faciunt** *make*

87.22 **Cotīdiē** *daily* **dē** *about* **vītae** *of life* **sensu** *meaning* **cogitāre** *to think* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

87.23 **Omnēs** *all* **philosophī** *philosophers* **vītam** *life* **brevem** *short* **esse** *to be* **docent** *teach*

87.24 **Vītae** *of life* **fīnem** *end* **nēmō** *no one* **scit** *knows* **discipulus** *pupil* **dīcit** *says*

87.25 **Propter** *because of* **hoc** *this* **ipsum** *very thing* **bene** *well* **vīvere** *to live* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

87.26 **In** *in* **vītā** *life* **tuā** *your* **quid** *what* **optimum** *best* **putās** *do you think* **magister** *teacher* **rogat** *asks*

87.27 **Vītam** *life* **ipsam** *itself* **optimum** *best* **dōnum** *gift* **esse** *to be* **crēdō** *I believe*

87.28 **Sapiens** *wise man* **vītae** *of life* **gaudia** *joys* **intellegit** *understands* **magister** *teacher* **respondet** *replies*

87.29 **Discipulus** *pupil* **dē** *about* **suā** *his own* **vītā** *life* **cogitāre** *to think* **incipit** *begins*

87.30 **Nunc** *now* **melius** *better* **vītam** *life* **intellegō** *I understand* **discipulus** *pupil* **dīcit** *says*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

87.16 Magister discipulum dē vītā interrogat. *The teacher asks the pupil about life.*

87.17 Discipulus respondēns vītam esse brevem dīcit. The pupil, responding, says that life is short.

87.18 Vītae brevitātem nōn timeāmus, magister respondet. *"Let us not fear the shortness of life," the teacher replies.*

87.19 Multī homines longam vītam habent sed male vīvunt. *Many people have a long life but live badly.*

87.20 In vītā nostrā sapientia maximē necessāria est. *In our life, wisdom is especially necessary.*

87.21 Vītam bonam nōn annī sed factā faciunt. *Not years but deeds make a good life.*

87.22 Cotīdiē dē vītae sensu cogitāre dēbēmus. *We ought to think about the meaning of life daily.*

87.23 Omnēs philosophī vītam brevem esse docent. *All philosophers teach that life is short.*

87.24 Vītae fīnem nēmō scit, discipulus dīcit. *"No one knows the end of life," says the pupil.*

87.25 Propter hoc ipsum bene vīvere dēbēmus. *For this very reason, we ought to live well.*

87.26 In vītā tuā quid optimum putās? magister rogat. *"What do you think is best in your life?" the teacher asks.*

87.27 Vītam ipsam optimum dōnum esse crēdō. *"I believe that life itself is the best gift."*

87.28 Sapiens vītae gaudia intellegit, magister respondet. *"The wise man understands the joys of life," the teacher replies.*

87.29 Discipulus dē suā vītā cogitāre incipit. *The pupil begins to think about his own life.*

87.30 Nunc melius vītam intellegō, discipulus dīcit. *"Now I understand life better," says the pupil.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

87.16 Magister discipulum dē vītā interrogat.

87.17 Discipulus respondēns vītam esse brevem dīcit.

87.18 Vītae brevitātem nōn timeāmus, magister respondet.

87.19 Multī homines longam vītam habent sed male vīvunt.

87.20 In vītā nostrā sapientia maximē necessāria est.

87.21 Vītam bonam nōn annī sed factā faciunt.

87.22 Cotīdiē dē vītae sensu cogitāre dēbēmus.

87.23 Omnēs philosophī vītam brevem esse docent.

87.24 Vītae fīnem nēmō scit, discipulus dīcit.

87.25 Propter hoc ipsum bene vīvere dēbēmus.

87.26 In vītā tuā quid optimum putās? magister rogat.

87.27 Vītam ipsam optimum dōnum esse crēdō.

87.28 Sapiens vītae gaudia intellegit, magister respondet.

87.29 Discipulus dē suā vītā cogitāre incipit.

87.30 Nunc melius vītam intellegō, discipulus dīcit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

In this philosophical dialogue, "vīta" appears in several important grammatical constructions:

1. Direct Object Construction:
    - Accusative case used for direct object: "vītam intellegō" (I understand life)
    - With esse in indirect statement: "vītam esse brevem" (that life is short) Example: "Discipulus respondēns vītam esse brevem dīcit"
2. Prepositional Phrases:
    - dē + ablative: "dē vītā" (about life)
    - in + ablative: "in vītā" (in life) Example: "In vītā nostrā sapientia maximē necessāria est"
3. Genitive Constructions:
    - Possessive: "vītae fīnem" (the end of life)
    - With abstract nouns: "vītae brevitātem" (the shortness of life) Example: "Vītae brevitātem nōn timeāmus"
4. Adjective Agreement:
    - With feminine adjectives: "vītam bonam" (good life)
    - With possessive adjectives: "vītā nostrā" (our life) Example: "Vītam bonam nōn annī sed factā faciunt"
5. Special Philosophical Constructions:
    - Abstract discussions: "dē vītae sensu" (about the meaning of life)
    - Ethical statements: "bene vīvere" (to live well) Example: "Cotīdiē dē vītae sensu cogitāre dēbēmus"
6. Word Order Patterns:
    - Initial position for emphasis: "Vītam ipsam optimum dōnum esse crēdō"
    - Medial position in complex sentences: "In vītā nostrā sapientia maximē necessāria est"
    - Final position for effect: "Nunc melius vītam intellegō"
7. Use in Dialogue:
    - Questions about life: "In vītā tuā quid optimum putās?"
    - Statements about life: "Vītae fīnem nēmō scit"
    - Philosophical reflections: "Sapiens vītae gaudia intellegit"
8. Verbal Constructions:
    - With modal verbs: "cogitāre dēbēmus" (we ought to think)
    - With indirect discourse: "vītam esse brevem dīcit" (he says that life is short) Example: "Discipulus dē suā vītā cogitāre incipit"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Latin Lesson 88: homō hominis m. (human being)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

88.1 **Homō** *human being* **sōlus** *alone* **est** *is* **in** *in* **vīllā** *villa*

88.2 **Nūllus** *no* **homō** *human being* **nocte** *at night* **per** *through* **viam** *road* **ambulābat** *was walking*

88.3 **Omnēs** *all* **hominēs** *human beings* **mortem** *death* **timent** *fear*

88.4 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **hominem** *human being* **docent** *teach* **multās** *many* **rēs** *things*

88.5 **Magna** *great* **virtūs** *virtue* **hominis** *of human being* **est** *is* **sapientia** *wisdom*

88.6 **Trēs** *three* **hominēs** *human beings* **templum** *temple* **intrant** *enter*

88.7 **Vītam** *life* **hominum** *of human beings* **dī** *gods* **regunt** *rule*

88.8 **Homō** *human being* **nātūram** *nature* **vincere** *to conquer* **nōn** *not* **potest** *is able*

88.9 **Magistrī** *teachers* **hominibus** *to human beings* **litterās** *letters* **trādunt** *hand down*

88.10 **Deī** *gods* **hominī** *to human being* **multa** *many things* **dant** *give*

88.11 **Antīquī** *ancient* **hominēs** *human beings* **deōs** *gods* **templīs** *in temples* **colēbant** *worshipped*

88.12 **Hominum** *of human beings* **vītae** *lives* **brevēs** *short* **sunt** *are*

88.13 **Homine** *than human being* **nūllum** *no* **animal** *animal* **sapientiōre** *wiser* **est** *is*

88.31 **Multī** *many* **hominēs** *human beings* **agrōs** *fields* **colunt** *cultivate*

88.15 **Hominī** *for human being* **nihil** *nothing* **sine** *without* **labōre** *work* **facile** *easy* **est** *is*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

88.1 Homō sōlus in vīllā est. *A human being is alone in the villa.*

88.2 Nūllus homō nocte per viam ambulābat. *No human being was walking through the road at night.*

88.3 Omnēs hominēs mortem timent. *All human beings fear death.*

88.4 Sapientēs hominem multās rēs docent. *Wise men teach a human being many things.*

88.5 Magna virtūs hominis sapientia est. *Wisdom is a great virtue of a human being.*

88.6 Templum trēs hominēs intrant. *Three human beings enter the temple.*

88.7 Vītam hominum dī regunt. *The gods rule the life of human beings.*

88.8 Nātūram homō vincere nōn potest. *A human being cannot conquer nature.*

88.9 Magistrī hominibus litterās trādunt. *Teachers hand down letters to human beings.*

88.10 Deī hominī multa dant. *The gods give many things to a human being.*

88.11 Antīquī hominēs deōs templīs colēbant. *Ancient human beings used to worship the gods in temples.*

88.12 Hominum vītae brevēs sunt. *The lives of human beings are short.*

88.13 Homine nūllum animal sapientiōre est. *No animal is wiser than a human being.*

88.31 Multī hominēs agrōs colunt. *Many human beings cultivate the fields.*

88.15 Hominī nihil sine labōre facile est. *Nothing is easy for a human being without work.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

88.1 Homō sōlus in vīllā est.

88.2 Nūllus homō nocte per viam ambulābat.

88.3 Omnēs hominēs mortem timent.

88.4 Sapientēs hominem multās rēs docent.

88.5 Magna virtūs hominis sapientia est.

88.6 Templum trēs hominēs intrant.

88.7 Vītam hominum dī regunt.

88.8 Nātūram homō vincere nōn potest.

88.9 Magistrī hominibus litterās trādunt.

88.10 Deī hominī multa dant.

88.11 Antīquī hominēs deōs templīs colēbant.

88.12 Hominum vītae brevēs sunt.

88.13 Homine nūllum animal sapientiōre est.

88.31 Multī hominēs agrōs colunt.

88.15 Hominī nihil sine labōre facile est.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "homō" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:
    - Third declension masculine noun

- Stem change: homō → homin-
- Regular third declension endings

2. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: homō
    - Genitive: hominis
    - Dative: hominī
    - Accusative: hominem
    - Ablative: homine

   Plural:
    - Nominative: hominēs
    - Genitive: hominum
    - Dative: hominibus
    - Accusative: hominēs
    - Ablative: hominibus
3. Common Uses:
    - As subject (Homō ambulat)
    - As direct object (Deī hominem amant)
    - With prepositions (dē homine)
    - In comparisons (homine melior)
    - With adjectives (homō bonus)
4. Special Constructions:
    - Ablative of comparison (homine sapientiōre)
    - Dative of reference (hominī facile)
    - Genitive of possession (hominis vīta)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "homō" requires cultural context:

1. Philosophical Usage:
    - Central to Roman concepts of humanity
    - Distinguished from dī (gods) and animālia (animals)
    - Key term in Stoic philosophy
    - Connected to concepts of virtūs and ratio
2. Legal Context:
    - Important in Roman law
    - Distinguished free persons from slaves
    - Used in citizenship discussions
    - Part of legal formulas
3. Social Implications:
    - Indicated social status
    - Used in political discourse
    - Important in religious contexts
    - Distinguished Romans from barbarians
4. Modern Connections:

- Root of "human" and related words
- Used in scientific terminology
- Important in philosophical discourse
- Present in common Latin phrases

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Officiis" (1.11):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Sed *but* **inter** *between* **hominem** *human being* **et** *and* **bēluam** *beast* **hoc** *this* **maximē** *especially* **interest** *differs,* **quod** *that* **haec** *this* **tantum** *only* **quantum** *as much as* **sēnsū** *by sense* **movētur** *is moved,* **homō** *human being* **autem** *however* **ratiōne** *by reason* **ūtitur** *uses*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Sed inter hominem et bēluam hoc maximē interest, quod haec tantum quantum sēnsū movētur, homō autem ratiōne ūtitur."

But between human being and beast this especially differs, that the latter is moved only as much as by sense, while a human being uses reason.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "homō" to emphasize the fundamental difference between humans and animals, highlighting rational thought as the key distinguishing feature.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "hominem" in accusative case after "inter"
- "homō" as subject contrasted with "bēlua"
- Complex sentence structure with relative clause
- Use of "autem" for contrast
- Ablatives of means: "sēnsū," "ratiōne"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

88.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **rogat** *asks* **quid** *what* **homō** *human being* **sit** *may be*

88.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **hominem** *human being* **animal** *animal* **ratiōnāle** *rational* **esse** *to be*

88.18 **Omnēs** *all* **hominēs** *human beings* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **quaerunt** *seek* **magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says*

88.19 **Sed** *but* **paucī** *few* **hominēs** *human beings* **eam** *it* **inveniunt** *find*

88.20 **Discipulus** *pupil* **quaerit** *asks* **cūr** *why* **hominibus** *to human beings* **ratio** *reason* **data** *given* **sit** *may be*

88.21 **Ut** *so that* **vērum** *truth* **cognōscant** *they may know* **magister** *teacher* **respondet** *replies*

88.22 **Hominēs** *human beings* **enim** *for* **dīs** *to gods* **similēs** *similar* **sunt** *are*

88.23 **Itaque** *therefore* **hominem** *human being* **perfectum** *perfect* **esse** *to be* **oportet** *it is fitting*

88.24 **Nātura** *nature* **hominī** *to human being* **multa** *many things* **dedit** *gave*

88.25 **Sed** *but* **hominis** *of human being* **maximum** *greatest* **dōnum** *gift* **ratio** *reason* **est** *is*

88.26 **Magister** *teacher* **docet** *teaches* **quōmodo** *how* **homō** *human being* **fēlīx** *happy* **esse** *to be* **possit** *may be able*

88.27 **Virtūte** *by virtue* **solā** *alone* **hominem** *human being* **beātum** *blessed* **fierī** *to become*

88.28 **Hominēs** *human beings* **sapientēs** *wise* **deōs** *gods* **colunt** *worship*

88.29 **Stultī** *foolish* **autem** *however* **hominēs** *human beings* **vītia** *vices* **sequuntur** *follow*

88.30 **Sīc** *thus* **hominum** *of human beings* **vītae** *lives* **aut** *either* **bonae** *good* **aut** *or* **malae** *bad* **sunt** *are*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

88.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid homō sit. *The teacher asks the pupil what a human being is.*

88.17 Discipulus respondet hominem animal ratiōnāle esse. *The pupil replies that a human being is a rational animal.*

88.18 Omnēs hominēs sapientiam quaerunt, magister dīcit. *All human beings seek wisdom, says the teacher.*

88.19 Sed paucī hominēs eam inveniunt. *But few human beings find it.*

88.20 Discipulus quaerit cūr hominibus ratio data sit. *The pupil asks why reason was given to human beings.*

88.21 Ut vērum cognōscant, magister respondet. *So that they may know truth, the teacher replies.*

88.22 Hominēs enim dīs similēs sunt. *For human beings are similar to the gods.*

88.23 Itaque hominem perfectum esse oportet. Therefore it is fitting that a human being be perfect.

88.24 Nātura hominī multa dedit. *Nature has given many things to the human being.*

88.25 Sed hominis maximum dōnum ratio est. *But reason is the greatest gift of a human being.*

88.26 Magister docet quōmodo homō fēlīx esse possit. *The teacher explains how a human being can be happy.*

88.27 Virtūte solā hominem beātum fierī. *By virtue alone does a human being become blessed.*

88.28 Hominēs sapientēs deōs colunt. *Wise human beings worship the gods.*

88.29 Stultī autem hominēs vītia sequuntur. *Foolish human beings, however, follow vices.*

88.30 Sīc hominum vītae aut bonae aut malae sunt. *Thus the lives of human beings are either good or bad.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

88.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid homō sit.

88.17 Discipulus respondet hominem animal ratiōnāle esse.

88.18 Omnēs hominēs sapientiam quaerunt, magister dīcit.

88.19 Sed paucī hominēs eam inveniunt.

88.20 Discipulus quaerit cūr hominibus ratio data sit.

88.21 Ut vērum cognōscant, magister respondet.

88.22 Hominēs enim dīs similēs sunt.

88.23 Itaque hominem perfectum esse oportet.

88.24 Nātura hominī multa dedit.

88.25 Sed hominis maximum dōnum ratio est.

88.26 Magister docet quōmodo homō fēlīx esse possit.

88.27 Virtūte solā hominem beātum fierī.

88.28 Hominēs sapientēs deōs colunt.

88.29 Stultī autem hominēs vītia sequuntur.

88.30 Sīc hominum vītae aut bonae aut malae sunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

The philosophical dialogue demonstrates several important grammatical constructions involving homō:

1. Indirect Questions:
    - "quid homō sit" (what a human being is)
    - Subjunctive mood required
    - Example: "Magister discipulum rogat quid homō sit"
2. Indirect Statements:
    - "hominem animal ratiōnāle esse" (that a human being is a rational animal)
    - Accusative and infinitive construction
    - Example: "Discipulus respondet hominem animal ratiōnāle esse"
3. Purpose Clauses:

- "ut vērum cognōscant" (so that they may know truth)
- Subjunctive with ut
- Connected to main clause about human nature

4. Cases of homō: a) Nominative (subject):
    - homō in "homō fēlīx esse possit"

   b) Genitive (possession):
    - hominis in "hominis maximum dōnum"

   c) Dative (indirect object):
    - hominī in "hominī multa dedit"

   d) Accusative (direct object):
    - hominem in "hominem perfectum esse"

   e) Ablative (means):
    - hominibus in "hominibus ratio data sit"
5. Word Order Patterns:
    - Emphasis through placement
    - Natural Latin order varying by meaning
    - Examples:
        - Initial position: "Hominēs enim dīs similēs sunt"
        - Medial position: "Stultī autem hominēs vītia sequuntur"
        - Final emphasis: "maximum dōnum ratio est"
6. Philosophical Vocabulary:
    - ratio (reason)
    - virtūs (virtue)
    - sapientia (wisdom)
    - vērum (truth) Used to discuss human nature and qualities
7. Connecting Words:
    - enim (for)
    - autem (however)
    - sed (but)
    - itaque (therefore) Used to build philosophical argument
8. Complementary Infinitives:
    - esse with possit
    - fierī with oportet Show potential and necessity

This dialogue demonstrates how Latin uses various grammatical constructions to build philosophical arguments about human nature, combining abstract concepts with concrete grammar.

Latin Lesson 89: tempus -oris n. (time)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

89.1 **Breve** *brief* **tempus** *time* **datum** *given* **est** *is* **hominibus** *to men*

89.2 **Magister** *teacher* **longum** *long* **tempus** *time* **exspectat** *awaits*

89.3 **Iam** *now* **tempus** *time* **bellī** *of war* **venit** *comes*

89.4 **Multum** *much* **tempus** *time* **in** *in* **studiīs** *studies* **cōnsūmimus** *we spend*

89.5 **Tempus** *time* **fugit** *flees* **velut** *like* **umbra** *shadow*

89.6 **Omnī** *in all* **tempore** *time* **labōrāre** *to work* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

89.7 **Temporis** *of time* **spatium** *space* **breve** *brief* **erat** *was*

89.8 **Rēx** *king* **temporī** *to time* **pāret** *yields* **ipse** *himself*

89.9 **Fēlīx** *happy* **illud** *that* **tempus** *time* **erat** *was*

89.10 **Per** *through* **longum** *long* **tempus** *time* **pacem** *peace* **habēbāmus** *we had*

89.11 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **tempore** *by time* **doctrīnam** *learning* **augent** *increase*

89.12 **Hōc** *at this* **tempore** *time* **multī** *many* **aegrotant** *are sick*

89.13 **Temporī** *at the right time* **venīre** *to come* **oportet** *it is proper*

89.31 **Tempus** *time* **ipsum** *itself* **omnia** *all things* **mūtat** *changes*

89.15 **Ex** *from* **illō** *that* **tempore** *time* **nēmō** *no one* **vēnit** *came*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

89.1 Breve tempus hominibus datum est. *A brief time has been given to men.*

89.2 Longum tempus magister exspectat. *The teacher awaits a long time.*

89.3 Iam tempus bellī venit. *Now the time of war comes.*

89.4 Multum tempus in studiīs cōnsūmimus. *We spend much time in studies.*

89.5 Tempus velut umbra fugit. *Time flees like a shadow.*

89.6 Omnī tempore labōrāre dēbēmus. *We ought to work at all times.*

89.7 Temporis spatium breve erat. *The span of time was brief.*

89.8 Temporī ipse rēx pāret. *Even the king yields to time.*

89.9 Fēlīx illud tempus erat. *That was a happy time.*

89.10 Per longum tempus pacem habēbāmus. *For a long time we had peace.*

89.11 Sapientēs tempore doctrīnam augent. *The wise increase their learning with time.*

89.12 Hōc tempore multī aegrotant. *At this time many are sick.*

89.13 Temporī venīre oportet. *It is proper to come at the right time.*

89.31 Tempus ipsum omnia mūtat. *Time itself changes all things.*

89.15 Ex illō tempore nēmō vēnit. *From that time no one came.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

89.1 Breve tempus hominibus datum est.

89.2 Longum tempus magister exspectat.

89.3 Iam tempus bellī venit.

89.4 Multum tempus in studiīs cōnsūmimus.

89.5 Tempus velut umbra fugit.

89.6 Omnī tempore labōrāre dēbēmus.

89.7 Temporis spatium breve erat.

89.8 Temporī ipse rēx pāret.

89.9 Fēlīx illud tempus erat.

89.10 Per longum tempus pacem habēbāmus.

89.11 Sapientēs tempore doctrīnam augent.

89.12 Hōc tempore multī aegrotant.

89.13 Temporī venīre oportet.

89.31 Tempus ipsum omnia mūtat.

89.15 Ex illō tempore nēmō vēnit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "tempus" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:
    - Third declension neuter noun
    - Stem: tempor- (appears in oblique cases)
    - Nominative singular ends in -us
    - Genitive singular: temporis

2. Complete Declension: Singular:
    - Nominative: tempus
    - Genitive: temporis
    - Dative: temporī
    - Accusative: tempus
    - Ablative: tempore

   Plural:
    - Nominative: tempora
    - Genitive: temporum
    - Dative: temporibus
    - Accusative: tempora
    - Ablative: temporibus
3. Common Uses: a) Ablative of Time When:
    - omnī tempore (at all times)
    - hōc tempore (at this time)

   b) Accusative of Duration:
    - longum tempus (for a long time)
    - multum tempus (much time)

   c) With Prepositions:
    - per tempus (through time)
    - ex tempore (from time)
4. Special Expressions:
    - temporī (at the right time, dative of purpose)
    - tempore (in time, ablative absolute)
    - temporis causā (for the sake of time)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "tempus" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Time Concepts:
    - Different from modern precise measurement
    - Based on natural cycles (sun, moon)
    - Variable hour lengths depending on season
    - Importance in religious observances
2. Philosophical Views:
    - Time as cyclical rather than linear
    - Connection to fate and destiny
    - Role in Stoic philosophy
    - Importance of "right timing" (temporī)
3. Legal and Social Significance:
    - Time limits in legal proceedings
    - Importance in business transactions
    - Role in political terms of office
    - Agricultural calendar importance

4. Literary Usage:
    - Common theme in poetry
    - Metaphors of fleeting time
    - Connection to mortality
    - Time as agent of change

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Vergil's "Georgics" (3.284-287):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Sed *but* **fugit** *flees* **intereā** *meanwhile,* **fugit** *flees* **irreparābile** *irreparable* **tempus** *time,* **singula** *individual things* **dum** *while* **captī** *captured* **circumvectāmur** *we are carried around* **amōre** *by love.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Sed fugit intereā, fugit irreparābile tempus, singula dum captī circumvectāmur amōre."

But meanwhile time, irreparable time, flees while we, captured by love, are carried around by individual things.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Vergil uses repetition of "fugit" to emphasize time's relentless passage. The metaphor of being "carried around" (circumvectāmur) suggests humanity's helplessness before time's flow.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "fugit" - present tense emphasizing ongoing action
- "irreparābile" - nominative adjective modifying tempus
- "captī" - perfect passive participle
- "amōre" - ablative of cause

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

89.16 **Antīquīs** *in ancient* **temporibus** *times* **Rōma** *Rome* **parva** *small* **urbs** *city* **erat** *was*

89.17 **Illō** *at that* **tempore** *time* **rēgēs** *kings* **populum** *people* **regēbant** *ruled*

89.18 Prīmō ***at first*** **tempore** ***time*** **cīvēs** ***citizens*** **lībertātem** ***freedom*** **nōn** ***not*** **habēbant** ***had***

89.19 **Tempore** *in time* **bellī** *of war* **multī** *many* **virī** *men* **fortēs** *brave* **pugnābant** *fought*

89.20 **Ēlāpsō** *having elapsed* **longō** *long* **tempore** *time* **rēspūblica** *republic* **crēvit** *grew*

89.21 **Eō** *at that* **tempore** *time* **senātus** *senate* **potēns** *powerful* **erat** *was*

89.22 **Temporibus** *in times* **pācis** *of peace* **artēs** *arts* **florēbant** *flourished*

89.23 **Multō** *much* **tempore** *time* **post** *after* **tyrannī** *tyrants* **urbem** *city* **occupāvērunt** *seized*

89.24 **Brevia** *brief* **tempora** *times* **fēlīcitātis** *of happiness* **fuerant** *had been*

89.25 **Tempus** *time* **ipsum** *itself* **rēs** *things* **pūblicās** *public* **mūtāvit** *changed*

89.26 **Omnibus** *in all* **temporibus** *times* **cīvēs** *citizens* **lēgēs** *laws* **servābant** *preserved*

89.27 **Tempore** *with time* **mōrēs** *customs* **antīquī** *ancient* **perīrunt** *perished*

89.28 **Novō** *in new* **tempore** *time* **novī** *new* **ducēs** *leaders* **surgēbant** *arose*

89.29 **Memoria** *memory* **illōrum** *of those* **temporum** *times* **manēbat** *remained*

89.30 **Tempore** *in time* **pācis** *of peace* **populī** *peoples* **concordēs** *harmonious* **vīvēbant** *lived*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

89.16 Antīquīs temporibus Rōma parva urbs erat. *In ancient times Rome was a small city.*

89.17 Illō tempore rēgēs populum regēbant. *At that time kings ruled the people.*

89.18 Prīmō tempore cīvēs lībertātem nōn habēbant. *In the beginning the citizens did not have freedom.*

89.19 Tempore bellī multī virī fortēs pugnābant. *In time of war many brave men fought.*

89.20 Ēlāpsō longō tempore rēspūblica crēvit. *After a long time had elapsed, the republic grew.*

89.21 Eō tempore senātus potēns erat. *At that time the senate was powerful.*

89.22 Temporibus pācis artēs florēbant. *In times of peace the arts flourished.*

89.23 Multō tempore post tyrannī urbem occupāvērunt. *Much time afterward, tyrants seized the city.*

89.24 Brevia tempora fēlīcitātis fuerant. *The times of happiness had been brief.*

89.25 Tempus ipsum rēs pūblicās mūtāvit. *Time itself changed public affairs.*

89.26 Omnibus temporibus cīvēs lēgēs servābant. *In all times the citizens preserved the laws.*

89.27 Tempore mōrēs antīquī perīrunt. *With time the ancient customs perished.*

89.28 Novō tempore novī ducēs surgēbant. *In the new time new leaders arose.*

89.29 Memoria illōrum temporum manēbat. *The memory of those times remained.*

89.30 Tempore pācis populī concordēs vīvēbant. In time of peace the peoples lived in harmony.

Part C (Latin Text Only)

89.16 Antīquīs temporibus Rōma parva urbs erat.

89.17 Illō tempore rēgēs populum regēbant.

89.18 Prīmō tempore cīvēs lībertātem nōn habēbant.

89.19 Tempore bellī multī virī fortēs pugnābant.

89.20 Ēlāpsō longō tempore rēspūblica crēvit.

89.21 Eō tempore senātus potēns erat.

89.22 Temporibus pācis artēs florēbant.

89.23 Multō tempore post tyrannī urbem occupāvērunt.

89.24 Brevia tempora fēlīcitātis fuerant.

89.25 Tempus ipsum rēs pūblicās mūtāvit.

89.26 Omnibus temporibus cīvēs lēgēs servābant.

89.27 Tempore mōrēs antīquī perīrunt.

89.28 Novō tempore novī ducēs surgēbant.

89.29 Memoria illōrum temporum manēbat.

89.30 Tempore pācis populī concordēs vīvēbant.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In historical narrative, "tempus" appears in several distinctive constructions:

1. Temporal Expressions: a) Ablative of Time When:
    - antīquīs temporibus (in ancient times)
    - illō tempore (at that time)
    - prīmō tempore (in the beginning) Shows when events occurred

   b) Ablative Absolute:
    - ēlāpsō longō tempore (after a long time had elapsed) Indicates temporal sequence
2. Prepositions with tempus:
    - post with accusative
    - in with ablative Used to establish chronological relationships
3. Special Historical Usages: a) With Adjectives of Time:
    - antīquus/novus
    - longus/brevis Describing historical periods

   b) With Political Terms:
    - tempore pācis/bellī
    - rēs pūblicae Establishing political context
4. Verb Tenses in Historical Context:
    - Imperfect for ongoing situations (erat, regēbant)
    - Perfect for completed actions (crēvit, occupāvērunt)
    - Pluperfect for prior events (fuerant)
5. Word Order Patterns:
    - Temporal phrases often begin sentences
    - Can be positioned for emphasis
    - Follows standard historical prose conventions

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 90 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 90: magis (more)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

90.1 **Magis** *more* **virtūte** *by virtue* **quam** *than* **aurō** *by gold* **patriam** *fatherland* **servāmus** *we serve*

90.2 **Fīlius** *son* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **pater** *father* **labōrat** *works*

90.3 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **magis** *more* **mente** *by mind* **quam** *than* **armīs** *by arms* **pugnant** *fight*

90.4 **Magis** *more* **populō** *to people* **quam** *than* **senātuī** *to senate* **placet** *it pleases*

90.5 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulōs** *pupils* **magis** *more* **laudat** *praises* **quam** *than* **culpat** *blames*

90.6 **Amīcus** *friend* **meus** *my* **magis** *more* **dīvitiās** *riches* **quam** *than* **virtūtem** *virtue* **amat** *loves*

90.7 **Pācem** *peace* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **bellum** *war* **petimus** *we seek*

90.8 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **rēgem** *king* **magis** *more* **timent** *fear* **quam** *than* **amant** *love*

90.9 **Magis** *more* **labōre** *by work* **quam** *than* **fortūnā** *by fortune* **dīves** *rich* **sum** *I am*

90.10 **Lēgēs** *laws* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **homō** *man* **rēgunt** *rule*

90.11 **Fīlia** *daughter* **magis** *more* **studiōsa** *studious* **quam** *than* **frāter** *brother* **est** *is*

90.12 **Magis** *more* **spē** *by hope* **quam** *than* **metū** *by fear* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **vincunt** *conquer*

90.13 **Hostēs** *enemies* **magis** *more* **numerō** *in number* **quam** *than* **virtūte** *in virtue* **valent** *are strong*

90.31 **Magis** *more* **factīs** *by deeds* **quam** *than* **verbīs** *by words* **crēdimus** *we believe*

90.15 **Senex** *old man* **magis** *more* **sapientiā** *by wisdom* **quam** *than* **vīribus** *by strength* **valet** *is strong*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

90.1 Virtūte magis quam aurō patriam servāmus. *We serve our country more by virtue than by gold.*

90.2 Fīlius magis quam pater labōrat. *The son works more than the father.*

90.3 Sapientēs mente magis quam armīs pugnant. *The wise fight more with mind than with arms.*

90.4 Populō magis quam senātuī placet. *It pleases the people more than the senate.*

90.5 Discipulōs magister magis laudat quam culpat. *The teacher praises his pupils more than he blames them.*

90.6 Amīcus meus dīvitiās magis quam virtūtem amat. *My friend loves riches more than virtue.*

90.7 Pācem magis quam bellum petimus. *We seek peace more than war.*

90.8 Rēgem cīvēs magis timent quam amant. *The citizens fear the king more than they love him.*

90.9 Labōre magis quam fortūnā dīves sum. *I am rich more by work than by fortune.*

90.10 Lēgēs magis quam homō rēgunt. *Laws rule more than man.*

90.11 Fīlia studiōsa magis quam frāter est. *The daughter is more studious than the brother.*

90.12 Spē magis quam metū mīlitēs vincunt. *Soldiers conquer more by hope than by fear.*

90.13 Numerō magis quam virtūte hostēs valent. *The enemies are strong more in number than in virtue.*

90.31 Factīs magis quam verbīs crēdimus. *We believe more in deeds than in words.*

90.15 Sapientiā magis quam vīribus senex valet. *The old man is strong more in wisdom than in physical strength.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

90.1 Virtūte magis quam aurō patriam servāmus.

90.2 Fīlius magis quam pater labōrat.

90.3 Sapientēs mente magis quam armīs pugnant.

90.4 Populō magis quam senātuī placet.

90.5 Discipulōs magister magis laudat quam culpat.

90.6 Amīcus meus dīvitiās magis quam virtūtem amat.

90.7 Pācem magis quam bellum petimus.

90.8 Rēgem cīvēs magis timent quam amant.

90.9 Labōre magis quam fortūnā dīves sum.

90.10 Lēgēs magis quam homō rēgunt.

90.11 Fīlia studiōsa magis quam frāter est.

90.12 Spē magis quam metū mīlitēs vincunt.

90.13 Numerō magis quam virtūte hostēs valent.

90.31 Factīs magis quam verbīs crēdimus.

90.15 Sapientiā magis quam vīribus senex valet.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adverb "magis" (more) is essential for making comparisons in Latin. Here are the key points for English speakers:

1. Basic Usage:
    - Functions as comparative adverb
    - Always paired with "quam" (than)
    - Different from comparative adjective endings (-ior, -ius)
2. Word Order:
    - Usually placed before the element being compared
    - Can appear in various positions for emphasis
    - Often separates compared elements
3. Case Usage:
    - Same case on both sides of "quam"
    - Example: "Virtūte magis quam aurō" (both ablative)
    - Maintains parallel structure
4. Common Patterns:
    - With verbs: "magis laudat quam culpat"
    - With nouns: "magis spē quam metū"
    - With adjectives: "magis studiōsa"
5. Special Constructions:
    - Can modify whole phrases
    - Used with abstract concepts
    - Creates emphasis in philosophical statements

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "magis" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Values:
    - Comparisons central to Roman rhetoric
    - Used in political speeches
    - Important in moral philosophy
2. Educational Use:
    - Common in teaching
    - Used for moral instruction
    - Found in proverbs and maxims
3. Literary Context:
    - Frequent in poetry
    - Used for emphasis
    - Creates balanced phrases
4. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "more"
    - Used in Latin mottos
    - Found in academic phrases

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "De Officiis" (1.65):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Sunt *there are* **autem** *however* **quī** *who* **magis** *more* **quod** *what* **decōrum** *proper* **est** *is* **quam** *than* **quod** *what* **honestum** *honorable* **est** *is* **sequantur** *follow,* **et** *and* **quī** *who* **haec** *these things* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so much* **rēbus** *by things* **quam** *than* **verbīs** *by words* **ponderanda** *to be weighed* **existiment** *they think.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Sunt autem quī magis quod decōrum est quam quod honestum est sequantur, et quī haec nōn tam rēbus quam verbīs ponderanda existiment.

There are, however, those who follow what is proper more than what is honorable, and who think these things should be weighed not so much by actions as by words.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "magis" to contrast moral values. The parallel structure emphasizes the difference between appearance and reality.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "magis" introduces first comparison
- "tam...quam" creates second comparison
- Subjunctive "sequantur" in relative clause
- Gerundive "ponderanda" shows necessity

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

90.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **rogat** *asks* **quid** *what* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **sapientia** *wisdom* **valeat** *is powerful*

90.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **nihil** *nothing* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **virtutem** *virtue* **valēre** *to be powerful*

90.18 **Magis** *more* **virtūte** *by virtue* **quam** *than* **fortūnā** *by fortune* **hominēs** *men* **beātī** *happy* **sunt** *are*

90.19 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **dīcit** *says* **sapientiam** *wisdom* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **aurum** *gold* **valdē** *greatly* **amāre** *to love*

90.20 **Magis** *more* **cogitāre** *to think* **quam** *than* **loquī** *to speak* **sapienter** *wisely* **est** *is*

90.21 **Sapientis** *of wise man* **est** *it is* **magis** *more* **animum** *mind* **quam** *than* **corpus** *body* **cūrāre** *to care for*

90.22 **Discipulus** *pupil* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **antea** *before* **intellegit** *understands* **veritātem** *truth*

90.23 **Magis** *more* **scientiā** *by knowledge* **quam** *than* **opīniōne** *by opinion* **vīvere** *to live* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

90.24 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **docet** *teaches* **nōs** *us* **magis** *more* **ratione** *by reason* **quam** *than* **īrā** *by anger* **agere** *to act*

90.25 **Magis** *more* **exemplō** *by example* **quam** *than* **praeceptīs** *by precepts* **discipulī** *pupils* **discunt** *learn*

90.26 **Magistrī** *of teacher* **verba** *words* **magis** *more* **quam** *than* **librī** *books* **docent** *teach*

90.27 **Magis** *more* **dē** *about* **animō** *soul* **quam** *than* **dē** *about* **corpore** *body* **cogitāmus** *we think*

90.28 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **magis** *more* **vēritātem** *truth* **quam** *than* **glōriam** *glory* **quaerit** *seeks*

90.29 **Discipulus** *pupil* **magis** *more* **intellegere** *to understand* **quam** *than* **memorāre** *to memorize* **studet** *strives*

90.30 **Magis** *more* **sapientiae** *of wisdom* **quam** *than* **pecūniae** *of money* **studiōsī** *eager* **esse** *to be* **dēbēmus** *we ought*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

90.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid magis quam sapientia valeat. *The teacher asks the pupil what is more powerful than wisdom.*

90.17 Discipulus respondet nihil magis quam virtūtem valēre. *The pupil replies that nothing is more powerful than virtue.*

90.18 Virtūte magis quam fortūnā hominēs beātī sunt. *Men are happy more by virtue than by fortune.*

90.19 Philosophus dīcit sē sapientiam magis quam aurum valdē amāre. *The philosopher says that he loves wisdom much more than gold.*

90.20 Magis cogitāre quam loquī sapienter est. *To think more than to speak is wise.*

90.21 Sapientis est magis animum quam corpus cūrāre. *It is characteristic of a wise person to care more for the mind than for the body.*

90.22 Discipulus magis quam antea intellegit veritātem. *The pupil understands truth more than before.*

90.23 Magis scientiā quam opīniōne vīvere dēbēmus. *We ought to live more by knowledge than by opinion.*

90.24 Philosophus docet nōs magis ratione quam īrā agere. *The philosopher teaches us to act more by reason than by anger.*

90.25 Magis exemplō quam praeceptīs discipulī discunt. *Students learn more by example than by rules.*

90.26 Magistrī verba magis quam librī docent. *The teacher's words teach more than books.*

90.27 Magis dē animō quam dē corpore cogitāmus. *We think more about the soul than about the body.*

90.28 Philosophus magis vēritātem quam glōriam quaerit. *The philosopher seeks truth more than glory.*

90.29 Discipulus magis intellegere quam memorāre studet. *The pupil strives more to understand than to memorize.*

90.30 Magis sapientiae quam pecūniae studiōsī esse dēbēmus. *We ought to be more eager for wisdom than for money.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

90.16 Magister discipulum rogat quid magis quam sapientia valeat.

90.17 Discipulus respondet nihil magis quam virtūtem valēre.

90.18 Virtūte magis quam fortūnā hominēs beātī sunt.

90.19 Philosophus dīcit sē sapientiam magis quam aurum valdē amāre.

90.20 Magis cogitāre quam loquī sapienter est.

90.21 Sapientis est magis animum quam corpus cūrāre.

90.22 Discipulus magis quam antea intellegit veritātem.

90.23 Magis scientiā quam opīniōne vīvere dēbēmus.

90.24 Philosophus docet nōs magis ratione quam īrā agere.

90.25 Magis exemplō quam praeceptīs discipulī discunt.

90.26 Magistrī verba magis quam librī docent.

90.27 Magis dē animō quam dē corpore cogitāmus.

90.28 Philosophus magis vēritātem quam glōriam quaerit.

90.29 Discipulus magis intellegere quam memorāre studet.

90.30 Magis sapientiae quam pecūniae studiōsī esse dēbēmus.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In this philosophical dialogue section, "magis" demonstrates several important grammatical patterns:

1. With Infinitives:
    - "magis cogitāre quam loquī" shows comparison between actions
    - Infinitives remain parallel in structure

    - Both verbs share same subject
2. With Abstract Nouns:
    - "magis sapientiam quam aurum"
    - Often in accusative as direct objects
    - Can appear in other cases based on function
3. Special Philosophical Constructions:
    - "Sapientis est" + infinitive construction
    - Impersonal verbs with "magis"
    - Gerundive constructions
4. Case Usage in Comparisons:
    - Ablative of means: "virtūte magis quam fortūnā"
    - Accusative of direct object: "magis vēritātem quam glōriam"
    - Genitive of characteristic: "magis sapientiae quam pecūniae"
5. Word Order Variations:
    - Initial position for emphasis
    - Between compared elements
    - Near relevant verb

These examples show how philosophical Latin uses "magis" to create nuanced comparisons about abstract concepts, moral values, and intellectual pursuits.

Lesson 91 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 91: prīmus -a -um (first)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

91.1 **Prīmus** *first* **mīles** *soldier* **in** *into* **urbem** *city* **vēnit** *came*

91.2 **Puer** *boy* **prīmam** *first* **epistulam** *letter* **scrībit** *writes*

91.3 **Prīmō** *on first* **diē** *day* **bellum** *war* **incipit** *begins*

91.4 **Magister** *teacher* **prīmum** *first* **discipulum** *pupil* **laudat** *praises*

91.5 **Prīmā** *in first* **lūce** *light* **agricola** *farmer* **surgit** *rises*

91.6 **Servus** *slave* **prīmum** *first* **verbum** *word* **audit** *hears*

91.7 **Prīmā** *in first* **hōrā** *hour* **sacerdōs** *priest* **templum** *temple* **intrat** *enters*

91.8 **Nauta** *sailor* **prīmam** *first* **stellam** *star* **videt** *sees*

91.9 **Prīmō** *at first* **tempore** *time* **rēx** *king* **venit** *comes*

91.10 **Fēmina** *woman* **prīmum** *first* **flōrem** *flower* **capit** *takes*

91.11 **Prīmā** *in first* **nocte** *night* **lupus** *wolf* **ululat** *howls*

91.12 **Hostis** *enemy* **prīmum** *first* **oppidum** *town* **capit** *captures*

91.13 **Prīmō** *in first* **annō** *year* **cōnsul** *consul* **fuit** *was*

91.31 **Discipula** *female student* **prīmam** *first* **fābulam** *story* **legit** *reads*

91.15 **Prīmum** *first* **carmen** *song* **poēta** *poet* **cantat** *sings*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

91.1 Prīmus mīles in urbem vēnit. *The first soldier came into the city.*

91.2 Puer prīmam epistulam scrībit. *The boy writes his first letter.*

91.3 Prīmō diē bellum incipit. *On the first day, the war begins.*

91.4 Magister prīmum discipulum laudat. *The teacher praises the first student.*

91.5 Prīmā lūce agricola surgit. *At first light, the farmer rises.*

91.6 Servus prīmum verbum audit. *The slave hears the first word.*

91.7 Prīmā hōrā sacerdōs templum intrat. *In the first hour, the priest enters the temple.*

91.8 Nauta prīmam stellam videt. *The sailor sees the first star.*

91.9 Prīmō tempore rēx venit. *At the first opportunity, the king comes.*

91.10 Fēmina prīmum flōrem capit. *The woman takes the first flower.*

91.11 Prīmā nocte lupus ululat. *In the first night, the wolf howls.*

91.12 Hostis prīmum oppidum capit. *The enemy captures the first town.*

91.13 Prīmō annō cōnsul fuit. *In the first year, he was consul.*

91.31 Discipula prīmam fābulam legit. *The student reads the first story.*

91.15 Prīmum carmen poēta cantat. *The poet sings the first song.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

91.1 Prīmus mīles in urbem vēnit.

91.2 Puer prīmam epistulam scrībit.

91.3 Prīmō diē bellum incipit.

91.4 Magister prīmum discipulum laudat.

91.5 Prīmā lūce agricola surgit.

91.6 Servus prīmum verbum audit.

91.7 Prīmā hōrā sacerdōs templum intrat.

91.8 Nauta prīmam stellam videt.

91.9 Prīmō tempore rēx venit.

91.10 Fēmina prīmum flōrem capit.

91.11 Prīmā nocte lupus ululat.

91.12 Hostis prīmum oppidum capit.

91.13 Prīmō annō cōnsul fuit.

91.31 Discipula prīmam fābulam legit.

91.15 Prīmum carmen poēta cantat.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adjective "prīmus -a -um" is a regular first/second declension adjective with some special features:

1. Forms:
    - Masculine: prīmus, prīmī, prīmō, prīmum, prīmō
    - Feminine: prīma, prīmae, prīmae, prīmam, prīmā
    - Neuter: prīmum, prīmī, prīmō, prīmum, prīmō
2. Special Uses:
    - Ablative of time: "prīmā lūce" (at first light)
    - Ordinal number: "prīmus" (first in a sequence)
    - Adverbial use: "prīmum" (firstly, at first)
3. Common Patterns in Our Examples:
    - With temporal nouns: "prīmō diē", "prīmā nocte"
    - As direct object modifier: "prīmam epistulam"
    - As subject modifier: "prīmus mīles"
4. Word Order:
    - Usually precedes its noun
    - Can be separated for emphasis
    - Often at sentence beginning for temporal expressions

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "prīmus" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Counting:
    - Romans used ordinal numbers extensively
    - First position often carried special significance
    - Military ranks often used ordinal numbers
    - Religious ceremonies emphasized order
2. Social Implications:

- Being "first" carried prestige
- First citizen (prīnceps) became imperial title
- First speaker in Senate had special privilege
- First-born status important in families

3. Time Concepts:
    - Romans marked time from first hour
    - First watch had military significance
    - First day of month was Kalends
    - First year of consulship marked time
4. Modern Connections:
    - "Prime" derives from "prīmus"
    - "Primary" shows similar meaning
    - "Premier" shares etymology
    - Scientific "primary" maintains sense

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Livy's Ab Urbe Condita (1.1):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Iam *now* **prīmum** *first* **omnium** *of all things* **satis** *sufficiently* **cōnstat** *it is established* **Trōiā** *Troy* **captā** *having been captured* **in** *against* **cēterōs** *the remaining* **saevītum** *cruelty was shown* **esse** *to be* **Trōiānōs** *Trojans,* **duōbus** *from two* **Aeneā** *Aeneas* **Antenoreque** *and Antenor* **propter** *on account of* **vetustum** *ancient* **hospitium** *hospitality* **abstinuisse** *to have refrained* **Graecōs** *the Greeks***.**

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Iam prīmum omnium satis cōnstat Trōiā captā in cēterōs saevītum esse Trōiānōs, duōbus Aeneā Antenoreque propter vetustum hospitium abstinuisse Graecōs."

Now first of all it is sufficiently established that when Troy was captured, while cruelty was shown to the rest of the Trojans, the Greeks refrained from two men, Aeneas and Antenor, because of ancient hospitality.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Livy uses "prīmum" here to introduce the foundational story of Rome's origins. The word placement emphasizes the primary importance of this historical tradition.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "prīmum" used adverbially
- Ablative absolute "Trōiā captā"
- Indirect statement with "cōnstat"
- Complex sentence structure typical of Livy
- Perfect passive infinitive "saevītum esse"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

91.16 **Prīma** *first* **legiō** *legion* **castra** *camp* **in** *on* **colle** *hill* **posuit** *placed*

91.17 **Dux** *leader* **prīmum** *first* **signum** *signal* **mīlitibus** *to soldiers* **dedit** *gave*

91.18 **Prīmō** *at first* **impetū** *attack* **hostēs** *enemies* **fugērunt** *fled*

91.19 **Prīmus** *first* **explōrātor** *scout* **perīculum** *danger* **nūntiāvit** *announced*

91.20 **Prīmā** *in first* **vigiliā** *watch* **hostēs** *enemies* **appropinquant** *approach*

91.21 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **prīmum** *first* **vallum** *rampart* **mūnīvērunt** *fortified*

91.22 **Prīmō** *on first* **annō** *year* **bellī** *of war* **multae** *many* **victōriae** *victories* **erant** *were*

91.23 **Dux** *leader* **prīmās** *first* **cohortēs** *cohorts* **in** *into* **proelium** *battle* **dūxit** *led*

91.24 **Prīmō** *at first* **adventū** *arrival* **exercitūs** *army* **oppidum** *town* **expugnāvit** *captured*

91.25 **Prīma** *first* **aciēs** *battle line* **hostēs** *enemies* **sustinuit** *withstood*

91.26 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **prīmum** *first* **agmen** *column* **dūcunt** *lead*

91.27 **Prīmā** *at first* **lūce** *light* **tubae** *trumpets* **bellicum** *war signal* **canunt** *sound*

91.28 **Prīmus** *first* **centuriō** *centurion* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **cohortātus** *having encouraged* **est** *is*

91.29 **Prīmō** *on first* **diē** *day* **pugnae** *of battle* **multī** *many* **cecidērunt** *fell*

91.30 **Prīma** *first* **cohors** *cohort* **summā** *with highest* **virtūte** *valor* **dīmicāvit** *fought*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

91.16 Prīma legiō castra in colle posuit. *The first legion placed its camp on the hill.*

91.17 Dux prīmum signum mīlitibus dedit. *The leader gave the first signal to the soldiers.*

91.18 Prīmō impetū hostēs fugērunt. *At the first attack, the enemies fled.*

91.19 Prīmus explōrātor perīculum nūntiāvit. *The first scout announced the danger.*

91.20 Prīmā vigiliā hostēs appropinquant. *During the first watch, the enemies approach.*

91.21 Mīlitēs prīmum vallum mūnīvērunt. *The soldiers fortified the first rampart.*

91.22 Prīmō annō bellī multae victōriae erant. *In the first year of the war, there were many victories.*

91.23 Dux prīmās cohortēs in proelium dūxit. The leader led the first cohorts into battle.

91.24 Prīmō adventū exercitūs oppidum expugnāvit. *At its first arrival, the army captured the town.*

91.25 Prīma aciēs hostēs sustinuit. *The first battle line withstood the enemies.*

91.26 Equitēs prīmum agmen dūcunt. *The cavalry lead the first column.*

91.27 Prīmā lūce tubae bellicum canunt. *At first light, the trumpets sound the war signal.*

91.28 Prīmus centuriō mīlitēs cohortātus est. *The first centurion encouraged the soldiers.*

91.29 Prīmō diē pugnae multī cecidērunt. *On the first day of battle, many fell.*

91.30 Prīma cohors summā virtūte dīmicāvit. *The first cohort fought with the highest valor.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

91.16 Prīma legiō castra in colle posuit.

91.17 Dux prīmum signum mīlitibus dedit.

91.18 Prīmō impetū hostēs fugērunt.

91.19 Prīmus explōrātor perīculum nūntiāvit.

91.20 Prīmā vigiliā hostēs appropinquant.

91.21 Mīlitēs prīmum vallum mūnīvērunt.

91.22 Prīmō annō bellī multae victōriae erant.

91.23 Dux prīmās cohortēs in proelium dūxit.

91.24 Prīmō adventū exercitūs oppidum expugnāvit.

91.25 Prīma aciēs hostēs sustinuit.

91.26 Equitēs prīmum agmen dūcunt.

91.27 Prīmā lūce tubae bellicum canunt.

91.28 Prīmus centuriō mīlitēs cohortātus est.

91.29 Prīmō diē pugnae multī cecidērunt.

91.30 Prīma cohors summā virtūte dīmicāvit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

In military reports, "prīmus -a -um" appears in several specialized contexts:

1. Military Units:
    - With legiō: "prīma legiō" (first legion)
    - With cohors: "prīma cohors" (first cohort)
    - With aciēs: "prīma aciēs" (first battle line)
2. Time Expressions in Military Context:
    - "prīmā vigiliā" (during first watch)
    - "prīmā lūce" (at first light)
    - "prīmō diē" (on first day)

3. Military Actions:
    - "prīmus impetus" (first attack)
    - "prīmum signum" (first signal)
    - "prīmum agmen" (first column)
4. Military Personnel:
    - "prīmus explōrātor" (first scout)
    - "prīmus centuriō" (first centurion)
5. Fortifications:
    - "prīmum vallum" (first rampart)
    - "prīma castra" (first camp)
6. Case Usage in Military Context:
    - Ablative of time: "prīmō adventū" (at first arrival)
    - Accusative direct object: "prīmās cohortēs" (first cohorts)
    - Nominative subject: "prīma legiō" (first legion)
7. Word Order in Military Reports:
    - Often initial position for emphasis
    - Can follow noun for special focus
    - Frequently with temporal expressions
8. Special Military Phrases:
    - "prīmō impetū" (at first assault)
    - "prīmā aciē" (in the front line)
    - "prīmō adventū" (at first arrival)

Lesson 92 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: ubi (where, when)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

92.1 **Dux** *leader* **rogat** *asks* **ubi** *where* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **sint** *are*

92.2 **Ubi** *when* **vēr** *spring* **venit** *comes,* **avēs** *birds* **cantant** *sing*

92.3 **Puer** *boy* **nescit** *does not know* **ubi** *where* **līber** *book* **sit** *is*

92.4 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **ubi** *where* **habitāret** *he lived* **interrogāvit** *asked*

92.5 **Ubi** *when* **nox** *night* **venit** *comes,* **lūna** *moon* **lūcet** *shines*

92.6 **Senex** *old man* **mē** *me* **ubi** *where* **templum** *temple* **esset** *was* **docuit** *taught*

92.7 **Hostēs** *enemies* **nōs** *us* **ubi** *where* **thēsaurus** *treasure* **latēret** *was hiding* **rogāvērunt** *asked*

92.8 **Ubi** *where* **pāx** *peace* **est** *is,* **populus** *people* **laetus** *happy* **est** *is*

92.9 **Agricola** *farmer* **ubi** *where* **agrī** *fields* **optimī** *best* **essent** *were* **quaerēbat** *was seeking*

92.10 **Ubi** *when* **tempestās** *storm* **appropinquat** *approaches,* **nautae** *sailors* **portum** *harbor* **petunt** *seek*

92.11 **Mercātor** *merchant* **interrogat** *asks* **ubi** *where* **forum** *marketplace* **sit** *is*

92.12 **Ubi** *when* **sōl** *sun* **occidit** *sets,* **tenebrae** *darkness* **surgunt** *rises*

92.13 **Mīles** *soldier* **videt** *sees* **ubi** *where* **castra** *camp* **hostium** *of enemies* **sint** *are*

92.31 **Ubi** *where* **mare** *sea* **caelum** *sky* **tangit** *touches,* **terra** *land* **fīnītur** *ends*

92.15 **Fīlius** *son* **patrem** *father* **ubi** *where* **māter** *mother* **esset** *was* **rogāvit** *asked*

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

92.1 Dux rogat ubi mīlitēs sint. *The leader asks where the soldiers are.*

92.2 Ubi vēr venit, avēs cantant. *When spring comes, the birds sing.*

92.3 Puer nescit ubi līber sit. *The boy does not know where the book is.*

92.4 Magister discipulum ubi habitāret interrogāvit. *The teacher asked the pupil where he lived.*

92.5 Ubi nox venit, lūna lūcet. *When night comes, the moon shines.*

92.6 Senex mē ubi templum esset docuit. *The old man taught me where the temple was.*

92.7 Hostēs nōs ubi thēsaurus latēret rogāvērunt. *The enemies asked us where the treasure was hidden.*

92.8 Ubi pāx est, populus laetus est. *Where there is peace, the people are happy.*

92.9 Agricola ubi agrī optimī essent quaerēbat. *The farmer was seeking where the best fields were.*

92.10 Ubi tempestās appropinquat, nautae portum petunt. *When the storm approaches, the sailors seek harbor.*

92.11 Mercātor interrogat ubi forum sit. *The merchant asks where the marketplace is.*

92.12 Ubi sōl occidit, tenebrae surgunt. *When the sun sets, darkness rises.*

92.13 Mīles videt ubi castra hostium sint. *The soldier sees where the enemy camp is.*

92.31 Ubi mare caelum tangit, terra fīnītur. *Where the sea touches the sky, the land ends.*

92.15 Fīlius patrem ubi māter esset rogāvit. *The son asked his father where his mother was.*

✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻ ✻ ❦ ✻ ❦ ✻

Part C (Latin Text Only)

92.1 Dux rogat ubi mīlitēs sint.

92.2 Ubi vēr venit, avēs cantant.

92.3 Puer nescit ubi līber sit.

92.4 Magister discipulum ubi habitāret interrogāvit.

92.5 Ubi nox venit, lūna lūcet.

92.6 Senex mē ubi templum esset docuit.

92.7 Hostēs nōs ubi thēsaurus latēret rogāvērunt.

92.8 Ubi pāx est, populus laetus est.

92.9 Agricola ubi agrī optimī essent quaerēbat.

92.10 Ubi tempestās appropinquat, nautae portum petunt.

92.11 Mercātor interrogat ubi forum sit.

92.12 Ubi sōl occidit, tenebrae surgunt.

92.13 Mīles videt ubi castra hostium sint.

92.31 Ubi mare caelum tangit, terra fīnītur.

92.15 Fīlius patrem ubi māter esset rogāvit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Ubi" is a versatile word that functions in two main ways:

1. As an Interrogative Adverb ("where?"):
    - In direct questions: "Ubi est līber?" (Where is the book?)
    - In indirect questions: Takes subjunctive mood
    - Example: "Rogat ubi sit" (He asks where it is)
2. As a Temporal Conjunction ("when"):
    - Introduces temporal clauses
    - Usually takes indicative mood
    - Example: "Ubi vēr venit, avēs cantant"

Key Grammar Points:

1. Mood Usage:
    - Indirect Questions: Always subjunctive
    - Temporal Clauses: Usually indicative
    - Examples:
        - Subjunctive: "nescit ubi sit" (doesn't know where it is)
        - Indicative: "ubi venit, cantant" (when he comes, they sing)
2. Tense Sequence:
    - Present → Present: "rogat ubi sit" (asks where it is)
    - Past → Imperfect: "rogāvit ubi esset" (asked where it was)
3. Position in Sentence:

- Can begin clause: "Ubi pāx est..."
- Can be embedded: "rogat ubi sint"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "ubi" in Roman culture requires considering:

1. Geographic Context:
    - Romans were precise about location
    - Important for military operations
    - Essential for trade and commerce
    - Used in legal documents for property
2. Temporal Usage:
    - Romans marked time differently than we do
    - Used for significant events
    - Important in historical narratives
    - Common in agricultural contexts
3. Literary Usage:
    - Frequent in poetry for dramatic effect
    - Used in rhetorical questions
    - Important in philosophical discussions
    - Common in letter writing
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Still used in scientific terminology
    - Found in legal Latin
    - Used in ecclesiastical contexts
    - Part of common Latin phrases

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.25):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Caesar *Caesar* **ubi** *when* **vidit** *saw* **suōs** *his men* **urgērī** *were being pressed* **signīsque** *and from the standards* **in** *into* **ūnum** *one* **locum** *place* **collātīs** *having been brought together* **duodecimae** *of the twelfth* **legiōnis** *legion* **confertōs** *crowded* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **sibi** *themselves* **ipsōs** *themselves* **ad** *for* **pugnam** *battle* **esse** *to be* **impedīmentō** *a hindrance***...**

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

Caesar ubi vidit suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis confertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō...

When Caesar saw that his men were being pressed and that the soldiers of the twelfth legion, with their standards gathered in one place, were crowded together and were themselves a hindrance to their own fighting...

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "ubi" here to introduce a key moment in battle. The temporal clause sets up the situation that prompts Caesar's next action. Note how:

- The word order emphasizes the urgency
- Complex participial phrases build tension
- The indirect statement structure shows observation and reaction

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "ubi" introduces temporal clause with "vidit"
- Indirect statement follows with "esse"
- Perfect passive participle "collātīs"
- Dative of disadvantage "impedīmentō"

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

92.16 **Dux** *leader* **quaerit** *seeks* **ubi** *where* **hostēs** *enemies* **castra** *camp* **posuerint** *have placed*

92.17 **Ubi** *when* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **revertērunt** *returned,* **nūntiant** *they announce* **hostēs** *enemies* **appropinquāre** *to be approaching*

92.18 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **cognōscere** *to learn* **volunt** *want* **ubi** *where* **cōpiae** *forces* **hostium** *of enemies* **sint** *are*

92.19 **Ubi** *when* **prīmum** *first* **lūx** *light* **appāruit** *appeared,* **legiōnēs** *legions* **instructae** *drawn up* **sunt** *were*

92.20 **Tribūnus** *tribune* **quaerit** *asks* **ubi** *where* **impedīmenta** *baggage* **servī** *slaves* **posuerint** *have placed*

92.21 **Ubi** *when* **signum** *signal* **datum** *given* **est** *was,* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **prōcessērunt** *advanced*

92.22 **Praefectus** *commander* **rogābat** *was asking* **ubi** *where* **equitēs** *cavalry* **essent** *were*

92.23 **Ubi** *when* **hostēs** *enemies* **vīsī** *seen* **sunt** *were,* **tuba** *trumpet* **cecinit** *sounded*

92.24 **Dux** *leader* **cognōvit** *learned* **ubi** *where* **flūmen** *river* **vadōsum** *fordable* **esset** *was*

92.25 **Ubi** *when* **vallum** *rampart* **perfectum** *completed* **est** *was,* **vigilēs** *guards* **dispositī** *positioned* **sunt** *were*

92.26 **Centuriō** *centurion* **incertus** *uncertain* **est** *is* **ubi** *where* **pōns** *bridge* **maximē** *most* **firmus** *strong* **sit** *is*

92.27 **Ubi** *when* **clāmor** *shout* **sublātus** *raised* **est** *was,* **hastātī** *spearmen* **prōsilīvērunt** *leaped forward*

92.28 **Lēgātus** *lieutenant* **cognōscere** *to learn* **cupit** *desires* **ubi** *where* **castra** *camp* **aestīva** *summer* **pōnenda** *to be placed* **sint** *are*

92.29 **Ubi** *when* **nox** *night* **advēnit** *arrived,* **vigiliae** *watches* **dispositae** *arranged* **sunt** *were*

92.30 **Imperātor** *commander* **quaerit** *asks* **ubi** *where* **aquilae** *eagles* **legiōnum** *of legions* **cōnspicī** *to be seen* **possint** *can be*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

92.16 Dux quaerit ubi hostēs castra posuerint. *The leader asks where the enemies have placed their camp.*

92.17 Ubi explōrātōrēs revertērunt, nūntiant hostēs appropinquāre. *When the scouts returned, they announce that the enemies are approaching.*

92.18 Mīlitēs cognōscere volunt ubi cōpiae hostium sint. *The soldiers want to learn where the enemy forces are.*

92.19 Ubi prīmum lūx appāruit, legiōnēs instructae sunt. *As soon as light appeared, the legions were drawn up.*

92.20 Tribūnus quaerit ubi impedīmenta servī posuerint. *The tribune asks where the slaves have placed the baggage.*

92.21 Ubi signum datum est, mīlitēs prōcessērunt. *When the signal was given, the soldiers advanced.*

92.22 Praefectus rogābat ubi equitēs essent. *The commander was asking where the cavalry were.*

92.23 Ubi hostēs vīsī sunt, tuba cecinit. *When the enemies were seen, the trumpet sounded.*

92.24 Dux cognōvit ubi flūmen vadōsum esset. *The leader learned where the river was fordable.*

92.25 Ubi vallum perfectum est, vigilēs dispositī sunt. *When the rampart was completed, guards were positioned.*

92.26 Centuriō incertus est ubi pōns maximē firmus sit. *The centurion is uncertain where the bridge is strongest.*

92.27 Ubi clāmor sublātus est, hastātī prōsilīvērunt. *When the shout was raised, the spearmen leaped forward.*

92.28 Lēgātus cognōscere cupit ubi castra aestīva pōnenda sint. *The lieutenant desires to learn where the summer camp should be placed.*

92.29 Ubi nox advēnit, vigiliae dispositae sunt. *When night arrived, the watches were arranged.*

92.30 Imperātor quaerit ubi aquilae legiōnum cōnspicī possint. *The commander asks where the eagles of the legions can be seen.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

92.16 Dux quaerit ubi hostēs castra posuerint.

92.17 Ubi explōrātōrēs revertērunt, nūntiant hostēs appropinquāre.

92.18 Mīlitēs cognōscere volunt ubi cōpiae hostium sint.

92.19 Ubi prīmum lūx appāruit, legiōnēs instructae sunt.

92.20 Tribūnus quaerit ubi impedīmenta servī posuerint.

92.21 Ubi signum datum est, mīlitēs prōcessērunt.

92.22 Praefectus rogābat ubi equitēs essent.

92.23 Ubi hostēs vīsī sunt, tuba cecinit.

92.24 Dux cognōvit ubi flūmen vadōsum esset.

92.25 Ubi vallum perfectum est, vigilēs dispositī sunt.

92.26 Centuriō incertus est ubi pōns maximē firmus sit.

92.27 Ubi clāmor sublātus est, hastātī prōsilīvērunt.

92.28 Lēgātus cognōscere cupit ubi castra aestīva pōnenda sint.

92.29 Ubi nox advēnit, vigiliae dispositae sunt.

92.30 Imperātor quaerit ubi aquilae legiōnum cōnspicī possint.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

In military contexts, "ubi" serves several crucial functions:

1. Temporal Uses in Military Operations:
    - Marking sequence of events: "Ubi signum datum est..."
    - Indicating immediate action: "Ubi prīmum..."
    - Describing routine procedures: "Ubi nox advēnit..."
2. Locative Uses in Military Intelligence:
    - Indirect questions about enemy positions
    - Strategic locations: "ubi flūmen vadōsum esset"
    - Placement of troops and equipment
3. Special Military Constructions:
    - With perfect passive participles: "ubi vallum perfectum est"
    - In scout reports: "ubi hostēs vīsī sunt"
    - With gerundives of obligation: "ubi castra pōnenda sint"
4. Mood Usage in Military Context:

- Indicative for factual temporal clauses
- Subjunctive for indirect questions about location
- Perfect subjunctive in indirect questions about completed actions

5. Notable Patterns:
    - Often paired with military technical terms
    - Frequent use with verbs of motion and placement
    - Common in reconnaissance reports

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 93 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 93: hostis -is m./f. (enemy, stranger)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

93.1 **Hostis** *enemy* **urbem** *city* **magnō** *with great* **exercitū** *army* **oppugnat** *attacks*

93.2 **Multī** *many* **hostēs** *enemies* **in** *in* **agrīs** *fields* **nostrīs** *our* **sunt** *are*

93.3 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **nostrī** *our* **hostium** *of enemies* **castra** *camp* **vīdērunt** *saw*

93.4 **Dux** *leader* **hostibus** *to enemies* **pācem** *peace* **dare** *to give* **nōn** *not* **vult** *wishes*

93.5 **Hostēs** *enemies* **per** *through* **montēs** *mountains* **altōs** *high* **fugiunt** *flee*

93.6 **Populus** *people* **Rōmānus** *Roman* **hostēs** *enemies* **multōs** *many* **habet** *has*

93.7 **Ab** *by* **hoste** *enemy* **victī** *conquered* **sumus** *we are*

93.8 **Hostis** *enemy* **noster** *our* **auxilium** *help* **petit** *seeks*

93.9 **Cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **magnō** *great* **in** *in* **proēliō** *battle* **pugnāmus** *we fight*

93.10 **Hostium** *of enemies* **arma** *weapons* **in** *in* **flūmine** *river* **sunt** *are*

93.11 **Fortēs** *brave* **virī** *men* **hostem** *enemy* **nōn** *not* **timent** *fear*

93.12 **Ex** *from* **hostibus** *enemies* **multī** *many* **occīsī** *killed* **sunt** *were*

93.13 **Hostēs** *enemies* **murum** *wall* **altum** *high* **trānsīre** *to cross* **temptant** *try*

93.31 **Ad** *to* **hostium** *of enemies* **fīnēs** *territories* **vēnimus** *we came*

93.15 **Hostēs** *enemies* **prope** *near* **portam** *gate* **urbis** *of city* **vīsī** *seen* **sunt** *were*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

93.1 Urbem magnō exercitū hostis oppugnat. *The enemy attacks the city with a great army.*

93.2 In agrīs nostrīs hostēs multī sunt. *Many enemies are in our fields.*

93.3 Castra hostium mīlitēs nostrī vīdērunt. *Our soldiers saw the enemy's camp.*

93.4 Hostibus pācem dare dux nōn vult. *The leader does not wish to give peace to the enemies.*

93.5 Per montēs altōs hostēs fugiunt. *The enemies flee through the high mountains.*

93.6 Hostēs multōs populus Rōmānus habet. *The Roman people have many enemies.*

93.7 Ab hoste victī sumus. *We have been conquered by the enemy.*

93.8 Auxilium hostis noster petit. *Our enemy seeks help.*

93.9 Magnō in proēliō cum hostibus pugnāmus. *We fight with the enemies in a great battle.*

93.10 In flūmine arma hostium sunt. *The enemies' weapons are in the river.*

93.11 Hostem fortēs virī nōn timent. *Brave men do not fear the enemy.*

93.12 Multī ex hostibus occīsī sunt. *Many of the enemies were killed.*

93.13 Murum altum hostēs trānsīre temptant. *The enemies try to cross the high wall.*

93.31 Ad fīnēs hostium vēnimus. *We came to the territories of the enemies.*

93.15 Prope portam urbis hostēs vīsī sunt. *The enemies were seen near the city gate.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

93.1 Urbem magnō exercitū hostis oppugnat.

93.2 In agrīs nostrīs hostēs multī sunt.

93.3 Castra hostium mīlitēs nostrī vīdērunt.

93.4 Hostibus pācem dare dux nōn vult.

93.5 Per montēs altōs hostēs fugiunt.

93.6 Hostēs multōs populus Rōmānus habet.

93.7 Ab hoste victī sumus.

93.8 Auxilium hostis noster petit.

93.9 Magnō in proēliō cum hostibus pugnāmus.

93.10 In flūmine arma hostium sunt.

93.11 Hostem fortēs virī nōn timent.

93.12 Multī ex hostibus occīsī sunt.

93.13 Murum altum hostēs trānsīre temptant.

93.31 Ad fīnēs hostium vēnimus.

93.15 Prope portam urbis hostēs vīsī sunt.

❃ ❦ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❦ ❃

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "hostis" presents several important features for English speakers:

1. Form and Gender:
    - Third declension i-stem noun
    - Can be either masculine or feminine
    - Nominative singular: hostis
    - Genitive singular: hostis
    - Usually masculine in military contexts
2. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: hostis
    - Genitive: hostis
    - Dative: hostī
    - Accusative: hostem
    - Ablative: hoste

    Plural:
    - Nominative: hostēs
    - Genitive: hostium
    - Dative: hostibus
    - Accusative: hostēs
    - Ablative: hostibus
3. Common Uses:
    - Subject: "hostis urbem oppugnat"
    - Direct object: "hostem nōn timent"
    - With prepositions: "ab hoste", "cum hostibus"
    - Genitive of possession: "castra hostium"
4. Special Constructions:
    - Often used with military vocabulary
    - Common in ablative of agent: "ab hoste victī"
    - Frequent in plural: "hostēs" = "the enemy" (collective)
    - Used with defensive terms: "contra hostēs"

❃ ❦ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❃ ❦ ❃ ❦ ❃

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "hostis" requires cultural context:

1. Legal Status:
    - Originally meant "stranger" or "foreigner"
    - Later became "public enemy"
    - Different from "inimīcus" (personal enemy)

    - Legal term: "hostis publicus"
2. Military Usage:
    - Central to Roman military reports
    - Used in formal declarations of war
    - Part of triumph ceremonies
    - Key term in military strategy
3. Political Implications:
    - Declaration as "hostis" was serious
    - Could lead to loss of citizenship
    - Used in political rhetoric
    - Important in diplomatic language
4. Modern Connections:
    - Source of English "hostile"
    - Used in international law
    - Influences military terminology
    - Found in diplomatic discourse

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.15):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Hostēs *enemies* **ubi** *when* **primum** *first* **nostrōrum** *of our men* **equitum** *cavalry* **turmas** *squadrons* **cōnspexērunt** *they saw,* **quōrum** *of whom* **erat** *was* **quīnque** *five* **mīlium** *thousand* **numerus** *number,* **cum** *although* **ipsī** *themselves* **nōn** *not* **amplius** *more than* **octingentōs** *eight hundred* **equitēs** *horsemen* **habērent** *had...*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Hostēs ubi prīmum nostrōrum equitum turmās cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent..."

When the enemies first caught sight of our cavalry squadrons, which numbered five thousand, although they themselves had no more than eight hundred horsemen...

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses "hostēs" here to begin his description of a tactical situation. The word placement emphasizes the enemy's perspective and their reaction to Roman forces.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "hostēs" as subject of main clause
- Temporal clause with "ubi prīmum"
- Relative clause with "quōrum"
- Concessive clause with "cum"
- Number expressions showing force disparity

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Dispatch

Part A (Interleaved Text)

93.16 **Castra** *camp* **nostra** *our* **prope** *near* **hostium** *of enemies* **fīnēs** *territories* **posuimus** *we placed*

93.17 **Hostēs** *enemies* **magnās** *great* **cōpiās** *forces* **parāre** *to prepare* **dīcuntur** *are said*

93.18 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **nostrī** *our* **hostium** *of enemies* **adventum** *approach* **nūntiāvērunt** *announced*

93.19 **Quīnque** *five* **mīlia** *thousand* **hostium** *of enemies* **ad** *to* **flūmen** *river* **vēnērunt** *came*

93.20 **Cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **prīmā** *at first* **lūce** *light* **pugnābimus** *we will fight*

93.21 **Dux** *leader* **hostium** *of enemies* **cōnsilium** *plan* **mūtāvit** *changed*

93.22 **Nōs** *we* **hostēs** *enemies* **magnō** *with great* **proēliō** *battle* **superāvimus** *overcame*

93.23 **Multī** *many* **ex** *from* **hostibus** *enemies* **captī** *captured* **sunt** *were*

93.24 **Hostis** *enemy* **novus** *new* **ā** *from* **septemtriōnibus** *north* **venit** *comes*

93.25 **Hostēs** *enemies* **pacem** *peace* **petere** *to seek* **incipiunt** *begin*

93.26 **Prīncipēs** *chiefs* **hostium** *of enemies* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **vēnērunt** *came*

93.27 **Magnō** *great* **cum** *with* **perīculō** *danger* **hostium** *of enemies* **cōnsilia** *plans* **cognōvimus** *we learned*

93.28 **Hostēs** *enemies* **subitō** *suddenly* **impetum** *attack* **fēcērunt** *made*

93.29 **Per** *through* **noctem** *night* **hostium** *of enemies* **castra** *camp* **incendimus** *we burned*

93.30 **Pāx** *peace* **cum** *with* **hostibus** *enemies* **facta** *made* **est** *was*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

93.16 Prope hostium fīnēs castra nostra posuimus. *We placed our camp near the enemy's territories.*

93.17 Magnās cōpiās hostēs parāre dīcuntur. *The enemies are said to be preparing great forces.*

93.18 Hostium adventum explōrātōrēs nostrī nūntiāvērunt. *Our scouts announced the approach of the enemies.*

93.19 Ad flūmen quīnque mīlia hostium vēnērunt. *Five thousand of the enemy came to the river.*

93.20 Prīmā lūce cum hostibus pugnābimus. *We will fight with the enemies at first light.*

93.21 Cōnsilium dux hostium mūtāvit. The leader of the enemies changed his plan.

93.22 Magnō proēliō hostēs superāvimus. *We overcame the enemies in a great battle.*

93.23 Ex hostibus multī captī sunt. *Many of the enemies were captured.*

93.24 Ā septemtriōnibus hostis novus venit. *A new enemy comes from the north.*

93.25 Pacem hostēs petere incipiunt. *The enemies begin to seek peace.*

93.26 Ad castra prīncipēs hostium vēnērunt. *The chiefs of the enemies came to the camp.*

93.27 Magnō cum perīculō cōnsilia hostium cognōvimus. *With great danger we learned the enemies' plans.*

93.28 Impetum subitō hostēs fēcērunt. *The enemies suddenly made an attack.*

93.29 Hostium castra per noctem incendimus. *We burned the enemies' camp during the night.*

93.30 Pāx cum hostibus facta est. *Peace was made with the enemies.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

93.16 Prope hostium fīnēs castra nostra posuimus.

93.17 Magnās cōpiās hostēs parāre dīcuntur.

93.18 Hostium adventum explōrātōrēs nostrī nūntiāvērunt.

93.19 Ad flūmen quīnque mīlia hostium vēnērunt.

93.20 Prīmā lūce cum hostibus pugnābimus.

93.21 Cōnsilium dux hostium mūtāvit.

93.22 Magnō proēliō hostēs superāvimus.

93.23 Ex hostibus multī captī sunt.

93.24 Ā septemtriōnibus hostis novus venit.

93.25 Pacem hostēs petere incipiunt.

93.26 Ad castra prīncipēs hostium vēnērunt.

93.27 Magnō cum perīculō cōnsilia hostium cognōvimus.

93.28 Impetum subitō hostēs fēcērunt.

93.29 Hostium castra per noctem incendimus.

93.30 Pāx cum hostibus facta est.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

In military dispatches, "hostis" appears in several distinct grammatical constructions that are particularly important for this genre:

1. Case Usage in Military Context: a) Genitive for Possession:

- "hostium castra" (the enemies' camp)
- "hostium adventus" (the enemies' approach)
- "hostium cōnsilia" (the enemies' plans)

b) Ablative with Prepositions:

- "cum hostibus" (with the enemies)
- "ex hostibus" (from among the enemies)
- "ab hostibus" (by the enemies)

2. Position and Emphasis: a) Initial Position (emphasizing enemy action):
    - "Hostēs impetum fēcērunt"
    - "Hostium adventum nūntiāvērunt"

   b) Medial Position (emphasizing other elements):
    - "Magnās cōpiās hostēs parāre dīcuntur"
    - "Castra hostium incendimus"
3. Military Vocabulary Combinations: a) With Battle Terms:
    - "cum hostibus pugnāre" (to fight with enemies)
    - "hostēs superāre" (to overcome enemies)
    - "hostium impetus" (attack of enemies)

   b) With Strategic Terms:
    - "hostium cōnsilia" (enemies' plans)
    - "hostium adventus" (enemies' approach)
    - "hostium castra" (enemies' camp)
4. Temporal Expressions in Military Context:
    - "prīmā lūce" (at first light)
    - "per noctem" (through the night)
    - Showing sequence of events in dispatch style
5. Number Usage:
    - Collective singular: "hostis" (the enemy as a group)
    - Plural for specific forces: "hostēs" (enemy forces)
    - With specific numbers: "quīnque mīlia hostium"
6. Voice Selection: a) Active for Enemy Actions:
    - "hostēs impetum fēcērunt"
    - "hostēs petere incipiunt"

   b) Passive for Enemy Losses:
    - "ex hostibus multī captī sunt"
    - "pāx cum hostibus facta est"
7. Common Dispatch Formations: a) Reporting Enemy Movement:
    - Location: "ā septemtriōnibus"
    - Numbers: "quīnque mīlia"
    - Time references: "prīmā lūce"

   b) Recording Tactical Situations:
    - Enemy status: "hostēs parāre dīcuntur"
    - Battle outcomes: "hostēs superāvimus"
    - Strategic information: "cōnsilia hostium"

These constructions reflect the precise, factual nature of military dispatches while maintaining proper Latin style and syntax.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 94 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 94: an (or/whether)

Introduction

The word "an" serves as both an interrogative particle in direct questions and a conjunction introducing indirect questions or alternatives. This lesson explores its various uses with gradually increasing complexity.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

94.1 **Nescit** *he does not know* **pater** *father* **an** *whether* **fīlius** *son* **vīvat** *lives*

94.2 **Rogāvit** *he asked* **mē** *me* **an** *whether* **parātus** *ready* **essem** *I was*

94.3 **Dūx** *leader* **quaerit** *asks* **an** *whether* **hostēs** *enemies* **appropinquent** *approach*

94.4 **Incertum** *uncertain* **est** *it is* **an** *whether* **victōrēs** *victors* **erimus** *we will be*

94.5 **Videt** *he sees* **nē** *whether* **an** *or* **amīcus** *friend* **veniat** *comes*

94.6 **Dubitat** *he doubts* **an** *whether* **hoc** *this* **vērum** *true* **sit** *might be*

94.7 **Māter** *mother* **rogat** *asks* **an** *whether* **fīlia** *daughter* **dormiat** *sleeps*

94.8 **Magister** *teacher* **nescit** *does not know* **an** *whether* **discipulī** *pupils* **intellegant** *understand*

94.9 **Dēlīberāmus** *we deliberate* **an** *whether* **castra** *camp* **moveāmus** *we should move*

94.10 **Rogāvērunt** *they asked* **an** *whether* **tempus** *time* **venisset** *had come*

94.11 **Utrum** *whether* **pāx** *peace* **an** *or* **bellum** *war* **futūrum** *about to be* **sit** *is*

94.12 **Senātus** *senate* **quaerit** *asks* **an** *whether* **lēgātī** *ambassadors* **mittendī** *to be sent* **sint** *are*

94.13 **Dīc** *tell* **mihi** *to me* **an** *whether* **hoc** *this* **facere** *to do* **possis** *you can*

94.31 **Dubitō** *I doubt* **an** *whether* **epistulam** *letter* **acceperis** *you have received*

94.15 **Mīles** *soldier* **quaerit** *asks* **an** *whether* **tempestas** *weather* **bona** *good* **futūra** *about to be* **sit** *is*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

94.1 Nescit pater an fīlius vīvat. *The father does not know whether his son lives.*

94.2 Rogāvit mē an parātus essem. *He asked me whether I was ready.*

94.3 Dūx quaerit an hostēs appropinquent. *The leader asks whether the enemies are approaching.*

94.4 Incertum est an victōrēs erimus. *It is uncertain whether we will be victors.*

94.5 Videt nē an amīcus veniat. *He sees whether or not his friend is coming.*

94.6 Dubitat an hoc vērum sit. *He doubts whether this might be true.*

94.7 Māter rogat an fīlia dormiat. *The mother asks whether her daughter is sleeping.*

94.8 Magister nescit an discipulī intellegant. *The teacher does not know whether the pupils understand.*

94.9 Dēlīberāmus an castra moveāmus. *We are deliberating whether we should move camp.*

94.10 Rogāvērunt an tempus venisset. *They asked whether the time had come.*

94.11 Utrum pāx an bellum futūrum sit. *Whether there will be peace or war.*

94.12 Senātus quaerit an lēgātī mittendī sint. *The senate asks whether ambassadors should be sent.*

94.13 Dīc mihi an hoc facere possis. *Tell me whether you can do this.*

94.31 Dubitō an epistulam acceperis. *I doubt whether you have received the letter.*

94.15 Mīles quaerit an tempestas bona futūra sit. *The soldier asks whether the weather will be good.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

94.1 Nescit pater an fīlius vīvat.

94.2 Rogāvit mē an parātus essem.

94.3 Dūx quaerit an hostēs appropinquent.

94.4 Incertum est an victōrēs erimus.

94.5 Videt nē an amīcus veniat.

94.6 Dubitat an hoc vērum sit.

94.7 Māter rogat an fīlia dormiat.

94.8 Magister nescit an discipulī intellegant.

94.9 Dēlīberāmus an castra moveāmus.

94.10 Rogāvērunt an tempus venisset.

94.11 Utrum pāx an bellum futūrum sit.

94.12 Senātus quaerit an lēgātī mittendī sint.

94.13 Dīc mihi an hoc facere possis.

94.31 Dubitō an epistulam acceperis.

94.15 Mīles quaerit an tempestas bona futūra sit.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The particle "an" has several important uses that English speakers need to understand:

1. Indirect Questions:
    - Follows verbs of asking, knowing, doubting
    - Takes subjunctive mood
    - Examples from our lesson:
        - "Nescit pater an fīlius vīvat" (after verb of knowing)
        - "Rogāvit mē an parātus essem" (after verb of asking)
2. Alternative Questions:
    - Used with utrum... an
    - Can mean "whether... or"
    - Example:
        - "Utrum pāx an bellum futūrum sit"
3. Common Verb Constructions:
    - After dubitō: "Dubitō an epistulam acceperis"
    - After quaerō: "Dūx quaerit an hostēs appropinquent"
    - After rogō: "Māter rogat an fīlia dormiat"
4. Sequence of Tenses:
    - Present subjunctive after primary tenses
    - Imperfect subjunctive after secondary tenses
    - Examples:
        - Primary: "quaerit an... appropinquent"
        - Secondary: "rogāvit an... essem"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding how Romans used "an" requires cultural context:

1. Legal Language:
    - Formal deliberations often used an-clauses
    - Senate discussions frequently employed alternative questions
    - Judicial inquiries used indirect questions with an
2. Military Communications:
    - Scouts' reports often contained an-clauses
    - Battle planning used alternative questions
    - Command decisions often hinged on an-clauses
3. Social Context:
    - Polite questions often used an
    - Diplomatic language frequently employed an-clauses
    - Family discussions used softer an-questions

4. Literary Usage:
    - Rhetorical questions often employed an
    - Historical works used an for deliberations
    - Poetry used an for dramatic effect

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's Pro Roscio Amerino (7.18):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Quaerō *I ask* **abs** *from* **tē** *you,* **T. Rōscī,** *Titus Roscius,* **quamobrem,** *for what reason,* **cum** *when* **dē** *about* **possessiōne** *possession* **plūrēs** *several* **diēs** *days* **quaererētur** *was being inquired* **et** *and* **dubium** *doubtful* **esset** *it was* **an** *whether* **is** *this* **homō** *man* **possīdēret,** *would possess,* **repente** *suddenly* **recesseris** *you withdrew.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Quaerō abs tē, T. Rōscī, quamobrem, cum dē possessiōne plūrēs diēs quaererētur et dubium esset an is homō possīdēret, repente recesseris."

I ask you, Titus Roscius, why, when there was an inquiry about possession for several days and it was doubtful whether this man would possess it, you suddenly withdrew.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "an" here in a complex sentence showing:

- Indirect question construction
- Subjunctive mood in dependent clause
- Legal context of property dispute
- Rhetorical force in courtroom speech

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "an" introduces indirect question
- "esset" imperfect subjunctive in cum-clause
- "possīdēret" imperfect subjunctive with an
- Complex sentence structure typical of Cicero

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Legal Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

94.16 **Iūdex** *judge* **interrogat** *asks* **an** *whether* **testis** *witness* **vēra** *true things* **dīcat** *says*

94.17 **Accūsātor** *prosecutor* **quaerit** *asks* **an** *whether* **reus** *defendant* **culpam** *guilt* **fateātur** *admits*

94.18 **Patria** *country* **quaerit** *asks* **an** *whether* **cīvis** *citizen* **lēgēs** *laws* **servāverit** *has kept*

94.19 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **dēlīberant** *deliberate* **an** *whether* **nova** *new* **lēx** *law* **necessāria** *necessary* **sit** *is*

94.20 **Cōnsul** *consul* **rogat** *asks* **an** *whether* **senātus** *senate* **conventūrus** *about to meet* **sit** *is*

94.21 **Quaerimus** *we ask* **an** *whether* **testēs** *witnesses* **adsint** *are present*

94.22 **Scīre** *to know* **volunt** *they want* **an** *whether* **iūdex** *judge* **aequus** *fair* **sit** *is*

94.23 **Dubitant** *they doubt* **an** *whether* **poena** *punishment* **iūsta** *just* **sit** *is*

94.24 **Praetor** *praetor* **rogat** *asks* **an** *whether* **omnia** *all things* **parāta** *prepared* **sint** *are*

94.25 **Quaeritur** *it is asked* **an** *whether* **lēx** *law* **nova** *new* **valeat** *is valid*

94.26 **Cōnsul** *consul* **incertus** *uncertain* **est** *is* **an** *whether* **cīvēs** *citizens* **lēgem** *law* **probent** *approve*

94.27 **Iūdex** *judge* **quaerit** *asks* **an** *whether* **verba** *words* **testis** *of witness* **crēdenda** *to be believed* **sint** *are*

94.28 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **nesciunt** *do not know* **an** *whether* **pāx** *peace* **servārī** *to be preserved* **possit** *can*

94.29 **Accūsātor** *prosecutor* **dubitat** *doubts* **an** *whether* **crīmen** *crime* **probārī** *to be proved* **possit** *can*

94.30 **Magistrātus** *magistrate* **quaerit** *asks* **an** *whether* **iūstitia** *justice* **servāta** *preserved* **sit** *has been*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

94.16 Iūdex interrogat an testis vēra dīcat. *The judge asks whether the witness is telling the truth.*

94.17 Accūsātor quaerit an reus culpam fateātur. *The prosecutor asks whether the defendant admits guilt.*

94.18 Patria quaerit an cīvis lēgēs servāverit. *The country asks whether the citizen has kept the laws.*

94.19 Senātōrēs dēlīberant an nova lēx necessāria sit. *The senators deliberate whether a new law is necessary.*

94.20 Cōnsul rogat an senātus conventūrus sit. *The consul asks whether the senate is going to meet.*

94.21 Quaerimus an testēs adsint. *We ask whether the witnesses are present.*

94.22 Scīre volunt an iūdex aequus sit. *They want to know whether the judge is fair.*

94.23 Dubitant an poena iūsta sit. *They doubt whether the punishment is just.*

94.24 Praetor rogat an omnia parāta sint. *The praetor asks whether everything is prepared.*

94.25 Quaeritur an lēx nova valeat. *It is asked whether the new law is valid.*

94.26 Cōnsul incertus est an cīvēs lēgem probent. *The consul is uncertain whether the citizens approve the law.*

94.27 Iūdex quaerit an verba testis crēdenda sint. *The judge asks whether the witness's words should be believed.*

94.28 Senātōrēs nesciunt an pāx servārī possit. *The senators do not know whether peace can be preserved.*

94.29 Accūsātor dubitat an crīmen probārī possit. *The prosecutor doubts whether the crime can be proved.*

94.30 Magistrātus quaerit an iūstitia servāta sit. *The magistrate asks whether justice has been preserved.*

⁜ ❦ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ❦ ⁜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

94.16 Iūdex interrogat an testis vēra dīcat.

94.17 Accūsātor quaerit an reus culpam fateātur.

94.18 Patria quaerit an cīvis lēgēs servāverit.

94.19 Senātōrēs dēlīberant an nova lēx necessāria sit.

94.20 Cōnsul rogat an senātus conventūrus sit.

94.21 Quaerimus an testēs adsint.

94.22 Scīre volunt an iūdex aequus sit.

94.23 Dubitant an poena iūsta sit.

94.24 Praetor rogat an omnia parāta sint.

94.25 Quaeritur an lēx nova valeat.

94.26 Cōnsul incertus est an cīvēs lēgem probent.

94.27 Iūdex quaerit an verba testis crēdenda sint.

94.28 Senātōrēs nesciunt an pāx servārī possit.

94.29 Accūsātor dubitat an crīmen probārī possit.

94.30 Magistrātus quaerit an iūstitia servāta sit.

⁜ ❦ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ⁜ ❦ ⁜ ❦ ⁜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The legal dialogue section demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Indirect Questions in Legal Context:
    - After verba interrogandī (verbs of asking):
        - interrogat an... (asks whether...)

        - quaerit an... (inquires whether...)
        - rogat an... (asks whether...)
    - Always take subjunctive mood
    - Example: "Iūdex interrogat an testis vēra dīcat"
2. Sequence of Tenses:
    - Present subjunctive after primary tenses:
        - quaerit an fateātur (asks whether he admits)
        - rogat an sint (asks whether they are)
    - Perfect subjunctive for completed action:
        - quaerit an servāverit (asks whether he has kept)
    - Future participle with subjunctive esse:
        - rogat an conventūrus sit (asks whether it will meet)
3. Passive Voice in Legal Language:
    - Impersonal passive:
        - quaeritur an... (it is asked whether...)
    - Gerundive of obligation:
        - crēdenda sint (ought to be believed)
    - Perfect passive:
        - servāta sit (has been preserved)
4. Common Legal Vocabulary Patterns:
    - Technical terms:
        - reus (defendant)
        - testis (witness)
        - iūdex (judge)
    - Abstract nouns:
        - iūstitia (justice)
        - poena (punishment)
        - culpa (guilt)
5. Complex Sentence Structure:
    - Main clause + indirect question:
        - "Accūsātor dubitat an crīmen probārī possit"
    - Passive infinitive in indirect questions:
        - "servārī possit" (can be preserved)
    - Compound subjects and objects:
        - "an cīvēs lēgem probent"

Lesson 95 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: mors, mortis f. (death)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

95.1 **Mors** *death* **omnēs** *all* **hominēs** *men* **manet** *awaits*

95.2 **Tristem** *sad* **mortem** *death* **senex** *old man* **nōn** *not* **timet** *fears*

95.3 **Post** *after* **patris** *of father* **mortem** *death* **fīlius** *son* **rēgnum** *kingdom* **accepit** *received*

95.4 **Fortēs** *brave* **virī** *men* **mortem** *death* **nōn** *not* **timent** *fear*

95.5 **Dē** *about* **morte** *death* **poētae** *poets* **multa** *many things* **scrībunt** *write*

95.6 **Mortis** *of death* **timor** *fear* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **nōn** *not* **terret** *frightens*

95.7 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **dē** *about* **morte** *death* **saepe** *often* **loquitur** *speaks*

95.8 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **mortem** *death* **tyrannī** *of tyrant* **laetī** *happy* **audiunt** *hear*

95.9 **Mors** *death* **prīncipis** *of leader* **populum** *people* **conturbat** *disturbs*

95.10 **Poēta** *poet* **mortis** *of death* **causam** *cause* **quaerit** *seeks*

95.11 **Mors** *death* **neminem** *no one* **exspectat** *waits for*

95.12 **Post** *after* **mortem** *death* **animus** *soul* **ad** *to* **deōs** *gods* **it** *goes*

95.13 **Mortis** *of death* **hōram** *hour* **nēmō** *no one* **novit** *knows*

95.31 **In** *in* **morte** *death* **omnēs** *all* **aequī** *equal* **sumus** *we are*

95.15 **Ante** *before* **mortem** *death* **vītam** *life* **laudāre** *to praise* **nōlī** *do not wish*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

95.1 Mors omnēs hominēs manet. *Death awaits all men.*

95.2 Tristem mortem senex nōn timet. *The old man does not fear sad death.*

95.3 Post patris mortem fīlius rēgnum accepit. *After the father's death, the son received the kingdom.*

95.4 Fortēs virī mortem nōn timent. *Brave men do not fear death.*

95.5 Dē morte poētae multa scrībunt. *Poets write many things about death.*

95.6 Mortis timor mīlitēs nōn terret. *The fear of death does not frighten the soldiers.*

95.7 Philosophus dē morte saepe loquitur. *The philosopher often speaks about death.*

95.8 Cīvēs mortem tyrannī laetī audiunt. *The citizens hear of the tyrant's death with joy.*

95.9 Mors prīncipis populum conturbat. *The death of the leader disturbs the people.*

95.10 Poēta mortis causam quaerit. *The poet seeks the cause of death.*

95.11 Mors neminem exspectat. *Death waits for no one.*

95.12 Post mortem animus ad deōs it. *After death, the soul goes to the gods.*

95.13 Mortis hōram nēmō novit. *No one knows the hour of death.*

95.31 In morte omnēs aequī sumus. *In death we are all equal.*

95.15 Ante mortem vītam laudāre nōlī. *Do not wish to praise life before death.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

95.1 Mors omnēs hominēs manet.

95.2 Tristem mortem senex nōn timet.

95.3 Post patris mortem fīlius rēgnum accepit.

95.4 Fortēs virī mortem nōn timent.

95.5 Dē morte poētae multa scrībunt.

95.6 Mortis timor mīlitēs nōn terret.

95.7 Philosophus dē morte saepe loquitur.

95.8 Cīvēs mortem tyrannī laetī audiunt.

95.9 Mors prīncipis populum conturbat.

95.10 Poēta mortis causam quaerit.

95.11 Mors neminem exspectat.

95.12 Post mortem animus ad deōs it.

95.13 Mortis hōram nēmō novit.

95.31 In morte omnēs aequī sumus.

95.15 Ante mortem vītam laudāre nōlī.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The noun "mors, mortis" exhibits several important grammatical features:

1. Declension Pattern: Singular:
    - Nominative: mors
    - Genitive: mortis
    - Dative: mortī
    - Accusative: mortem
    - Ablative: morte

   Plural:
    - Nominative: mortēs

- Genitive: mortium
- Dative: mortibus
- Accusative: mortēs
- Ablative: mortibus

2. Common Uses:
    - Subject: "Mors omnēs manet"
    - Direct object: "mortem nōn timet"
    - With prepositions: "post mortem", "dē morte"
    - Genitive constructions: "mortis timor"
    - Ablative of time/circumstance: "in morte"
3. Key Constructions:
    - Temporal phrases with "post": "post mortem"
    - Abstract subject: "mors manet"
    - Object of emotions: "mortem timet"
    - Cause or source: "mortis causa"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "mors" in Roman culture requires awareness of several key aspects:

1. Religious Significance:
    - Romans believed in afterlife
    - Death rituals were important
    - Ancestor worship was common
    - Funeral customs varied by social class
2. Literary Treatment:
    - Common theme in poetry
    - Philosophical discussions
    - Historical accounts
    - Political significance
3. Social Impact:
    - Public vs. private death
    - Death in warfare
    - Family obligations
    - Memorial practices
4. Modern Connections:
    - Medical terminology
    - Legal language
    - Literary references
    - Cultural phrases

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Horace's Odes (1.4.13-31):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Pallida *pale* **Mors** *Death* **aequō** *with equal* **pulsat** *knocks at* **pede** *with foot* **pauperum** *of poor* **tabernās** *huts* **rēgumque** *and of kings* **turrēs** *towers*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Pallida Mors aequō pulsat pede pauperum tabernās rēgumque turrēs."

Pale Death knocks with impartial foot at the hovels of the poor and the towers of kings.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Horace uses personification and metaphor to emphasize death's universality. The contrast between "pauperum tabernās" and "rēgum turrēs" highlights death's impartiality.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "Pallida Mors" - personification with adjective
- "aequō pede" - ablative of manner
- Genitive plurals "pauperum, rēgum" showing possession
- Chiastic arrangement emphasizing contrast

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Genre Section: Philosophical Dialogue

Part A (Interleaved Text)

95.16 **Magister** *teacher* **discipulum** *pupil* **dē** *about* **morte** *death* **interrogat** *questions*

95.17 **Discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies* **sē** *himself* **mortem** *death* **nōn** *not* **timēre** *to fear*

95.18 **Mortis** *of death* **nātūram** *nature* **philosophī** *philosophers* **intellegere** *to understand* **temptant** *try*

95.19 **Omnia** *all things* **mortī** *to death* **dēbentur** *are owed* **magister** *teacher* **dīcit** *says*

95.20 **Post** *after* **mortem** *death* **animus** *soul* **līber** *free* **est** *is* **discipulus** *pupil* **respondet** *replies*

95.21 **Mors** *death* **corpus** *body* **nōn** *not* **animum** *soul* **capit** *takes* **magister** *teacher* **explicat** *explains*

95.22 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **mortem** *death* **contemnunt** *despise* **discipulus** *pupil* **putat** *thinks*

95.23 **Mortis** *of death* **memoriā** *by memory* **vītam** *life* **melius** *better* **agimus** *we live* **magister** *teacher* **docet** *teaches*

95.24 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **dīcit** *says* **mortem** *death* **fīnem** *end* **malōrum** *of evils* **esse** *to be*

95.25 **In** *in* **morte** *death* **vēritātem** *truth* **vidēmus** *we see* **discipulus** *pupil* **credit** *believes*

95.26 **Mors** *death* **omnibus** *for all* **hōra** *hour* **incerta** *uncertain* **est** *is* **magister** *teacher* **monet** *warns*

95.27 **Discipulus** *pupil* **rogat** *asks* **cūr** *why* **mortis** *of death* **metus** *fear* **tantus** *so great* **sit** *is*

95.28 **Ante** *before* **mortem** *death* **nēmō** *no one* **beātus** *happy* **vocandus** *to be called* **est** *is* **magister** *teacher* **respondet** *replies*

95.29 **Philosophus** *philosopher* **mortem** *death* **portam** *door* **ad** *to* **vītam** *life* **novam** *new* **vocat** *calls*

95.30 **Mortis** *of death* **scientia** *knowledge* **nōs** *us* **sapientiōrēs** *wiser* **facit** *makes* **discipulus** *pupil* **concludit** *concludes*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

95.16 Magister discipulum dē morte interrogat. *The teacher questions the pupil about death.*

95.17 Discipulus respondet sē mortem nōn timēre. *The pupil replies that he does not fear death.*

95.18 Mortis nātūram philosophī intellegere temptant. *Philosophers try to understand the nature of death.*

95.19 Omnia mortī dēbentur, magister dīcit. *All things are owed to death, says the teacher.*

95.20 Post mortem animus līber est, discipulus respondet. *After death the soul is free, replies the pupil.*

95.21 Mors corpus nōn animum capit, magister explicat. *Death takes the body but not the soul, explains the teacher.*

95.22 Sapientēs mortem contemnunt, discipulus putat. *The wise despise death, thinks the pupil.*

95.23 Mortis memoriā vītam melius agimus, magister docet. *By the memory of death we live better, teaches the teacher.*

95.24 Philosophus dīcit mortem fīnem malōrum esse. The philosopher says that death is the end of evils.

95.25 In morte vēritātem vidēmus, discipulus credit. *In death we see the truth, believes the pupil.*

95.26 Mors omnibus hōra incerta est, magister monet. *Death's hour is uncertain for all, warns the teacher.*

95.27 Discipulus rogat cūr mortis metus tantus sit. *The pupil asks why the fear of death is so great.*

95.28 Ante mortem nēmō beātus vocandus est, magister respondet. *Before death no one should be called happy, replies the teacher.*

95.29 Philosophus mortem portam ad vītam novam vocat. *The philosopher calls death a door to new life.*

95.30 Mortis scientia nōs sapientiōrēs facit, discipulus concludit. *The knowledge of death makes us wiser, the pupil concludes.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

95.16 Magister discipulum dē morte interrogat.

95.17 Discipulus respondet sē mortem nōn timēre.

95.18 Mortis nātūram philosophī intellegere temptant.

95.19 Omnia mortī dēbentur, magister dīcit.

95.20 Post mortem animus līber est, discipulus respondet.

95.21 Mors corpus nōn animum capit, magister explicat.

95.22 Sapientēs mortem contemnunt, discipulus putat.

95.23 Mortis memoriā vītam melius agimus, magister docet.

95.24 Philosophus dīcit mortem fīnem malōrum esse.

95.25 In morte vēritātem vidēmus, discipulus credit.

95.26 Mors omnibus hōra incerta est, magister monet.

95.27 Discipulus rogat cūr mortis metus tantus sit.

95.28 Ante mortem nēmō beātus vocandus est, magister respondet.

95.29 Philosophus mortem portam ad vītam novam vocat.

95.30 Mortis scientia nōs sapientiōrēs facit, discipulus concludit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The philosophical dialogue genre demonstrates several important grammatical features:

1. Speech Patterns:
    - Verbs of speaking: dīcit, respondet, rogat, monet
    - Direct discourse with main clauses
    - Indirect discourse with accusative and infinitive Example: "Discipulus respondet sē mortem nōn timēre" (sē = acc. subject, timēre = complementary infinitive)
2. Question Forms:
    - Direct questions with cūr
    - Indirect questions with subjunctive Example: "rogat cūr mortis metus tantus sit" (sit = present subjunctive in indirect question)
3. Case Uses:
    - Dative of reference: "omnibus" (for all)
    - Ablative of means: "memoriā" (by means of memory)
    - Genitive of possession: "mortis metus" (fear of death)
    - Accusative direct objects: "mortem," "vēritātem"
4. Philosophical Vocabulary:
    - Abstract nouns: scientia, vēritās, metus
    - Technical terms: animus, corpus

- Moral concepts: beātus, sapientiōrēs

5. Syntactic Features:
    - Gerundives: "vocandus est" (must be called)
    - Comparative adjectives: "sapientiōrēs" (wiser)
    - Predicative datives: "mortī dēbentur" (are owed to death)
6. Style Elements:
    - Balanced phrases
    - Sententiae (philosophical maxims)
    - Attribution tags (magister dīcit, discipulus respondet)

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 96 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: tam (so, so much)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

96.1 **Hic** *this* **homō** *man* **tam** *so* **doctus** *learned* **est** *is* **ut** *that* **omnēs** *all* **eum** *him* **laudent** *praise*

96.2 **Frāter** *brother* **tam** *so* **sapiēns** *wise* **nōn** *not* **est** *is* **quam** *as* **pater** *father*

96.3 **Tam** *so* **multī** *many* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **vēnērunt** *came* **ut** *that* **castra** *camp* **plēna** *full* **essent** *were*

96.4 **Senex** *old man* **tam** *so* **fessus** *tired* **erat** *was* **ut** *that* **ambulāre** *to walk* **nōn** *not* **posset** *was able*

96.5 **Nēmō** *no one* **tam** *so* **fortis** *brave* **est** *is* **ut** *that* **numquam** *never* **timeat** *fears*

96.6 **Tam** *so* **pulchra** *beautiful* **est** *is* **rōsa** *rose* **ut** *that* **omnēs** *all* **eam** *it* **spectent** *look at*

96.7 **Puella** *girl* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so* **laeta** *happy* **est** *is* **quam** *as* **soror** *sister*

96.8 **Hostēs** *enemies* **tam** *so* **prope** *near* **erant** *were* **ut** *that* **tēla** *weapons* **vidērēmus** *we could see*

96.9 **Tam** *so* **grave** *heavy* **onus** *burden* **portābat** *he carried* **ut** *that* **dēfessus** *exhausted* **esset** *he was*

96.10 **Magister** *teacher* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so* **sevērus** *strict* **est** *is* **quam** *as* **vidētur** *he seems*

96.11 **Tam** *so* **validus** *strong* **ventus** *wind* **flat** *blows* **ut** *that* **arbōrēs** *trees* **cadant** *fall*

96.12 **Puer** *boy* **tam** *so* **bene** *well* **cantat** *sings* **ut** *that* **omnēs** *all* **audiant** *listen*

96.13 **Mūrus** *wall* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so* **altus** *high* **est** *is* **quam** *as* **putāvimus** *we thought*

96.31 **Tam** *so* **dūra** *hard* **pugna** *battle* **fuit** *was* **ut** *that* **multī** *many* **cadērent** *fell*

96.15 **Ager** *field* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so* **lātus** *wide* **est** *is* **quam** *as* **vidētur** *it seems*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

96.1 Hic homō tam doctus est ut omnēs eum laudent. *This man is so learned that everyone praises him.*

96.2 Frāter tam sapiēns nōn est quam pater. *The brother is not as wise as the father.*

96.3 Tam multī mīlitēs vēnērunt ut castra plēna essent. *So many soldiers came that the camp was full.*

96.4 Senex tam fessus erat ut ambulāre nōn posset. *The old man was so tired that he could not walk.*

96.5 Nēmō tam fortis est ut numquam timeat. *No one is so brave that they never fear.*

96.6 Tam pulchra est rōsa ut omnēs eam spectent. *The rose is so beautiful that everyone looks at it.*

96.7 Puella nōn tam laeta est quam soror. *The girl is not as happy as her sister.*

96.8 Hostēs tam prope erant ut tēla vidērēmus. *The enemies were so near that we could see their weapons.*

96.9 Tam grave onus portābat ut dēfessus esset. *He carried such a heavy burden that he was exhausted.*

96.10 Magister nōn tam sevērus est quam vidētur. *The teacher is not as strict as he seems.*

96.11 Tam validus ventus flat ut arbōrēs cadant. *The wind blows so strongly that trees fall.*

96.12 Puer tam bene cantat ut omnēs audiant. *The boy sings so well that everyone listens.*

96.13 Mūrus nōn tam altus est quam putāvimus. *The wall is not as high as we thought.*

96.31 Tam dūra pugna fuit ut multī cadērent. *The battle was so fierce that many fell.*

96.15 Ager nōn tam lātus est quam vidētur. *The field is not as wide as it seems.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

96.1 Hic homō tam doctus est ut omnēs eum laudent.

96.2 Frāter tam sapiēns nōn est quam pater.

96.3 Tam multī mīlitēs vēnērunt ut castra plēna essent.

96.4 Senex tam fessus erat ut ambulāre nōn posset.

96.5 Nēmō tam fortis est ut numquam timeat.

96.6 Tam pulchra est rōsa ut omnēs eam spectent.

96.7 Puella nōn tam laeta est quam soror.

96.8 Hostēs tam prope erant ut tēla vidērēmus.

96.9 Tam grave onus portābat ut dēfessus esset.

96.10 Magister nōn tam sevērus est quam vidētur.

96.11 Tam validus ventus flat ut arbōrēs cadant.

96.12 Puer tam bene cantat ut omnēs audiant.

96.13 Mūrus nōn tam altus est quam putāvimus.

96.31 Tam dūra pugna fuit ut multī cadērent.

96.15 Ager nōn tam lātus est quam vidētur.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adverb "tam" has two main uses in Latin:

1. With Result Clauses:
    - "tam" + adjective/adverb + "ut" + subjunctive
    - Indicates that something is "so" (to such a degree) that a result follows
    - Example: "tam doctus est ut omnēs eum laudent"
    - The result clause always uses subjunctive mood
2. In Comparisons:
    - "tam" + adjective/adverb + "quam"
    - Used for comparisons of equality ("as...as") or inequality ("not as...as")
    - Example: "nōn tam sapiēns est quam pater"
    - Uses indicative mood

Key Grammar Points:

- "tam" modifies adjectives and adverbs, not verbs
- Word order is flexible but "tam" typically precedes what it modifies
- Negative comparisons use "nōn tam...quam"
- Result clauses require subjunctive regardless of primary or secondary sequence

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "tam" requires awareness of Roman rhetorical style:

1. Result Clauses:
    - Common in dramatic descriptions
    - Used in historical narratives for emphasis
    - Important in political speeches
2. Comparisons:
    - Essential in Roman legal arguments
    - Used in philosophical discussions
    - Found in poetry for emotional effect
3. Modern Connections:
    - Similar to English "so" and "as"

- Used in scientific Latin
- Found in church Latin

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Archia" (8.18):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Tam *so* **parvī** *small* **sunt** *are* **fructūs** *the fruits* **ingeniōrum** *of talents* **in** *in* **hāc** *this* **aetāte** *age* **ut** *that* **nōs** *we* **omnēs** *all* **eam** *it* **doctissimam** *most learned* **dīcāmus** *call* **quae** *which* **stultissima** *most foolish* **est** *is.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Tam parvī sunt fructūs ingeniōrum in hāc aetāte ut nōs omnēs eam doctissimam dīcāmus quae stultissima est."

So small are the fruits of talent in this age that we all call that most learned which is most foolish.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "tam" to criticize his contemporary society. The result clause emphasizes the paradox between perceived and actual wisdom.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "tam" introduces result clause
- "ut" + subjunctive follows
- Superlatives "doctissimam" and "stultissima" create contrast
- Complex sentence structure typical of Cicero

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Historical Narrative

Part A (Interleaved Text)

96.16 **Hostēs** *enemies* **tam** *so* **ferōcēs** *fierce* **erant** *were* **ut** *that* **nēmō** *no one* **resistere** *to resist* **audēret** *dared*

96.17 **Tam** *so* **multae** *many* **nāvēs** *ships* **portum** *harbor* **intrāvērunt** *entered* **ut** *that* **omnia** *all things* **loca** *places* **complērent** *they filled*

96.18 **Dux** *leader* **tam** *so* **fortis** *brave* **erat** *was* **ut** *that* **prīmus** *first* **in** *into* **pugnam** *battle* **īret** *would go*

96.19 **Urbs** *city* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so* **bene** *well* **mūnīta** *fortified* **erat** *was* **quam** *as* **putābāmus** *we thought*

96.20 **Tam** *so* **graviter** *seriously* **vulnerātus** *wounded* **est** *was* **ut** *that* **arma** *weapons* **tenēre** *to hold* **nōn** *not* **posset** *he was able*

96.21 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **tam** *so* **celeriter** *quickly* **prōgressae** *advanced* **sunt** *are* **ut** *that* **hostēs** *enemies* **fugerent** *fled*

96.22 **Tempestās** *storm* **tam** *so* **magna** *great* **erat** *was* **ut** *that* **nāvēs** *ships* **ad** *to* **lītus** *shore* **redīrent** *returned*

96.23 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so* **multī** *many* **erant** *were* **quam** *as* **hostēs** *enemies* **exspectāverant** *had expected*

96.24 **Tam** *so* **longum** *long* **iter** *journey* **fēcerunt** *they made* **ut** *that* **multī** *many* **dēficērent** *gave up*

96.25 **Castra** *camp* **tam** *so* **bene** *well* **posita** *placed* **erant** *were* **ut** *that* **facile** *easily* **dēfendī** *to be defended* **possent** *they could*

96.26 **Dux** *leader* **tam** *so* **sapienter** *wisely* **imperāvit** *commanded* **ut** *that* **victōriam** *victory* **adipīscerēmur** *we achieved*

96.27 **Hostēs** *enemies* **nōn** *not* **tam** *so* **parātī** *prepared* **erant** *were* **quam** *as* **vidēbantur** *they seemed*

96.28 **Tam** *so* **subitō** *suddenly* **hostēs** *enemies* **impetum** *attack* **fēcērunt** *made* **ut** *that* **multī** *many* **caderent** *fell*

96.29 **Mūrī** *walls* **tam** *so* **altī** *high* **erant** *were* **ut** *that* **nēmō** *no one* **trānscendere** *to climb over* **posset** *could*

96.30 **Pugna** *battle* **tam** *so* **atrōx** *fierce* **erat** *was* **ut** *that* **multī** *many* **fugerent** *fled*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

96.16 Hostēs tam ferōcēs erant ut nēmō resistere audēret. *The enemies were so fierce that no one dared to resist.*

96.17 Tam multae nāvēs portum intrāvērunt ut omnia loca complērent. *So many ships entered the harbor that they filled all the spaces.*

96.18 Dux tam fortis erat ut prīmus in pugnam īret. *The leader was so brave that he would go first into battle.*

96.19 Urbs nōn tam bene mūnīta erat quam putābāmus. *The city was not as well fortified as we thought.*

96.20 Tam graviter vulnerātus est ut arma tenēre nōn posset. *He was so seriously wounded that he could not hold his weapons.*

96.21 Legiōnēs tam celeriter prōgressae sunt ut hostēs fugerent. *The legions advanced so quickly that the enemies fled.*

96.22 Tempestās tam magna erat ut nāvēs ad lītus redīrent. *The storm was so great that the ships returned to shore.*

96.23 Mīlitēs nōn tam multī erant quam hostēs exspectāverant. *The soldiers were not as many as the enemies had expected.*

96.24 Tam longum iter fēcērunt ut multī dēficērent. *They made such a long journey that many gave up.*

96.25 Castra tam bene posita erant ut facile dēfendī possent. *The camp was so well placed that it could be easily defended.*

96.26 Dux tam sapienter imperāvit ut victōriam adipīscerēmur. *The leader commanded so wisely that we achieved victory.*

96.27 Hostēs nōn tam parātī erant quam vidēbantur. *The enemies were not as prepared as they seemed.*

96.28 Tam subitō hostēs impetum fēcērunt ut multī caderent. *The enemies made their attack so suddenly that many fell.*

96.29 Mūrī tam altī erant ut nēmō trānscendere posset. *The walls were so high that no one could climb over them.*

96.30 Pugna tam atrōx erat ut multī fugerent. *The battle was so fierce that many fled.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

96.16 Hostēs tam ferōcēs erant ut nēmō resistere audēret.

96.17 Tam multae nāvēs portum intrāvērunt ut omnia loca complērent.

96.18 Dux tam fortis erat ut prīmus in pugnam īret.

96.19 Urbs nōn tam bene mūnīta erat quam putābāmus.

96.20 Tam graviter vulnerātus est ut arma tenēre nōn posset.

96.21 Legiōnēs tam celeriter prōgressae sunt ut hostēs fugerent.

96.22 Tempestās tam magna erat ut nāvēs ad lītus redīrent.

96.23 Mīlitēs nōn tam multī erant quam hostēs exspectāverant.

96.24 Tam longum iter fēcērunt ut multī dēficērent.

96.25 Castra tam bene posita erant ut facile dēfendī possent.

96.26 Dux tam sapienter imperāvit ut victōriam adipīscerēmur.

96.27 Hostēs nōn tam parātī erant quam vidēbantur.

96.28 Tam subitō hostēs impetum fēcērunt ut multī caderent.

96.29 Mūrī tam altī erant ut nēmō trānscendere posset.

96.30 Pugna tam atrōx erat ut multī fugerent.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Historical Context)

In historical narrative, "tam" serves several key functions:

1. Dramatic Intensity:
    - "tam" + adjective emphasizes the extreme nature of events
    - Often paired with military terms (ferōx, fortis, atrōx)
    - Creates vivid imagery of battle scenes
2. Causation in History:
    - Result clauses show cause and effect
    - "tam...ut" structure explains historical consequences
    - Subjunctive mood emphasizes resultant action
3. Military Reports:
    - Used in describing troop movements
    - Details battle preparations
    - Describes tactical situations
4. Comparison Patterns:
    - "nōn tam...quam" shows expectations vs. reality
    - Important in analyzing military strategy
    - Used to describe relative forces

Common Military Vocabulary with tam:

- Physical qualities: fortis, altus, parātus
- Actions: resistere, fugere, cadere
- Battle terms: pugna, impetus, arma

Syntactical Features:

1. Position variations:
    - Initial position for emphasis
    - Medial position in descriptive phrases
    - With adverbs in military movements
2. Verb sequences:
    - Perfect tense for completed actions
    - Imperfect for background conditions
    - Pluperfect for prior events

Lesson 97 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: eō īre iī/īvī itum (to go)

This lesson introduces the irregular verb "eō" (to go), one of the most common verbs in Latin. The verb has an unusual conjugation pattern and appears frequently in all types of Latin texts.

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

97.1 **Lēgātī** *ambassadors* **Rōmam** *to Rome* **eunt** *go* **pācis** *of peace* **causā** *for the sake*

97.2 **Iter** *journey* **per** *through* **Alpēs** *Alps* **īre** *to go* **perīculōsum** *dangerous* **erat** *was*

97.3 **Quō** *where* **nunc** *now* **īs** *are you going* **tam** *so* **celeriter** *quickly*

97.4 **Ad** *to* **forum** *forum* **īre** *to go* **māne** *in morning* **solēbat** *he used*

97.5 **Pater** *father* **ad** *to* **bellum** *war* **iit** *went* **nec** *and not* **rediit** *returned*

97.6 **Senātōrēs** *senators* **domum** *homeward* **eunt** *go* **post** *after* **longam** *long* **sessionem** *session*

97.7 **Dux** *leader* **in** *into* **hostium** *of enemies* **terrās** *lands* **īre** *to go* **timet** *fears*

97.8 **Mīles** *soldier* **fortis** *brave* **prīmus** *first* **in** *into* **pugnam** *battle* **iit** *went*

97.9 **Quō** *where* **iērunt** *went* **nautae** *sailors* **post** *after* **tempestātem** *storm*

97.10 **Eāmus** *let us go* **nunc** *now* **ad** *to* **templum** *temple* **deōrum** *of gods*

97.11 **Multī** *many* **poētae** *poets* **Athēnās** *to Athens* **studiōrum** *of studies* **causā** *for sake* **iērunt** *went*

97.12 **Populus** *people* **tōtus** *whole* **ad** *to* **theātrum** *theater* **iit** *went* **spectandī** *of watching* **causā** *for sake*

97.13 **Cum** *when* **sōl** *sun* **occideret** *was setting* **domum** *homeward* **īre** *to go* **incipiēbant** *they were beginning*

97.31 **Mercātōrēs** *merchants* **per** *through* **perīcula** *dangers* **multa** *many* **eunt** *go* **lucrī** *of profit* **causā** *for sake*

97.15 **Quandō** *when* **Rōmā** *from Rome* **in** *into* **Galliam** *Gaul* **ībitis** *will you go*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

97.1 Lēgātī Rōmam pācis causā eunt. *The ambassadors are going to Rome for the sake of peace.*

97.2 Iter per Alpēs īre perīculōsum erat. *To journey through the Alps was dangerous.*

97.3 Quō nunc tam celeriter īs? *Where are you going now so quickly?*

97.4 Māne ad forum īre solēbat. *He used to go to the forum in the morning.*

97.5 Pater ad bellum iit nec rediit. *Father went to war and did not return.*

97.6 Post longam sessionem senātōrēs domum eunt. *After the long session, the senators go home.*

97.7 Dux in hostium terrās īre timet. *The leader fears to go into enemy lands.*

97.8 Mīles fortis prīmus in pugnam iit. *The brave soldier went first into battle.*

97.9 Quō nautae post tempestātem iērunt? *Where did the sailors go after the storm?*

97.10 Eāmus nunc ad templum deōrum. *Let us go now to the temple of the gods.*

97.11 Multī poētae Athēnās studiōrum causā iērunt. *Many poets went to Athens for the sake of studies.*

97.12 Ad theātrum populus tōtus spectandī causā iit. *The whole people went to the theater for the sake of watching.*

97.13 Cum sōl occideret, domum īre incipiēbant. *When the sun was setting, they were beginning to go home.*

97.31 Per perīcula multa mercātōrēs lucrī causā eunt. *The merchants go through many dangers for the sake of profit.*

97.15 Quandō Rōmā in Galliam ībitis? *When will you go from Rome into Gaul?*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

97.1 Lēgātī Rōmam pācis causā eunt.

97.2 Iter per Alpēs īre perīculōsum erat.

97.3 Quō nunc tam celeriter īs?

97.4 Māne ad forum īre solēbat.

97.5 Pater ad bellum iit nec rediit.

97.6 Post longam sessionem senātōrēs domum eunt.

97.7 Dux in hostium terrās īre timet.

97.8 Mīles fortis prīmus in pugnam iit.

97.9 Quō nautae post tempestātem iērunt?

97.10 Eāmus nunc ad templum deōrum.

97.11 Multī poētae Athēnās studiōrum causā iērunt.

97.12 Ad theātrum populus tōtus spectandī causā iit.

97.13 Cum sōl occideret, domum īre incipiēbant.

97.31 Per perīcula multa mercātōrēs lucrī causā eunt.

97.15 Quandō Rōmā in Galliam ībitis?

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The verb "eō" is one of the most important irregular verbs in Latin. For English speakers, understanding its forms and uses requires attention to several key points:

1. Principal Parts:
    - Present: eō
    - Infinitive: īre

- Perfect: iī/īvī
- Supine: itum

2. Present System Forms: Singular:
    - eō (I go)
    - īs (you go)
    - it (he/she/it goes)

   Plural:
    - īmus (we go)
    - ītis (you go)
    - eunt (they go)
3. Common Constructions:
    - With accusative of place to which: "Rōmam eō" (I go to Rome)
    - With supine: "spectātum eunt" (they go to watch)
    - With infinitive: "īre incipit" (he begins to go)
    - In commands: "ī!" (go!), "īte!" (go!, plural)
4. Special Features:
    - Short 'i' in some forms (it, imus, itis)
    - Long 'ī' in others (īre, īs)
    - Unique perfect forms (iī or īvī)
    - Common compound verbs (abeō, adeō, etc.)

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding how Romans used "eō" requires cultural context:

1. Travel in Roman World:
    - Walking was primary mode of transport
    - Distances measured in days' journey
    - Road system (via Appia, etc.)
    - Travel mainly in good weather
2. Social Implications:
    - Going to forum daily ritual
    - Travel for education common
    - Military campaigns involved long marches
    - Religious processions important
3. Literary Uses:
    - Common in epic poetry for journeys
    - Used in historical narratives
    - Frequent in military accounts
    - Important in religious texts
4. Modern Connections:
    - Source of words like "exit"
    - Similar to "go" in flexibility
    - Used in common Latin phrases
    - Important in scientific terms

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Caesar's "De Bello Gallico" (1.6):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Helvētiī *the Helvetii* **iam** *now* **per** *through* **angustiās** *narrow passes* **et** *and* **fīnēs** *territories* **Sēquanōrum** *of the Sequani* **suās** *their* **cōpiās** *forces* **trādūxerant** *had led across,* **et** *and* **in** *into* **Aeduōrum** *of the Aedui* **fīnēs** *territories* **pervēnerant** *had arrived* **eōrumque** *and their* **agrōs** *fields* **populābantur** *were ravaging.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur."

The Helvetii had already led their forces through the narrow passes and territories of the Sequani, and had arrived in the territories of the Aedui and were ravaging their fields.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Caesar uses compound verbs of motion (trādūxerant, pervēnerant) to describe the Helvetii's movement. The passage shows typical features of Caesar's style:

- Clear sequence of events
- Military precision in description
- Geographic detail
- Focus on territorial boundaries

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- Perfect active verbs: trādūxerant, pervēnerant
- Imperfect: populābantur (ongoing action)
- Compound verb formation
- Uses of accusative for motion toward
- Genitive of possession
- Demonstrative pronouns

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

97.16 **Imperātor** *commander* **ipse** *himself* **ad** *to* **castra** *camp* **hostium** *of enemies* **iit** *went* **explōrandī** *of reconnoitering* **causā** *for sake*

97.17 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **nostrī** *our* **per** *through* **silvās** *forests* **obscūrās** *dark* **īre** *to go* **nōn** *not* **audēbant** *were daring*

97.18 **Cum** *when* **nox** *night* **venīret** *was coming* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **in** *into* **castra** *camp* **redīre** *to return* **coepērunt** *began*

97.19 **Dux** *leader* **fortis** *brave* **prīmus** *first* **in** *into* **hostium** *of enemies* **agrōs** *fields* **iit** *went*

97.20 **Omnēs** *all* **cōpiae** *forces* **per** *through* **montēs** *mountains* **altōs** *high* **magnō** *with great* **labōre** *effort* **iērunt** *went*

97.21 **Lēgātī** *ambassadors* **ad** *to* **senātum** *senate* **Rōmānum** *Roman* **pācis** *of peace* **petendae** *of seeking* **causā** *for sake* **iērunt** *went*

97.22 **Eunt** *go* **explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **per** *through* **noctem** *night* **obscūram** *dark* **hostēs** *enemies* **quaerentes** *seeking*

97.23 **Ad** *to* **portam** *gate* **urbis** *of city* **māne** *in morning* **prīmā** *first* **lūce** *at light* **iimus** *we went*

97.24 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **fessī** *tired* **domum** *homeward* **post** *after* **victōriam** *victory* **māgnam** *great* **iērunt** *went*

97.25 **Imperātor** *commander* **cum** *with* **duābus** *two* **legiōnibus** *legions* **in** *into* **Galliam** *Gaul* **īre** *to go* **parātus** *prepared* **erat** *was*

97.26 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **per** *through* **campōs** *plains* **lātōs** *wide* **celeriter** *swiftly* **iērunt** *went*

97.27 **Auxiliā** *auxiliaries* **nostra** *our* **nōn** *not* **longē** *far* **ab** *from* **urbe** *city* **iērunt** *went*

97.28 **Centuriō** *centurion* **fortis** *brave* **ad** *to* **proximum** *nearest* **collem** *hill* **explōrandī** *of scouting* **causā** *for sake* **iit** *went*

97.29 **Hostēs** *enemies* **iam** *now* **trāns** *across* **flūmen** *river* **magnum** *great* **iērunt** *went*

97.30 **Imperātor** *commander* **suōs** *his own* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **in** *into* **proelium** *battle* **īre** *to go* **iussit** *ordered*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

97.16 Imperātor ipse ad castra hostium explōrandī causā iit. *The commander himself went to the enemy camp for the purpose of reconnoitering.*

97.17 Equitēs nostrī per silvās obscūrās īre nōn audēbant. *Our cavalry did not dare to go through the dark forests.*

97.18 Cum nox venīret, mīlitēs in castra redīre coepērunt. *When night was coming, the soldiers began to return to camp.*

97.19 Dux fortis prīmus in hostium agrōs iit. *The brave leader went first into the enemy's fields.*

97.20 Omnēs cōpiae per montēs altōs magnō labōre iērunt. *All the forces went through the high mountains with great effort.*

97.21 Lēgātī ad senātum Rōmānum pācis petendae causā iērunt. *The ambassadors went to the Roman senate for the purpose of seeking peace.*

97.22 Eunt explōrātōrēs per noctem obscūram hostēs quaerentēs. *The scouts go through the dark night seeking the enemy.*

97.23 Ad portam urbis māne prīmā lūce iimus. *We went to the city gate early in the morning at first light.*

97.24 Mīlitēs fessī domum post victōriam māgnam iērunt. *The tired soldiers went home after the great victory.*

97.25 Imperātor cum duābus legiōnibus in Galliam īre parātus erat. *The commander was prepared to go into Gaul with two legions.*

97.26 Equitēs per campōs lātōs celeriter iērunt. *The cavalry went swiftly through the wide plains.*

97.27 Auxiliā nostra nōn longē ab urbe iērunt. *Our auxiliaries did not go far from the city.*

97.28 Centuriō fortis ad proximum collem explōrandī causā iit. *The brave centurion went to the nearest hill for the purpose of scouting.*

97.29 Hostēs iam trāns flūmen magnum iērunt. *The enemies had already gone across the great river.*

97.30 Imperātor suōs mīlitēs in proelium īre iussit. *The commander ordered his soldiers to go into battle.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

97.16 Imperātor ipse ad castra hostium explōrandī causā iit.

97.17 Equitēs nostrī per silvās obscūrās īre nōn audēbant.

97.18 Cum nox venīret, mīlitēs in castra redīre coepērunt.

97.19 Dux fortis prīmus in hostium agrōs iit.

97.20 Omnēs cōpiae per montēs altōs magnō labōre iērunt.

97.21 Lēgātī ad senātum Rōmānum pācis petendae causā iērunt.

97.22 Eunt explōrātōrēs per noctem obscūram hostēs quaerentēs.

97.23 Ad portam urbis māne prīmā lūce iimus.

97.24 Mīlitēs fessī domum post victōriam māgnam iērunt.

97.25 Imperātor cum duābus legiōnibus in Galliam īre parātus erat.

97.26 Equitēs per campōs lātōs celeriter iērunt.

97.27 Auxiliā nostra nōn longē ab urbe iērunt.

97.28 Centuriō fortis ad proximum collem explōrandī causā iit.

97.29 Hostēs iam trāns flūmen magnum iērunt.

97.30 Imperātor suōs mīlitēs in proelium īre iussit.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

In military contexts, the verb "eō" appears in several specific constructions:

1. Purpose Clauses with Gerund:
    - "explōrandī causā" (for the purpose of scouting)
    - Used frequently in military dispatches
    - Often with verbs of motion Example: "ad castra hostium explōrandī causā iit"
2. Military Commands:
    - Imperative forms common
    - Often with complementary infinitive
    - Used in battle orders Example: "mīlitēs in proelium īre iussit"
3. Movement Descriptions:
    - With prepositions showing direction:
        - ad + acc. (toward)
        - in + acc. (into)
        - per + acc. (through)
        - trāns + acc. (across) Example: "per montēs altōs magnō labōre iērunt"
4. Time Expressions:
    - Ablative of time when
    - Temporal cum clauses
    - References to daylight/darkness Example: "māne prīmā lūce iimus"
5. Military Vocabulary Combinations:
    - With castra (camp)
    - With proelium (battle)
    - With collis (hill)
    - With explōrātōrēs (scouts) Example: "in castra redīre coepērunt"
6. Special Military Usages:
    - Reconnaissance missions
    - Troop movements
    - Battle formations
    - Strategic retreats Example: "Auxiliā nostra nōn longē ab urbe iērunt"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Lesson 98 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson: arma -ōrum n. pl. (arms, weapons)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

98.1 **Validī** *strong* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **arma** *arms* **in** *in* **agrō** *field* **pōnunt** *place*

98.2 **Fortēs** *brave* **virī** *men* **arma** *weapons* **suā** *their* **parant** *prepare*

98.3 **Hostēs** *enemies* **nostra** *our* **arma** *weapons* **timent** *fear*

98.4 **Nūlla** *no* **arma** *weapons* **in** *in* **templō** *temple* **erant** *were*

98.5 **Servī** *slaves* **gravia** *heavy* **arma** *weapons* **portant** *carry*

98.6 **Pater** *father* **fīliō** *to son* **arma** *weapons* **nova** *new* **dat** *gives*

98.7 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **per** *through* **silvam** *forest* **arma** *weapons* **ferunt** *carry*

98.8 **Arma** *weapons* **antīqua** *ancient* **in** *in* **templō** *temple* **vidēmus** *we see*

98.9 **Dux** *leader* **arma** *arms* **omnium** *of all* **mīlitum** *soldiers* **spectat** *examines*

98.10 **Cīvēs** *citizens* **arma** *weapons* **in** *in* **urbe** *city* **habēre** *to have* **nōn** *not* **possunt** *are able*

98.11 **In** *in* **bellō** *war* **arma** *weapons* **necessāria** *necessary* **sunt** *are*

98.12 **Puer** *boy* **arma** *weapons* **patris** *of father* **portāre** *to carry* **nōn** *not* **potest** *is able*

98.13 **Rex** *king* **mīlitibus** *to soldiers* **arma** *weapons* **nova** *new* **dedit** *gave*

98.31 **Ad** *to* **arma** *arms* **iuvenēs** *young men* **vocāmus** *we call*

98.15 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **arma** *weapons* **nōn** *not* **amant** *love*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

98.1 Validī mīlitēs arma in agrō pōnunt. *The strong soldiers place their weapons in the field.*

98.2 Fortēs virī arma suā parant. *The brave men prepare their weapons.*

98.3 Hostēs nostra arma timent. *The enemies fear our weapons.*

98.4 Nūlla arma in templō erant. *There were no weapons in the temple.*

98.5 Servī gravia arma portant. *The slaves carry heavy weapons.*

98.6 Pater fīliō arma nova dat. *The father gives new weapons to his son.*

98.7 Mīlitēs per silvam arma ferunt. *The soldiers carry weapons through the forest.*

98.8 Arma antīqua in templō vidēmus. *We see ancient weapons in the temple.*

98.9 Dux arma omnium mīlitum spectat. *The leader examines the weapons of all the soldiers.*

98.10 Cīvēs arma in urbe habēre nōn possunt. *The citizens are not allowed to have weapons in the city.*

98.11 In bellō arma necessāria sunt. *In war, weapons are necessary.*

98.12 Puer arma patris portāre nōn potest. *The boy cannot carry his father's weapons.*

98.13 Rex mīlitibus arma nova dedit. *The king gave new weapons to the soldiers.*

98.31 Ad arma iuvenēs vocāmus. *We call the young men to arms.*

98.15 Sapientēs arma nōn amant. *The wise do not love weapons.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

98.1 Validī mīlitēs arma in agrō pōnunt.

98.2 Fortēs virī arma suā parant.

98.3 Hostēs nostra arma timent.

98.4 Nūlla arma in templō erant.

98.5 Servī gravia arma portant.

98.6 Pater fīliō arma nova dat.

98.7 Mīlitēs per silvam arma ferunt.

98.8 Arma antīqua in templō vidēmus.

98.9 Dux arma omnium mīlitum spectat.

98.10 Cīvēs arma in urbe habēre nōn possunt.

98.11 In bellō arma necessāria sunt.

98.12 Puer arma patris portāre nōn potest.

98.13 Rex mīlitibus arma nova dedit.

98.31 Ad arma iuvenēs vocāmus.

98.15 Sapientēs arma nōn amant.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

"Arma" has several important grammatical features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form:
    - Always plural (pluralia tantum)
    - Second declension neuter plural
    - Nominative/Accusative: arma
    - Genitive: armōrum

    - Dative/Ablative: armīs
2. Common Uses:
    - As direct object: "arma portant" (they carry weapons)
    - With prepositions: "ad arma" (to arms)
    - As subject: "arma necessāria sunt" (weapons are necessary)
    - With adjectives: "arma nova" (new weapons)
3. Special Phrases:
    - "ad arma": call to arms
    - "arma virumque": arms and the man (epic opening)
    - "arma ferre": to bear arms
    - "arma pōnere": to lay down arms
4. Word Order:
    - Can appear at start for emphasis
    - Often follows adjectives
    - Flexible position as subject/object

Part E (Cultural Context)

For English speakers, understanding "arma" requires cultural context:

1. Roman Military:
    - Different types of weapons for different units
    - Symbolic importance in Roman society
    - Legal restrictions on weapon possession
    - Religious aspects of weapons
2. Literary Usage:
    - Epic poetry begins with "arma"
    - Metaphorical uses in rhetoric
    - Symbol of Roman power
    - Peaceful vs. martial themes
3. Social Implications:
    - Mark of citizenship
    - Class distinctions in weapons
    - Public vs. private weapon ownership
    - Ceremonial significance
4. Modern Connections:
    - Military terminology
    - Legal concepts
    - Coat of arms
    - Martial symbolism

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Vergil's "Aeneid" (1.1-4):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Arma *arms* **virumque** *and the man* **canō** *I sing,* **quī** *who* **prīmus** *first* **ab** *from* **ōrīs** *shores* **Trōiae** *of Troy* **Ītaliam** *to Italy* **fātō** *by fate* **profugus** *as a refugee* **Lāvīniaque** *and Lavinian* **vēnit** *came* **lītora** *to shores*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Arma virumque canō, quī prīmus ab ōrīs Trōiae Ītaliam fātō profugus Lāvīniaque vēnit lītora"

I sing of arms and the man who first from the shores of Troy came to Italy, a refugee by fate, and to the Lavinian shores

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

This famous opening emphasizes the martial theme ("arma") before the hero ("virum"), setting the epic's tone. The placement of "arma" in first position shows its thematic importance.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "arma" as direct object of "canō"
- Coordination with "-que"
- Complex sentence structure
- Use of historical present tense

Genre Section: Military Campaign Report

Part A (Interleaved Text)

98.16 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **nostrī** *our* **arma** *weapons* **parāre** *to prepare* **incipiunt** *begin*

98.17 **Dux** *leader* **omnēs** *all* **virōs** *men* **arma** *weapons* **capere** *to take* **iubet** *orders*

98.18 **Nova** *new* **arma** *weapons* **ē** *from* **castrīs** *camp* **afferuntur** *are brought*

98.19 **Equitēs** *cavalry* **arma** *weapons* **sua** *their* **māgna** *great* **dīligentiā** *with care* **cūrant** *take care of*

98.20 **Propter** *because of* **pluviam** *rain* **arma** *weapons* **gravia** *heavy* **sunt** *are*

98.21 **Hostēs** *enemies* **arma** *weapons* **nostra** *our* **timēre** *to fear* **incipiunt** *begin*

98.22 **Sub** *under* **lūnā** *moon* **arma** *weapons* **splendent** *shine*

98.23 **Mīlitēs** *soldiers* **fessī** *tired* **arma** *weapons* **in** *in* **terrā** *ground* **pōnunt** *place*

98.24 **Post** *after* **proelium** *battle* **arma** *weapons* **fracta** *broken* **colligimus** *we collect*

98.25 **Senēs** *old men* **puerīs** *to boys* **arma** *weapons* **antīqua** *ancient* **ostendunt** *show*

98.26 **Victōrēs** *victors* **arma** *weapons* **hostium** *of enemies* **capiunt** *seize*

98.27 **Ante** *before* **urbem** *city* **arma** *weapons* **multa** *many* **vidēmus** *we see*

98.28 **Sabīnī** *Sabines* **arma** *weapons* **nova** *new* **ad** *to* **bellum** *war* **parant** *prepare*

98.29 **Inter** *among* **rēgis** *king's* **arma** *weapons* **gladius** *sword* **aureus** *golden* **erat** *was*

98.30 **Tempestate** *by storm* **arma** *weapons* **in** *in* **marī** *sea* **perdita** *lost* **sunt** *were*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

98.16 Mīlitēs nostrī arma parāre incipiunt. *Our soldiers begin to prepare their weapons.*

98.17 Dux omnēs virōs arma capere iubet. *The leader orders all men to take up arms.*

98.18 Nova arma ē castrīs afferuntur. *New weapons are brought from the camp.*

98.19 Equitēs arma sua māgnā dīligentiā cūrant. *The cavalry take care of their weapons with great diligence.*

98.20 Propter pluviam arma gravia sunt. *Because of the rain, the weapons are heavy.*

98.21 Hostēs arma nostra timēre incipiunt. *The enemies begin to fear our weapons.*

98.22 Sub lūnā arma splendent. *Under the moon, the weapons shine.*

98.23 Mīlitēs fessī arma in terrā pōnunt. *The tired soldiers place their weapons on the ground.*

98.24 Post proelium arma fracta colligimus. *After the battle, we collect the broken weapons.*

98.25 Senēs puerīs arma antīqua ostendunt. *The old men show ancient weapons to the boys.*

98.26 Victōrēs arma hostium capiunt. *The victors seize the enemies' weapons.*

98.27 Ante urbem arma multa vidēmus. Before the city we see many weapons.

98.28 Sabīnī arma nova ad bellum parant. *The Sabines prepare new weapons for war.*

98.29 Inter rēgis arma gladius aureus erat. *Among the king's weapons was a golden sword.*

98.30 Tempestate arma in marī perdita sunt. *The weapons were lost in the sea during the storm.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

98.16 Mīlitēs nostrī arma parāre incipiunt.

98.17 Dux omnēs virōs arma capere iubet.

98.18 Nova arma ē castrīs afferuntur.

98.19 Equitēs arma sua māgnā dīligentiā cūrant.

98.20 Propter pluviam arma gravia sunt.

98.21 Hostēs arma nostra timēre incipiunt.

98.22 Sub lūnā arma splendent.

98.23 Mīlitēs fessī arma in terrā pōnunt.

98.24 Post proelium arma fracta colligimus.

98.25 Senēs puerīs arma antīqua ostendunt.

98.26 Victōrēs arma hostium capiunt.

98.27 Ante urbem arma multa vidēmus.

98.28 Sabīnī arma nova ad bellum parant.

98.29 Inter rēgis arma gladius aureus erat.

98.30 Tempestate arma in marī perdita sunt.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Concrete Examples)

In military narratives, "arma" appears in several distinct constructions:

1. With Verbs of Preparation:
    - "arma parāre" (to prepare weapons)
    - "arma capere" (to take up weapons) Example: "Mīlitēs nostrī arma parāre incipiunt."
2. With Verbs of Motion:
    - "arma afferre" (to bring weapons)
    - "arma pōnere" (to place weapons) Example: "Nova arma ē castrīs afferuntur."
3. With Descriptive Adjectives:
    - "arma nova" (new weapons)
    - "arma gravia" (heavy weapons)
    - "arma fracta" (broken weapons) Example: "Propter pluviam arma gravia sunt."
4. In Prepositional Phrases:
    - "in marī" (in the sea)
    - "ante urbem" (before the city)
    - "ē castrīs" (from the camp) Example: "Ante urbem arma multa vidēmus."
5. With Possessive Adjectives/Genitives:
    - "arma sua" (their weapons)
    - "arma hostium" (enemies' weapons)
    - "arma rēgis" (king's weapons) Example: "Victōrēs arma hostium capiunt."
6. As Subject with Passive Verbs:
    - "arma perdita sunt" (weapons were lost)
    - "arma afferuntur" (weapons are brought) Example: "Tempestate arma in marī perdita sunt."
7. Word Order Patterns in Military Context: a) Initial Position (emphasizing weapons):
    - "Arma splendent" (The weapons shine)

   b) Medial Position (emphasizing action):
    - "Mīlitēs arma pōnunt" (The soldiers place the weapons)

   c) Final Position (emphasizing location/circumstance):
    - "Vidēmus arma" (We see the weapons)
8. Special Military Phrases:

- "arma capere" (take up arms) - call to battle
- "arma pōnere" (lay down arms) - surrender
- "arma cūrare" (take care of weapons) - military duty Example: "Equitēs arma sua māgnā dīligentiā cūrant."

These constructions demonstrate how "arma" functions in military narrative to:

- Describe preparation for battle
- Report movement of troops and equipment
- Document battle outcomes
- Record military procedures

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 99 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 99: superus -a -um (situated above, upper)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

99.1 **Superae** *upper* **portae** *gates* **templī** *of temple* **apertae** *opened* **sunt** *were*

99.2 **Vox** *voice* **ē** *from* **superō** *upper* **monte** *mountain* **audīta** *heard* **est** *was*

99.3 **Ad** *to* **supera** *upper* **loca** *places* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **ascendērunt** *climbed*

99.4 **Aquilae** *eagles* **in** *in* **superīs** *upper* **rūpibus** *rocks* **nīdōs** *nests* **pōnunt** *place*

99.5 **Superō** *in upper* **caelō** *sky* **nūbēs** *clouds* **albae** *white* **volant** *fly*

99.6 **Dī** *gods* **superī** *above* **mortālēs** *mortals* **spectant** *watch*

99.7 **Ē** *from* **superā** *upper* **parte** *part* **urbis** *of city* **ignēs** *fires* **vīdimus** *we saw*

99.8 **Superae** *upper* **fenestrae** *windows* **vīllae** *of villa* **clausae** *closed* **erant** *were*

99.9 **Sacerdōs** *priest* **ad** *to* **supera** *upper* **templa** *temples* **ambulat** *walks*

99.10 **Ventī** *winds* **in** *in* **superō** *upper* **aere** *air* **flant** *blow*

99.11 **Superōs** *upper* **mūrōs** *walls* **hostēs** *enemies* **oppugnant** *attack*

99.12 **Supera** *upper* **rēgna** *kingdoms* **magnō** *with great* **labōre** *effort* **dēfendimus** *we defend*

99.13 **Ex** *from* **superīs** *upper* **montibus** *mountains* **flūmina** *rivers* **fluunt** *flow*

99.31 **Superae** *upper* **viae** *roads* **angustae** *narrow* **et** *and* **perīculōsae** *dangerous* **sunt** *are*

99.15 **Ad** *to* **supera** *upper* **litora** *shores* **nāvēs** *ships* **longae** *long* **nāvigant** *sail*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

99.1 Superae portae templī apertae sunt. *The upper gates of the temple were opened.*

99.2 Vox ē superō monte audīta est. *A voice was heard from the upper mountain.*

99.3 Ad supera loca mīlitēs ascendērunt. *The soldiers climbed to the upper places.*

99.4 In superīs rūpibus aquilae nīdōs pōnunt. *Eagles build their nests on the upper rocks.*

99.5 In superō caelō nūbēs albae volant. *White clouds fly in the upper sky.*

99.6 Mortālēs dī superī spectant. *The gods above watch the mortals.*

99.7 Ignēs ē superā parte urbis vīdimus. *We saw fires from the upper part of the city.*

99.8 Superae fenestrae vīllae clausae erant. *The upper windows of the villa were closed.*

99.9 Ad supera templa sacerdōs ambulat. *The priest walks to the upper temples.*

99.10 In superō aere ventī flant. *Winds blow in the upper air.*

99.11 Hostēs superōs mūrōs oppugnant. *The enemies attack the upper walls.*

99.12 Supera rēgna magnō labōre dēfendimus. *We defend the upper kingdoms with great effort.*

99.13 Ex superīs montibus flūmina fluunt. *Rivers flow from the upper mountains.*

99.31 Superae viae angustae et perīculōsae sunt. *The upper roads are narrow and dangerous.*

99.15 Ad supera litora nāvēs longae nāvigant. *Long ships sail to the upper shores.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

99.1 Superae portae templī apertae sunt.

99.2 Vox ē superō monte audīta est.

99.3 Ad supera loca mīlitēs ascendērunt.

99.4 In superīs rūpibus aquilae nīdōs pōnunt.

99.5 In superō caelō nūbēs albae volant.

99.6 Mortālēs dī superī spectant.

99.7 Ignēs ē superā parte urbis vīdimus.

99.8 Superae fenestrae vīllae clausae erant.

99.9 Ad supera templa sacerdōs ambulat.

99.10 In superō aere ventī flant.

99.11 Hostēs superōs mūrōs oppugnant.

99.12 Supera rēgna magnō labōre dēfendimus.

99.13 Ex superīs montibus flūmina fluunt.

99.31 Superae viae angustae et perīculōsae sunt.

99.15 Ad supera litora nāvēs longae nāvigant.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part D (Grammar Explanation)

The adjective "superus -a -um" has several important features for English speakers to understand:

1. Form and Declension:
    - First and second declension adjective
    - Masculine: superus
    - Feminine: supera
    - Neuter: superum
2. Agreement Patterns: Examples from our sentences:
    - With feminine nouns: superae portae (nom. pl.)
    - With masculine nouns: superō monte (abl. sing.)
    - With neuter nouns: supera templa (acc. pl.)
3. Common Uses: a) Physical Location:
    - Describing upper parts of buildings
    - Referring to celestial locations
    - Indicating geographical features

    b) Metaphorical Uses:
    - Referring to divine matters
    - Indicating superior status
    - Describing hierarchical positions
4. Case Usage Examples:
    - Nominative: superae viae (subject)
    - Accusative: superōs mūrōs (direct object)
    - Genitive: not shown in examples but follows regular pattern
    - Dative: similar to ablative forms
    - Ablative: superō monte (place from which)

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding "superus" requires awareness of Roman spatial and religious concepts:

1. Physical Space:
    - Romans viewed space hierarchically
    - Upper areas often had religious significance
    - Height indicated status and power
2. Religious Significance:
    - Dī superī (gods above) vs. dī īnferī (gods below)
    - Upper temples had special status

    - Elevated places for augury and divination
3. Military Context:
    - Upper fortifications crucial for defense
    - High ground strategic in warfare
    - Upper city (arx) particularly important
4. Architectural Applications:
    - Upper stories of buildings
    - Different functions for upper spaces
    - Design reflecting social hierarchy

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Vergil's Aeneid (6.128-131):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Facilis *easy* **descēnsus** *descent* **Avernō** *to Avernus* **est** *is:* **noctēs** *nights* **atque** *and* **diēs** *days* **patet** *lies open* **ātrī** *black* **iānua** *door* **Dītis** *of Dis;* **sed** *but* **revocare** *to recall* **gradum** *step* **superāsque** *and upper* **ēvādere** *to escape* **ad** *to* **aurās,** *airs,* **hoc** *this* **opus,** *work,* **hic** *this* **labor** *toil* **est.** *is.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Facilis descēnsus Avernō est: noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī iānua Dītis; sed revocare gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās, hoc opus, hic labor est."

Easy is the descent to Avernus: nights and days the door of black Dis lies open; but to recall one's steps and escape to the upper air, this is the task, this is the toil.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Vergil uses "superas" here to contrast the underworld with the world above. The adjective emphasizes the physical and spiritual journey from lower to upper realms.

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "superas" modifies "auras" (upper air)
- Accusative plural feminine form
- Used in contrast with "descensus" (descent)
- Part of poetic word order emphasizing difficulty

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Military Dispatch

Part A (Interleaved Text)

99.16 **Legiō** *legion* **nostra** *our* **ad** *to* **superum** *upper* **collem** *hill* **pervēnit** *arrived*

99.17 **Ex** *from* **superā** *upper* **castrōrum** *of camp* **parte** *part* **hostēs** *enemies* **cōnspicimus** *we observe*

99.18 **Imperātor** *commander* **superās** *upper* **arcēs** *citadels* **occupārī** *to be occupied* **iussit** *ordered*

99.19 **In** *in* **superō** *upper* **vallō** *rampart* **mīlitēs** *soldiers* **vigilant** *keep watch*

99.20 **Superae** *upper* **portae** *gates* **castrōrum** *of camp* **firmātae** *strengthened* **sunt** *were*

99.21 **Explōrātōrēs** *scouts* **superum** *upper* **iter** *route* **hostium** *of enemies* **invēnērunt** *found*

99.22 **Dux** *leader* **superās** *upper* **turris** *towers* **dēfendī** *to be defended* **imperat** *commands*

99.23 **Ē** *from* **superā** *upper* **partē** *part* **montis** *of mountain* **tēla** *weapons* **mittuntur** *are sent*

99.24 **Ad** *to* **supera** *upper* **loca** *places* **auxilium** *reinforcement* **mittere** *to send* **prōperat** *hastens*

99.25 **Superae** *upper* **custōdiae** *guards* **signum** *signal* **dedērunt** *gave*

99.26 **Superī** *upper* **mūrī** *walls* **catapultīs** *with catapults* **dēfenduntur** *are defended*

99.27 **Ex** *from* **superō** *upper* **locō** *place* **castra** *camp* **hostium** *of enemies* **videō** *I see*

99.28 **Superum** *upper* **vallum** *rampart* **triplici** *with triple* **praesidiō** *garrison* **firmātur** *is strengthened*

99.29 **Superae** *upper* **cohortēs** *cohorts* **hostēs** *enemies* **fugientēs** *fleeing* **premunt** *press*

99.30 **Imperātor** *commander* **superīs** *in upper* **locīs** *places* **novam** *new* **legiōnem** *legion* **posuit** *placed*

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

99.16 Legiō nostra ad superum collem pervēnit. *Our legion arrived at the upper hill.*

99.17 Ex superā castrōrum parte hostēs cōnspicimus. *We observe the enemies from the upper part of the camp.*

99.18 Imperātor superās arcēs occupārī iussit. *The commander ordered the upper citadels to be occupied.*

99.19 In superō vallō mīlitēs vigilant. *Soldiers keep watch on the upper rampart.*

99.20 Superae portae castrōrum firmātae sunt. *The upper gates of the camp were strengthened.*

99.21 Explōrātōrēs superum iter hostium invēnērunt. *The scouts found the enemies' upper route.*

99.22 Dux superās turris dēfendī imperat. The leader commands the upper towers to be defended.

99.23 Ē superā parte montis tēla mittuntur. *Weapons are launched from the upper part of the mountain.*

99.24 Ad supera loca auxilium mittere prōperat. *He hastens to send reinforcements to the upper positions.*

99.25 Superae custōdiae signum dedērunt. *The upper guards gave the signal.*

99.26 Superī mūrī catapultīs dēfenduntur. *The upper walls are defended with catapults.*

99.27 Ex superō locō castra hostium videō. *From the upper position, I see the enemy camp.*

99.28 Superum vallum triplici praesidiō firmātur. *The upper rampart is strengthened with a triple garrison.*

99.29 Superae cohortēs hostēs fugientēs premunt. *The upper cohorts press upon the fleeing enemies.*

99.30 Imperātor superīs locīs novam legiōnem posuit. *The commander placed a new legion in the upper positions.*

Part C (Latin Text Only)

99.16 Legiō nostra ad superum collem pervēnit.

99.17 Ex superā castrōrum parte hostēs cōnspicimus.

99.18 Imperātor superās arcēs occupārī iussit.

99.19 In superō vallō mīlitēs vigilant.

99.20 Superae portae castrōrum firmātae sunt.

99.21 Explōrātōrēs superum iter hostium invēnērunt.

99.22 Dux superās turris dēfendī imperat.

99.23 Ē superā parte montis tēla mittuntur.

99.24 Ad supera loca auxilium mittere prōperat.

99.25 Superae custōdiae signum dedērunt.

99.26 Superī mūrī catapultīs dēfenduntur.

99.27 Ex superō locō castra hostium videō.

99.28 Superum vallum triplici praesidiō firmātur.

99.29 Superae cohortēs hostēs fugientēs premunt.

99.30 Imperātor superīs locīs novam legiōnem posuit.

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Military Context)

1. Military Terminology with "superus": a) Defensive Positions:
    - superum vallum (upper rampart)
    - superae turris (upper towers)
    - superī mūrī (upper walls)

   b) Tactical Locations:
    - superus collis (upper hill)
    - supera loca (upper positions)
    - superae arcēs (upper citadels)
2. Case Usage in Military Context: a) Accusative for Military Objectives:
    - ad superum collem (to the upper hill)
    - superās arcēs occupārī (upper citadels to be occupied)

b) Ablative for Position:
- in superō vallō (on the upper rampart)
- ex superā parte (from the upper part)

c) Nominative for Subject:
- superae cohortēs (upper cohorts)
- superae custōdiae (upper guards)

3. Military Commands:
   - Using iubeō with indirect command: "Imperātor superās arcēs occupārī iussit"
   - Using imperō with indirect command: "Dux superās turris dēfendī imperat"
4. Tactical Descriptions: a) Observation Points:
   - ex superō locō (from the upper position)
   - ē superā parte montis (from the upper part of the mountain)

   b) Defensive Arrangements:
   - superum vallum triplici praesidiō (upper rampart with triple garrison)
   - superī mūrī catapultīs (upper walls with catapults)
5. Movement and Position: a) Indicating Direction:
   - ad supera loca (to the upper positions)
   - in superīs locīs (in the upper positions)

   b) Strategic Points:
   - superum iter (upper route)
   - superae portae (upper gates)
6. Word Order in Military Context:
   - Emphasis on location: "Ex superō locō castra hostium videō"
   - Focus on military units: "Superae cohortēs hostēs fugientēs premunt"
   - Command structure: "Dux superās turris dēfendī imperat"

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Lesson 100 Latinum Institute Latin Reading Course

Latin Lesson 100: nisi/nī (if not, unless)

Part A (Interleaved English and Latin Text)

100.1 **Nihil** *nothing* **nisi** *unless* **pācem** *peace* **petunt** *they seek*

100.2 **Servus** *slave* **dominum** *master* **nisi** *unless* **vocātus** *called* **nōn** *not* **adit** *approaches*

100.3 **Nisi** *unless* **pluit** *it rains* **in** *in* **agrīs** *fields* **labōrāmus** *we work*

100.4 **Dux** *leader* **nī** *unless* **victōriam** *victory* **spērat** *hopes for* **nōn** *not* **pugnat** *fights*

100.5 **Puer** *boy* **nisi** *unless* **laudātus** *praised* **nōn** *not* **bene** *well* **discit** *learns*

100.6 **Sapientēs** *wise men* **nisi** *unless* **causam** *cause* **vident** *see* **nōn** *not* **crēdunt** *believe*

100.7 **Māter** *mother* **fīlium** *son* **nisi** *unless* **aegrum** *sick* **nōn** *not* **cūrat** *cares for*

100.8 **Nī** *unless* **fēlīx** *lucky* **eris** *you will be* **multōs** *many* **amīcōs** *friends* **habēbis** *you will have*

100.9 **Legiōnēs** *legions* **nisi** *unless* **parātae** *prepared* **sunt** *are* **nōn** *not* **prōcēdunt** *advance*

100.10 **Nisi** *unless* **pāx** *peace* **fit** *happens* **bellum** *war* **manēbit** *will remain*

100.11 **Agricola** *farmer* **nisi** *unless* **pluit** *it rains* **agrōs** *fields* **nōn** *not* **arat** *plows*

100.12 **Nī** *unless* **fortem** *brave* **tē** *yourself* **praestās** *show* **victōriam** *victory* **nōn** *not* **habēbis** *you will have*

100.13 **Mīles** *soldier* **nisi** *unless* **iussus** *ordered* **nōn** *not* **pugnat** *fights*

100.31 **Nisi** *unless* **labōrās** *you work* **praemium** *reward* **nōn** *not* **accipis** *you receive*

100.15 **Nāvis** *ship* **nisi** *unless* **ventus** *wind* **flat** *blows* **nōn** *not* **movētur** *moves*

1. Legal Conditional Structures in Roman Law: a) Future Perfect Conditions:
    - "nisi fēcerit" (unless he will have made)
    - Used for prerequisites to legal actions
    - Common in statements of procedure Example: "Nisi testāmentum fēcerit" (Unless he will have made a will)

    b) Present Perfect Conditions:
    - "nisi probātum est" (unless it has been proved)
    - For established facts in legal cases
    - Used in evidence requirements Example: "Nisi pretium numerātum sit" (Unless the price has been paid)
2. Special Legal Vocabulary: a) Technical Terms:
    - crētiō (formal acceptance)
    - vadimonium (bail bond)
    - manūmissiō (manumission) Examples show proper legal terminology

    b) Formal Expressions:
    - "ratiōnēs reddere" (render accounts)
    - "causam agere" (plead a case)
    - "rem probāre" (prove ownership)
3. Syntax in Legal Latin: a) Word Order Patterns:
    - Condition-first structure common
    - Verb often final in main clause
    - Subject placement for emphasis Example: "Nisi hērēs sē crētiōne obligāverit" (Unless the heir binds himself by formal acceptance)

    b) Passive Voice Usage:
    - "trādita erunt" (will have been handed over)
    - "perfecta sit" (has been completed) Common in formal legal language
4. Legal Consequences: a) Automatic Results:
    - "īnfāmis fit" (becomes dishonored)
    - "nūlla est" (is void)
    - "īrritum fit" (becomes invalid)

    b) Prescribed Penalties:
    - "duplex pendet" (pays double)

- "in vinculīs tenēbitur" (will be held in chains)
- "magistrātū prīvātur" (is deprived of magistracy)

5. Time Expressions in Law:
    - "intra diēs decem" (within ten days)
    - Specific deadlines common
    - Time limits legally significant
6. Documentary Requirements:
    - "sigillum pūblicum" (public seal)
    - "quīnque testēs" (five witnesses)
    - Formal validation methods

❦ ❦

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

100.16 Heredēs nisi testāmentum lēgerint pecūniam nōn accipient. *The heirs will not receive the money unless they have read the will.*

100.17 Nisi iūdex permīserit, reus abesse nōn potest. *Unless the judge permits it, the defendant cannot be absent.*

100.18 Testis nisi iūrātus testimonium dīcere nōn potest. *A witness cannot give testimony unless having been sworn in.*

100.19 Nisi omnia documenta ostenderint causam nōn vincent. *Unless they show all documents, they will not win the case.*

100.20 Iūdex nisi lēgem sequitur iūstus nōn est. *A judge is not just unless he follows the law.*

100.21 Nī quis contrā dīxerit, sententia stat. *Unless someone speaks against it, the verdict stands.*

100.22 Adversāriī nisi prōbāverint crīmen poenam nōn petent. *The opponents will not seek a penalty unless they have proved the crime.*

100.23 Nisi senātus permīserit, rēx imperium nōn habēbit. *Unless the senate permits it, the king will not have power.*

100.24 Cīvis nisi cēnsus est suffragium nōn habet. *A citizen does not have the right to vote unless he is registered.*

100.25 Nī iūre līberātus servus līber nōn est. *Unless freed by law, a slave is not free.*

100.26 Paterfamiliās nisi testāmentum fēcerit bona līberīs nōn relinquet. *The head of the household will not leave goods to his children unless he has made a will.*

100.27 Nisi signum addiderint litterae ratae nōn sunt. *Unless they have added a seal, the letters are not valid.*

100.28 Iūdex nisi ambās partēs audīverit iūdicium nōn facit. *The judge does not make a judgment unless he has heard both parties.*

100.29 Nī poena solūta erit reus līber nōn erit. *Unless the penalty has been paid, the defendant will not be free.*

100.30 Nisi magister iusserit carcer nōn aperitur. *Unless the magistrate orders it, the prison is not opened.*

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part C (Latin Text Only)

100.16 Heredēs nisi testāmentum lēgerint pecūniam nōn accipient.

100.17 Nisi iūdex permīserit, reus abesse nōn potest.

100.18 Testis nisi iūrātus testimonium dīcere nōn potest.

100.19 Nisi omnia documenta ostenderint causam nōn vincent.

100.20 Iūdex nisi lēgem sequitur iūstus nōn est.

100.21 Nī quis contrā dīxerit, sententia stat.

100.22 Adversāriī nisi prōbāverint crīmen poenam nōn petent.

100.23 Nisi senātus permīserit, rēx imperium nōn habēbit.

100.24 Cīvis nisi cēnsus est suffragium nōn habet.

100.25 Nī iūre līberātus servus līber nōn est.

100.26 Paterfamiliās nisi testāmentum fēcerit bona līberīs nōn relinquet.

100.27 Nisi signum addiderint litterae ratae nōn sunt.

100.28 Iūdex nisi ambās partēs audīverit iūdicium nōn facit.

100.29 Nī poena solūta erit reus līber nōn erit.

100.30 Nisi magister iusserit carcer nōn aperitur.

❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦ ❦

Part E (Cultural Context)

Understanding how Romans used "nisi" requires cultural context:

1. Legal Language:
    - Common in laws and contracts
    - Used in formal exceptions
    - Important in wills
    - Part of legal formulas
2. Military Context:
    - Used in battle conditions
    - Part of command structure
    - Found in military reports
    - Common in strategic planning
3. Social Implications:
    - Used in polite refusals
    - Part of negotiation language

    - Important in formal requests
    - Shows logical thinking
4. Modern Relevance:
    - Still used in legal Latin
    - Found in academic writing
    - Important in logical discourse
    - Helps understand conditions

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part F (Literary Citation)

From Cicero's "Pro Roscio Amerino" (20.55):

Part F-A (Interleaved Text)

Nōn *not* **modo** *only* **sine** *without* **cūrā** *care* **quiēscere** *to rest* **sed** *but* **nē** *not even* **spīrāre** *to breathe* **quidem** *indeed* **sine** *without* **metū** *fear* **possunt** *they are able,* **nisi** *unless* **sē** *themselves* **longius** *further* **ā** *from* **suīs** *their own* **maleficiīs** *crimes* **removērint** *they will have removed.*

Part F-B (Complete Translation)

"Nōn modo sine cūrā quiēscere, sed nē spīrāre quidem sine metū possunt, nisi sē longius ā suīs maleficiīs removērint."

They cannot not only rest without care, but cannot even breathe without fear, unless they remove themselves quite far from their crimes.

Part F-C (Literary Analysis)

Cicero uses "nisi" to emphasize the impossibility of peace of mind for the guilty. The structure builds tension through:

- Paired negatives
- Escalating actions (rest → breathe)
- Physical distance metaphor

Part F-D (Grammatical Notes)

- "nisi" introduces condition
- Perfect subjunctive "removērint"
- Double negative emphasis
- Complex sentence structure
- Use of comparative "longius"

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Genre Section: Legal Document

Part A (Interleaved Text)

100.16 **Heredēs** *heirs* **nisi** *unless* **testāmentum** *will* **lēgerint** *they will have read* **pecūniam** *money* **nōn** *not* **accipient** *will receive*

100.17 **Nisi** *unless* **iūdex** *judge* **permīserit** *will have permitted* **reus** *defendant* **abesse** *to be absent* **nōn** *not* **potest** *is able*

100.18 **Testis** *witness* **nisi** *unless* **iūrātus** *having sworn* **testimonium** *testimony* **dīcere** *to speak* **nōn** *not* **potest** *is able*

100.19 **Nisi** *unless* **omnia** *all things* **documenta** *documents* **ostenderint** *they will have shown* **causam** *case* **nōn** *not* **vincent** *they will win*

100.20 **Iūdex** *judge* **nisi** *unless* **lēgem** *law* **sequitur** *follows* **iūstus** *just* **nōn** *not* **est** *is*

100.21 **Nī** *unless* **quis** *someone* **contrā** *against* **dīxerit** *will have spoken* **sententia** *verdict* **stat** *stands*

100.22 **Adversāriī** *opponents* **nisi** *unless* **prōbāverint** *they will have proved* **crīmen** *crime* **poenam** *penalty* **nōn** *not* **petent** *will seek*

100.23 **Nisi** *unless* **senātus** *senate* **permīserit** *will have permitted* **rēx** *king* **imperium** *power* **nōn** *not* **habēbit** *will have*

100.24 **Cīvis** *citizen* **nisi** *unless* **cēnsus** *registered* **est** *is* **suffragium** *vote* **nōn** *not* **habet** *has*

100.25 **Nī** *unless* **iūre** *by law* **līberātus** *freed* **servus** *slave* **līber** *free* **nōn** *not* **est** *is*

100.26 **Paterfamiliās** *head of household* **nisi** *unless* **testāmentum** *will* **fēcerit** *will have made* **bona** *goods* **līberīs** *to children* **nōn** *not* **relinquet** *will leave*

100.27 **Nisi** *unless* **signum** *seal* **addiderint** *they will have added* **litterae** *letters* **ratae** *valid* **nōn** *not* **sunt** *are*

100.28 **Iūdex** *judge* **nisi** *unless* **ambās** *both* **partēs** *parties* **audīverit** *will have heard* **iūdicium** *judgment* **nōn** *not* **facit** *makes*

100.29 **Nī** *unless* **poena** *penalty* **solūta** *paid* **erit** *will have been* **reus** *defendant* **līber** *free* **nōn** *not* **erit** *will be*

100.30 **Nisi** *unless* **magister** *magistrate* **iusserit** *will have ordered* **carcer** *prison* **nōn** *not* **aperitur** *is opened*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part B (Complete Natural Sentences)

100.16 Heredēs nisi testāmentum lēgerint pecūniam nōn accipient. *The heirs will not receive the money unless they have read the will.*

100.17 Nisi iūdex permīserit, reus abesse nōn potest. *Unless the judge permits it, the defendant cannot be absent.*

100.18 Testis nisi iūrātus testimonium dīcere nōn potest. *A witness cannot give testimony unless having been sworn in.*

100.19 Nisi omnia documenta ostenderint causam nōn vincent. *Unless they show all documents, they will not win the case.*

100.20 Iūdex nisi lēgem sequitur iūstus nōn est. *A judge is not just unless he follows the law.*

100.21 Nī quis contrā dīxerit, sententia stat. *Unless someone speaks against it, the verdict stands.*

100.22 Adversāriī nisi prōbāverint crīmen poenam nōn petent. *The opponents will not seek a penalty unless they have proved the crime.*

100.23 Nisi senātus permīserit, rēx imperium nōn habēbit. *Unless the senate permits it, the king will not have power.*

100.24 Cīvis nisi cēnsus est suffragium nōn habet. *A citizen does not have the right to vote unless he is registered.*

100.25 Nī iūre līberātus servus līber nōn est. *Unless freed by law, a slave is not free.*

100.26 Paterfamiliās nisi testāmentum fēcerit bona līberīs nōn relinquet. *The head of the household will not leave goods to his children unless he has made a will.*

100.27 Nisi signum addiderint litterae ratae nōn sunt. *Unless they have added a seal, the letters are not valid.*

100.28 Iūdex nisi ambās partēs audīverit iūdicium nōn facit. *The judge does not make a judgment unless he has heard both parties.*

100.29 Nī poena solūta erit reus līber nōn erit. *Unless the penalty has been paid, the defendant will not be free.*

100.30 Nisi magister iusserit carcer nōn aperitur. *Unless the magistrate orders it, the prison is not opened.*

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part C (Latin Text Only)

100.16 Heredēs nisi testāmentum lēgerint pecūniam nōn accipient.

100.17 Nisi iūdex permīserit, reus abesse nōn potest.

100.18 Testis nisi iūrātus testimonium dīcere nōn potest.

100.19 Nisi omnia documenta ostenderint causam nōn vincent.

100.20 Iūdex nisi lēgem sequitur iūstus nōn est.

100.21 Nī quis contrā dīxerit, sententia stat.

100.22 Adversāriī nisi prōbāverint crīmen poenam nōn petent.

100.23 Nisi senātus permīserit, rēx imperium nōn habēbit.

100.24 Cīvis nisi cēnsus est suffragium nōn habet.

100.25 Nī iūre līberātus servus līber nōn est.

100.26 Paterfamiliās nisi testāmentum fēcerit bona līberīs nōn relinquet.

100.27 Nisi signum addiderint litterae ratae nōn sunt.

100.28 Iūdex nisi ambās partēs audīverit iūdicium nōn facit.

100.29 Nī poena solūta erit reus līber nōn erit.

100.30 Nisi magister iusserit carcer nōn aperitur.

⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ⚜ ❦ ⚜ ❦ ⚜

Part D (Grammar Explanation with Legal Context)

1. Legal Conditional Structures: a) Future Perfect with Future:
    - "nisi lēgerint... nōn accipient" (unless they will have read... they will not receive)
    - Common in stating legal consequences
    - Shows sequence of required actions

   b) Present with Present:
    - "nisi sequitur... nōn est" (unless he follows... is not)
    - For stating general legal principles
    - Expresses ongoing requirements
2. Legal Vocabulary Patterns:
    - Technical terms: iūdex, reus, testimonium
    - Formal verbs: permittere, probare, iubēre
    - Official nouns: signum, litterae ratae, iūdicium
3. Syntactical Features: a) Word Order:
    - Subject-final for emphasis
    - Verb-final in formal statements
    - nisi clause often first for conditions

   b) Passive Constructions:
    - "nisi iūrātus" (unless having been sworn)
    - "nisi līberātus" (unless having been freed)
    - Common in legal language
4. Tense Usage in Legal Context:
    - Future Perfect for prerequisites
    - Simple Future for consequences
    - Present for standing laws
    - Perfect for completed actions
5. Special Legal Formulae: a) Procedural Requirements:
    - "nisi ambās partēs" (unless both parties)
    - "nisi signum addiderint" (unless they have added a seal)

   b) Authority Phrases:
    - "nisi magister iusserit" (unless the magistrate orders)
    - "nisi senātus permīserit" (unless the senate permits)
6. Negative Constructions:

- Double negatives rare in legal Latin
- Clear, unambiguous statements preferred
- nōn typically follows nisi clause